00030872

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY.

Digitized with financial assistance from
Government of Maharashtra
on 25 January, 2020

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

THE

CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

THE

CHRONICLE

OF

PIERRE DE LANGTOFT,

IN FRENCH VERSE,

FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF KING EDWARD I.

EDITED

BY

THOMAS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A., F.S.A., &c.,
CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE,
(ACADÉMIE DES INSCRIPTIONS ET BELLES-LETTRES).

30872

VOL. I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.

1866.

00030872

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE	ix
THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT	1

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

THE name of Pierre de Langtoft presents an example of the extreme looseness and inaccuracy of our old historical bibliographers. Our two early labourers in this field, Leland and Pitseus, have, by the easy mis-reading of an *f* for an *s* in a manuscript, transformed his name into Longatosta, which, however, is hardly excusable in men who ought to have been acquainted with the forms of English words. Pitseus says that he was considered by some to be a Frenchman, though he was himself of opinion that he was an Englishman.

Errors of bibliographers in regard to Pierre de Langtoft.

Anybody tolerably acquainted with the French of Langtoft's age would be convinced, by a very little reading of his chronicle, that it had not been written by a Frenchman, and it is too thoroughly Anglicised in character to admit much doubt of the country to which its writer belonged. Pitseus goes on to inform us that Pierre de Langtoft had gained fame by his piety and learning,[1] a statement for which there does not appear to be the slightest authority, any more than for the same bibliographer's further assertion that "he studied some "time in France, and that he was perfect in the correct "knowledge of the French language."[2] Pierre de Langtoft's French is certainly not correct, and it furnishes tolerably substantial evidence that he did not learn it in France. Pitseus goes on to say that Pierre was the

[1] "Vir cui pietas et doctrina "celebre nomen dederunt."

[2] "In Galliis aliquando studuit, "et linguam Gallicam accurate "callnit."

author of two books, a translation of Herebert de Bosham's life of Thomas of Canterbury in French verse, and a chronicle of England *in English*.[1] Leland only ascribes to him one book, the translation into French verse of Herebert de Bosham.[2] Now, if there is a book which Pierre de Langtoft did not write, it was this life of Thomas of Canterbury in French verse, as I shall explain further on; and the chronicle written in English, ascribed to him by Pitseus, was no doubt the English translation of Langtoft by Robert of Brunne. Thus it would appear that neither of these old and industrious bibliographers was acquainted with the only book we have any reason for ascribing to Pierre de Langtoft, the text of which I now publish.

Thomas Hearne.

The quaint but industrious antiquary, Thomas Hearne, who gave an edition of Robert of Brunne's translation of Langtoft's chronicle, while possessing the information relating to the author which is given by his translator, is almost as inaccurate as his predecessors, and he is far more dreamy and imaginative. His account of Pierre de Langtoft is a curious example of his peculiar style of treating such subjects. Though some considered him to be a Frenchman by birth, Hearne set him down as an Englishman, "notwithstanding his being so very well "vers'd in the French language." Langtoft was probably less of a Frenchman in his language than the mass of the well educated English of his day. "It does not appear "to me," Hearne goes on to say, "how he was originally "educated;" but he adds, "without question, there was "nothing wanting that might render him a compleat "scholar, as well as a man of honesty and good morals." Accordingly, after he had obtained "*a good fair cha-*

[1] "Scripsit Anglice chronicon "Angliæ, librum unum." Pitsei de Illustrib. Angliæ Scriptoribus, p. 890, Append. Pitseus adds the remark, "De hoc auctore nihil prorsus "aliud invenio."

[2] Leland, Comment. de Scriptoribus Britannicis, p. 218.

"*racter*," he became a canon of Bridlington. Hearne further informs us that "he was a person naturally addicted to history and poetry, and spent a good deal of "his time that way," so that he not only translated Herebert de Bosham's life of Thomas of Canterbury into French verse, but he wrote a metrical French chronicle of England. Hearne "took it for granted that he died "towards the beginning of the reign of king Edward "II., but in what year, or in what place, it was that he "finished his days, I cannot presume to determine." He was, however, "of opinion that he continued canon of "Bridlington till the time of his death, and that he was "buried in the priory, *with some short epitaph upon* "*him*."[1]

It will be seen that the account of Pierre de Langtoft we obtain from Thomas Hearne is of rather a misty description. I regret to say that the last writer who has attempted to investigate the history of our author has fallen into still greater error. The abbé de la Rue,[2] has not only adopted, without examination, all the mistakes of his predecessors, but he has multiplied in a marvellous manner the number of his writings. He gives him the credit of the translation of Herebert de Bosham, makes three separate books out of the chronicle (a translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth, a history of the Anglo-Saxons, and a history of the reign of Edward I.), and adds to these, a lay in the style of the Breton *lais*, and a metrical invocation to the Virgin, thus making Pierre de Langtoft the author of six books instead of one!

The abbé de la Rue.

When we turn from this mass of errors and unfounded suppositions, we find that we really know very little about the author of the following chronicle. Like so

What we know about Pierre de Langtoft.

---

[1] Hearne's Preface to "Peter "Langtoft's Chronicle," p. xxii., *et seq.*

[2] See the abbé de la Rue, Essais Historiques sur les Bardes, les Jongleurs, et les Trouvères Normands et Anglo-Normands, tom. iii. p. 234.

many of the mediæval writers, his name has only just escaped from oblivion. We know it, because he tells us himself, at the close of that division of the chronicle which is taken from Geoffrey of Monmouth, that it was Pierre de Langtoft:

" Peres de Langetoft trove nent plus par dit
" K'il n'ad complye e mys en cel escryt."[1]

From the manner in which he dwells upon the history of the north of England, and especially from the interest he shows in that of the northern monastic establishments, we are led rather naturally to suppose that he was an ecclesiastic, and that he was a native of that part of the kingdom. We are, therefore, quite prepared to receive the statement of his translator, Robert of Brunne, who lived near enough to the time, if he was not contemporary with Pierre, to be correctly informed, that he was a canon of Bridlington in Yorkshire.

" Pers of Langtoft, a chanon
" Of the hous of Br[y]dlyngtoun,
" On Frankis stile thie storie wrote
" Of Inglis kynges."[2]

There are two parishes in England of the name of Langtoft, one near Market Deeping in Lincolnshire, the other in the East Riding of Yorkshire. No doubt, as Hearne has supposed, it was the latter from which Pierre took his name, and of which, therefore, he was a native. It is only a few miles to the west of Bridlington, which will account for his education in the priory of that place. This is absolutely all we know of the personal history of Pierre de Langtoft.

There can be no doubt that he lived in the reign of

[1] *See* the present volume, p. 264.

[2] Robert of Brunne's prologue to the second part of the chronicle, printed in Hearne's edition of the translation of Peter Langtoft, Appendix to the Preface, p. cvi.

Edward I., and that his life was continued into that of Edward II.

The following is the list of writings ascribed to Pierre de Langtoft by the abbé de la Rue, to which it may be worth while to give a brief critical examination. The abbé tells us that Pierre wrote,— Langtoft's writings.

1. A metrical history of the British kings from Brutus to Cadwalader, translated from the *Historia Britonum* of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

2. A metrical history of the Anglo-Saxon kings, continued down to the end of the reign of Henry III.

3. A life of king Edward I., also in French verse.

4. The life of St. Thomas of Canterbury, translated into French verse from the Latin of Herebert de Bosham.

5. A *lai* in the style of the Breton *lais*.

6. An invocation to the Holy Virgin.

It is hardly necessary to say again that the first three of these books are simply the three different parts of the chronicle, and the abbé de la Rue must have possessed very little critical judgment not to have known it. We shall speak more fully of this book presently. With regard to the life of St. Thomas of Canterbury, it is not easy to imagine how it ever came to be ascribed to the pen of Pierre de Langtoft. The language not only entirely differs in purity from that of Langtoft's chronicle, but it belongs to the latter part of the twelfth century, or very little later, instead of the beginning of the fourteenth. But, which is still more to the purpose, if these writers had read the metrical life of St. Thomas, they would have found that its author himself tells us, towards the close of the poem, that his name was Benoit, and not Pierre, and that he was a Benedictine monk, and not a canon of the order of St. Augustine :— Langtoft not the author of the life of St. Thomas.

" Si vus en pri, pur Deu amur,
" Requerez le bon seignur
" Seint Thomas,

" Qu'il merci ait, par sa dulçur,
" De frere Benet le pecheur
" Od les neir draz,
" Qui ceste vie nus ad mustré,
" De Latin en Romanz translaté,
" Pur nus aider ;
" Cil doint Deus tel destiné,
' Que sa alme seit en ciel porté
" De louer ! "

In fact there can be little doubt that its author was the trouvère commonly known as Benoit de St. More, the Anglo-Norman author of the long metrical history of the dukes of Normandy published by M. Francisque Michel. It is found in several manuscripts, and M. Michel has printed it in the appendix to his edition of Benoit from a MS. in the Imperial Library in Paris.[1]

Poems ascribed to Pierre de Langtoft.

The abbé de la Rue appears hardly to have read, or at least to have very imperfectly understood, the last two works he ascribes to Pierre de Langtoft. The first of them is not at all a *lai* in the style of the Breton *lais*, but an allegorical story belonging to a class of mediæval literature later, in that form, than the *lais* which were identified with Britany, and which are represented by the writings of Marie de France, the lady trouvère of the reign of our Henry II. It is unnecessary to describe this poem more minutely, as I propose to print it in an appendix to the present edition of the chronicle. To judge from the style, it may have been written by Pierre de Langtoft (though this may be the fault of the scribe), but I can hardly venture to say so much for the other of these poems, which is not at all, as the description in the catalogue of the Cottonian Manuscripts, and, after it, the abbé de la Rue, call it, a prayer or invocation to the Virgin, but it embraces a subject which

[1] " Chronique des Ducs de Nor- " mandie, par Benoit, trouvère " Anglo-Normand du xii^e siècle," tom. iii. p. 461.

is not uncommon in verse, in different languages, in mediæval manuscripts, the lamentation of the Virgin over her child. I am not sure whether this version of it is found elsewhere or not, and it is a question hardly worth the trouble of a laborious search. It may be remarked that the last few pages of Pierre de Langtoft's chronicle in this manuscript are written in a different hand from the rest, and that these two religious poems are in the writing of the same scribe, who evidently believed that they were composed by Pierre de Langtoft, for he has added at the end of his labours, according to a usual practice among mediæval scribes, the following lines in Latin :—

" Artus scriptoris careant gravitate doloris,
" Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto;
" Culpa datur Petro deficiente metro."

The abbé de la Rue seems to think that the scribe wished to throw upon Pierre de Langtoft the fault of writing imperfect metre, but it strikes me that his complaint was, not that Pierre's verse was bad, but that there was no more of it.

Pierre de Langtoft's chronicle consists, as already stated, of three parts, or, if we like to give them that name, books, each embracing a distinct period of the history of his country, and compiled from a very different class of materials. In the first of these the author professes to give a history of the British kings, from the time when the fabulous Brutus first colonized the island until the establishment of the Anglo-Saxon dynasties. It is simply an abridgment, not unskilfully executed, of the *Historia Britonum* of Geoffrey of Monmouth, with a few variations, some of which seem to show an acquaintance with other British legends then current, and which we know from other sources must have existed abundantly during the thirteenth century. These variations are mostly pointed out in my notes. In the

Pierre de Langtoft's chronicle.

age of Pierre de Langtoft there existed a certain number of translations of the work of Geoffrey of Monmouth into Anglo-Norman verse, some of which are found in the manuscripts anonymously. The most celebrated of these was that by the Anglo-Norman trouvère Wace, who lived in the reign of Henry II., and who published it under the title of the "Brut," as being the history of Brutus and his descendants. Wace's poem is a very complete, and, as far as the circumstances would allow, a very close representation of the original, amplified only in those details of mediæval manners and sentiments in which a poet like Wace was allowed to indulge. For that reason partly, no doubt, Wace's Brut was in great repute, and through a good part of two centuries held the field against all its rivals. Pierre de Langtoft himself felt it necessary, at the close of his British history, to defend what he had done, by declaring that he had taken only so much of the British history as was true, and omitted only such as were mere *trofles*, deceptions or pleasantries—trifles, insisting that in what he had thus omitted the *latymer* himself, a word which, perhaps, here means the Latin writer, was in fault :—

Wace's translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

" Les trofles ad lessé, à veritez se prist,
" Nul autre trovera homme ke le list,
" Si noun li latymers en sun Latyn mentist."

The scribe who wrote the manuscript from which the text of Pierre de Langtoft is here printed has added here some verses, perhaps of his own, in which he protests against this statement. He says that master Wace relates the story more perfectly, and tells the whole text which Pierre too often skips ; that Pierre leaves out much which was good and pleasant to read :—

Popularity of Wace's Brut.

" Le livere mestre Wace counte plus parfit,
" E dit tut la lettre qe Peres trop salit.
" Peres par tut lessa meint bone respit
" Qe bon fust à lire e aver la delit."

Wace, he adds, gave all the text of the British history which he found, whether "*trofles*" or truth; and, comparing one book with the other, he considered Wace to be the best.—

"Mestre Wace dit tut la leitre q'il trova,
"Trufles e verité tretut complia.
"L'un livere e l'autre qi bien regardera,
"Jeo di qe mestre Wace plus overtement parla." [1]

Robert of Brunne's translation.

Robert of Brunne, a nearly contemporary writer who has left us a translation of Pierre de Langtoft into English verse, laboured under the same prejudice in regard to the superiority of Wace, and gives the same reasons as an excuse for throwing aside that part of Pierre's chronicle which treated on the history of the British kings, to substitute in its place a translation of Wace's Brut, and he only takes up Langtoft at the beginning of the history of the Anglo-Saxons,—

"Thes Inglis dedes ȝe may here
"As Pers telles alle the manere.
"One mayster Wace the Frankes telles
"The Brute alle that the Latyn spelles,
"Fro Eneas tille Cadwaladre,
"This mayster Wace ther leves he;
"And, ryght as mayster Wace says,
"I telle myn Inglis the same ways.
"For mayster Wace the Latyn alle rymes,
"That Pers overhippis many times.
"Mayster Wace the Brute alle redes,
"And Pers tellis alle the Inglis dedes.
"Ther mayster Wace of the Brute left,
"Ryght begynnes Pers eft,
"And tellis forth the Inglis story,
"And as he says, than say I." [2]

---

[1] See p. 264 of the present volume.

[2] I quote this from the Appendix to the Preface to Hearne's edition of Robert of Brunne's translation of Pierre de Langtoft, p. xcviii.

This great popularity of Wace's Brut has caused the entire loss of one monument of our mediæval literature. Another Anglo-Norman trouvère, Gaimar, who was Wace's senior, translated, anterior to him, the *Historia Britonum* into Anglo-Norman verse, to form the first part of his metrical chronicle of England, which is brought down to the end of the reign of William Rufus. The preference for Wace appears to have been so general, that, in all the manuscripts now known, the copyist has omitted the first part of Gaimar's book, and substituted Wace's Brut in its place, so that no copy of the former is at present known to exist. The portion of Gaimar which has been preserved possesses so much interest, that we cannot help regretting the loss of the rest.

The history of the Saxon and Norman kings.

The second part of Pierre de Langtoft's chronicle embraces the history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings down to the death of king Henry III. He now no longer follows a single authority, but his book is literally a compilation from different writers, among whom, as he himself acknowledges, were Henry of Huntingdon and William of Malmsbury. He appears also to have used largely Florence of Worcester. These seem to have been his principal authorities down to the reign of Stephen. It would be more difficult to point out the particular sources of the part of the history which follows, and he may have used some records with which we are not now acquainted, and even popular traditions. At all events, there are incidents in which he differs from most of our known authorities, and in some of these his variations or additions seem to be worthy of consideration. At the same time it must also be confessed that Pierre de Langtoft is not always accurate. In the first part of his chronicle he has in several instances mistaken the meaning of Geoffrey of Monmouth's Latin, and in this second part he has sometimes misunderstood his authorities in a manner which is quite unaccountable. Some of these errors are pointed out in

my notes, and I need only here remark that in one place in his history of the Anglo-Saxons he confounds three different kings, Ethelred, Alfred the Great, and Alfred of Northumbria,[1] and that in another he confounds the two great Danish chieftains, Guthrum and Rollo.[2]

History of the reign of Edward I.

In the third part of this chronicle, which embraces the reign of Edward I., Pierre de Langtoft becomes a contemporary historian, and furnishes us with materials for the annals of that period which are of the greatest value. It is in this part of the book that we begin to see a design in Langtoft's work. A great part of the history of the reign of Edward I., and the part of Langtoft most interesting to the modern historian, is devoted to the Scottish wars. It is hardly necessary to say that the people of the north of England were especially anti-Scottish, and Pierre de Langtoft, as one of them, evidently partook stongly in the feelings of his northern countrymen. We cannot read his chronicle without remarking, in the first place, how carefully he notes every act of hostility of the people of Scotland against the inhabitants of the more southern part of the island, whether against the British kings, or whether they joined the Danes in plundering and devastating the kingdom of Northumbria, or under the Norman kings crossed the border and spread terror and destruction through the English counties; and, in the second place, how carefully he dwells upon every occasion in which Saxon or Norman king received homage from the kings of Scotland in acknowledgment, voluntary or not, of the rights of sovereignty of the kings of England over the kings of Scotland. Pierre de Langtoft, like a true North-country man, proposed to write a popular history of England, which should show the justice of king Edward's Scottish wars, by proving his right to

Langtoft's design.

[1] See the present volume, p. 314.

[2] See p. 316 of the present volume.

sovereignty over Scotland, and by detailing the long series of provocations which the Scots had given to England. In doing this he also, no doubt, intended to compile a popular history for the use of the aristocratic part of the population, for those who still preferred reading French to reading English. As was usual among the mediæval writers, Pierre de Langtoft appears to have had a literary patron, who at least encouraged him in his undertaking. In the text adopted in the present edition, the manuscript of which was evidently written in the North, the writer tells us, in introducing us to the history of the reign of Edward I., that this patron was an individual named Scaffeld. "Whoever," he says, "wishes to know the history of great and of "little (referring, of course, to the earlier part of the his- "tory) let him take it from dan Pierre, who has com- "mitted it to writing; Scaffeld requested him to record "the history of our king Edward; listen[1] how he "tells it:"—

Scaffeld, the patron of Pierre de Langtoft.

"Ki vout saver la geste de grand e petit,
"La pregne de dan Peres ki l'ad mis en escrit:
"De noster rays Edward Scaffeld li requist
"Recorder la geste, escotez cum il dist."
(Fol. 129, v°.)

Who Scaffeld was I am not prepared to state, but he was no doubt a man of some sort of influence in the part of the country where Pierre de Langtoft lived. In the manuscript in the library of the College of Arms, which contains only the reign of Edward I. (MS. Arundel, No. xiv.), these lines are a little varied, and the words *uns amis*, a friend, are substituted for the name of Scaffeld. "Whoever wishes to hear the history of great and of

[1] This is the word especially used in poetry, in the literature of the middle age, for calling attention to poetry, because all compositions in verse were supposed to be made for recital.

" little, let him take it from little Peter,[1] who has com-
" mitted it to writing; for a friend requested him to
" provide in this book, to record the entire annals of all
" his time: how he has performed it, listen to his
" recital:"—

" Qui vielt oir la geste de grant e de petit,
" Si la preigne de Perot, qui l'ad mis en escrit;
" Car en cest livre parfurnir uns amis li requist,
" Pur recorder le proces de tut son tens parfist,
" Coment il l'ad continuz, escultez cum il dist."

This would lead us to suppose that Scaffeld was not a name very widely known. The scribe of the other manuscript in the College of Arms has added seven lines at the end to inform us that his own name was John, that he was a priest, and that he had written it at the request of another ecclesiastic named John, who was vicar of Atlyngflete. The scribe John.

" Icy finist Peres son liver en honour;
" Et Jon qe l'escrit parfet ad son labour,
" Et mette s'alme en repose oue seintz en doçour.
" Jon qe l'escrit ordre porte de prestre,
" Le vikere de Atlyngflete sire Jon, qe fu son mestre,
" Le pria de l'escriver par sa mayne destre.
" Dieus i mene lour almes en la joye celestre."

" Atlyngflete " was no doubt Adlingfleet, in the West Riding of Yorkshire, so that this manuscript of Pierre de Langtoft, also, was written in the north country, like, probably, most of the others, for it was in that part of the kingdom especially that this book was popular.

That the chronicle of Peter Langtoft was popular we can hardly doubt from the number of manuscripts which still exist. All the copies which I have consulted appear to have been written in the reign of Edward II., Popularity of the chronicle.

[1] *Perot* is the diminutive, or familiar form, of *Pierre*, just like Jamie for James or Harry for Henry.

or early in that of Edward III., a circumstance from which we learn the period during which the popularity of this book lasted. We have another proof of the popularity in the fact that it was translated at this same period into English verse by Robert of Brunne, a canon of the abbey of Brunne, or Bourne, in Lincolnshire, which we may suppose, from his name, to have been his native place. French was the language of the aristocracy; and we may assume from the lines of their own, added in most of the manuscripts by the copyists, that many of the clergy of the north were sufficiently well instructed in it. But already, at the time when Pierre de Langtoft lived, the English language was gaining rapidly on the French in this country, and there was a large body of the more educated classes of society who preferred English to French, even if they knew the latter. It was for these that Robert of Brunne, already well known as a poetical translator, translated Pierre de Langroft's chronicle into English verse. A comparison of this English version with the French original shows us, as I have frequent reasons to point out in my notes, how imperfectly it represents the latter. Sometimes Robert entirely mistranslates the French, and frequently he paraphrases it in a manner which shows that he only guessed at the meaning. Robert of Brunne's translation of the chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft was edited in two volumes by Thomas Hearne in 1725; but we may now look for a more complete and much more carefully edited text from Mr. Furnivall.

Translated into English.

Eight manuscripts of the chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, two of which contain only the history of the reign of Edward I., are known to exist, of which I have collated for the present edition five, which I have indicated severally by the letters A., B., C., D., E. Of these,—

Manuscripts of the chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft.

A. is a manuscript in the Cottonian Library, marked Julius A. V. It is a small quarto, on vellum, written in

a fine bold hand, and I am so far satisfied of its general superiority that I have adopted it as my text. The contents of this manuscript are,—

I. A short poem in Latin rhymes on Balliol and the affairs of Scotland.

II. (fol. 3, r°.) THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

III. (fol. 167, r°.) The allegorical story in French verse, mentioned above.

IV. (fol. 169, v°.) The Lamentation of the Virgin, in French verse, also mentioned above.

V. (fol. 172, v°.) A French version of the Prophecies of Merlin.

VI. (fol. 174, v°.) Acknowledgment of the homage due from Scotland to England, made in 1291, which will be found in Rymer's Fœdera.

VII. (fol. 175, r°.) English verses of a political character, beginning:—

"Als y yod on ay Mounday bytwene Wyl-
"tinden and Walle."

VIII. (fol. 176, v°.) The well known Anglo-Norman poem on the history of William Longespée.

B. This is a manuscript in the old Royal Library in the British Museum, marked MS. Reg. 20 A. XI. It is also a well-written and, generally speaking, good manuscript. Its contents are,—

I. THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

II. A French version of the Prophecies of Merlin.

III. The Letter of Prester John to the Emperor Frederic on the Wonders of the East, in French.

IV. Passio Pilati et de origine ejus. A legendary and rather wild history of Pontius Pilate, in Latin.

C. Another manuscript in the Royal Library, marked MS. Reg. 20 A. ii., the whole of which is occupied with the chronicle of Langtoft, except the first two leaves, which contain a sort of genealogical history of the kings of England from the Conquest to the time of Edward I. This fixes in some degree the age of the manuscript, which we can hardly ascribe to a later date than the reign of Edward II. It also is a good, well-written manuscript.

D. A manuscript preserved in the library of the College of Arms, and lettered on the back Vincent. It is a good copy, agreeing generally rather closely with the text of A., but containing many of the readings peculiar to C. It is numbered LXI. in the Appendix to the printed Catalogue of the Arundel Manuscripts, and belonged formerly to Ralph Sheldon. Langtoft's chronicle occupies the whole volume, with the exception of the first two leaves, which contain a list of the kings of England, and some unimportant entries.

E. This is a very fine manuscript in the library of the College of Arms, where it is marked Arundel MS., No. xiv., but contains only the part of Pierre de Langtoft's chronicle relating to the reign of Edward I. This manuscript was evidently written for some man of importance, who had a taste for the old French poetry, and wished to have a metrical record of the history of Britain, but preferred Wace's translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth to that by Pierre de Langtoft, and thought, justly enough, that Langtoft's history of the Saxon and Norman kings was much inferior to that by Gaimar. The contents of this manuscript are,—

I. Wace's Brut.

II. (fol. 93, r°.) Gaimar's chronicle.

III. (fol. 125, v°.) The Lai of Haveloc. It has been printed, first edited for the Roxburghe

Club by Sir Frederic Madden, and afterwards in Paris by M. Francisque Michel.

IV. (fol. 133, r°.) PIERRE DE LANGTOFT'S HISTORY OF EDWARD I. It is here divided into chapters, with rather long prologues in prose.

V. (fol. 148, r°.) *La lignée des Bretons et des Engleis ;* consisting of tables of the British, Saxon, and Norman kings.

VI. (fol. 150, r°.) Percival lè Galois. A well-known romance in French verse, by Chrestiens de Troyes, belonging to the cycle of king Arthur.

VII. (fol. 222, r°.) *Ceste ditée fist Water de Henleye.* A treatise on husbandry, composed by Walter de Henley in French prose. It is found in manuscripts not unfrequently. I cannot help remarking that the compiler of the printed Catalogue of the Arundel MSS. in the College of Arms imagined that the old French *ditée*, or *dictée*, meant a ditty, and he wonders that Walter de Henley's "treatise" is not in verse.

VIII. (fol. 230, r°.) A didactic poem in French verse, of some length, beginning,—

"Bien est raisoun et droiture,
"Que touz iceaux que mettent cure
"De bien."

It should be remarked that this last article is written in a hand of the fifteenth century.

Three other known manuscripts I have not consulted; 1. A manuscript in the Imperial Library in Paris, which has been collated in the part relating to the reign of William the Conqueror by M. Francisque Michel, in his "Chroniques Anglo-Normandes," but the readings peculiar to it appear to possess no great importance; 2. A manuscript in the library of Lincoln Cathedral; and, 3. An imperfect copy of the history of the reign of

Edward I. in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, MS. Fairfax, No. 24.

Character of the manuscripts.

It would be very unsafe to say positively which of the manuscripts I have used is the best. They are all far from perfect. The mediæval copyists, especially of works in the vernacular tongues, and in verse, were extremely careless and inaccurate. They appear often to have copied from the reading or recitation of another, and they mistook the words, or, when they did not understand or like a phrase or word, substituted for it another more to their taste. Anybody may judge of the amount of variations arising from these causes by a mere glance at my notes. Then, when a scribe was copying from another manuscript, he appears to have troubled himself little about the meaning of what he was writing, but looked upon it as mere mechanical work, and continually overlooked words or omitted a sentence, or even a line or two at a time. All the manuscripts of Pierre de Langtoft are full of omissions of this kind. The one I have adopted for my text, A., has continual omissions of a line or two, and in the manuscript in the Herald's College, D., they are still more numerous. The scribe of the latter, indeed, not only passed over lines through inadvertence, but he was evidently desirous of abridging his text, which he did sometimes very ingeniously by taking the first words of a line and adding to it the last words of the second, third, or even fourth line following, so as to preserve a meaning and the rhyme while omitting the part which intervenes in the original. This is especially the case in the latter part of the British history, where he appears to have become weary of his subject.

System followed in editing the present text.

In many cases we see at once which is the correct word or form, and, if our text were written in Latin, in which language we have a known canon of orthography and well-known grammatical forms, we should not hesitate in correcting them, but in cases like the present we have to face another and an insuperable difficulty.

During the middle ages all the vernacular languages were in a state of continual change, besides differing in their form locally; and a copyist, however correct he may have been in copying his text, almost invariably translated it into the language of the time at which, or of the place in which, he was writing. Thus two copies of the same book written at two different places would present a form of language very different from each other, and this would to a certain degree affect even a foreign language, like French, written in different places in England. When we find the word for king written *rays* in A. B., *reis* in C. D.; what is *sayt* in A. and C. (let it be) represented in D. by *seit*, and *dait* in A. by *deit* in D.; when we have *sun*, A., *soun*, B., *son*, *seon*, C., *cum*, A., B., *com*, C. D., *sunt*, A., *sount*, B., *sont*, C.; and when we observe such systematical variations as *fyllye*, *feyllie* (a daughter), A., *fidle*, B., *feylle*, C., and *fille*, D., we can only conclude that these variations are phonetic characters of dialect, not of English but of French; that is, that in the dialects of these several copyists the same combination of letters did not represent exactly the same sound, but that when the copyist received the French pronunciation in his ear, he expressed it with his hand by that combination of letters which would represent that sound in his own dialect. Such forms as *fidle* and *feillye*, for *fille*, could only arise from the difficulty experienced by the writer in representing the sound in French of the *ll*.

Difference of dialect.

We have also to consider the language employed by Pierre de Langtoft himself, and on that subject I must beg to make a few brief remarks. French was, of course, the language of the Norman barons in England, and for a long period, perhaps till towards the middle of the thirteenth century, it was the mother tongue of our aristocracy, that is, the child learnt French from the breast, and whatever he afterwards knew of English, he acquired it by subsequent teaching. We cannot tell ex-

History of the Anglo-Norman language.

actly at what period this state of things generally ceased, but at the close of the thirteenth century we find a knight named Walter de Biblesworth compiling, at the request of a noble English lady, the lady Dionysia de Monchensy, a treatise for teaching French to the children of the aristocracy.[1] As the French text of this treatise is accompanied by an interlinear explanatory gloss in English, it proves beyond any doubt that at the close of the thirteenth century the mother tongue of the English aristocracy was English, and that their children were taught French when they had reached an age capable of learning another language. How long this had been the case we cannot tell; such changes always take place gradually, and this was especially the case in the middle ages. Now the Normans had received the French language at an early period, and had preserved it in great purity, and in this condition it followed the Norman conquerors into our island. The literature of the middle ages followed the courts of the greatest and most powerful barons, and during the twelfth century England, using that name as including Normandy, was the head seat of the *langue d'oil*, and the Anglo-Norman, or Norman spoken and written in England, was, in its general character, and especially in its grammatical forms, the most ancient in form and the purest dialect of that language. In France, as the power of the crown gradually consolidated itself, an entirely new literature was forming itself, and, under the natural and necessary influence of the changes in society, the language, during the thirteenth century, was undergoing a gradual change, which in long course of time produced the modern French. At the end of the thirteenth century the French language was very different from that of the twelfth century—the latter had become obsolete. Now, in England, during this period, the Anglo-Norman

Purity of the Anglo-Norman tongue.

[1] This treatise is printed in my "Volume of Vocabularies," p. 142.

language had not been going through a natural change, but had been breaking up in the mouths of a people who were adopting a different language. At the end of the thirteenth century it was sinking into that strange medley which has been since known as the French of the law courts. The French taught at that time was no doubt that of the French literature and conversation of the day, but it was taught by Englishmen, probably not always well, and mixed with the broken Anglo-Norman. Chaucer says of the French of his prioress,— French as taught in England.

" And Frensch sche spak ful faire and fetysly,
" Aftur the scole of Stratford atte Bowe,
" But Frensch of Parys was to hire unknowe."
(*Canterbury Tales, Prologue*, l. 124.)

And the writer of Piers Ploughman talks of knowing only the French of the farthest end of Norfolk, (if, indeed, he means anything more by that than no French at all,)—

" And I ken no Frensshe, in feith,
" But of the fertheste ende of Northfolk."
(*Vision of Piers Ploughman*, l. 2949.)

The French of Yorkshire, as spoken by Pierre de Langtoft, or at least by his copyists, would, no doubt, bear comparison with that of Norfolk, or with that of Stratford-at-Bow. It is singularly corrupt. Grammatical inflections are set at nought at every step, and accusatives are used for nominatives, and plurals for singulars, and the converse, with so little care, that not unfrequently a sentence will bear two contrary interpretations, between which a knowledge of the historical events to which it relates will alone enable us to make our choice. The same blunder is made in the distinction of genders, and a masculine adjective is continually used with a feminine noun, and a feminine adjective with a noun masculine. Curiously enough, the name of the supreme pontiff is always treated as if he were a female, *la pape*. Even Pierre de Langtoft's notions of metre appear to have been not always correct, for his lines have sometimes too Incorrectness of Pierre de Langtoft's French.

few feet, and sometimes (though less frequently) too many; but we may perhaps allow this to be in some degree the fault of the copyist. Words, too, occur which are anything but pure French, and of which it would be difficult to say which form is the more correct. These will be pointed out in the Glossary.

Difficulties in forming a text.

The impossibility of forming a text by selecting readings from the different manuscripts will be evident from the preceding remarks—it would be a mere jumble of different dialects, and of the different interpolations of the copyists. The only plan which remained is that which I have adopted, to take as the text the manuscript which appears the best, and to give in the notes the important variations of the others. This is now the universal practice in editing mediæval texts in vernacular languages. I have done thus far more, that, in the case of the evident omission of a word or a line, I have restored them within brackets, so as to distinguish them, that there may be no possibility of confounding them with the text of the other manuscript, and I have stated in the notes from which manuscript each is taken. I have done this with great caution, and perhaps more sparingly in the earlier part of the book than afterwards. But, however superior the reading of another manuscript may seem to the one in the manuscript I have adopted, I have been satisfied with giving it in the note, and not ventured to substitute it in the text. But there could be no objection to my adopting it in the translation, especially as sometimes the text of the manuscript I have adopted is quite untranslatable. Hence, whenever the translation does not answer to the text opposite, the reader must seek the explanation of this incongruity by referring to the notes below. In fact, to the historian who would make good use of the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, the various readings in the notes form a very important part of these two volumes.

THE CHRONICLE

OF

PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

Origin of the Britons.

DEUS le tot pussaunt, ke ceel e terre crea,[1]
Adam nostre pere homme de terre fourma,[2]
Naturaument purvyst quant il ordina
Ke homme de terre venuz en terre[3] revertira,
Cil Deu ly beneye ke ben escotera[5]
Coment Engleterre primes comenza,
E pur quai primes[6] Bretaygne homme l'apela.

Eneas escapes from Troy, and settles in Italy.

Quaunt Troye par bataylle jadis fu destrute,
E li ray sire[7] Priamus tuez en la lute,
Ceus ke remistrent se pristrent à la fute.
Helenus fiz Priami, descomfist[8] saunz refute,
Menez est en Grece ou vj. mil[9] de la sute;
Pirrus[10] fiz Achillis les tent là suz tribute.
Le duk sire Eneas eschapa de l'estour,
E son fiz Askanius, le joven vavasour,
Venuz en Ytaille sunt à graunt baudour;
Li ray Latyn les ayme, et les fet honour,
Pur lour gentilrye[11] e pur lour graunt valour.

---

[1] *creit*, B. *creait*, D. And so with the words terminating the lines following on the same rhyme. It is the mere interchange of two different forms of the past tense of the verb, *crea* representing the Latin *creabat*, and *creait*, *creavit*.

[2] *pere de terre quant formeit*, B. *qe homme de tere furma*, C.

[3] *à terre*, B. *à tere*, C.

[4] *rentirait*, C.

[5] *escutere dait*, D.

[6] *primes*, omitted in B.

[7] *sire*, omitted in B.

[8] *desconfit*, B.

[9] *od sis mil*, B. *ouf vi. mille de la sute*, C. *de sa sute*, D.

[10] *Marcus filz Achilles*, B.

[11] *genterie*, B. *gentiri*, C.

THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

GOD the Almighty, who created heaven and earth,
Who formed our father Adam a man out of earth,
Provided according to nature when he ordained
That man, derived from earth, to earth shall return,
May that God bless him who will listen attentively
How England first began,
And why they first called it Britain.

When, in days of old, Troy was destroyed by war,
And the king sir Priam was killed in the contest,
Those who remained took to flight.
Helenus, the son of Priam, defeated without retreat,
Is carried into Greece with six thousand of his followers;
Pyrrhus, son of Achilles, holds them there as his tributaries.

The duke sir Eneas escaped from the battle,
And his son Ascanius, the young vavasor,
They are come into Italy with great joy;
King Latinus loves them, and confers honour upon them
For their gentility and for their great valour.

Donez les ad terres e chasteus e thour.
Turnus [ray] de Tuskan[1] al quer ad dolour
Des adventiz Troyens, e de lour souccour;[2]
De medlé se purpense par ire e par rauncour:
Cors au cors en chaump of[3] Enea un jour
Descomfit fu Turnus, e tuez saunz souccour.
Le ra[y] Latyn ad joye de tel conquerour,
Lavine sa bele fillye[4] li dona par amour;
Des Tusculens[5] est dame, Eneas est seygnur.

Ascanius. Quaunt Eneas est[6] mort, son fiz Askanius
Regna sur Tuskan ben xx. aunz e plus;[7]
Aube fist sur Tybre, cyté merveyllus.

Silvius. Un fiz aveyt lecchers, son noun fu Fillinus,[8]
La nece dame Lavine enchaunta[9] larcenus;[10]
Son pere en est dolenz,[11] si ad maundé tuz
Enchaunteurs de sa terre, pur saver à estrus[12]
Si fiz ou fillye enfauntirait, et coment aventurus.[13]
Les augurours ount dit ke ele enfaunterait
Fiz, ke pere e mere amedeus tuerait,
Regiouns e terres plusurs sercherait,
Mouz de rais e princes par guere vayncerait,
En terre de graunt nobleye rey clamé serrait;
Cele divinaylle fayllyr ne poait.

Birth of Brutus. Si tost com[14] l'emfaunt fu né,[15] la mere mort cochait;
Norice le teent[16] en garde, ke Brutus le[17] appellait.

---

[1] *rey de Tuscan*, B. *de Tusoane ray*, C. *rey de Tuschane*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him *Turnus rex Rutulorum*. Pierre de Langtoft appears to have thought *Rutulorum* was an error for *Tuscanorum*.

[2] *e de lour sejour*, B. C. D., probably the correct reading.

[3] *champs od*, B.

[4] *file*, B., and so generally throughout that MS.

[5] *De Tusculens*, C. There is nothing of this in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[6] *fu*, B. C. D.

[7] *ou plus*, C.

[8] *Silvius*, C. D. The name in the text is an evident error.

[9] *enceynta*, C. D. *enchaunta* here is of course only a different form of the same word.

[10] *larcinous*, D.

[11] *son pere est dolent*, D.

[12] *à escours*, C.

[13] *aventurs*, C. *aventrus*, D.

[14] *com*, omitted in C.

[15] *est né*, B. *Si tost l'enfant ert née*, D.

[16] *le tient*, B. *l'en tent*, C.

[17] *le*, omitted in B.

He has given them lands and castles and towers.
Turnus king of Tuscany has grief at heart
At the alien Trojans and the aid given them;
In his anger and spite he determines upon battle;
Body to body in the field with Eneas, one day,
Turnus was defeated, and slain without help.
King Latinus rejoices in such a conqueror,
For love he gave him Lavinia his fair daughter;
She is lady of the Tusculans, and Eneas is their lord.

When Eneas is dead, his son Ascanius
Reigned over Tuscany well twenty years and more;
He built Alba on Tyber, a wondrous city.
He had a son of loose character, whose name was Silvius,
By stealth he got lady Lavinia's niece with child:
His father is grieved at it, and has sent for all
The magicians in his land, to learn without delay
If she would bear a son or daughter, and what would be its fate.

The augurers have said that she would give birth to
A son, who would kill both father and mother,
Who would seek out many regions and lands,
Would overcome by war many kings and princes,
And would be proclaimed king in a land of great nobleness;
This divination could not fail.
So soon as the child was born, its mother lay dead;
A nurse held it in charge, who called it Brutus.

Quant en norture de xv. aunz estait,
Gentement[1] as armes loynz e près alait;
Sire Silvyus, son pere, of ly[2] le menait
A sa foreste demene, où veneer volait;
Brutus à son tristre[3] un cerf venir vait,
Il quide ferir la beste, son pere al quer ferait.[4]
Sire Silvyus est mort, ne set Brutus ke dait
De la mort son pere, pur hounte k'yl avait;[5]
As exyllyez de Troye en Grece s'en fuayt.[6]

Arrival of Brutus in Greece.

Brutus veent[7] en Grece, où il ad trové
Helenum fiz Pryamy, Anchises[8] le sené,
E vj. mil gentis hommes[9] de Troye la cyté,
Ke de la venue Brutus sont haitez e lé.
Brutus deveent sage et de largeté;[10]
Pur sa curtaysie par tut est-il amé.

Well received by the Trojans in captivity there.

Ly sire Assaralis,[11] chivaler renomé,
Son pere fu de Grece, sa mere de Troye né,
Sir Brutus par la resoun[12] ad mout honuré,
Ses chastels e ses terres ly ad comaundé.
Ly Troyens li renent,[13] si ly ount prýé,
Pur le honur de son sank e[14] noun de parenté,
Deliverer les voylle de servage e de fé.
Sire Brutus le otrye[15] de bone volunté;
Al ray[16] de Grece sa lettre ad maundé,
Son message escrit mout ben ordiné.[17]

---

[1] *gentilment*, C.
[2] *od li*, B.
[3] *trist*, B.
[4] *au quor ferreit*, B. *al quor setait*, D.
[5] According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, Brutus was expelled from Italy as soon as it was known that he had killed his father.
[6] *se fueit*, B.
[7] *vint*, B. C. *vient*, D.
[8] *Achilles*, B.
[9] *de gentiz homs*, B. *de gentilz hommes*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth says only, "Prædictum Helenum "compluresque alios secum."
[10] *est amé*, B.
[11] *Arsalane*, B. *Luy sire sir Arsaralis*, D. *Assaracus*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[12] *par reson*, B.
[13] *s'en joient*, B. *s'en joyent*, C. D.
[14] *en*, B. C. D. Probably correct.
[15] *l'otrye*, D.
[16] *E au roy*, B. *E al roy*, C.
[17] This line is omitted in B. C. D.

When he had been nurtured fifteen years,
He went like a gentleman to arms far and near;
Sir Silvius, his father, took him with him
To his own forest, where he went to hunt;
Brutus sees a stag approach his hunting station,
He intends to kill the beast, but he struck his father
to the heart.
Sir Silvius is dead; Brutus knows not what to do
About his father's death, for the remorse he had;
He fled to the Trojan exiles in Greece.

Brutus comes into Greece, where he has found
Helenus the son of Priam, Anchises the wise,
And six thousand gentlemen from the city of Troy,
Who were joyful and glad at the arrival of Brutus.
Brutus becomes wise and liberal;
For his courtesy he is beloved on all sides.
Sir Assaracus, a knight of renown,
Whose father was of Greece, and his mother by birth
a Trojan,
Honoured Brutus much, and rightly,
And has entrusted to him his castles and lands.
The Trojans rejoice in him, and they have prayed
him,
For the honour of his blood and the name of kindred,
That he will deliver them from slavery and dependence.
Sir Brutus grants it with good will;
He has sent his letter to the king of Greece,
His written message well indited.

Letter of Brutus to king Pandrasus.

Al ray Pandrasius[1] de Grece, gentilz e sage,[2]
Remyssaylle[3] de Troye, Brutus, de haut parage,
Par lettre e par launge li maunde son message,
Ke quite[4] li delivre vj. mil de soun lynage,
K'en en despit[5] de Troye teent en servage ;[6]
E li jure par Mahoun, ke jà jour de soun age
Suffra parent k'yl ait vivre en vilaynage.
Ly ray Pandrasius[7] ne le teent pas à rage,
Maunda son frere Antygone[8] e tut son barnage,
Sire Anaclere[9] le vaylliaunt, ke fu de son homage,
Les[10] moustre coment Brutus, par son vasselage,[11]
Demaunde quites les Troyens hors de son hostage,[12]
A li e ad ses heyres à mout graunt damage.
Taunt com il demorent souz itel dayllage,[13]
Brutus se atyre of sa route sauvage,
Sa baner desplye, e prent soun vayage.[14]
Les Grégays escrye de mout graunt corage.
Le ray se mette en veye dekes[15] à un rivage,
Ascalon l'en l'appele, où li faylly passage.
Tuez sount ses gens en terre e en boscage ;

The Trojans are victorious.

Victours sount li Troyens, les Grejius menez à cage.
Brutus fet abatre chastel, tour, murage.[16]
Li ray Pandrasius[17] est hors[18] de estage ;
Brutus le teent en prisoun, là demort sanz gage ;
De burge[19] ne de cité n'ad rente ne taylliage,

---

[1] *Pandras*, B. D.
[2] *gentillez beer et sage*, C.
[3] *le remissaile*, B. *ly remisayle*, C. *luy remysayle*, D. *Brutus reliquiarum Trojæ dux*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[4] *quites*, B.
[5] *Q'en despit*, B.
[6] *en son servage*, C.
[7] *Pandrasus*, B. D. *ne*, omitted in B.
[8] *Antigonus*, C.
[9] *Anaclete*, B. *Anathere*, C.
[10] *Li*, B.
[11] *par vasselage*, B.
[12] *Demande les Troiens quit de son ostage*, B.
[13] *sur tiel daliage*, B. *sur cel daliage*, C. *sur tiel dalyage*, D.
[14] This line is omitted in C.
[15] *jesqe*, B. *jekes*, D.
[16] *chastel e murage*, B.
[17] *Pandrasus*, B. *Pandras*, C.
[18] *est tant hors*, B. *est taunctost de hostage*, C. The latter is perhaps the correct reading.
[19] *burk*, B.

To king Pandrasus of Greece, noble and wise,
The remnant of Troy, Brutus, of high descent,
By letter and word of mouth sends him his message,
That he set at liberty six thousand of his lineage,
Whom in despite of Troy he holds in serfdom;
And he swears to him by Mahomet, that never a day of his life
Will he suffer a kinsman of his to live in villenage.
King Pandrasus hardly restrains his anger,
He sent for his brother Antigonus and all his nobles,
And sir Anacletus the valiant, who was his homager,
Shows them how Brutus, by his valour,
Demands the liberation of the Trojans out of his dependence,
To the great injury of himself and his heirs.
While they remain in this indecision,
Brutus prepares with his fierce band,
Unfolds his banner, and begins his march.
He defies the Greeks with very great courage.
The king proceeds until he comes to the bank of a river,
They call it Ascalon, where passage was denied him.
His men are slain on land and in wood.
The Trojans are victors, the Greeks are subjugated.
Brutus orders castle, tower, and wall to be demolished.
King Pandrasus is deposed from his rank;
Brutus holds him in prison, where he remains without bail;
Neither from town nor city has he rent or taxes,

Fors Innogent sa fillye,[1] k'il teent en mariage
A Brutus od la maité de son heritage.
Si terre volt conquere de autry seygnurage,
Cent nefs[2] li trovera pur soun cariage.
Dès ore[3] sount ly Troyens quites de trwage.[4]
Innogent est maryé, pur ly la gwere s'eswage.[5]

Brutus and the Trojans proceed in search of a new country.

Le ray Pandrasius[6] reteent sa seygnurye,
E Brutus est en mer entré[7] od sa compaignye.
Innogent[8] la bele geent e braye e crye.[9]
Brutus la conforte par sa cortaysye;
Si swef la baise e cole ke est[10] endormye.
Un meys e plus en mer demoert o sa navye,
Un ylgle ad jà trové[11] nomé Logethye.[12]
Homme ne femme i trove,[13] fors une cyté gwerpye,

Oracle of Diana.

Le temple fu Dyane en auncesserye;
Un ymage i vait, ke par enchaunterye
Les aventurs fet diviner,[14] Brutus de ceo se affye.[15]
Par counsayl ses clers,[16] e par lour augorrye,[17]
De vin e saunk e blaunc[18] bis i fet sacrefye,
Pour saver où il trovera terre e manauntye,
Ovyde[19] le temoygne, escotez com il dye.

---

[1] *Ignogin sa fidle*, B. Her name is Ignogen in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *E nefs*, C.

[3] *hore*, A.

[4] *servage*, B. C. D.

[5] This line is omitted in B. *pur ky la gwerre se suage*, C.

[6] *Pandrasus*, B. *Pandragsus*, C.

[7] *Brutus en mer entre*, B.

[8] *Ignogin*, B.

[9] *e crye*, omitted in B.

[10] *Si suef la cole e beise q'ele est*, B. *ke el est endormye*, C. *qe ele est dormye*, D.

[11] *i ad trové*, B. *Une ydle ad jà trové*, C. *Une ylge ad jà t.*, D.

[12] *Leogetie*, B. *Logicie*, C. *Logecye*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "In quandam insulam vocatam Leogeciam, quæ antiquitus ab incursione piratarum vastabatur, a nomine inhabitabatur."

[13] *où trove*, B.

[14] *siet diviner*, B.

[15] *s'affye*, D.

[16] *de ses clers*, B. D.

[17] *pur lour augurie*, B. *augórie*, C. *augurye*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Communicatoque omnium assensu, assumpsit secum Brutus Gerionem augurem et duodecim majores natu."

[18] *de blaunk*, B. In Wace, it is the milk of a white doe.

[19] It is not easy to say why our author quotes Ovid for these lines, unless it be because they are elegiac verse, which was almost identified with the name of Ovid among the medieval writers. I may remark,

Except Innogent his daughter, whom he gives in marriage
To Brutus with half his inheritance.
If he wish to conquer lordship from others,
He will furnish him a hundred ships for transport.
Henceforth the Trojans are freed from tribute.
Innogent is married, for her the war is ended.

King Pandrasus retains his lordship,
And Brutus has put to sea with his company.
The fair Innogent groans, and brays, and screams;
Brutus comforts her by his courteousness;
So sweetly he kisses and embraces her that she falls asleep.
A month and more he remains at sea with his fleet,
And then he has found an island called Leogecia.
He finds neither man nor woman there, only a deserted city,
The temple was Diana's of old times;
An image he sees there, which by enchantment
Foretells future events, of this Brutus assures himself.
By the advice of his clerks, and by their augury,
He makes there a sacrifice of wine and blood and a white doe,
To know where he will find land and a place to dwell in,
Ovid is witness of it, hear what he says.

Diva potens nemorum, terror silvestribus apris,
Cui licet amfractus ire per æthereos,
Infernasque domos, terrestria jura revolve,
Et dic quas terras nos habitare velis.
Dic certam sedem qua te venerabor in ævum,
Qua tibi virgineis templa ditabo meis.
Quaunt Brutus ad fet sa conjourisoun,
E ad cel ymage sa devocyoun,
Al repós se prent, e cheet en dormysoun.[1]
Dame Dyane li veent en avisioun,
E de sà demaunde li rend sa leszoun.[2]
Brute, sub occasu solis, trans Gallica regna,
Insula in occeano est undique clausa mari.
Insula in occeano habitata gigantibus olim,
Nunc deserta quasi, gentibus apta tuis.
Hanc pete, namque tibi sedes erit illa perennis;
Et fiet natis altera Troja tuis.
Hic de prole tua reges nascentur, in illis[3]
Totius terræ subditus orbis erit.
Brutus de dormir affraé se levayt,[4]
Et counta cum la dame[5] en sounge li disait,
Ke loynce en le occyane un ygle[6] riche estait,
E de touz pars[7] la mer par ewe[8] environayt,
De cele par conqueste la seygnurye averait,
A li e à ses heyrs la Nove Troye serrait,
Reaume de nobleye à touz [jours][9] demorait.

They continue their voyage in

Les chivalers Brutus joye graunt feseynt;[10]
Arere à lour nefs od graunt esplait aleynt.

---

that in my text the Latin lines are printed from the manuscripts of Pierre de Langtoft, but in the English translation I give them as they stand in the printed text of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[1] This and the previous line are omitted in D.

[2] This line is omitted in B. *sa lescoun*, D.

[3] *et illis*, C. D.

[4] *s'en leveit*, B.

[5] *cum Diane*, B. C. D.

[6] *ilge*, D.

[7] *partiz*, C.

[8] *par ewe*, omitted in B. D.

[9] *à touz jours*, B. C. D.

[10] *grant joie feseient*, B. *grant joye fesaint*, C. D.

Diva potens nemorum, terror silvestribus apris,
Cui licet amfractus ire per æthereos,
Infernasque domos, terrestria jura resolve,
Et dic quas terras nos habitare velis.
Dic certam sedem, qua te venerabor in ævum,
Qua tibi virgineis dedico templa duris.

When Brutus has performed his incantation,
And has paid his devotion to this image,
He yields to repose and falls asleep.
The lady Diana comes to him in a dream,
And gives him her explanation of his question,
Brute, sub occasu solis, trans Gallica regna,
Insula in oceano est undique clausa mari.
Insula in oceano est, habitata gigantibus olim,
Nunc deserta quidem, gentibus apta tuis.
Hanc pete, namque tibi sedes erit ille perennis;
Hic fiet natis altera Troja tuis.
Hic de prole tua reges nascentur, et ipsis
Totius terræ subditus orbis erit.

Brutus in fear started from his sleep,
And related how the goddess had informed him in a dream
That far in the ocean there was a rich island,
And on all sides the sea surrounded it with water,
Of this by conquest he would have the lordship,
To him and to his heirs it would be the New Troy,
It would remain for ever a kingdom of nobility.

Brutus's knights made great joy;
They went back to their ships with great satisfaction.

search of the promised island.

Les cousters de Aufrike[1] od trefs le ewe[2] siglayent,
Les oraturs Philistens par mer visitayent,[3]
Le lake de Salines[4] par Azare[5] passayent,
Par my le flum de Maylle[6] en Mortayne venaient,
Pur quere lour vitaylle illokes aryvaynt.
Lors lour compaygnye en deus devisayent,[7]
Le pays e le pople trestut destruayent,
Lour nefs de viaunde[8] ilokes rechargayent.[9]
Par les columpnes Herculis les venz lour chaçayent,
En la mer de Tyre[10] tost après entrayent,
E suth[11] la ryvaylle quatre lignez trovayent
Ke jadis de Troye exylliez estayent.[12]

Corineus.

Coryneus suz duter[13] de tuz ke là manayent.
Brutus le retent, of tuz ke li swayent;[14]
A morir e à vivre se entrefyaunçayent.
Jà sount en Aquitayne, ke Paytewe appellayent.

War with Goffore, king of Poitiers.

Gofforre[15] de Payters fu ray[16] en cel tens,
Ke en sa foreste mys avayt defens
Ke nul i entrast[17] si noun par defens.[18]
Sire Corineus est entré of deus cens,
Pour prendre de la veneysoun par mer à lour despens;

---

[1] *Affrik*, B. C. *Affrike*, D.

[2] *ou tref l'eve*, B. *ouf treef l'eve*, C.

[3] This line is omitted in B. and C. It represents the words "Deinde "venerunt ad aras Philænorum" of Geoffrey of Monmouth, but the name has been strangely corrupted.

[4] *Salyns*, B. D.

[5] *Azarie*, B. *Azarem*, C.

[6] *Maule*, B. C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Porro flumen "Malvæ transeuntes applicuerunt "in Mauritaniam."

[7] This line is omitted in B. and C.

[8] *de vitayl*, C. *des vyaundes*, D.

[9] *rekarjoynt*, D.

[10] Pierre de Langtoft has here singularly mistaken Geoffrey of Monmouth, who says, "Venerunt "ad Tyrrhenum æquor."

[11] *suz*, D.

[12] Geoffrey says, more explicitly, "Ubi juxta littora invenerunt qua- "tuor generationes de exulibus "Trojæ ortas quæ Antenoris fu- "gam comitatæ fuerant."

[13] *fu duscre*, B. *fu dustre*, C. *fu dutre*, D. *Erat eorum dux Corineus dictus*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[14] *suayent*, D.

[15] *Goffre*, B. *Goffor*, C. *Goffore*, D.

[16] *reis*, D.

[17] *n'y entrast*, D.

[18] *entrayt si noun par licence*, C. *lycens*, D., which is no doubt the more correct reading.

They made sail over the water to the coast of Africa,
Visited by sea the Altars of the Phileni,
Passed the lake of Salines by Azare,
And came through the river Malva into Mauritania,
They arrived there in search of provisions,
Then they divided their company into two,
Destroyed all the country and the people,
Loaded there their ships with meat.
The winds drove them through the columns of Hercules,
Soon after they entered the sea of Tyre,
And on the shore found four generations
Who had formerly been banished from Troy.
Corineus was the leader of all who dwelt there.
Brutus retained him, with all his followers;
They pledged themselves to die and live together.
Already they are in Aquitaine, which they named Poitou.

Goffore was king of Poitiers at that time,
Who had made an order in his forest
That no one should enter it without his permission.
Sir Corineus has entered with two hundred men,
To take venison for their consumption at sea;

Gens li venen[t] sur, par le ray e son consens;
Ymbert est chevetayn, par commune assens,
Pur tuer Corineum,[1] à seter[2] se purpense.
Le ark[3] Ymbert est jà saysy[4] dont il deveyt trere;
Al le chef le fert Coryne[5] ke mort chet à la terre.
Ly ray Goffore se atyre[6] de comencer la gwere;
Brutus et Corineus lour hoste fount requere,
Femmes e enfaunz à lour nef retrere.[7]

Defeat of Goffore,

Goffore veent[8] en chaump, ray de Aquitaygne,
De Brutus e sa route mout ad engayne.[9]
Suard[10] fu justise of iij. cens de compaygne;
Corineus le bon de ben fere ne se feygne,
Soul les ad descomfiz par mort e par mahayne.[11]
Perduz sount les Paytevyns, à ly[12] demort la gayne,
Fors cels ke fuyrent en Fraunce ou en Espayne.

and his flight.

Goffore est fuyz[13] à ses parentez,
A xij. rays de Fraunce trestut corounez,
Ke en cel tens governerent[14] Fraunce od les cytez;
Mercy lour crye, si lour ad countez
Coment li Troyens sa terre sount entrez,
Ses parkes e sa foreste[15] à force debrysez,
Le pople en soun regne[16] en le chaump[17] demaglez.
De soccours lour prye; et cyl li ount jourez,
Ke il[18] ne lerrount pur terre ne pur heritez,
Ke Brutus ne destruent e mettent de suz pez.[19]

---

[1] *Corin*, C.
[2] *seiter*, B. *à setere*, C.
[3] *l'arke*. D.
[4] *est seysye*, D.
[5] *Corinée le fert au chief*, B.
[6] *vieent en chaumpe*, D.
[7] *à lur nefs retrere*, D.
[8] *se atyre*, D.
[9] *ad grant engayne*, C. D.
[10] *Sward*, D. *Subardus*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[11] *ou par maygne*, D.
[12] *ouf ly*, C.
[13] *Goffar s'en est fui*, B. *s'en est fuiz*, C. *Goffre s'en est fuiz*, D.
[14] *governuyent*, D.
[15] *ses parks, ses forestes*, B. *ses parkes e les forestes*, C.
[16] *de son regne*, C. D.
[17] *el chaumpe*, D.
[18] *K'il*, D.
[19] *mettent suz peez*, D.

People attack him, through the king and his consent;
Imbert is their chieftain by common agreement,
He designs to shoot an arrow, to kill Corineus.

Imbert has already grasped the bow to shoot;
Corineus strikes him on the head that he falls dead to the ground.
King Goffore prepares to begin the war;
Brutus and Corineus call together their army,
And make the women and children retire to the ships.

Goffore, king of Aquitaine, takes the field,
He has much despite of Brutus and his rout.
Siward was justice with a company of three hundred;
Corineus the good makes no vain pretence of doing well,
Alone he has discomfited them by killing and maiming.
The Poitevins are ruined, the advantage remains his,
Except those who escape into France and Spain.

Goffore has fled to his kinsmen,
To the twelve kings of France, all crowned,
Who at that time governed France with the cities;
He appeals to their aid, and has told them
How the Trojans have entered his land,
And by force broken his parks and his forest;
The people of his kingdom defeated in the field;
He asks them for succour, and they have sworn to him,
That they will not desist, for land or heritage,
From destroying Brutus and putting him under foot.

The Trojans are defeated by the Poitevins.

Jà sont les xij. rays en Paytowe aryvez,[1]
Sire Brutus les encountre mout ben batayllez;
Les Frauncays en chaump sont plus de gens assez,
Les Troyens ount perduz ij. myl de meuz ranez;[2]
Fors pris sire Coryneus, ke mout devynt yrez.
Par utrage de pople Brutus est retornez
Al chastel k'il avayt en la terre levez,
E là sount les Troyens trestouz asegez.
" Allas!" dist Coryneus, " ke unkes fumes neez,
" Quaunt li puaunt Paytevyn[3] nous ount rechacez!
" Sire Brutus, par amurs, à moi entendez;
" Le pople[4] de vostre host en treys departez:[5]
" Les deus pars à ws, la terce à moy lyverez;
" A la minuyt m'en[6] irray, si cum jà verrez.
" A l'estayle journale en chaump ws moustrez.

But, through the advice of Corineus, they gain the victory.

" Les xij. rays vendrount, lour hoste assemblez,
" Lors se medlerount les plus desavisés,
" Ke il verrount voster pople taunt amenusez,[7]
" E ws le plus hardyement sur eus ws metez;
" Jeo istray e destrueray kaunt ke sont trovez
" En lour rere warde, mes[8] ne le[9] dotez,
" La victorye ert nostre, ou cowarde me tenez."
La bataylle se comence, si com est ordynez;
Les[10] Fraunçays e les[10] Peytevyns al fute sount rosez;
Mout i ad de pople de ambe parz twez.

Death of Turnus.

Sir Turnus, nefu[11] Brutus, chivaler renomez,
Est mort en l'estour, son cors est entumulez

---

[1] This line is omitted in D.

[2] *vanez*, C. *navez*, D. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, it was the French who lost two thousand men.

[3] *Paytefins*, C. *Paytefin*, D.

[4] *Les genz*, B.

[5] *devisez*, C.

[6] *a la mynuyt irray*, B.

[7] *E verrunt vostre pople tant amensez,*
Lors od vus se medlerunt plus desavisez, B. C. D., with the exception that C. and D. have *amenusez*, and that the reading of C. at the beginning of the second line is *Lors ouf vus*.

[8] *mar*, B. C. D.

[9] *les*, B. C. D.

[10] *les*, omitted in B.

[11] *cosin*, C. *nevou*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Quidam "Tros nomine Turonus, Bruti ne-"pos."

Already the twelve kings have arrived in Poitou,
Sir Brutus encounters them in very good array;
The French in the field are much superior in numbers,
The Trojans have lost two thousand of their best men,
Except Corineus, who became much enraged.
Through the violence of the people, Brutus has returned
To the castle which he had raised in the land;
And there the Trojans are all besieged.
" Alas!" said Corineus, " that we were ever born,
" That the stinking Poitevins should have made us retreat!
" Sir Brutus, for love, listen to me;
" Divide the people of your army into three;
" Take two parts yourself, and give me the third;
" At midnight I will depart, as you shall soon see.
" At break of day show yourself in the field.
" The twelve kings will come, their army assembled,
" Then they will attack the more incautiously,
" Because they will see your people so much diminished,
" And do you throw yourselves more boldly upon them;
" I will issue forth and destroy as many as are found
" In their rear guard, fear it no more,
" The victory will be ours, or reckon me for a coward."
The battle begins, as it is arranged;
The French and the Poitevins are put to flight;
There is much people killed on both sides.
Sir Turnus, the nephew of Brutus, a knight of renown,
Is killed in the battle, and his body is buried

Origin of the name of Tours.

Ad Tours, ke [de][1] Turnus est unkore[2] nomez.
Brutus e Coryneus chaungent voluntez,
Pur la mort sire Turnus tuz sount[3] ennuyez,
Le tresor de la terre al nef ount-il portez,
De aler querre la terre sont-il conseylliez
Que le dame[4] Dyane lour aveyt destynez.[5]

Brutus arrives in Albion.

Mil e ij. [cent][6] aunz devaunt le Incarnacioun
Aryva sir Brutus en le lylge de Albyoun.[7]
Home ne femme i trove[8] de nul nacioun,
Fors geaunz ke la tenent en possessioun.
[La terre est bele e large pur frut à grant foison;][9]
De mer, de douces[10] ewes, assez i ad de pessoun;[11]
Forestes e parkes pur la veneysoun.
A mesouner comence e fere[12] mansioun;
Des[13] terres e de rentes fet divisioun
A tuz ces chivalers, pur lur garysoun.
La terre de Brettaygne de Brutus ad le noun;
Cornewayle de Coryneo,[14] ele fu sa porcioun.

The Trojans take the name of Britons.

Dès ore est ly Troyen appelé Brettoun.
Coryneus ad yoye à fere destruccioun
Des gyaunz de sa terre veneyent enviroun.[15]
Gogmagog ly veent[16] say xx. de compaygnoun;[17]
Gyaunt plus horrible ne fust en regioun;
Haut sont de xij. cutes[18] del chef à son taloun.
Les xx. sount jà mys al[19] confusioun;

---

[1] *ke de*, B. C. D. *Al Tours*, D.
[2] *uncore est*, B.
[3] *sunt touz*, B.
[4] *De la dame*, B. *Quel dame*, C.
[5] *devinez*, B. *devynés*, C.
[6] *Mil e deus cent*, B. *Mille et ii. cc. aunz*, C. *Mille et ij. cent*, D.
[7] *en l'isle de Albion*, B. *en l'ilge de Albiun*, C. *en ilge de Albion*, D. *Labyoun*, A.
[8] *ne trove*, D.
[9] Instead of this line, A. has merely the words, *Par outrage de pople Brutus.*
[10] *e douce*, B.
[11] *i ad peissoun*, D.
[12] *e fet*, C. D.
[13] *De*, C.
[14] *Corinè*, B.
[15] *De gens qe sa terre tenent environ*, B. *Des geaunz ke sa tere v. e.*, C. *Des geauntz qe sa tere venyment envyroun*, D.
[16] *vint*, B. *Gog e Magog ly veent*, D.
[17] *sa vintim compaignun*, C.
[18] *Haut fu xii. coutes du chef à talon*, B. *Haut fu de xii. coutez*, C. *Halt fu douz coutes*, D.
[19] *à*, D.

At Tours, which is still named after Turnus.
Brutus and Corineus change their plans;
They are all grieved for the death of sir Turnus;
They have carried the treasure of the country to ship,
And have resolved to go and seek the land
Which the lady Diana had promised them.

A thousand and two hundred years before the Incarnation
Sir Brutus arrived in the isle of Albion;
There he finds neither man nor woman of any nation,
Except giants, who hold it in possession.
The land is fair and large for fruit in great plenty;
There is fish enough, both of sea and fresh water;
Forests and parks for venison.
He begins to build and make houses;
He makes a distribution of lands and rents
To all his knights, for their reward.
The land of Britain takes its name from Brutus;
Cornwall from Corineus, it was his share.
Henceforth a Trojan is called a Briton.
Corineus rejoices in undertaking the destruction
Of the giants who came round his land.
Gogmagog comes to him with twenty companions;
There never was a more horrible giant in any region;
He was twelve cubits high from head to heel.
The twenty are soon put to confusion;

Gogmagog[1] est pris e tenu en prisoun.
Sire Brutus veut vere la lute du feloun[2]
Of sire Coryneo, li vayllyaunt baroun.
Wrestling match between Corineus and Gogmagog.
Al chaump[3] sont assemblé al fore[4] de champioun,
Des braz[5] se enterlyent, saunz targe e bastoun.
Gogmagog prent Coryné, si ly ad debrysez
Par power e par force trays de ses coustez.
Coryneus ly ad sus,[6] si li ad sus levez,
Entre ses espaules si l'ad jà portez
Al falays de la mer, outre[7] l'ad gettez;
Al payne[8] pardurable est-il comaundez.
Brutus s'en alait, cum cyl ke fu mout lez,
Ordiner sa terre, ses pasturs, e ses preez;
Le. lake[9] de Tamyse n'est pas ublyez,
Foundation of Trinovant, or London.
De costé i ad jà fete un noble cytez,[10]
Ke la Nove Troye fu primes appelez,
E pus en Trinovaunt fu le noun chaungez.
Kaunt le ray Lud[11] regna, de ki après orrez,
Purvyst ke la vile[12] fust ben enmurez;[13]
Tureles e tours fist fere, une porte i est[14] levez,
Ele fu la primere, e Ludgate est nomez.
De Lud est Loundres dyte; de Brutus escotez.
Brutus en Bretaygne rychement regnayt,
Vynt e iiij. aunz la terre governayt;
De Innogent[15] la bele iij. fiz engendrayt,
Locryn, Chambere, Albanac,[16] home les nomayt.
Death of Brutus.
Kaunt Brutus fu mort, entumulez[17] estayt

[1] *E Goemagog*, D.
[2] *la bonté de felon*, B. *la lout del feloun*, D.
[3] *en champ*, B.
[4] *al foer*, B. *à foer*, D.
[5] *De braz*, B. C.
[6] *li trusse*, B. *ly trusse*, C. D.
[7] *e outre*, B.
[8] *A la payne*, D.
[9] Perhaps Langtoft has misread *lacum* for the *locum* of Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[10] *bele citez*, B. *un beal citez*, C. *De costé l'ewe ad fet une bele citez*, D.
[11] *ly roys Lud*, C.
[12] *cele vile*, B. D. *ceo vil*, C.
[13] *envirounez*, B.
[14] *un port y ad*, C.
[15] *Ignogin*, B.
[16] *Lokerin, Camber, Albanak*, B. *Lokryn, Kamber, Albanac*, C. *Kamber*, D.
[17] *e tumulez esteit*, B.

Gogmagog is taken and held in prison.
Sir Brutus wishes to see a wrestling match between the wretch
And sir Corineus, the valiant baron.
They are assembled in the field at the champion's place,
Intertwine each other with their arms, without buckler or staff.

Gogmagog takes Corineus, and has broken
By power and force three of his ribs.
Corineus lays hold of him, and has lifted him up,
And has thus soon carried him on his shoulders
To the cliff on the sea, and has thrown him over it;
He is sent to everlasting punishment.
Brutus departed, as one who was very joyful,
To order his land, his pastures, and his fields;
The lake of the Thames is not forgotten;
He has soon built on its bank a noble city,
Which was first called the New Troy,
And the name was afterwards changed to Trinovant.
When king Lud reigned, of whom you will hear subsequently,
He provided that the town should be well walled;
Caused turrets and towers to be made, and built a gate,
It was the first, and is called Ludgate.
From Lud the city is called London; now hear of Brutus.

Brutus reigned in Britain richly,
He ruled the land twenty-four years;
He begat three children on Ignogen the fair;
They were called Locrin, Camber, and Albanac.
When Brutus was dead, he was entombed

En[1] sa cyté demene, ke ore est Loundres drayt.
Britain shared between his three sons, Locrin, Camber, and Albanac.
Trestut son reaume à ses[2] iij. fiz donayt.
Locryn,[3] ke fust eynez, la maité tenayt;
De Loundres à Sáverne sa seygnurye durayt.
Kamber à sa porcioun Wales[4] tut avayt;
Albanac Escoce, e là taunt reygnayt
Kê Umber, un rays, en gwere li tuwayt.
La plainte de sa mort Locrynus recayt;[5]
Pur Kamber son frere en Wales[6] enveayt,
Ke à sire Locryn[7] vint, cum frere[8] of graunt esplait,
A un braz de la mer ke vers le west renayt,[9]
A val de Grymesby, ke Grym jadis fesayt,[10]
Où Kamber of Locryn son frere[11] encountrayt.
Death of king Humber.
Entr' [Umber][12] e els la bataylle comencayt;
Le poer de[s] deus freres[13] le ray Umber[14] chacayt,
Parfounder[15] en cel ewe, e là se nayayt.
Brettoun cel braz de la mer[16] Humbre appelayt.
En nef ke primer li rais Umbre[17] menayt
Graunt tresor e riche Locrynus trovayt,
E trais bele puceles;[18] la une, cum em[19] disayt,
Fu la feyllye[20] au ray de Germenye, Locryn ţele amayt,

---

[1] *à*, B. C. D.

[2] *ces*, C.

[3] *Lokerin*, B.

[4] *Gales*, B.

[5] *Lokrinus resceit*, B. *Locryn rescayt*, C.

[6] *Gales*, B. C.

[7] *Lokerin*, B.

[8] The words *cum frere* are omitted in B., C., and D., and, though contained in the MS. I have chosen for my text, are probably an interpolation in the original, as they interfere with the metre.

[9] *tendeit*, B. *tendayt*, C. D. This, it can hardly be doubted, is the correct reading, and I have translated it accordingly.

[10] This line is omitted in B. and D.

[11] *od son frere Lokerin*, B.

[12] Omitted in A. *Umbert*, B. *Umbre*, C. *Umbere*, D.

[13] *Le poer des freres*, B.

[14] *Umbert*, B.

[15] *Parfound en cele ewe*, B. D. *Par fund*, C.

[16] *du mer*, B. *de mere*, C. *cel braz de mere*, D.

[17] *En niefs qe par mer le rey Umbert*, B. *En neef he par mere ly roys*, C. *En nefs ţue par mer le rey Umber*, D. There can hardly be a doubt that *par mer* is the correct reading.

[18] *puceles beles*, B.

[19] *cum home deseit*, B. *cum eme dysait*, D.

[20] *Fu fidle*, B. *fu feylle*, C. *fu fylle*, D.

In his own city, which is now London rightly.
He gave all his kingdom to his three sons.
Locrin, who was the eldest, had half;
His lordship reached from London to Severn.
Camber had for his portion all Wales;
Albanac had Scotland, and there reigned until
A king called Humber slew him in battle.
Locrin received the complaint of his death;
He sent to Wales for his brother Camber,
Who came to sir Locrin, like a brother, with great dispatch,
To an arm of the sea which runs towards the west
Below Grimsby, which Grim formerly made,
Where Camber met with Locrin his brother.
The battle between Humber and them began;
The power of the two brothers put king Humber to flight,
To sink in that river, and there he was drowned.
The Britons called that branch of the sea Humber.
In a ship which first king Humber brought by sea
Locrin found great treasure and rich,
And three fair maidens; the one, as they said,
Was daughter of the king of Germany, Locrin loved her,

Story of Estrilde.

Pur aver à femme,[1] sa beauté ly deszayt.[2]
Estrylde fu son noun; sire Corynew le parcayt,[3]
Ke fyllye[4] sir Locrynus[5] esposer devayt.
Of hache[6] besagu Corynew[7] s'en vayt,
E dit à sire Locryn ke de sa mayn morrayt,
Si il ne preyst sa fillye; e la esposayt.[8]
Les amurs Estrylde par taunt[9] n'en oblyayt;
Une feyllye,[10] Sabren par noun, Estrylde enfauntayt.
Gwendelouer,[11] la femme Locryn, ren de ceo savayt;
Un fiz avayt conceu,[12] Maddan nomer volayt.
Pus après, en tens kaunt Locrynus [sa]vayt[13]
Ke Coryneus est mort, Gwendelouer[14] despisayt,
Estrylde pur sa femme [e] rayne la clamayt.[15]
Gwendelouer[16] par sa lettre à ses parenz maundayt,
Le hoste[17] de Cornéwayle mout tost là venayt,[18]
Gwendelouer of Locrynus[19] en chaump combatayt;
Locrynus est à la mort,[20] une sete ly twayt.

Origin of the name of the Severn.

La bataylle est jà fete,[21] Gwendeloure[22] comaundayt
Ke Estrylde e Sabren en Saverne plungerayt;
Saberne ad le noun de Sabren ke naayt.[23]

[1] *à sa femme*, B.
[2] *li desceit*, B. *ly decayt*, D.
[3] *Corine la parceit*, B. *Corin la*, C. *Corinew la*, D. No doubt these readings represent *l'aparcayt*, and the *le* of our text is probably a mere error, though we do find *parceit* for *aparceit*.
[4] *Qe fidle*, B.
[5] *Locrins*, D.
[6] *Od le hache*, B. *Ouf le hache de besagu Corin*, C. *Oue le hache besagu*, D.
[7] *Corine*, B.
[8] *S'il ne preist sa fidle, e Loyerin l'esposeit*, B. *S'il ne preist sa fylle, et Locrin la espousait*, D.
[9] *purtaunt*, C.
[10] *Une fidle*, B., the form of the word constantly used in this MS. *Une fylle Sabren p. n.*, D.
[11] *Guendoile*, B. *Gwendole*; C. D.
[12] *conseeu*, B. *concu*, C. *conceu* D. *conteu*, A. distinctly, which I have corrected in the text.
[13] *quant Loyerin savoit*, B. *Locrin savayt*, C. D.
[14] *Guendoile*, B. *Gwendole*, C. D.
[15] *e reyne clamoit*, B. D. *e reyne pur tut clamait*, C.
[16] *Gwendole*, C.
[17] *ouste*, C.
[18] *là menoit*, B.
[19] *Gwendole ouf Locrin*, C.
[20] *Locrins èst là mort*, D.
[21] *La bataylle ert jà fet*, D.
[22] *Gwendole*, C. D.
[23] *ke ne ayt*, C.

To have for wife, her beauty seduced him.
Estrilde was her name; sir Corineus perceived it,
Whose daughter sir Locrin was to marry.
Corineus goes to him with a two-edged axe,
And tells sir Locrin that he should die by his hand,
If he did not take his daughter; so he married her.
Nevertheless he did not lay aside his love for Estrilde;
Estrilde gave birth to a daughter named Sabren.
Guendolene, the wife of Locrin, knew nothing of this;
She had conceived a son, whom she chose to name Maddan.
Then afterwards, in time when Locrin knew
That Corineus was dead, he despised Guendolene,
Took Estrilde for his wife, and proclaimed her queen.
Guendolène informed her kindred by letter,
And the army of Cornwall soon came there.
Guendolene fought with Locrin in the field,
And Locrin met his death, killed by an arrow.
The battle is now over, and Guendolene ordered
That Estrilde and Sabren should be plunged into Severn;
It is named Severn from Sabren who was drowned.

Le regne xv. aunz enters[1] Gwendelouer gardayt ;[2]
Maddan king. Maddan en sa vye son fiz corounayt ;
De gentil ligne of femme se maryait ;[3]
War between Mempryce e Maulym deus fiz preygnayt.[4]
Mempri-cius and Malim. Quarаunte aunz de terre[5] Maddan ray vyvayt ;
Si tost com il fu mort, la guere se levayt[6]
Entre ses ij. fiz, quel de eus ray serrayt.
Cum Maulym de pees of Memprice parlayt,[7]
Mempryce par treson à mort Maulyn[8] naufrayt,
E la terre entere à ly declynayt.
Memprice[9] pryst femme, ke Ebrake portayt,
E pecché pryvement de Sodome usayt.
E xx. aunz[10] tynt sa terre ; en boys cum venayt,[11]
Le deable en fourme de lou[12] là ly devorayt.
Ebrac elected king. Ray de Bretaygne est Ebrake elu ;[13]
A detrure Fraunce asset[14] est-il purveu.
Chivalers de sa terre touz ad reteneu ;
Les gens de Cornewayle à ly sont venuz ;
En Fraunce od sa navye est-il descendu,
Le pople ad destrut, lour aver ad tolu,
Uncore en Brettaygne est-il revenu.[15]
Vynt femmes avayt, trestouz les ad conu,[16]

---

[1] *enters*, omitted in B.

[2] *Guendole governayt*, C. *Guendole*, D.

[3] *ly mariayt*, C. D.

[4] *Membrice e Malin . . procreeit*, B.

[5] *en terre*, B.

[6] *comencayt*, C.

[7] *Memprice et Maulim de pees ouc Memprice parlaynt*, D., omitting the four preceding lines.

[8] *Malin à mort*, B. *Maulin à mort*, D.

[9] *Mempricius*, C. D.

[10] *Vint aunz*, D.

[11] *cum il veneit*, B.

[12] *del ewe*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth, who makes no mention of the diabolical character of the assailant, says, "Vigesimo tandem "regni sui anno, dum venationem "exerceret, secessit a sociis in "quandam convallem, ubi a multi-"titudine rabiosorum luporum cir-"cumdatus, miserrime devoratus "est."

[13] *Ebrake est ellen*, D.

[14] *assez*, D.

[15] *Victor en Bretaigne est richement revenu*, B. *Victor en Bretaygne est-il revenu*, C. *Victor en Bretaygne est riche revenu*, D.

[16] *chescun ad conseu*, B. *chescon ad concu*, C. *chescun ad conceu*, D.

Guendolene held the kingdom fifteen years complete;
She crowned her son Maddan during her life;
He married a woman of gentle lineage;
And begat two sons, Mempricius and Malim.
Forty years Maddan lived king of the land;
As soon as he was dead, war arose
Between his two sons, to decide which of them should be king.
While Malim treated for peace with Mempricius,
Mempricius treacherously wounded Malim to death,
And the whole land descended to him.
Mempricius took a wife, who bore him Ebrac,
And he secretly used the sin of Sodom.
And he held his land twenty years; as he was hunting in the forest,
The devil in the form of a wolf devoured him there.

Ebrac is elected king of Britain;
He has made sufficient provision to destroy France.
He has retained all the knights of his land;
The people of Cornwall are come to him;
He has made a descent upon France with his navy,
Has destroyed the people, and carried off their wealth,
And is returned a conqueror to Britain.
He had twenty wives, and knew them all,

Vynt fiz é x. fillyes[1] li ount eles rendu ;
Son fiz eynés ad noun Brutus Vert-esku.
Ses fiz[2] e ses fyllyes vers Ytaille sount meu,
A Silvyum fiz Latyn, ke ben[3] les ad receu.
As Troyens sount maryez, gens de bon isseu.
Foundation of the city of York. Ebrake[4] fist Everwyk, son noun i est coneu ;
Aclud en Escoce, com ay[5] entendu ;
Le chastel de Mount Doluruse, kant il vynt de isseu ;[6]
Le chastel de Pucels, pour là fere son ju.
Lx. aunz regnayt par mort kan[t][7] fu perdu ;
A Everwyk est son cors mys, e là enterré fu.[8]
Brutus Greenshield. Brutus Vert-esku ray fu tost[9] après,
De Brettaygne enter xij. aunz tynt le dés.[10]
Un fiz avait Lel,[11] ke homme fu de pees ;
Carlile built. Karlyole[12] la cyté fu fet par son les ;[13]
Vynt et v. aunz regnayt ; un son fiz après;[14]
Hudibras. Rundibras[15] out à noun, il soffri[16] payne e fes
Pur gwere de sa terre, dount fesait recès.[17]

[1] *e trent fidles*, B. *et xxx. fylles*, C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth, who has "viginti filios . . . necnon et "triginta filias," gives the names of them all.

[2] *Son fiz*, C.

[3] *he beal*, C. *qe bele*, D. Geoffrey says that the daughters went to Italy, but that the sons, under the command of their brother Assaracus, went to Germany, and established a kingdom there.

[4] *Eborac*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Deinde trans Humbrum condidit civitatem, quam "de nomine suo vocavit Kaerebrauc, hoc est urbem Ebrauci. . . "Condidit etiam Ebraucus urbem Alclud versus Albaniam, et "oppidum montis Agned, quod "nunc castellum Puellarum dicitur, "et montem Dolosorum."

[5] *cum jeo ay entendu*, B.

[6] *quant il vint bel feu*, B. *de mort de lerise i vint de su*, C. *quant il vint du fu*, D. It is not in Geoffrey; I translate from the readings of MSS. B. and D.

[7] *kaunt*, C. *quant*, D.

[8] *A Everwik son corps mis en terre fu*, B. C. D.

[9] *fu tost rei*, B. D.

[10] *dees*, B.

[11] *Leyl*, D.

[12] *Karlel*, B. *Karleal*, C. D.

[13] *loes*, B. *.lese*, C.

[14] *un filz aveit decres*, B. C. D.

[15] *Rehudibrace*, B. *Rududybraz*, C. *Rudhudibraz*, D. "Post hunc "regnavit filius ejus Hudibras," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[16] *il offri*, B. *suffrist*, D.

[17] *dount il fit recees*, B. C. *dunt il fist reces*, D.

Twenty sons and thirty daughters they have given him;
His eldest son was named Brutus Green-shield.
His sons and his daughters have proceeded towards Italy.
To Silvius the son of Latinus, who has received them well.
They were married to the Trojans, people of good descent.
Ebrac built Everwick (York), his name is recognized in it;
And Alclud in Scotland, as I have understood;
The castle of Mount Douloureux, when the fire came;
The castle of Maidens, there to make his festivities.
Sixty years he reigned, when he was destroyed by death;
His body is placed at York, and was there interred.

Brutus Green-shield was king immediately after,
And held the sceptre of Britain twelve full years.
He had a son named Leil, who was a man of peace;
The city of Carlisle was built by his power;
He reigned twenty-five years; a son of his succeeded him,
Who was named Hudibras, he suffered pain and trouble
Through war in his land, which he brought to an end.

Lyel[1] gist à Karleyl kant mort le prent[2] pur mes.
Brutus Vert-escu gist Ebrak mout près.

Canterbury and Winchester built.

Quaraunte e ix. aunz regna Rundibas;[3]
Cauntrebyry fist fere, e Wyncestre kastabas;
A Salesbyry la vile un chastel fyt, par cas,
Un egle parla sur le mur,[5] si recorder osas;
Mès jeo le lesse sanz dire, e le tienk à gas.[6]

Bladud.

Lundibras[7] est mort, à Wyncester gist;
A Bladud son fiz[8] le regne lors remyst;

Foundation of Bath.

La cyté de Ba[9] e les baygnes fist.
Le regne tynt xx. aunz, kaunt sa vye finyst.
De plusurs mestryes Bladud[10] se entermyst;

Death of Bladud.

Des eles dont[11] voler cum egle se purvyst,
A mount le temple Apolinis en Trinovaunt[12] chaist,
Col e cors en peces ilokes li rumpyt.
Leyr estait son fiz, ke dolens est e tryst.

King Lear.

Leyr est ray del regne, prudhome fu e sages;
Il regna lx.[13] aunz en soun heritage.
Une cyté sour Sore fist de grant coustage;[14]

Leicester built.

Laycestre est le noun, fu ceynt de bon murage.
Treys fyllyes sount [ses] heyres[15] de cel seygnurage.

---

[1] *Leil*, B. *Leyl*, C. D.

[2] *prist*, D.

[3] *Rehudibras*, B. *Rududibrus*, C. *Rundibrace*, D. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, "regnavit . . . "triginta novem annis."

[4] *Wincestre le bas*, B. C. D.

[5] *En legle parla sus le mur*, C. The whole passage is taken from Geoffrey of Monmouth: "Condi-"dit etiam Kaerguen, hoc est Guin-"toniam, atque oppidum montis "Paladur, quod nunc Sefovia dici-"tur. Ibi tunc aquila locuta est, "dum murus ædificaretur; cujus "sermones si veros esse arbitrarer "sicut cætera, memoriæ tradere "non diffugerem." Sefovia is usually supposed to mean Shaftesbury, and not Salisbury.

[6] This line is omitted, evidently by accident, in MS. A.

[7] *Rehudibras*, B. *Lududibras*, C. The scribes appear to have blundered very much over this name.

[8] *son fiz*, omitted in C.

[9] *Bar*, B. *Ban*, C.

[10] *Abladud*, A.

[11] *dont*, omitted in B.

[12] *Trenovant*," C. Geoffrey of Monmouth: "Ceciditque super "templum Apollinis intra urbem "Trinovantum, in multa frusta "contritus."

[13] *quarant anz*, B.

[14] *costage*, B. C. D.

[15] *ses heirs*, B. *ses heyres*, C. D.

Leil lies at Carlisle after death takes him for ever.
Brutus Green-shield lies very near Ebrac.

Forty-nine years reigned Hudibras;
He caused Canterbury to be built, and Winchester the low;
At the town of Salisbury he built a castle, as it happened,
An eagle spoke on the wall, if you dare record it;
But I pass it in silence, and regard it as a hoax.

Hudibras is dead, and lies at Winchester;
The kingdom then descended to Bladud his son;
He built the city of Bath and the baths.
He held the kingdom twenty years, when his life ended.
Bladud practised many arts;
He provided himself with wings to fly like an eagle;
He fell upon the temple of Apollo in Trinovant;
He there broke his neck and body to pieces.
Leir was his son, who was grieved and sorrowful.

Leir is king of the kingdom, a good man he was and wise;
He reigned sixty years in his inheritance.
He built a city on the Soré of great magnificence;
Its name is Leicester, and it was surrounded with good walls.
Three daughters are his heirs of that lordship.

Lear and his daughters.

Cornylle[1] la bele fu de primer age;
Ragau la secunde aceymé[2] de corsage;
Cordeylle[3] la terce, plus noble del parage.[4]
Leyr plus ayme cele ke trestot[5] son lygnage.
E prover[6] les veut de quer e corage,[7]
Com ben eles ly eyment, e dist en son languaye:
"Cornyle,[8] cum ben as-tu amé may?"[9]
"S[i]re, plus ke ma vie demene," dist-ele, "par fay."
"Of la terce[10] de ma terre," dit-il, "ws[11] marieray."
"Ore ws, Ragau, cum ben mey amez?"[12] dist le ray.
"Beu douz[13] pere," dist-ele, "mout veirs ws dirray,
"Chose en tut le mounde ke unkes veer[14] poay[15]
"Ne ayme taunt cum ws, ne jammès ameray."[16]
"Autaunt cum Cornyle,"[17] dist Leyr, "ws durray."
"Cordeyle," dist Leyr,[18] "respoundre ws orray,
"De vostre lel amur plus m'affyeray."[19]
Ele respoundi,[20] cum je ws counteray.
"Cum mon pere ws eyme e amé touz jours ay."
"E nent plus?" dit Leyr. "Si face; ore entend toy;[21]
"Taunt as, taunt vaus, taunt amour te day."[22]
Le ray se corouce à mout graunt desray,
E dist, "Jà jour de ma vye à ws ne partiray
Playn pé de ma terre, par cely en ky jeo cray."[23]

---

[1] *Gonorille*, B. C. D.
[2] *ceme*, B. *a teme*, C. *aceme*, D.
[3] *Gordeil*, B.
[4] *de parage*, B. C. D.
[5] *qe tote*, B. *qe tut*, C. D.
[6] *Esprover*, B. C. D.
[7] *de coer e de corage*, C. D.
[8] *Gonorille*, B. C. D.
[9] *Plus qe ma vie demeyne, dit-ele, par ma fay*, B. C. D.
[10] *le tierz part*, B. *le terce*, D.
[11] *te*, B.
[12] *mey amez*, omitted in B. C. and D.
[13] *douz*, omitted in B. and D.
[14] *veer*, omitted in B.
[15] *vere purrey*, D.
[16] *ne jameis ne ameray*, D.
[17] *Atant cum Gonorille*, B. C. D.
[18] *le Eyr*, A.
[19] *plus me affieray*, C. D.
[20] *respondi tost*, B. C. *Ele respoundist tost*, D.
[21] This line is omitted in A. It is here given from B. D. reads *entenge tay*.
[22] *Tant autant vas, et tant amour te dois*, B. *Taunt a se et tant dnour te day*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth's words are, "Etenim quantum habes, tantum vales, tantumque te diligo."
[23] *par ly en ly je cray*, C. *par cil en ki jeo crey*, D.

Gonorille the fair was the eldest;
Ragau the second, with the elegant waist;
Cordeille the third, the noblest of character.
Leir loves the latter more than all his lineage.
He wishes to make trial of their hearts and dispositions,
How much they love him, and he expresses himself thus:

"Gonorille, how much hast thou loved me?"
"Sir, more than my own life," said she, "by my faith."
"With the third of my land," said he, "I will marry you."
"Now you, Ragau, how much do you love me?" said the king.
"Fair sweet father," said she, "I will tell you very truly,
"Nothing in the world that I ever could see
"Do I love so much as you, or ever shall."
"As much as Gonorille," said Leir, "I will give you."
"Cordeille," said Leir, "I will hear your reply;
"I will put my trust more in your loyal love."
She replied, as I will tell you,
"As my father I love and always have loved you."
"And no more?" said Leir. "Yes indeed; now listen to me;
"As much as you have, so much are you worth, and so much love I owe you."
The king became angry with great rage,
And said, "Never in my life will I give in share to you
"A single foot of my land, by him in whom I believe."

Marriages of Leir's daughters.

Al duc Mac Glaure[1] de Escoce Gornylle[2] est maryé ;
Al duk Hewyn de Cornewayle Ragau est doné ;
Leyr de son regne lour dona[3] la mayté.
Leyr en veyllesce si tost cum fust entré,
Les deus dukes de son regne hors li ount boté.[4]
Of sei quarauntesyme de chivaler là ly ount joré
Tuz jours de sa vye[6] sojourn assez esé.
Il faylly ben de iij. aunz cel an est passé,[7]
Les dukes e ses[8] fyllyes de li sont encombré,

Leir driven from his kingdom

De lour manauntyse Leyr ount enchacé.
De si haut si bas, la mer est-il[9] passé
A Cordylle sa fyllye, ke tut par sa bounté
Aganipe[10] ray de Fraunce fust-ele esposé.[11]
Des dukes e de ses[12] fyllyes tut li[13] ad counté.
Le ray de Fraunce son host ad tost[14] assemblé,
A Cordelle[15] sa femme tut l'ad[16] comaundé,

Restored by Cordeille.

E cele en Brettaygne of Leyr est aryvé.
Par bataylle en champ les dukes ount tué,[17]
E par coup de espeye la terre regayné,
E Leyr de son reaume noveaument[18] corouné.
Aganipe[19] est mort en Fraunce à[20] sa cyté ;

[1] *Mauglan*, B. *Maglaure*, C. In Geoffrey of Monmouth the names are "Maglaunus dux Albaniæ" and "Hernuinus dux Cornubiæ."

[2] *Gonnore*, B. *Gonorille*, C. *Gonore*, D.

[3] *les dona*, B.

[4] *hors li unt chacé*, B. D. *hors le unt chascé*, C.

[5] *chivalers l'ount juré*, B. *Oue say quarauntdesime des chevalers jorré*, C. *qarauntyme de chivaler le unt joré*, D. "Cum sexaginta mi-"litibus," Geoffrey. The text of Geoffrey of Monmouth is very imperfectly represented here.

[6] *à tote sa vie*, B.

[7] *de treys avant cele ane passé*, B. *Il faillist bien de iij. avant cel an passé*, D.

[8] *les*, B.

[9] *il*, omitted in B.

[10] *Champ*, B. *Aganyppe*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him, by a rather large anachronism, "Aga-"nippus rex Francorum."

[11] *aveit espusé*, B. *avait esposé*, C. *aveyt esposé*, D.

[12] *e des fidles*, B.

[13] *les*, C. D.

[14] *tût*, B. *tut ad*, D.

[15] *Gordeil*, B. *Çordeylle*, D.

[16] *tost est*, B. *tost l'ad*, C.

[17] *ount-il tué*, B. *unt-il tué*, D.

[18] *de novel*, B. C. *de son regne de novele*, D.

[19] *Aganyppe*, D.

[20] *en*, B.

To the duke Maglaun of Scotland Gonorille is married;
To duke Hernuin of Cornwall Ragau is given;
Leir gave them halves of his kingdom.
As soon as Leir had entered into old age,
The two dukes have turned him out of his kingdom.
They have there sworn to him and forty knights,
During his whole life, a very comfortable entertainment.
Hardly three years had passed from that year,
When the dukes and his daughters found him an encumbrance,
And have driven him out of their dominions.
So lowered from his high estate, he has passed the sea,
To Cordeille his daughter, who entirely for her goodness
Was married to Aganippus, king of France.
He told them all the behaviour of the dukes and his daughters.
The king of France has soon assembled his army,
He has entrusted the command of the whole to his wife Cordeille,
And she is arrived with Leir in Britain.
By battle in the field they have slain the dukes,
And by dint of sword regained the land,
And restored to Leir the crown of his kingdom.
Aganippus is dead in France in his city;

Death of Lear.

E Leyr à Leycestre pur veirs est entoumbé.[1]
Cordelle,[2] rayne de Brettaygne clamé,
Cynk aunz[3] tynt la terre en pees e sauveté.[4]
Morgan fiz Macglaure[5] est si counseyllé
Of Condays fiz Ewyn,[6] ke ensemble sont alé
Sour dame Cordeylle,[7] e par [lour] graunt[8] pousté

Death of Cordeille.

Pris[9] est ele en gwere e dure emprisoné,
En angusse e en peyne est ele à mort lyvré.[10]
A Morgan e Condages la terre est demoré.
Condages par queyntise sa gwere ad comencé,
Cost[11] sire Morgan par graunt salveté;[12]

Cunedag succeeds to the throne.

Issi[13] fu Condages de Brettaygne ray nomé.
Trent e iij. aunz[14] Condages[15] regnayt
Ray de Brettaygne, ke ben la governayt.[16]
Trays jours en son tens sank de ceel plovayt.
Si tost com il fu mort, son fiz Ryval estayt,

His successors.

Gurgustius[17] fiz Ryval Silvyus engendrayt;
Après ky Jago[18] son fiz le reyne tenayt,

---

[1] *tumulé*, B.

[2] *E Gordeil*, B. *Cordeylle est rayne*, C.

[3] *Cinkaunt*, B. "Quum igitur "Cordeilla per quinquennium paci- "fice regnum tractasset," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *en pees et en salveté*, C.

[5] *Maglane*, B. *Morgane fiz Maglaure*, C. *Maglaure*, D. Geoffrey calls him Marganus.

[6] *Condage fitz Hewin*, B. *Ouf Gondages fiz Ewyn*, C. *Oue Condages fiz Hewin*, D. In Geoffrey of Monmouth the name is Cunedagius, the son of Henuinus.

[7] *Gordeille*, B.

[8] *lour grant p.*, B. C. D.

[9] *Prise*, B.

[10] *à mort est liveré*, B. *est à mort liveré*, C. D. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, she committed suicide.

[11] *E occit*, B. *Et occist*, C. *E occis*, D.

[12] *fauseté*, B. *fausseté*, C. *falseté*, D.

[13] *E issint*, B. C. *E issi*, D.

[14] *e vj. aunz*, D. "Potitus itaque "victoria Cunedagius, monarchiam "totius insulæ adeptus est, eamque "triginta tribus annis gloriose trac- "tavit," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[15] *Condagius*, B. D.

[16] *been le governait*, C.

[17] *Gurgusting*, C. It is Gurgustius in Geoffrey of Monmouth, who calls his son Sisillius.

[18] *Lago*, B., which is the correct name as it stands in Geoffrey of Monmouth, where Lago is the nephew of Gurgustius, not the son of Sisillius.

And Leir at Leicester for a truth is entombed.
Cordeille, proclaimed queen of Britain,
Held the land five years in peace and safety.
Margan, the son of Maglaun, is entered into counsel
With Cunedag, the son of Henuin, to go together
Against lady Cordeille, and by their great power
She is taken in war, and closely imprisoned,
In anguish and suffering she is delivered to death.
The land is left to Margan and Cunedag.
Cunedag by craft has begun war;
Has slain sir Margan by great falseness;
Thus was Cunedag appointed king of Britain.

Thirty-three years Cunedag reigned
King of Britain, who governed it well.
Three days in his time the sky rained blood.
As soon as he was dead, his son Rival succeeded;
Gurgustius, Rival's son, begat Sisillius;
After whom his son Lago held the kingdom,

E Kynmar[1] après ly, fiz Jago,[2] recayt
La terre de Brettaygne, après ly gardayt
Son fiz Gurbodud,[3] ke ij. fiz avayt,
Ferrex and Porrex; Ferrex e Porrex homme les apellayt.[4]
Après la mort son[5] pere la gwere comencayt
Entre ses[6] ij. freres, quel de eus ray serrayt.
Porrex le feloun son frere Ferrex tuayt.
Dame Judon,[7] lour mere, Ferrex plus amayt,
Vynt privément sur Porrex où il demorayt;[8]
Chescun de ses[9] chambreres bon cotel portayt;
Porrex tut en peces la dame couper fesayt.
and their successors. La terre de Brettaynge à v. rays devenayt;[10]
Checun de eus sur autre de graunt tens guerayt.[11]
Clotres[12] de Cornewayle ray fu corounez;
Donevald[13] son frere,[14] [en] Brettaygne[15] est entrez,
E saysy en sa mayn[16] les terres e ses[17] fez.
Pyngwers, ray de Logre,[18] en batayle ad tuez;
Rudaus, ray de Wales,[19] s'en est à ly lyez;[20]
A Stater,[21] ray de Escoce, par fyaunce donez;

---

[1] *Kymar*, B. *Kimar*, C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Kinmarcus Sisillii filius."

[2] *Lago*, B.

[3] *Gorbodian*, B. "Post hunc Gorbogudo," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *hommes les nomeit*, B. *nomayt*, C. D.

[5] *lour*, B. C. *lur*, D.

[6] *ceus*, B. *cels*, C. D.

[7] "Porro eorum mater, cui nomen Widen," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[8] *là où il cocheit*, B. *là où il dormayt*, D.

[9] *des*, B. C. D.

[10] *demoreit*, B. *demorayt*, C. D.

[11] *Quarant anz en guere, qe unqes ne cessoit*, B. *Quaraunt aunz en gwerre ke unkes ne cessait*, C. D. Our text follows Geoffrey of Monmouth, who says, "Exinde civilis discordia multo tempore populum afflixit, et regnum quinque regibus submissum est, qui sese mutuis cladibus infestabant."

[12] *Cloters*, B. C.

[13] *Donwald*, B. *Doneval*, D.

[14] *son fiz*, C. D. "Qui Dunwallo Molmutius vocabatur; erat enim filius Clotenis regis Cornubiæ," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[15] *en Bretaigne*, B. C. D.

[16] *ses meins*, B. C.

[17] *les*, B. C. *le teres e les fez*, D.

[18] *Pynerf roy de Logres*, B. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Ymnerem regem Loegriæ."

[19] Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Rudaucus rex Kambriæ."

[20] *s'en est aliez*, B. *s'en est alyez*, D.

[21] *A Scater*, C. "Staterius rex Albaniæ," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

And after him Kinmarc, the son of Lago, received
The land of Britain; after him held it
His son Gurbodud, who had two sons;
People called them Ferrex and Porrex.
After the death of their father, war commenced
Between these two brothers, to decide which of them
should be king.
Porrex, the false man, slew his brother Ferrex.
Lady Judon (Widen), their mother, loved Ferrex most.
She came secretly to Porrex where he was sleeping;
Each of her maidens carried a good knife;
The lady caused Porrex to be cut all in pieces.
The land of Britain fell to five kings;
Each of them long made war on one another.

Cloten was crowned king of Cornwall;
Dunwallo his brother has entered into Britain,
And seized into his hands the lands and the fees.
Pyngwers, king of Loegria, he has killed in battle;
Rudauc, king of Wales, has allied himself with him;
He is bound by faith to Stater, king of Scotland;

Dunwallo. Of Donewald[1] e son host sont-il encountrez;
La bataylle fu graunde enter eus demenez,[2]
Gens saunz noumbre i sount[3] mors e demaglez.[4]
Hors de la bataylle Donevald i est[5] alez,
Des armes ses enemys, ke à mort sont liverez,
Sount Donevald e ses gens de rechef armez,
Arere à la bataylle retournent degwisez,
Les rays de lour host ount[6] mort e enchacez.
Mors sount ore les rays, e Donevald[7] est saysye
De l'honur de Brettaygne, of la[8] segnurye;
De une coroune de hor[9] of mout riche perrye
Corouner se fet, e layes[10] establye.
Si nul homme robbe[11] autre, ou face vilaynye,[12]
Et peuse[13] fuyr al temple, sauve li fait[14] sa vye.
Kaunt Donevald fu mort, à Loundre est[15] sevelye.

Belinus and Brennius. Le ray Donevald[16] avayt deus fiz engendrés,
Bellynus[17] e Brennyus furent appelez.
Entre ses[18] deus freres fu contek assez,[19]
Dekes la terre fust enter eus devysez.
La coroune ad Belynus,[20] e terres e citez,
De Logre e de Wales, de Cornewayle le esez,[21]
Brennyus Northumberland teent en ses poustez,
Dekes en Katenesse soun regne est lymistez.[22]

---

[1] *Od Donwall*, B. *Doneval*, D.
[2] *menez*, B.
[3] *Mult de gens sanz numbre sunt*, B.
[4] *et tut demaglez*, C.
[5] *Donwall est*, B. *Doneval est*, C. *Doneval*, D.
[6] *ostes sunt*, B. *Les roys et lour host sunt mortz*, C. *Les reys et lur host ount mort*, D.
[7] *Donwal*, B. *Doneval*, D.
[8] *sa*, D.
[9] *ore*, C.
[10] *ses leis*, B. *cels leys*, C. *ses lays*, D. These were the *leges Molmutinæ*, ascribed by Geoffrey of Monmouth to Dunwallo Molmutius, the Donevald of our text.
[11] *si nul robbe*, B.
[12] *felonie*, B. *felunye*, C.
[13] *puisse*, B. *puet*, C. *pusse*, D.
[14] *soit*, B. *sayt*, C. D.
[15] *fu*, B. C.
[16] *Donwal*, B. *Doneval*, C. D.
[17] *Belyns*, B.
[18] *oels ij. freres*, D.
[19] *defiez*, B.
[20] *Belyns*, B. D.
[21] *le aisés*, B. *leesez*, C.
[22] *limités*, B.

They have encountered Dunwallo and his army;
The battle engaged between them was great;
People without number were killed and maimed in it.
Dunwallo is there gone out of the battle,
With the arms of his enemies, who have been put to death,
Dunwallo and his people have armed them anew,
They return back to the battle in disguise;
The kings and their army are slain and dispersed.

The kings are now dead, and Dunwallo is seised
Of the honour of Britain, with the lordship;
With a crown of gold and very rich gems
He causes himself to be crowned, and establishes laws.
If any man rob another, or do any crime,
And he can escape to the temple, let his life be safe.
When Dunwallo was dead, he was buried in London.

King Dunwallo had begotten two sons,
They were called Belinus and Brennius.
Between these two brothers there was strife enough
Until the land was divided between them.
Belinus has the crown, and the lands and cities,
Of Loegria and of Wales, of Cornwall the joyous;
Brennius holds Northumberland in his power,
His kingdom extends as far as Caithness.

Flatres[1] par envyè ount Brennyum[2] enchauntez,[3]
Ke al ray de Norweye sa fillye ad demaundez,[4]
E ayde[5] de sa terre ; ly ad ly ray[6] grauntez,
A gwerreyer son frere est-il jà counseyllyez ;
Il faylly de sa praye e de se[s] voluntez.
Kant of la damoysele en mer est entrez,
Guthlak,[7] ray de Danmark, of ly est encountrez,
Descomfit ad[8] Brennyus, e la pucele robbez.
Brennyus en Brettaygne kant fust aryvez,
Belynus[9] son frere en Fraunce l'ad enchacez.
Guthlak[10] en Northumberland est pris, e menez[11]
A Everwyk à la prisone, où il est jugez
Ke ses nefs sayent perduz of bens dedenz trovez.
Belynus li cortays[12] si l'ad comaundez,
Ke il preygne sa amye e voyse en ses countrez.

Belinus makes the four great ways.

Quaunt Belynus[13] out la terre entere en baundon,[14]
Donk fit les iiij. vayes par my la regioun,
De Totenesse en Kattenesse[15] primer par reson,
Le autre[16] de Seint Davyd dekes au porte Hamoun,[17]
Les autres pour enbelir la terre envyroun.
En Burgoyne est Brennyus[18] of le duk Segwyoun,[19]
Le plus amé chivaler ke fust en sa mesoun.[20]
Sa fyllye ad pris à femme, of la garisoun[21]
Ke ly duk avayt en sa possessioun.
Le duk est jà mort, Brennius ad le noun ;

---

[1] *Flatiers*, B. *Flaters*, D.
[2] *Brennius*, D.
[3] *enchasez*, C.
[4] *ad maundés*, B.
[5] *E tyde*, D.
[6] *ly roys ly ad*, C. *luy rey ly ad grauntez*, D.
[7] *Gudlak*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Guichthlacus "Dacorum rex."
[8] *Descoumfit est*, C. D.
[9] *Belyns*, B. C.
[10] *Gudlac*, C.
[11] *et amenez*, C.
[12] *Belinus est ciertois*, D.
[13] *Belyns*, B. C.
[14] *à baundoun*, D.
[15] *à Katenesse*, D. *Catenesse*, C.
[16] *L'altre*, C.
[17] *à port Hamtoun*, D.
[18] *Brenne*, C.
[19] *Sorornoun*, B. *Sygoun*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "venit tandem ad Seginum ducem Allobrogum, et ab eo honorifice susceptus "est."
[20] *de tote sa meson*, B.
[21] *garnison*, B. *gareysoun*, D.

Flatterers have enchanted Brennius through envy,
That he has demanded his daughter of the king of Norway,
And aid of his land; the king has granted it to him,
He has already taken counsel to make war on his brother;
He failed of his prey and of his designs.
When he had put to sea with the damsel,
Guthlac, king of Denmark, encountered him,
He has defeated Brennius, and carried off the maiden.
When Brennius arrived in Britain,
Belinus his brother drove him away into France.
Guthlac is taken in Northumberland, and carried
To York to prison, where he is judged
That his ships shall be forfeited, with the goods found in them.
Belinus is courteous, and has commanded
That he take his mistress and go to his country.

When Belinus had the entire land in his power,
He then made the four ways through the middle of the country,
From Totness to Caithness the first went rightly,
The second from St. David's to the port of Hamo (Southampton),
The others to embellish the land around.
Brennius is in Burgundy with the duke Seguin,
The most beloved knight in his household.
He has taken his daughter to wife with her dower
Which the duke had in his possession.
The duke soon dies, Brennius has the title;

Brennius returns to claim his rights.

Of ly sount demorez Frauncays e Burgoynon.[1]
Jà sount en Brettaygne ly vayllyaunt baroun;
Belynus[2] le rays, of bone garnysoun,
En chaump les encountre, of levé gomphanoun.[3]

The brothers reconciled by their mother Conwenna.

Conwenne,[4] lour mere, kant ele s'aparçayt,
Ke entre ses fiz[5] gwere mortel serrayt,[6]
Jekes à ses peez[7] nue se fesait,[8]
Ventre e mameles nues i moustrait[9]
A Brennyum soun fiz,[10] e si ly disait:
"Beau fiz, cele ventre ke tay portayt,[11]
" E ceste mamele à leetre tay donayt,[12]
" A gwerreyer toun frere tu n'as pas le drayt;[13]
" Kar ounkes de seygnurye tay desheritayt,
" Si noun par ta fausyne, ke tut comencayt.
" Beau fiz, ta mesprise me ad[14] mys en tel playt,[15]
" Ke morray sanz confort, le ton le peché sayt."[16]
Brennyus prent sa mere, e à soun frere vayt;
Asset tost sey desarme, encolaunt ly baysayt.[17]
Pur Conwenne[18] lour mere le un[19] à l'autre jorayt
Pees e amystez[20] ke tuz jours demorayt.[21]

They conquer France.

Ces deus freres ensemble ount[22] passé la mer,
Tote Fraunce ount pris, tel fu lour poer,

---

[1] *Burgoilon*, B.
[2] *Belyns*, B. *Belinus*, C.
[3] *gunfaynoun*, B. *gunfaygnun*, C.
[4] Geoffrey says, "erat nomen illi "Conwenna."
[5] *ses ij. fiz*, D.
[6] *esteit*, B.
[7] *reyns*, B. *reynes*, C. *rains*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "nu-"datis quoque uberibus."
[8] *et fesayt*, C.
[9] *il mustrayt*, D.
[10] *A Brennum s'en va, e si*, B. D.
[11] *ceo est le ventre qe te enporteit*, B. *c'est le ventre que tay portayt*, D.
[12] *E ceo est la mamele qe à leter doneit*, B. *Et ceste est . . . que à leyter tay donay*, C. D.
[13] *tu n'en as pas drayt*, D.
[14] *m'ad*, C.
[15] *tel espleit*, B. *tiel espleyt*, D.
[16] *le pecché ton est*, B. *le pecché teon sayt*, C. D.
[17] *la beysayt*, C.
Brenne prent sa mere, en colant la beseit,
Tost se desarme, e à son frere s'en vait, B.
[18] *Par Conewenne*, B. D.
[19] *l'un*, C.
[20] *Pees en amysté*, C.
[21] *durreit*, B. . *durrayt*, C. D.
[22] *sunt*, B. C.

With him remain French and Burgundians.
The valiant barons are already in Britain;
Belinus the king, with a good force,
Meets them in the field with raised gonfanon.

Conwenna, their mother, when she gets to know
That there would be mortal war between her sons,
She made herself naked to her feet,
Her belly and breast she showed naked there
To Brennius her son, and said to him:
" Fair son, this belly which bore thee,
" And this breast which gave thee to suckle,
" Thou hast no right to make war upon thy brother;
" For he never disinherited thee of lordship,
" Except by thy falseness, which was the beginning of it all.
" Fair son, thy misbehaviour has brought me to such a condition,
" That I shall die without consolation, thine be the crime."
Brennius takes his mother, and goes to his brother;
Quickly he lays aside his arms, embraces and kisses him.
For the sake of their mother Conwenna, they swore to each other
Peace and friendship to last always.

These two brothers have passed the sea together,
They have taken all France, such was their power,

Burgoynoun e Brettoun[1] le covenaunt fount jurer
Ke il[2] totes regions à eus frount declyner.[3]
The brothers conquer Rome, and Italy.
Rome ount-il jà saysi, li mestre justiser,
Gabyus e Porfemme[4] ount fet lour voler.
De graunt trowage par an lour fount asseurer,[5]
Par eus deus en Brettayne fu Rome tributer.
Hostage[6] ount de Rome, e volent returner
Quyte[7] of la victorie en Ytaylle arer,
Tuskane e Lumbardye ount eus à governer.
Les Romayns sont faus, les trewes volent wayner,[8]
A Belynus e Brennyum[9] pur render nul dener.[10]
Mult irez retornent pur Rome asseger,
Lour est la victorie, e pris[11] ount graunt aver;
Cels freres ount graunt joye, volent returner.[12]
Brennyus ad Ytaylle,[13] où il veut[14] seygnurer;
Belinus returns to Britain.
Belynus en Bretayne est alé sojourner;[15]
A Loundres est venuz, où il fet lever
Builds Billingsgate.
Une porte, ke Byllyngate fist dunk appeler.
Trente e quater aunz endura son regner,
Erects a tower for his sepulchre.
A Loundres devysa, soun cors enterrer,
Un tour[16] outre la porte fist-il enhaucer.
Son cors mort en poudre comaundait arder:
Un coupe de fyn or fist[17] là forger,
En ky la poudre pend,[18] à touz jours pur monstrer
En haunt[19] sur la tour, ke em[20] put[21] remenbrer

---

[1] *Burgoyne e Breton*, B.
[2] *k'yl*, C.
[3] *encliner*, B. D.
[4] *Gabao et Profenna*, B. *Gabius and Porsena* in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[5] *a seruer*, C.
[6] *Ostages*, B. *Hostages*, C. D.
[7] *Quites*, B. *Quites oue*, D.
[8] *fause, et volent rewaygner*, C. *fals, le trew*, D.
[9] *A Belyn e Brenne*, B. *A Brennius ne à Belyns*, C. *Belyns*, D.
[10] *un dener*, D.
[11] *après*, B.
[12] *repeirer*, B. *ouf grant joye volent repayner*, C. *oue grant joye volent,repayrere*, D.
[13] *en Ytaylle*, C. D.
[14] *volt*, D.
[15] *Belyns en Bretaygne, ù il veut sojourner*, C.
[16] *Une tour*, D.
[17] *fist-il là*, B. C.
[18] *pendre*, D.
[19] *haut*, B. C. *halt*, D.
[20] *qe homme*, C. *q'eme*, D.
[21] *peust*, D.

They make Burgundians and Britons swear to the covenant
That they will reduce all regions to submit to them.
They have seized Rome, the chief governors
Gabius and Porsena have submitted to their will.
They have compelled them to give assurance of great tribute yearly,
By these two was Rome made tributary to Britain.
They take hostages from Rome, and resolve on returning
Quit with the victory in Italy,
They have Tuscany and Lombardy under their government.
The Romans are false, and seek to retain the tribute,
Not to pay a penny to Belinus and Brennius.
Greatly angered they return to besiege Rome,
Theirs is the victory, and they have taken great wealth;
These brothers have great joy, and resolve to return.
Brennius has Italy, of which he intends to be lord;
Belinus is gone to reside in Britain;
He has arrived in London, where he causes to be raised
A gate, which he caused then to be named Billingsgate.
His reign lasted thirty and four years,
He died at London; to bury his body,
He caused a tower to be elevated outside the gate.
He commanded his dead body to be burnt to powder;
He caused a cup of fine gold to be made there,
In which the powder hangs, to be exhibited for ever
On the top of the tower, that people may remember

De Belynus[1] le bon, ky ben fist garder
Les lays de sa terre, les torz[2] fist amender
De pover e de ryche, en drayt fu à chescun[3] pere.
Gurgaunt[4] fu soun fiz, cum orrez[5] parler.

Gurgiunt, son of Belinus, king.

Gurgaunt[6] fiz Belynus[7] fu prudhome e sage;
Les fez soun[8] pere sustynt,[9] e son heritage.

His expedition to Denmark.

Le ray de Danemark occist pur un trwage
Ke à tort ly detynt à mout graunt outrage.
Vers Braban[10] cum revynt en mer à son menage,[11]
Encontraunt[12] trent nefs of gent de haut parage,
Hommes, femmes,[13] e enfaunz de diverse lynage,
Exilyez de Espaygne, e ne ount socourage;
Partholoym fu duter[14] du gentil[15] cosynage,
Al ray Gurgunt[16] prie de pes e de herbergage;
E le ray le ottrye[17] de mout fraunk corage.
Si tost cum cele navye fu venu à ryvage,[18]
Partholoym[19] fu seysy de terre mout sauvage,

Ireland first peopled.

Irlaunde homme l'apele, à tenyr par homage
Du ray de Brettaygne[20] en fez e en wagnage.[21]
Les [I]rays[22] sount e serrount issuz de tel[23] barnage.
Gorgunt vesquyt xxx. aunz,[24] il morut en pleyn age,
En la cyté da Logicoun[25] repose son corsage.[25]

---

[1] *Ke Belyns*, C.
[2] *les tuz*, C.
[3] *fu checun pere*, B. D. *endrait fist chescon pere*, C.
[4] *Gurguynt*, B. *Gurgunt*, C. *Gurgount*, D. *Gurgiunt*, in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[5] *orrez ore*. B.
[6] *Gurguynt*, B. *Gurgunt*, C. *Gurgount*, D.
[7] *Belyns*, D.
[8] *fes de soun*, C.
[9] *meintint*, B. C. *mayntint*, D.
[10] *Bretaigne quant*, B. *Bretaygne*, C. D.
[11] *oue son menage*, D.
[12] *Encontra*, B. C. D.
[13] *e femmes*, B.
[14] *Pantolons fu dustre*, B. *Partholoym fu dustre*, C. *Partholim fu duter*, D.
[15] *de gentyl*, D.
[16] *Au rey Gurguynt*, B. *Al ray Gurgunt*, C. D.
[17] *E ly roys l'otriye*, C. *l'otrye*, D.
[18] *al ryvage*, D.
[19] *Pantolons*, B.
[20] *Del ray de Bry Aquitayne*, C.
[21] *waynage*, B. D. *vaynage*, C.
[22] *Irois*, B. *Les Irrays*, C. *Ireys*, D.
[23] *issint de cel*, B.
[24] *Gurgount vesquist trent aunz*, D.
[25] *Loundres*, B. D. *Loundre*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "sepultus fuit in urbe *Legionum*." The *Logicum* of our text is perhaps a mere corruption of *Legioun*.
[26] *corpsage*, C.

Belinus the good, who caused well to be kept
The laws of his land, he caused to be amended the wrongs
Of poor and rich, he was equally every one's father.
His son was Gurgiunt, as you will hear related.

Gurgiunt, the son of Belinus, was a good man and wise;
He maintained the acts of his father, and his heritage.
He slew the king of Denmark for a tribute
Which wrongfully he detained from him by great violence.
As he returned by sea towards Britain with his retinue,
He met thirty ships of people of high birth,
Men, women, and children of divers lineage,
Exiled from Spain, and they had none to succour them;
Partholoim, a man of gentle kindred, was their leader,
He asks of king Gurgiunt peace and harbour;
And the king grants it with very generous mind.
As soon as this navy was come to land,
Partholoim took possession of a very wild land,
People call it Ireland, to hold by homage
Of the king of Britain, in fees and in services.
The Irish are and will be the issue of that stock.
Gurgiunt lived thirty years, he died in full age,
In the city of Caerleon his worthy body reposes.

Gurgiunt's successors.

Après le ray Gorgunt, regnayt en Brettayne
Guttelyn [1] son fiz x. aunz en demaygne;
Sir Silvyus [2] fiz Marce deus aunz [3] e une semayne,
Après Guttelyn son pere, tynt Brettayne en wayne.[4]
Kymar [5] son fiz après iiij. aunz [6] saunz compayne
Governa la terre, après ly de Lorayne
Veent Danius son frere à la terre derayne.[7]
Dys aunz vesquyt rays en gwere e en payne
Morvyder [8] son fiz, née [9] de une putayne.

King Morvidus,

En tens le ray Morvyder [10] en Brettayne aryvayt
Un rays de graunt [11] poer, de Moryan [12] estayt,
Ke tut Northumberlande destrut e wastayt.
Ly Morvyder [13] le approche [14] cors al [15] cors tut drayt;
Le ray soul en bataylle mout plus là fesayt
Ke la mayté de gens ke ouf ly [16] menayt.
Les Morryens [17] sount morz, les cors [18] comaundayt

encounters a sea monster.

De tut arder [19] en poudre, trop cruel se moustrayt.
Un monstre [20] de la mer, ke la terre [21] dotayt,

---

[1] *Gudelyn*, D. *Guithelinus*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *Sisilius*, in Geoffrey of Monmouth. Geoffrey does not say how long he reigned, but that he was seven years old when his father Guthelin died, and that therefore his mother directed the government. "Erat tunc Sisilius "septem annorum; nec ætas ipsius expetebat ut regnum moderationi ipsius cederet."

[3] *trent aunz*, D.

[4] *cum wayne*, B. C. *cum vayne*, D.

[5] *Kymare*, B. C. He is called *Kimarus* in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[6] *après vint et un an*, B. *xx. j. an saunz mayne*, D.

[7] *et la terre desraigne*, D.

[8] *Morwid*, B. *Morvide fu son fitz*, C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him *Morvidus*.

[9] *nez*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "quem ex Tangustela concubina genuerat." Pierre de Langtoft has rendered the qualification of the mother by rather a strong word.

[10] *Morwid*, B. *Morvide*, C. D.

[11] *oue grant*, D.

[12] *Murreine*, B. "Temporibus "ipsius applicuit quidam rex Moranorum cum magna manu in "Northumbriam." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[13] *Le rey Morwid*, B.

[14] *Luy Morvide l'aproche*, D.

[15] *à*, D.

[16] *des gentz que oue ly*, D.

[17] *Moreyns*, B. *Moryens*, D.

[18] *le corps*, B.

[19] *à touz ardre*, B. *Les touz ardre*, D.

[20] *un mustre*, C. D.

[21] *qe tote la tere*, B. *tout la tere*, C. *qe tut la tere doutayt*, C.

After king Gurgiunt, reigned in Britain
Guthelin his son ten years in dominion;
Sir Sisilius, son of Marcia, two years and a week
Held Britain in soverainty after his father Guthelin.
Kimar his son afterwards four years without companion
Governed the land, after him from Loraine
Comes Danius his brother to the land last.
Ten years lived king in war and in trouble
Morvidus his son, born of a prostitute.

In the time of king Morvidus there arrived in Britain
A king of great power, he was of Morian,
Who destroyed and laid waste all Northumberland.
King Morvidus encounters him body to body directly;
There in battle the king alone did much more
Than half the people whom he led with him.
The Morians are slain, he ordered their bodies
To be all burnt to powder, he showed himself too cruel.
A sea monster, which was a terror to the land,

Cum il soul par meschaunce assaylir volayt,
Le monstre si[1] se leve, ly rays tranglotayt.[2]
The five sons and successors of Morvidus. Cestuy ray Morvyder[3] v. fiz engendrayt;
Garbodyon,[4] le aynez, après ly regnayt,
E draiture e pees sour totes choses[5] amayt.
Les temples en Brettayne par tut renovelayt;
Plus ke nul rays[6] an aver abundayt;
Les gaygnours de terre par tut honurayt.
Dys aunz vesquyt rays,[7] soun frere ly entoumbayt[8]
En Trinovaunt la bele, cum mesmes devisayt.
Arthgallo deposed Artygallus[9] son frere reteent[10] le regne après,
Feel[11] e orguyllus, contrarius al pees.[12]
Si malement se content,[13] sa terre myst à destrès.
Le pople de Brettayne ne vout suffrir tel fees,
Li tollent la[14] corune, ly chacent hors de dees.
Elidurus. Elydurus, frere Artygalus,[15] en ray ount-il levé,[16]
E pur[17] l'amour son frere pius[18] est nomé.
Kaunt xv. aunz avayt Brettayne regné,
Un jour pur say dedure al boys est alé,
Encountrayt[19] a soun frere ke fu deposé.
De novelement[20] le prent, e swef l'ad baysé,
Al chastel Aclud[21] of say l'ad amené;[22]
Privément en chaumber est-il demoré.
Malade[23] se feynt le ray, fet venir son barné.
Chescun soul[24] par say al ray est entré,

---

[1] *sus*, B.
[2] *le rey transgluteit*, B. *ly rey transglutayt*, D.
[3] *Morwid*, B.
[4] *Gorbodian*, B. *Gorbodianus*, in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[5] *tote chose*, D.
[6] *nul autre rey*, B. *plus ke nul rey*, D.
[7] *vesqui roy*, D.
[8] *li tumbait*, B. *l'entoumbayt*, D.
[9] *Argail*, B. *Attigallus*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him *Arthgallo*.
[10] *recest le regne*, C. *resceut*, D.
[11] *Felons*, B. *Fel*, C.
[12] *à pees*, D.
[13] *se mene*, B. C. D.
[14] *sa*, C. D.
[15] *Argail*, B. *Artigallus*, D.
[16] *elevé*, D.
[17] *Ki pur*, D.
[18] *pitous*, B. *pus*, D.
[19] *Encountraunt a*, D.
[20] *devoutement*, B. *devotement*, C. D.
[21] *de Alclud*, C. D.
[22] *mené*, B. D.
[23] *Malades*, C.
[24] *sire*, B. D.

As he by misfortune would attack alone,
The monster rose upon him and swallowed him up.
This king Morvidus begat five sons;
Gorbodian, the eldest, reigned after him,
And loved above all things justice and peace.
He repaired the temples throughout Britain;
He abounded in wealth more than any other king;
He everywhere honoured the cultivators of the land.
He lived king ten years, his brother buried him
In fair Trinovant, as he himself willed.

Arthgallo his brother receives the kingdom after,
Wicked and proud, hostile to peace.
So ill he behaves, that he brought his land to decline.
The people of Britain will not suffer such a burthen,
They take the crown from him, and drive him from power.

Elidurus, brother of Arthgallo, they have raised to be king,
And for his love of his brother he is named the pious.
When he had reigned over Britain fifteen years,
One day he went alone to the wood for recreation,
He met with his brother who was deposed.
He takes him with devotedness, and has kissed him sweetly,
He has taken him with him to the castle of Alclud;
He remained privately in a chamber.
The king feigns himself ill, and sends for his baronage,
One by one each has entered alone to the king.

Sour forfet de vye à touz ad comaundé
Arthgallo restored. Ke Artygallus,[1] soun frere, sayt rays[2] relevé;
Sauńz nul countredire touz ly ount graunté.
Elydurus de joye[3] à Everwyk est alé;
La coroune de sa teste il memes ad ousté,[4]
E Artygallus,[5] soun frere, rays est corouné,[6]
E regna x. aunz en graunt humilité.
A Kardoyl est-il mort, ilokes son cors posé.[7]
Elydurus en ray de rechef est mounté;
E taunt com il regnayt[8] en tranquillité
Ingene[9] e Peridurus del regne ly ount housté;
Il furent ses cosyns,[10] ky l'ount enprisoné;
La terre entre eus deus si est porcioné.[11]
Ly un e l'auter est mort apres[12] vij. aunz passé;
E sire Elydurus[13] de prisone est mené,
Li[14] coroune ad receu, of la digneté.
Issi[15] de Brettayne fu trays feez ray clamé.
Après tut son[16] travayl morz est e entumbé[17]
Suz le chastel de Aldburge,[18] ke Elud fu nomé.
Elydyrus ly rays ad finé sa vyé;
Gorbonian succeeds to the throne. Gorlomen[19] soun fiz la terre ad[20] saysye.
Pees amayt sur tote ren, e hayst tricherye.

---

[1] *Argail*, B.

[2] *sait rey*, D.

[3] *Elidurs en joye*, B.

[4] *hosté*, D.

[5] *Argail*, B.

[6] *en roy relevé*, C. *rey recoronnée*, D.

[7] *lou cors posé*, C.

[8] *cum meulz regnoit*, B. *cum melz regnait*, C. D.

[9] *Vigenius*, in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[10] *ses freres*, B.C.D., which agrees with Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *proporcioné*, B. *cels ij. est porcioné*, D.

[12] *avaunt*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth's statement is that Vigenius died at the end of seven years, and that Peridurus lived for some time afterwards as king of the whole island.

[13] *Elidours*, B.

[14] *La*, C.D.

[15] *Issint*, D.

[16] *Après sa grant*, B.

[17] *enterré*, B. *entumulé*, D.

[18] *Aldeburgh*, B. C. *Aldburghe*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth does not state where Elidurus was buried.

[19] *Gorbodian*, B. *Gorbonien*, C.D. He is called *Gorbonianus* in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[20] *ad la terre*, C. D.

On forfeit of life he has commanded them all
That Arthgallo his brother should be re-elected king;
They have all yielded without contradiction.
Elidurus is gone with joy to York;
He has himself taken the crown from his own head,
And Arthgallo, his brother, is crowned king,
And reigned ten years in great humility.
He died at Carlisle, there his body is deposited.
Elidurus has again risen to be king;
And while he was reigning in peace
Vigenius and Peridurus have expelled him from the kingdom,
They were his cousins [brothers], who have imprisoned him;
And the land is divided between them two.
Both are dead after seven years are past;
And sir Elidurus is led from prison,
He has received the crown, with the dignity.
Thus he was three times proclaimed king of Britain.
After all his trouble he is dead and entombed
Under the castle of Aldburgh, which was named Elud.

Elidurus the king has ended his life;
Garbonian his son has taken possession of the land.
He loved peace above everything, and hated treachery.

Margan son of Arthgallo.

Margan fiz[1] Artygallus après ly l'ad baylé.[2]
Seet aunz en[3] Brettayne tynt la seygnurye.
Après la mort Margan, la terre revertye
A. xxix. rays,[4] le estory ne ment mye,
Chescun après autre, la terre fu mout blemye;
Nul fist en soun tens burge,[5] ne vile, vus dye.
Hely fu le darayn ray de curtaysye;
Il regna xl.[6] aunz, à Castre est sevelye.
Hely avait iij. fiz, ben les say nomer.

King Lud gives its name to London.

Lud, dount Loundres est dyte, il[7] fu le primer;
Cele cyté tote fyst-il renoveler.
Cassibelan e Nennius[8] furent se[s] deus frer;[9]
Et[10] deus fiz avayt Lud de sa mulier,
Amedeus de tender age kant morust lour pere.
Kaunt ly ray Lud fu mort, soun cors fet home porter[11]
A Ludgate, où il gist, k'il memes fist lever.

King Cassibelan.

Pur noun age le fiz[12] Lud, Cassibelan recayt[13]
Brettaygne à governer, cum cyl ke ben savayt.[14]
Loundres e Kente tote al aynez assignayt,
Androgeus par noun; le pusnez estayt,[15]
Frere le peusné ke Cornewayle avayt.

Julius Cæsar's invasion.

Julius Cesar en cel tens en Brettayne arryvayt,
La terre de Brettayne pur sowe[16] chalangayt,
E dist ke sir Eneas[17] nul parent avayt,

---

[1] *le fiz*, D. "Marganus Arth-" gallonis filius," in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *la bayllie*, D.

[3] *de*, B. C. D.

[4] *xx. et ix.*, D.

[5] *burg*, B. D. *burghe*, C.

[6] *lx.*, C. "Regnumque quadra-" ginta annis tractavit," Geoffrey of Monmouth, who does not say where he was buried.

[7] *il*, omitted in D.

[8] *Cassabalan et Nemius*, D. "Hic " [Heli] tres generavit filios, Lud, " Cassibellaunum, Nennium." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[9] This and the preceding line are omitted in B. *ces ii. freres*, C.

[10] *Et*, omitted in D.

[11] *feit home porter*, B. *fet hom portere*, C. *fet eme poser*, D.

[12] *le fit Lud*, B.

[13] *resceit*, B. *Cassabalan rescuit*, D.

[14] *cum cil bien aveit*, B. *qe savayt*, D.

[15] *Tenuace l'autre estbit*, B. *Tenuaunce estait*, D. "Nati fuerunt " ei duo filii, Androgeus et Tenu-" antius." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[16] *la sue*, B. *pur sue*, D.

[17] *E sire Eneat dit qe*, B.

Margan, son of Arthgallo, had the government after him.
Seven years he held the lordship in Britain.
After the death of Margan, the land passed
To twenty-nine kings, the history does not tell untruth,
Each after the other, the land was much deteriorated;
No one of them in his time made borough or town, I tell you.
Heli was the last king by courtesy;
He reigned forty years, and is buried at Chester.

Heli had three sons, I can tell you their names with certainty.
Lud, from whom London is named, was the first;
That city he caused to be entirely rebuilt.
Cassibelan and Nennius were his two brothers;
And Lud had two sons by his wife,
Both of tender age when their father died.
When king Lud was dead, they caused his body to be carried
To Ludgate, where he lies, which he himself caused to be built.

On account of the minority of Lud's son, Cassibelan receives
Britain to govern, as he who was well qualified.
He assigned to the eldest London and all Kent,
Androgeus was his name; Tenuancius was the other,
The younger brother, who had Cornwall.
At this time Julius Cæsar arrived in Britain,
He claimed the land of Britain as his own,
And said that sir Æneas had no kinsman,

A ky, si à ly noun,[1] descendist le drayt;
Ke Brutus i vynt à tort, e ceo prover volayt.[2]
Par quey[3] entre les deus la gwere comencayt.
Cassibelan drives Cæsar away twice.
Le ray Cassibelan, par power k'il menayt,
Deus fez[4] Julius Cesar hors de sa terre chacayt;
Androgeus[5] devaunt-dit de loynz se purpensayt
Ke la coroune de Brettayne la swe de drayt[6] serrayt.
Al ray Cassibelan, soun uncle, envayayt,
E prye ke li rende Brettayne of tut l'esplayt.[7]
Cassibelan à gaz soun maundement tenayt.
Cæsar comes a third time, and succeeds.
A cyl Julius Cesar ataunt[8] procurait,
Ke à la terce foyz à Brettayne approchayt.
Cassibelan al Cesar en fourme[9] se accordayt,
Ke iij. mil livres par an à ly rendrayt,[10]
E teent la terre en pees cum avaunt fesaynt.
A Rome of la victorye est Cesar returnez.
Androgeus fiz Lud of ly est alez;[11]
Cassibelan suz tribute ray est demorez.
Mort est Cassibelan, après vij. aunz passez;
Soun cors à Everwyk, pur voyrs, est enterrez.
Le fiz aynez Cassibelan en fust[12] outre mer;
Tenuantius made king.
Tenuaunce[13] soun frere se fist corouner.
Tost morust Tenuaunce,[13] son fiz comenca regner;
Cymbeline.
Duk fu de Cornewayle, Kymlyns[14] l'oy nomer,
Prodhome fu e sage, tost cessa soun mester.[15]

---

[1] *si noun à li*, D.

[2] *prover le voleit*, B. D. *à provere le volayt*, C.

[3] *Par tant*, B. C. D.

[4] *fitz*, B. *fiez*. C.

[5] *Androcheus*, B.

[6] *de Bretaygne sue de drayt*, C.

[7] *l'esploit*, B. *oue l'esplait*, D.

[8] *E qe Julius Cesar en tant p.*, B. *E cyll Julii Cesar ataunt procurayt*, C. D.

[9] *en ferme*, C.

[10] *par an li durreit*, B. *au luy orrait*, D. "Erat autem vectigal "quod spopondit, tria milia libra- "rum argenti." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *Androyeus par noun est ouf ly alez*, C. *oue ly est alé*, D. "Nam "Androgeus Romam cum Cæsare "profectus fuerat." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[12] *Le fitz aynez Lud fut*, B. *Le fiz aynez Lud en fust*, C. D.

[13] *Tenuace*, B. *Tenevace*, C.

[14] *Kymbelyns*, B. *Gymblyn*, C. *Kimblins*, D. *Kymbelinus*, in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[15] *son reyner*, B.

To whom, except him, the right descended;
That Brutus came there wrongfully, as he was prepared to prove.
Wherefore there began war between the two.
King Cassibelan, with the forces he led,
Twice drove Julius Cæsar out of his land;
Androgeus aforesaid reflected long
That the crown of Britain should be his by right;
He sent to king Cassibelan, his uncle, a message,
And prays him to restore Britain to him, with all speed.
Cassibelan treated his message as a joke.
And he prevailed so much with Julius Cæsar,
That he approached Britain for the third time.
Cassibelan made a formal accord with Cæsar,
That he would pay him a tribute of three thousand pounds a year.
And he holds the land in peace as they did before.

Cæsar is returned to Rome with the victory.
Androgeus, the son of Lud, is gone with him;
Cassibelan is become tributary king.
Cassibelan is dead, after seven years passed;
His body, of a truth, is buried at York.

The eldest son of Cassibelan was beyond sea;
His brother Tenuantius caused himself to be crowned.
Tenuantius soon died, his son began to reign;
He was duke of Cornwall, I have heard him named Cymbeline,
He was prudent and wise, his reign soon ended.

King Ginderius.

Soun fiz Gynderyus[1] resceut le regne enter,
E ben le governayt, cum vayllaunt bacheler.
Cyl retynt[2] le trewe ke à Rome dust doner;
Par quay sir Claudius, ke lors fust emperer,
La gwere sour Brettaygne bye à comencer.

Birth of Christ.

Hic natus est Christus.

Pur veirs en cel contemple nous vynt Deus salver,
Kaunt neestre de la virgine se volayt deygner.

Invasion of Claudius.

Venuz en Brettayne est Claudyus le ber;
Un Hamound[3] fu par noun son mestre counseyler.
Le ray Gyndere à Romayns se comence assembler,[4]
Claudyus en l'estour fu russez[5] arer.
Hamound pleyn de wiches privément[6] se fist armer
Des armes au Brettouns, pur eus engyner;
Language de Brettayne ben savayt parler.
Les Romayns par vaidye s'en forcayt[7] enchacer,
E al rays[8] Gynder de près approcher,
Tuez l'ad, cum lers,[9] de sa espeye al quer.

Arviragus.

Arviragus, soun frere,[10] volt cel mort venger;
De les armes le ray se fet adubber,
Le pople de Brettayne pur ben conforter.
Trestuz quident[11] ben ke ceo sayt[12] sir Gynder.
Fuyz est Claudyus rechacé par poer.

Death of Hamo, and origin of Southampton.

Hamound suz un boys li Brettoun va trover.
Arviragus ilokes li fist decoler;
E pur taunt[13] cel lue fist Hamptone appeler.
Claudyus revent[14] après la mort Hamoun,
Par poer à destrure tote la regioun.[15]

---

[1] *Ginderinus*, C. In Geoffrey of Monmouth, *Guiderius*.
[2] *detint*, B. C. D.
[3] *Hamund*, B. *Haumond*, C.
[4] *comence à medler*, C.
[5] *rosez*, B. D.
[6] *privé*, B. D. *wischesse prive*, C.
[7] *par voidie s'aforceit*, B. *se forcait*, C.
[8] *rey*, D.
[9] *Tuez ad le rey, de*, B.
[10] *soun frere*, omitted in C.
[11] *quideynt*, C.
[12] *qe ceo fu*, B. *qe se fu sire*, C. *qe ce fu sire*, D.
[13] *E par taunt*, B. D.
[14] *remeynt*, B. *se vint*, C.
[15] This line is omitted in B.

His son Ginderius received the whole kingdom,
And governed it well, like a worthy bachelor.
He detained the tribute which he was to give to Rome;
Wherefore sir Claudius, who was then emperor,
Hastened to make war upon Britain.

For a truth, at this time God came to save us,
When he condescended to be born of a virgin.
Claudius the noble is arrived in Britain;
One named Hamo was his chief counsellor.
King Ginderius encountered the Romans,
In the battle Claudius was repulsed.
Hamo, full of guile, causes himself to be armed secretly
With arms of the Britains, to deceive them,
He was well skilled in speaking the British language.
By deceit he made a show of driving away the Romans,
And approached near to the king Ginderius,
He has slain him, like a thief, with his sword to the heart.
Arviragus, his brother, sought to revenge this death;
He caused himself to be equipped in the king's arms,
To comfort well the people of Britain.
They all believe it to be sir Ginderius.
Claudius has fled, driven back by force.
Hamo repairs to the Britains under a wood.
Arviragus causes him there to be beheaded;
And thus this place came to be called Hampton.

Claudius returns after the death of Hamo,
To destroy by force all the region.

Li rays Arviragus, of levé gomfaynoun,
Le encountre à Wyncestre [1] cum vaylliaunt Bretoun.
Le emperer se parcayt [2] k'il n'ad pas fusoun [3]
A parfere sa gwere [4] sur cele nacioun;
Tost se purpense de bon evasioun.
A treaty. En message maunde al ray, par vaylaun[t] baroun,
Ke si sa terre voyle par subjeccioun
Claudius gives his daughter to Arviragus. Tenir de [5] Romayns, sa fillye avera de doun.
Arviragus le graunte saunz collusioun;
Le temple [6] de Brettayne s'acorde à sa resoun.[7]
Ele [8] est en Brettayne à graunt [9] nobleye venue;
Del ray e de son pople curtaysement [10] receue.
La feste des esposayles est richement ferue.
Ele fu la plus bele rene [11] k'en nule part fu veue.[12]
Gloucester built. En noun sir Claudyus fu la cyté porveue
Ke dist est Gloucestre,[13] e tele est ele [14] conue.
L'emperer Claudyus à Rome prent son aler;
Arviragus demort la terre governer.
Les cytez fet refer, ses chasteus redrescer;
Les trowage de Rome reteent chescun dener.
Kaunt Claudyus le seet, tost fet enveyer
Vaspasium [15] al ray pur la pès fourmer.
Vespasian invades Britain. Le ray, kaunt il le seet, fet maunder à la mer,
Ke nul homme le soffre son reaume entrer.
Vaspasius [16] fu sage, e de graunt poer,
Si entre en la terre, e volt gwerrayer;
La vile de Oxenforthe [17] alayt asseger.

---

[1] *L'encontre en Wincestre*, C. *L'encountre à Wyncestre*, D.
[2] *L'emperour aparceit*, B. *Ly emperer se aparcait*, C. D.
[3] *foysoun*, B. C.
[4] *cele gwere*, C. *la gwere*, D.
[5] *des*, D.
[6] *pople*, B. C. D.
[7] *od sa reson*, B.
[8] *Il est*, C.
[9] *ouf graunt*, C. *oue grant*, D.
[10] *noblement*, B.
[11] The word *rene* is omitted in B. C. D.
[12] *penuz*, C.
[13] *Ke dist est ore Glaucestre*, C. *Claucestre*, D.
[14] *ore*, B. *est coneu*, D.
[15] *Vaspasian*, B. *Vaspasioun*, C.
[16] *Vaspasian*, B.
[17] *Oxenforde*, B. D.

The king Arviragus, with gonfanon raised,
Encounters him at Winchester like a worthy Briton.
The emperor perceives that he has not force enough
To carry through his war with that nation;
He immediately imagines a good escape.
He sends a message to the king, by a worthy baron,
That if he will his land by subjection
Hold of the Romans, his daughter he shall have in gift.
Arviragus agrees to it without deceit;
The people of Britain confirm his resolution.

She is come into Britain with much nobility;
Is courteously received by the king and his people.
The marriage festival is richly provided.
She was the fairest queen to be seen anywhere.
In the name of sir Claudius was the city raised
Which is called Gloucester, and as such it is known.

The emperor Claudius repairs to Rome;
Arviragus remains to govern the land.
He causes the cities to be restored, his castles to be rebuilt;
The tribute of Rome he retains every penny.
When Claudius knows it, he immediately sends
Vespasian to the king to re-establish peace.
The king, when he knows it, sends orders to the sea,
That no one should suffer him to enter his kingdom.
Vespasian was wise, and of great power,
And he enters the land, and seeks to reduce it by war;
He proceeded to lay siege to the town of Oxford.

Arviragus and Vespasian are reconciled by the queen.

Arviagus i vent pur la cyté sauver.[1]
Cum l'un ost[2] à l'autre devayt assembler,
La rayne Genuysse, fyllie à l'emperer,
Tut saunz coupe de espeye les fet acorder.
Vaspasyus[3] of sa route retourne à Rome arei
E Arviagus demort of sa mulier.
Il fu trebon[4] rays son pople pur governer,[5]
Le livre Juvenal[6] le seet ben testemoyner.[7]
Mort gyst à Gloucestre,[8] son cors of son quer.[9]

Reign of Marius.

Le fiz Arvyagus, par noun Maryus,
Après son pere regna, chuvaler corageus.
Roduc,[10] ray de Pyctes,[11] ly veent contrarius;
Maryus l'ad tuez,[12] e ses hommes touz;
Ky vyfs demorerent, of ly les ad tenuz;[13]

The Picts established in Caithness.

Katenesse les[14] doune, si les ad tenduz
K'il voysent en Irelaunde[15] pur[16] femmes à lur ous.[17]
Els si feseyent, si les ount conus;
[Bien piert en la tere q'eles unt consceus.][18]
La matyre est jà dite, dount Irays sount issuz.
Maryus vesquit xiij. aunz e poy plus;[19]
Mort est e ensevely[20] à Salesbyry[21] là sus.

---

[1] *Arviragus il veent la cité pur salver*, C.
[2] *Cum luy un ost*, D.
[3] *Vaspasian*, B.
[4] *trop bon*, B. C. D.
[5] *guier*, B. *gwyere*, C. *gwyer*, D.
[6] *Jovenal*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Unde Juvenalis cæcum quendam Neroni dixisse in libro suo commemorat, cum de capto rhumbo loqueretur, inquiens:

"Regem aliquem capies aut de temone Britanno
"Decidet Arviragus."

The reference is of course to Juvenal, Sat. IV., 126.
[7] *le seet temoygner*, C. D.
[8] *Claucestre*, D.
[9] *et son quer*, C.
[10] *Rodrik*, B. *Rodoc*, C. In Geoffrey of Monmouth the name is *Rodric*.
[11] *Peystes*, B.
[12] *le tua*, B. C. D.
[13] *Qe vifs moreient od li ad tenus*, B. *oue ly ad tenuz*, D.
[14] *lour*, B.
[15] *Heland*, B.
[16] *pur*, omitted in B.
[17] *oes*, B. D.
[18] This line is omitted in A.
[19] *Marius regneit quarante et nef anz, et neient plus*, B. *Marius regna xlix. aunz nent plus*, C. *Marius regnayt xlix. aunz nent plus*, D.
[20] *e seveliz*, D.
[21] *Salesbire*, D.

Arviragus came there to save the city.
As the one army was on the point of engaging the other,
Queen Genuissa, the daughter of the emperor,
Brings them to accord without a single sword-blow.
Vespasian returns to Rome with his army,
And Arviragus remains with his wife.
He was an excellent king to govern his people,
The book of Juvenal bears good witness to it.
He lies dead at Gloucester, his body with his heart.

The son of Arviragus, named Marius,
Reigned after his father, a courageous knight.
Roderic, king of the Picts, comes against him;
Marius has slain him, and all his men;
Those who remained alive he kept with him;
He gives them Caithness, and has proposed to them
To go into Ireland for women at their will.
They did so, and had intercourse with them;
It appears clearly in the land that they have conceived.
The affair is now told, whence the Irish are sprung.
Marius lived thirteen years and a little more.
He died and was buried at Salisbury.

Coillus succeeds Marius.

Le rays Maryus avayt Coylle par noun un fiz;
Curtays e large en feet, sage e queynte en diz.[1]
Le trwe rendist à Rome cum leaus e avertiz;
A Rome entre Romayns fu gentement norriz.[2]
Encountre nul prodhomme mesprendrayt mult enviz.[3]
Après x. aunz est mort, enterrez à Northwiz.[4]

Lucius succeeds to the throne.

Coylle avait un fiz, soun noun fu Lucyus,
Ke fu de Brettayne le melliour ray de tuz.
A ly, par sa priere, pape Eleutherius
Maundayt en Brettayne deus religious,
Dunyanus[5] fu l'un, l'autre Figinus,[6]
En la parole Deu amedeus[7] gracious.
Par els est baptizé li ray sir Lucyus.

He introduces Christianity.

La fay de seynt eglyse en sa terre fist precher
Les temples[9] fount eglyses, la croyce i ert levé.
Convertuz est à Deu le pople renayé.[10]
Eveskes e erceveskes en Brettayne sount sacré,
Chescun en dyocise appendaunt à sée.[11]
Genz pur Deu servyr le rays ad ordiné,
Des terres e de rentes[12] mout ben les ad feffé.
Kaunt il melz dust vivre e plus est amé,[13]

Is buried at Gloucester.

Mort li prent, allas! saunz heyr engendré.
Son cors gist à Gloucestre,[14] sa alme là suz à Dé.

---

[1] *larges en fet, e sotil en diz*, B. *large en fete, sutylle en diz*, C. *et sotylle en ditz*, D.

[2] *gentilment nurryz*, C.

[3] *en nule vice*, B. *mesprendrayt en viz*, C.

[4] *Norewice*, B. *Norwyz*, C. D.

[5] *Dinnanius*, C.

[6] *Faganus*, B. C. *Dinnanus fu ly un, l'altre Fagnus*, D. "Beatus "pontifex . . duos religiosissimos "doctores, Faganum et Duvianum, "ad illum misit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] *en la parole de ambedeux*, C.

[8] *eglise est partut preché*, B. *de seynt eglise la croyce iert levé*, C. *La faye de seinte eglyse est par tote preché*, D.

[9] *Des temples*, C.

[10] This and the preceding line are transposed in C.

[11] *à cité*, B. D. *al citée*, C. *cité* is no doubt the correct reading, and I translate accordingly.

[12] *des rentes*, C. D.

[13] *Quant meulz quidoit vivere, e plus fut amé*, B. *Quant il meout doit vivre*, C. *Qaunt il melz deit vivere, et plus est amé*, D.

[14] *Loundres*, B. D. *à Loundre*, C. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are: "Inter hæc et cæteros "propositi sui actus in urbe Clau- "diocestriæ ab hac vita migravit, "et in ecclesia primæ sedis hono- "rifice sepultus est."

King Marius had a son named Coillus;
He was courteous and liberal in deed, wise and subtle in words.
He rendered the tribute to Rome like a loyal and just man;
He was educated at Rome among the Romans nobly.
He trespassed much against no good man willingly.
After ten years he died, and is buried at Norwich.

Coillus had a son whose name was Lucius,
Who was the best of all the kings of Britain.
To him, at his request, pope Eleutherius
Sent into Britain two ecclesiastics,
Dunianus was the one, Faganus the other,
Both gracious in the word of God.
By them the king sir Lucius was baptized.

He caused the faith of holy church to be preached in his land;
They turn the temples into churches, the cross was raised there.
The infidel people is converted to God.
Bishops and archbishops are consecrated in Britain,
Each in a diocese attached to a city.
The king has ordained people to serve God,
He has enfeoffed them very richly with lands and rents.
When he was most wanted alive, and was most beloved,
Death takes him, alas! without any heir of his body.
His corpse lies at Gloucester, his soul is with God there above.

Deshore ne seet Brettoun ki serra son seygnur,[1]
Ky gwiera Brettayne, ky portera le honur.
La gwere par taunt comence à mout graunt dolur.
La novele à Rayne[2] est venu par corur;
Les Romayns fount elyre tost un senatour,
Severus fu soun noun, home de graunt valur.
Des mouz de[3] naciouns requert-il soccour,
Aryvé en Brettayne est of graunt[4] baudour.
Se medle of les Brettouns, les chace hors d'estur
Vers Albanye[5] par force; un duk il fust cel jour,[6]
Fulgencius par noun, ke[7] par ayde e vigour
Des Pyctes ke ly venent, rechacé à deshonur
A Everwik sour House[8] Severus ly emperour;[9]
Ke mors est par Fulgyens,[10] e là gist saunz rethoure.
Severus avayt deus fiz, l'estory dist de Avyen;[11]
Gete[12] fu le aynez, la pusné Basyen,[13]
Ke ray sayt de Brettayne les Romayns volent ben;[14]
Les Brettouns,[15] pur veyr, à Gete s'acordent ren.[16]
La mere Basyens[17] de Brettayne fu nez,
Par quei[18] daum Basyens[19] des Brettons est amez.
En batayle pur le reaume daunz Gete fu tuez,
E Basyens par taunt fu ray corounez.

Severus driven back, and slain.

Geta and Bassianus.

---

[1] *le seignur*, C. *lour seignour*, D.
[2] *à Rome*, B. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Cumque id Romæ "nunciatum fuisset."
[3] *De multz des*, C. *Des plusurs des*, C.
[4] *à grant*, C.
[5] *Abbanye*, A.
[6] *un duk fu à cel jour*, B. D.
[7] *ke* omitted in C. D.
[8] *Huse*, C. *Use*, D.
[9] *l'emperour*, D.
[10] *Fulgence*, C. D. *Fulgenius*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[11] *l'estorie dit auncien*, B. D. *l'estorie dis auncien*, C. The reading in our text can hardly be anything but a clerical error.
[12] *Geta*, B. *Gettez*, C.
[13] *Bassien*, B. *Bascien*, C. *Basien*, D. Bassianus was of course the emperor known as Caracalla.
[14] *voyllent bien*, C.
[15] *Les Romayns*, C.
[16] *à cèo n'acòrdent rien*, B.
[17] *Bascien*, C. *Basien*, D.
[18] *Pur quay*, C.
[19] *Bassien*, B. *Basien*, C. D.

Thenceforth the Briton knows not who shall be his lord,
Who shall rule Britain, who shall carry the honour.
War begins immediately with very great grief.
The news has come to Rome by a courier;
The Romans proceed immediately to elect a senator,
His name was Severus, a man of great valour.
He demands succour from many nations,
Has arrived in Britain with great exultation,
Fights with the Britons, and chases them out of the field
Towards Albany by force; a duke there was at that time,
Named Fulgentius, who with the assistance and strength
Of the Picts who came to him, drove back with disgrace
To Everwic (York) on the Ouse Severus the emperor;
Who was slain by Fulgentius, and lies there without return.

Severus had two sons, as the ancient history says;
Geta was the eldest, the younger Bassianus,
The Romans were very willing that he should be king of Britain;
The Britons, in truth, would in no wise agree to Geta.
The mother of Bassianus was born in Britain,
Wherefore dan Bassianus is loved by the Britons.
In a battle for the kingdom dan Geta was killed,
And Bassianus thereupon was crowned king.

Carausius usurps the crown.

Cel tens en Brettayne un juvencel estait,[1]
Ke poer e pruesce assez en ly estayt,[2]
Al senatour de Rome son chemyn s'en alayt,[3]
Pur tolir Basyen[4] la regne par deçayt.
A l'emperer promyst, ly[5] le salverayt,
E ceo par[6] sa lettre tost à ly l'ottrayt.
Le ray Basyens,[7] si tost cum ceo savayt,
A Carausyus, ke teel noun avayt,[8]
Al pople des ygles ke of ly arryvayt,[9]
La bataylle saunz respyt chaumpestre donayt;
E Carausyus le faus saunz succours ly tuayt.[10]

Allectus.

Atthletus[11] veent[12] de Rome, le emperer ly envayt;[13]
Passage à la mer Carausyus ly deveayt.[14]
Treys legiouns de genz Athletus[15] menayt,

Carausius slain.

Maugré sire Carausyus[16] en Brettayne entrayt,
Et le faus Carausyus[16] à vile mort lyverayt.

Asclepiodotus.

Un Cornewaleys lors fust[17] en la terre,
Aclepyodote[18] soun noun oy retrere,
Brettouns e Cornewaleys à ly fet retrere,[19]

---

[1] *Carausius en Bretaigne un juvencel estoit*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "Eo tempore fuerat in "Britannia juvenis quidam nomine "Carausius ex infima gente crea-"tus." According to Geoffrey, Carausius went to Rome to obtain authority to raise a fleet for the protection of the British coasts.

[2] *en soi avoit*, B. *en say*, C. *en say avayt*, D.

[3] *son chemyn alait*, C. D. Pierre de Langtoft has here abridged Geoffrey of Monmouth very considerably, and not very correctly.

[4] *Bassien*, C.

[5] *à ly le salverayt*, C. *q'à luy le salverait*, D.

[6] *L'emperour par sa lettre*, B. C. D.

[7] *Ly roys Bassien*, C. *Basien*, D.

[8] *A Carausius le faus la novele maundoit*, B. *A Caraus le fals sa novele maundayt*, C. *A Caraus le fals la novele*, D.

[9] *Le pople qe des iles à li arivoit*, B. *Le poeple qe ouf li des igles arivait*, C. *Le pople ke des ygles oue ly*, D.

[10] *E Caraus de faus sanz socour tuait*, C. *Carius*, D.

[11] *Allecus*, B. *Alletus*, C.

[12] *vint*, B. C.

[13] *l'emvait*, C.

[14] *li veait*, B. *Caraus ly veait*, C. *Carius luy veayt*, D.

[15] *Allecus*, B. *Alletus*, C. D.

[16] *Carays*, B. *Caraus*, C. *Carius*, D.

[17] *Un duk Cornewaleys fu lors*, B. D. *Un duk Cornwailles fu lors en la terre*, C. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth: "Britones vero id "graviter tolerantes, erexerunt in "regem Asclepiodotum ducem Cor-"nubiæ."

[18] *Asclipiodol*, B.

[19] *atrere*, B. C. D. This line and the preceding are transposed in C. D.

At that time there was a youth in Britain,
Who possessed enough of power and courage,
He took his journey to the senator of Rome,
In order by deceit to take the kingdom from Bassianus.
He promised the emperor that he would preserve it to him,
And he by his letter immediately granted him his request.
King Bassianus, as soon as he knew it,
To Carausius, for that was his name,
And to the people of the isles who arrived with him,
Gave battle in the field without respite;
And Carausius the false slew him without help.
Allectus comes from Rome, sent by the emperor;
Carausius refused him the passage by sea.
Allectus brought three legions of men with him,
He entered Britain in spite of Carausius,
And delivered Carausius the false to a disgraceful death.

There was then a Cornish man in the land,
His name I have heard was Asclepiodotus,
He caused to draw to him Britons and Cornishmen,

Encountré les Romayns ad comencé sa gwere;
Occys est sir Athletus,[1] de ly n'ad plus ke fere.
Gallus. Gallus[2] fiz Lucyus de[3] Romayns fu remys,
Pus la descomfiture s'en est[4] à Loundres mys,
Fermés ad les portes, les toreles ad prys.[5]
Sir Aclepyodote de sonz est requys,[6]
Ke il aylle à Loundres coure[7] sour ses enemys.
Il leve la banere[8] e vayt of ses amys,
Destruction of the Romans in London. La cyté de Loundres est mout tot assys,
Les tours abbatues, les murs sunt demys,
Descomfiz sount les Romayns, deus ne sont pas remys.[9]
Walbrook. A un russel de Loundres[10] decolez sont sanz prys,
Ke Walebrok[11] ad à noun, e avera tut dys.
Asclepiodotus king. Li Romayns sunt morz, ly Brettons fount ben,
Sir Aclypiodote fount lour ray terrien.[12]
Diocle-sian's persecution. Le emperer cel houre, Dyoclytien,[13]
Maunde en Brettayne sire Maxymyen,
Pour occir e destrure tuz ly Cristyen;
Ne joven, ne veuz, ne si auncyen,
K'yl ne mette à l'espeye, si n'esparny ren.
Arder fet eglyses, les livres geet en fen;[14]
Huny est Brettayne, si Deu ne aide as seen.[15]

[1] *Allecus est occis*, B. *Alletus* . . . . *n'ad qe feer*, C. D.

[2] *Sallus*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him Livius Gallus, but says nothing of his relationship to Lucius: perhaps Pierre de Langtoft made this name out of Livius, for he is evidently sometimes at fault in understanding Geoffrey's Latin.

[3] *des*, B. D.

[4] *se est*, D.

[5] *les portes de Loundres, les tours pris*, B.

[6] *Sire Asclipiodot des sems est requis*, B. *de soens est requis*, D.

[7] *coure* omitted in B.

[8] *sa banere*, B.

[9] *Desconfit les Romains, dous ne sunt pas vifs*, B. D. *ij. ne sunt pas vifs*, C.

[10] *en Loundres*, B. C. D.

[11] *Walebrok*, C. *ad noun*, D. In Geoffrey of Monmouth we read: "Et facto agmine decollaverunt "omnes una die, intra urbem super "torrentem qui postea de nomine "ducis Britannice Nantgallim, Sax-"onice vero Gallemborne nuncu-"patus fuit." The derivation of the name is of course ridiculously wrong.

[12] This line is not in B.

[13] *fu Dioclicien*, B.

[14] This word must be a corruption of the word *feu* for the sake of the rhyme. Geoffrey of Monmouth says "omnes subversæ fuerunt ec-"clesiæ, et cunctæ sacræ scripturæ "quæ inveniri poterant in mediis "foris exustæ."

[15] *ne ayde et seen*. C. *ne ayde à soen* D.

And has commenced war against the Romans;
Sir Allectus is slain, we have no more to do with him.

Gallus, son of Lucius, was restored by the Romans,
After the discomfiture he has established himself in London,
Has closed the gates, and occupied the towers.
Sir Aclepiodotus is requested by his men
To go to London and attack his enemies.
He raises his banner, and goes with his friends,
The city of London is very soon besieged,
The towers overthrown, the walls are broken,
The Romans are discomfited, not two of them are left.
They are beheaded without ransom at a brook in London
Which has the name of Walbrook, and always will have.

The Romans are slain, the Britons are successful,
They make Asclepiodotus king of their land.
The emperor at that time, Diocletian,
Sent sir Maximian into Britain,
To slay and destroy all the Christians;
There was neither young, nor old, nor ever so aged,
But he put them to the sword, he spared nothing.
He caused the churches to be burnt, and threw the books into the fire,
Britain is put to shame, if God does not help his people.

St. Alban. Seynt Alban en l'estour prent martyrement,
E plusurs of ly, des nouns ne me souvent.
Maxymyens à Rome revait par maundement
Asclepiodotus. Aclipyodote, par ceo ke fayntement
Se portayt[1] vers Romayns en tot cel tourment.[2]
Escotez quel fyn pur lower i prent.[3]
Coel duke of Colchester. Le duk de Colcestre, Coel appelez,[4]
Aclipyodote à la mort l'ad[5] lyvrez;
Rays est de Brettayne, pur tel est corounez.[6]
Le senatur de Rome de cel[7] est avysez,
Le counte Constantyn[8] ly ad jà maundez.
Kant Coel oyt dire k'il fust arryvez,
Mout privément ly maunde saluz e amystez,
A tenir de Rome Brettayne of les fez.[9]
Avaunt ke ceo covenaunt fu ben asseurez,
Coele à Colcestre est mort e enterrez.
Un soul fylle avayt, pur tuz ses heritez.[10]
Constantine marries Coel's daughter. Constantyn[11] après pur ray se corounayt,
La fyllie le ray Coile[12] esposer alayt,
Pur ceo ke la terre meuz tenyr quidayt.
Tost un fiz saunz plus sur ly engendrayt,
Par son noun demeyne nomer li fesayt.[13]
Si tost cum l'enfaunt en age xi. aunz[14] avayt,
Fynyst soun pere la vye, le regne à ly lessayt.
Constantine junior. Constantyn le joven se fet corouner,
Brettayne par drayture comence à gwyer.
Le senatour de Rome oyt de ly parler,[15]

---

[1] *se porta*, C.

[2] *turnement*, B.

[3] *il emprent*, B. *pur luer il prent*, C. *il prent*, D.

[4] This line is omitted in B. "Interea insurrexit in regem Asclepiodotum Coel dux Kaercolvin, id est Colecestriæ, et prælio conserto eum peremit, regnique diademate sese insignivit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[5] *Sire Asclipiadote à mort ad liverez*, C. D., the latter omitting the word *sire*.

[6] *pur ceo corouné*, B. *pur cel est corounez*, D.

[7] *de ceo*, C.

[8] *Constantins*, B. *Constauns, et ad jà*, C. *i ad jà*, D.

[9] *od le fé*, B. *oue les fez*, D.

[10] *pur tut son herité*, B.

[11] *Constancius*, B. *Constauns*, C.

[12] *à ray Coille*, C.

[13] *le fesait*, C.

[14] *de xi. aunz*, C.

[15] *oy de ceo parler*, C.

St. Alban underwent martyrdom in this disorder,
And many with him, I do not remember their names.
Maximian returned to Rome by command
Of Asclepiodotus, because he faintly
Behaved towards the Romans in all this trouble.
Listen what end he received for his reward.

The duke of Colchester, called Coel,
Had delivered Asclepiodotus to death;
He is king of Britain, and crowned as such.
The senator of Rome is informed of this,
And has now sent the count Constantine to him.
When Coel hears say that he had arrived,
Very secretly he sends him salutation and friendship,
Offers to hold Britain with its fees of Rome.
Before this agreement was quite concluded,
Coel is dead and buried at Colchester.
He had a sole daughter for all his heritage.

Constantine caused himself to be crowned as king after him,
He married the daughter of king Coel,
Because he thought thereby to hold the land better.
Quickly without more ado he begat a son on her,
He caused him to be named by his own name.
As soon as the child was eleven years of age,
His father ended his life, and left him the kingdom.

The young Constantine caused himself to be crowned,
He began to govern Britain according to right.
The senator of Rome heard talk of him,

Pur l'amour soun pere mult le volt amer.[1]
Constantyn est pruz e fort gwerreyer;
Le senatour à Rome ly fet tost maunder
Slays Maxentius. Pur Mayence[2] destrure, ke volt enchacer
Les Romayns hors de terre e desheriter.
Constantyn à Rome en prent soun aler,
E ly tyraunt Mayence[2] tue par poer,
En taunt cum il fist là[3] fet de chivaler,
Ly felouns Octavyus, il se leve baner,[4]
Est or[e][5] en Brettayne aryvé par mer.
Le ray Constantyn la novele ad resceu,
Coment Octavyus en sa terre est venu,[6]
Un soen uncle de Rome cel est aparceu,[7]
Trays legyouns de genz[8] en ayde ly ad rendu;
Jà sount en Brettayne trestouz descendeu.
Trahern[9] le vayllyaunt, de Romayne issue,
Fu of tote sa route à Wyncestre venu.[10]
Constantine made emperor. Constantyn est mestre à Rome reconu,[11]
Le honur à gwyer ke Rome avayt perdu.
Trahern. Trahern of sa route en Escoce fuyst,
La terre degastayt, e le pople occyst.
Octavyus l'oyt dire, of power li suyst,
En Westmerland dunc la bayl fycchyst,[12]
Trahern est[13] la coroune e la terre conquyst,
E sire Octavyus en prysone remyst.

---

[1] *le put amer*, B. *mult le volt amer*, D., with omission of the next line.

[2] *Maxence*, B. C. D.

[3] *le*, D.

[4] *ou il le baner*, B. *ouf levé baner*, C. *oue levée baner*, D.

[5] *Est ore*, B. C. D.

[6] *est en sa terre venu*, C.

[7] *de ceo aparceu*, B. *de cele est aperceu*, C. D.

[8] *des gentz*, D. "Interea Octa-
" vius dux Wisseorum insurrexit..
" . . Cumque id Constantino nun-
" ciatum fuisset, direxit Trahern,
" avunculum Helenæ, cum tribus
" legionibus, ut insulam Romanæ
" dignitati restituerit." Geoffrey of Monmouth. "Wace reduces the number to two legions:—"deux le-
" gions li fist livrer por Engletere
" delivrer."

[9] *Trahernus*, B.

[10] *vencu*, C.

[11] *retenu*, C. D.

[12] *desca la bataile se fist*, B. *de ça le baille se prist*, C. *de cea la bataylle fist*, D.

[13] B., C., and D. omit the word *est*.

For the love of his father he had great will to love him.
Constantine is brave and a great warrior;
The senator of Rome soon sends for him
To destroy Maxentius, who seeks to banish
The Romans out of the land, and disinherit them.
Constantine takes his journey to Rome,
And by his power slays the tyrant Maxentius.
While he was doing the deed of a knight,
The base Octavius, with raised banner,
Is now arrived in Britain by sea.

King Constantine has received the news,
How Octavius has come into his land.
An uncle of his from Rome perceived it,
He has given him three legions of people to his assistance;
Already they are all landed in Britain.
Trahern the valiant, of Roman descent,
Arrived at Winchester with all his army.
Constantine is retained master at Rome,
To rule the honour which Rome had lost.

Trahern with his army fled into Scotland,
Laid waste the land, and slaughtered the people.
Octavius heard of it, followed him with power,
Until a battle took place in Westmoreland.
Trahern has conquered the crown and the land,
And sir Octavius is thrown into prison.

Death of Trahern.

Octavyus of Trahern de pees en ad parlé,[1]
Par[2] Octavyus fu ensement[3] mené;
Hors yst de un chastel en une matyné
Of cent[4] à chival, Trahern descounsayllé[5]
Trovent en un val, où il ly[6] ount tué.
Brettayne of la coroune issynt est regayné.

Octavius obtains the kingdom.

Octavyus après tynt ij. aunz e trent
La terre de Brettayne en gouvernement.
Fiz nul avayt[7] à ky le drayt appent
De Brettayne après, dount il est dolent;
Fors une soule fyllie, à ky tut descent,
E cele pour marier[8] par commune assent,
Of tut sa reaume[9] après son fynement.
Countes e barouns, ke sount al parlement,
Dyunt, "Sir, à nous pur Deu ore entent;
"Conanere,[10] ton neveu, sir de l'orient,
"Serrayt tresbon rays,[11] e, sire, molt richement
"Marryez ta fyllie par or e par argent."[12]

Marries his only daughter to Maximian.

Duk de Cornewayle Caradok[13] estayt;
En Maxymyen[14] de Rome dist ke[15] s'acordayt,
Esposer la pucele del regne of tut le drayt,
Pur affermer la pees, ke touz jours endurayt.[16]
De deus[17] emperours la gwere commencayt,
Sour sir Maxymyen, ke à Rome s'en vayt.[18]
Caradok[19] à ly Mauryk, soun fiz, envayt.
Cil va, si li dye ke louer[20] pur ly serrayt

---

[1] *Octavus e Trahern de pes unt parlé*, B. *Octavius et Trahern de pees en unt parlé*, C. D.
[2] *Par quei*, B. *Pur quay*, D.
[3] *eesement*, C. *hesement*, D.
[4] *gent*, C.
[5] *descomfaille*, C.
[6] *où iluy*, D.
[7] *E nul fitz avoit*, B.
[8] *E celle bye marier*, C. *Et cele bie marier*, D.
[9] *son reaume*, B. *son realme*, C. D.
[10] *Coment*, B. *Conan*, C. D.
[11] *trop beaus roy*, B. *trobon rois*, D.
[12] *argement*, B.
[13] *Caraduk*, B. *Cradok*, C. *Carradok*, D.
[14] *E Maximien*, C.
[15] *dit-il qe*, B.
[16] *durreit*, B. *durait*, D.
[17] *des deus*, C.
[18] *senait*, D.
[19] *Cradok*, C.
[20] *bon*, B. *bone*, C. *bons*, D.

Octavius has parleyed with Trahern concerning peace,
By Octavius he was easily deceived;
He sallies from a castle one morning
With a hundred horsemen, Trahern alone
They find in a valley, where they killed him.
Britain with the crown is thus regained.

Octavius afterwards held two and thirty years
The land of Britain in government.
He had no son to whom the right belonged
Of Britain after, at which he was grieved;
Except an only daughter, to whom all descends,
And her to marry by common assent,
With all his realm, after his end.
Earls and barons, who are at the parliament,
Say, "Sire, now listen to us for God's love;
"Conan, thy nephew, lord of the east,
"Would be a very good king, and, sire, very richly
"Marry thy daughter with gold and with silver."

Caradoc was duke of Cornwall;
He said that he was of opinion that Maximian of Rome
Should marry the maiden with all her right to the realm,
To strengthen the peace, that it might last always.
The war began of two emperors
Against sir Maximian, who proceeded to Rome.
Caradoc sent to him Maurice his son.
He went, and told him that it would be good for him

La fillye le rays Octave, ke autre heyr n'avayt,
Ed dist ke en Brettayne salfe le menerayt;
E par commune assent cele esposerayt,
Of tuz cels[1] de Brettayne pus à Rome vendrayt,
Sur les deus emperours la victorye averayt.

Arrival of Maximian.

Maxymyen s'asent, of genz[2] k'yl avayt,
Par counseyl sire Maurik, à Hamptone aryvayt.
Ly veuz Octavyus[3] là li encountrayt,
Of la chyvalerye ke Maxymyen dotayt;
Par counseyl sir Mauryk, escotez k'il fesayt,[4]
Deus braunches de olyve en sa mayn portayt,
Al rays Octavyus s'en vait e li saluayt.[5]
Ly rays en noun de pees li prent,[6] si ly menayt
A la cité[7] de Loundres, où il se reposayt.

Maximian repairs to Britain;

Conaun, ke fu sage, de tresoun dotayt,
Demaunde par quele resoun of cel host entrayt[8]
La terre de Brettayne, ce dist[9] tut est descayt.
Mauryk respount, e dist, ke ben appendayt[10]
A riche homme aver route par terres où il alayt.[11]
E dist vers[12] Brettayne autre reson ne avayt,
For[s] prier les[13] de ayde,[14] si aver le poayt.

Marries the daughter of Octavius, and succeeds to the kingdom.

Cradok[15] e Mauryk al ray sount alez,
Ke par pere e fiz[16] taunt est enchauntez
Ke à Maxymyen[17] sa fillie ad donez.[18]
Son neveu Conaun devent molt irez,
De Albanye le rays sovent l'ad[19] maundez,

---

[1] *Que touz ceuz*, C. *Oue tuz cels de*, D.
[2] *M. s'asent oue genz*, C. *se assent oue gentz*, D.
[3] *Le veout Octavius*, C.
[4] *qe fesoit*, C. D.
[5] *et saluait*, D.
[6] *ly prist*, C.
[7] *A sa cité*, D.
[8] *par quel reson sur cele est entrayt*, C.
[9] *e dit*, B. C. D.
[10] *aprendoit*, C.
[11] *il vait*, B. C. D.
[12] *Et dist que vers Bretayne*, C.D.
[13] *els*, C.
[14] *de l'eide*, D.
[15] *Caraduc*, B. *Craddok*, C. *Carradok*, D. *Caradocus*, in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[16] *Ke par priere e dit*, B. *Ke par prier et ditz*, C. D.
[17] *Ke al Maximan*, D.
[18] This line is omitted in C.
[19] *le rei son poer ad m.*, B. *ly roys son poer l'ad m.*, C.

To have the daughter of king Octavius, who had no other heir,
And said that he would conduct him safe to Britain;
And by common assent he should marry her,
That he should then come to Rome with all those of Britain,
And he would gain the victory over the two emperors.

Maximian assents, with the people he had,
By the advice of sir Maurice, he arrived at Southampton.
The aged Octavius met him there,
With the chivalry which Maximian feared;
By counsel of sir Maurice, hear what he did,
He carried two branches of olive in his hand,
Repairs to king Octavius, and saluted him.
The king receives him in the name of peace, and conducted him
To the city of London, where he was resting himself.
Conan, who was prudent, suspected treason,
Asks for what reason he entered with that army
The land of Britain, and says it is all deceit.
Maurice replies, and says, that it well belonged
To a rich man to have a company through the lands in which he went.
And said he had no other reason for visiting Britain,
Except to ask them for aid, if he could have it.

Caradoc and Maurice are gone to the king,
That by father and son he is so much enchanted
That he has given his daughter to Maximian.
His nephew Conan becomes much enraged,
The king of Albany has often sent him aid,

Sovent sount en gwere, descomfiz maintefez,
Ore un, ore un autre;[1] al darayn sount accordez;
A sire Maxymyen demorent les regnez.

Settlement of the Britons in Armorica.

Maximyen e Conaun en Fraunce sount passez,
[Pur conquere le[s] terres, viles, e citez;[2]]
Molt de seygnuryes ount-il là gaynez.[3]
Les barouns de Fraunce sount lour alyez.
La terre devers le suy[4] ount-il conquestez,
Ke Brettayne le[5] Mayndre ount ore appelez;[6]
E al duk Conaun pur regne est-ele[7] donez,
E de molt fyn or est Conaun corounez,
De la terre ke[8] Armoryk avaunt fu nomez.

They seek wives from their own country.

Conaun tynt soun regne en Brettayne delà;
Cradok[9] est jà mort en Cornewayle par dezà.[10]
Trop bele fyllie avayt, son noun fu Ursula.
Le ray sire Dynotus[11] après son frere[12] regna;
A ky le ray Conaun messagers envea,[13]
De[14] ly e ses chuvalers, marier vodra
Of lygnages[15] de Brettayne, e à Deu vowa
Ke jà à nul Frauncays marier se fra.
A soun hoes[16] demeyne pur Ursula prya,
Pur les autres[17] beles ke en sa terre trova
Al hoes ses[18] chuvalers, e ben les douera,

---

[1] *Ore l'un, ore l'autre*, B. *Ore un, ore altre*, C. The account of Geoffrey of Monmouth is so carelessly abridged here that it becomes obscure. It may be well to state that Conan, in his anger, applies to the king of Albany or Scotland to obtain assistance against Maximian; and the war, in which sometimes one is defeated, and sometimes the other, is between Conan and his ally and Maximian.

[2] This line is omitted in MS. A.

[3] *des seignuries ount-il jà gaynez*, D.

[4] *su*, B. *south*, D.

[5] *la*, D.

[6] *dunt-il apellez*, B. C. D.

[7] *est-ele* omitted in B.

[8] *de*, A. *qe*, B. C. D.

[9] *Caraduk*, B. *Craddok*, C. *Carradok*, D.

[10] *Carradok est mort en Cornewaille de scâ*, D.

[11] *Amotus*, C.

[12] *son frere après*, B. D.

[13] *manda*, B. *maunda*, C. D.

[14] *Qe*, B. C.

[15] *lygnage*, D.

[16] *A son ops*, C. *A son oes*, D.

[17] *Pur totes les altres beles*, D.

[18] *Al ops des chivalers*, C. *oes*, D.

They are often at war, many times discomfited,
Now one, now another; at last they are reconciled;
The kingdoms remain to sir Maximian.
Maximian and Conan have crossed into France,
To conquer the lands, towns, and cities;
They have there won many lordships.
The barons of France are their allies.
They have conquered the land towards the south,
Which they have now called Lesser Britain;
And it is given to duke Conan as a kingdom,
And Conan is crowned with very fine gold,
King of the land which was before called Armorica.

Conan held his kingdom in Britain beyond sea;
Caradoc is already dead in Cornwall on this side.
He had a very fair daughter, her name was Ursula.
The king sir Dinotus reigned after his brother;
To whom king Conan sent messengers,
On the part of himself and his knights, he wished to marry
Women of the lineage of Britain, and he made a vow to God
That he would never contract marriage with a French-woman.
He asked for Ursula for his own choice,
For the other fair women who were found in his land
For the choice of his knights, and he will give them good dowers,

Pur popler de son saunk la terre k'yl gayna.
Le ray Dynotus l'ottrye,[1] les puceles l'enveya.

Fate of the eleven thousand virgins.

Un[ze] myl[2] vyrges, fillyes[3] de noble gent,
Et [l]x. myl[4] des autres, al ray[5] par maundement
Sount venuz[6] à Loundres, par nef s'en vount al vent
Vers le ray Conaun, en mer lour prist tourment,
Dount naes sount les nefs, l'estory dist ben trent.[7]
Ly autre governers al sygle lour prent,[8]
Of xi. myl verges[9] en Barbarye descent.[10]
Gawayn,[11] ray de Hunes, lors fu là en present,[12]
E Melga, ray de Pyctes,[13] il i fu ensement,
E veyent les puceles, chescun bel e gent,
Approcher les volent pur fere lour talent.
Eles vount par accorde à martyrement,
Pur ceo ke nule de totes a leccherye se assent.

Maximian repairs to Rome.

A Rome est ore la gwere e graunt contencion.
Sire Maximyen i va, of tuz li[14] baroun,
E leest Brettaygne la Graunde[15] sans garde e garnyson.[16]

Invasion of Guanius and Melga.

Sir Gawayn[17] l'oyt dire e Melga li feloun,
S'en vount of graunt poer vers cel regioun,
En Albanye arryvent, e fount destruccioun,
E Westmerland après ount pris en baundoun,

---

[1] *Le rey Dynot l'otroit*, B. *Amotus*, C. The name is Dionotus in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *Un mil*, A. *Unze mil*, B. C. D.

[3] *virge feylles*, C. *fylles de bone gent*, D.

[4] *sexant mil*, B. *sessant mil*, C. *xl. mil*, D. "Collegit per diversas "provincias nobilium filias, numero "undecim millia; de ceteris ex "infima gente creatis sexaginta "milia." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[5] *aveyt*, D.

[6] *Et sunt venuz*, D.

[7] *l'estori dit qe trent*, B. *l'estorie dist qe trent*, C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth does not mention the number of ships lost.

[8] *tost se prent*, C. *al sigle se prent*, C. D.

[9] *mil des virgines*, B. *des virges*, D.

[10] "naves . . . quæ totum peri- "culum evaserunt appulsæ sunt in "barbaras insulas." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *Guanius*, B. *Gawyn*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him Guanius.

[12] *rey des Hunes lors fu là present*, D.

[13] *Peyhtes*, B. *Pictes i fu*, D.

[14] *ouf ly tuz*, C.

[15] *la Graund Bretaygne*, C.

[16] *garde ou garnison*, B.

[17] *Guanius*, B. *Guyan*, D.

In order to people with his own blood the land he had won.
King Dinotus grants it, and sent the maidens.

Eleven thousand virgins, daughters of noble people,
And sixty thousand others, to the king at his command
Are come at London, they proceed on shipboard with the wind
Towards king Conan, a storm took them at sea,
Whereby the ships are sunk, the history says quite thirty.
It drives the others by their sails,
Lands them with eleven thousand virgins in Barbary.
Guanius, king of the Huns, was there in presence,
And Melga, king of the Picts, was there also,
And they see the maidens, each fair and elegant,
They seek to approach them to do their will.
The maidens go by agreement to martyrdom,
Because not one of them all will consent to lechery.

At Rome there is now war and great contention.
Sir Maximian goes there, with all the barons,
And leaves Great Britain without guard or garrison.
Guanius heard of it and the wicked Melga,
They proceed with great power towards this region,
They arrive in Albany, and make destruction,
And afterwards they have taken Westmoreland at their will,

Les cytez e les viles wastent par arçoun,[1]
Les homes e les femmes par occysioun.
Lors ount[2] ayde de Rome sir Gracyen[3] par noun,
Des gens pur sa batayle[4] of double legyoun.
Sire Gawayn[5] e Melga courent à raundoun,
Les chacent hors de terre à lour confusyoun.
Death of Maximian. Taunt[6] morust Maxymyen à Rome par tresoun,
Les parenz Gracien furent l'enchesoun.[7]
Usurpation of Gracian. Si tost cum Maximyen out perdu la vye,
E Gracyen le seet, Brettayne ad saysye,
Corouner se fet de la seygnurye.
Orgullyous e fel devynt en sa bayllie.
Le pople se counsayl par mout graunt envye,
Assis ount Gracyen e pris par mestrye.
His death. Là morust[8] des playes, la char[9] fu si purye,
Ke hom ne la pout procher, là gist desevelye.[10]
New invasion. Gawayn[11] e Melga sount venuz par assyse[12]
De Irelaunde en Brettayne pur aver la prise,[13]
Of genz de Danemark e de Noreweye,
Tuent e destruent par launce e par espeye;
Perduz[14] est la terre, si n'ayt soccours[15] e aye.
La remisayle à Rome[16] lour lettre enveye[17]

---

[1] *Wastunt par arson*, B. *par arsoun*, C. D.

[2] *vint*, B. C. D.

[3] *Gracian*, C. D. "Cum ergo "tanta calamitas Maximiano nun- "ciata fuisset, misit Gratianum "Municipem cum duabus legioni- "bus ut auxilium subvectaret." Geoffrey of Monmouth. The name, of course, was taken by Geoffrey from Orosius, but the latter represents Gratianus Municeps in a totally different light. "Apud Bri- "tannias Gratianus, municeps ejus- "dem insulæ, tyrannus creatur et "occiditur." Oros. Hist., lib. vii., c. 40.

[4] *pur bataille*, C. D.

[5] *Guanius*, B. *Sur Guyan*, D.

[6] *Lors*, B. C. D.

[7] *furent acheson*, C.

[8] *Il morust*, B. C. D.

[9] *sa char*, B. C. D.

[10] This line is omitted in B., C., and D.

[11] *Guanius*, B. *Gwyan*, D.

[12] *par assaie*, B. D. *par asuye*, C.

[13] *praye*, B. C. D.

[14] *Perdue*, B.

[15] *si socour n'eit*, C. D.

[16] *de Rome*, B.

[17] *lettres*, C. D. "Legati Romam "cum epistolis mittuntur." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

Lay waste the cities and towns by burning,
The men and women by slaughter.
Then comes to their aid from Rome one named sir Gracian,
With two legions of people for his war.
They march against Guanius and Melga with vigour,
Drive them out of the land to their confusion.
Then Maximian died at Rome through treason,
The kindred of Gracian were the cause of it.

As soon as Maximian had lost his life,
And Gracian knows it, he has seized Britain,
And causes himself to be crowned to the lordship of it.
He became haughty and cruel in his rule,
The people have taken counsel in very great hatred,
They have besieged Gracian and taken him by force.
He died there of his wounds, his flesh was so rotten,
That no one could approach him, he lies there unburied.

Guanius and Melga have come at the prospect,
From Ireland into Britain to have the prey,
With people of Denmark and of Norway,
They slay and destroy with spear and sword;
The land is lost, unless it have succour and help.
Those who survive send their letter to Rome

The Romans send aid,

Pur ayde des Romayns; li Romayn les ottrye.[1]
Li seygnurye est lour, li Brettoun fra la paye.[2]
Venuz sount de Rome chuvalers assez,
Ke Gawayn[3] e Melga hors ount enchacez;
Les cytez e les vyles ount remesonez;

Build a wall, and leave.

De une mer e l'autre[4] un mur ount levez,[5]
Encountre les Danays pur sauver les countrez.
Repairer à Rome sount-il counseyllyez;
A l'erceveske Gutelyn pris ount-il congez.
Coment il parle al pople, seygnurs, escotez.

Archbishop Guethelin's address.

Le pople de Brettayne fet Gutelyn[6] assembler
A Loundres, e comence pytousement parler.[7]
" Le ray Maxymen fu nostre justiser,
" Ke hors de Brettayne mena[8] le poer;
" Tuez sount[9] à Rome touz[10] saunz recoverer.[11]
" Perdu fust nostre terre, ne fust le graunt eyder
" Ke nous vynt de Rome, ore volt[12] repayrer,
" Pur tote nostre treve ne volent demorer.
" Dès hore est la terre[13] à ky la puyt gayner.[14]
" Pur ceo devum touz Deu là sus pryer,[15]
" Ke il poer nous prest pur la terre salver."

Guanius and Melga return,

Gawayn[16] e Melga, kaun[t] pur vèyrs savaynt
Ke touz les Romayns à Rome retornaynt,
En Albanye arer of power arryvaynt,

---

[1] *Pur aide de Romains, les Romains les ottraie*, B. *Pur aver eyde*, C. *Pur eyde aver des R.*, D.

[2] This line is omitted in C. and D.

[3] *Guanius*, B. *Guyan*, D.

[4] *De l'un mer à l'autre*, B. C. D.

[5] *unt-il levez*, C. D.

[6] *Gouncelin*, B. *Gutlyn*, D. "Cum " autem convenissent cuncti, com- " missus est sermo Guethelino Lon- " doniensi metropolitano, qui ipsos " in hæc verba adivit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] *precher*, B. C. D.

[8] *menoit*, B. *amena*, C. *menayt*, D.

[9] *fut*, B. *fust*, C. D.

[10] *tur*, B.

[11] *retourner*, C. D.

[12] *qe ore veut*, B. *qe ore voet*, C. *ke ore volt*, D.

[13] *nostre terre*, B.

[14] *le veut gaigner*, B. *le poet gaygner*, C. *la volt gaygner*, D.

[15] *E pur ceo . . . . bien à Dieu prier*, B. *E pur ceo devum tuz à Deu prier*, C. *E pur ceo devoms touz bien à Dieu pryer*, D.

[16] *Guanius*, B. *Gwyan*, D.

For aid from the Romans; the Romans grant it to them.
The lordship is theirs, the Briton will furnish the pay.

Knights enough are come from Rome,
Who have driven out Guanius and Melga;
They have rebuilt the cities and towns;
They have raised a wall from one sea to the other,
To protect the countries against the Danes.
They are advised to return to Rome,
And have taken leave of archbishop Guethelin.
How he addresses the people, lords, listen.

Guethelin causes the people of Britain to assemble
At London, and begins to speak imploringly.
" King Maximian was our ruler,
" Who led the power out of Britain;
" They are all slain at Rome without recovery.
" Our land would be ruined, but for the great aid
" Which came to us from Rome, now it will go back,
" For all our tribute they will not remain.
" Henceforth the land belongs to him who can win
" it.
" Therefore we ought all to pray to God above,
" That he lend us power to save the land."

Guanius and Melga, when they knew for truth
That all the Romans had returned to Rome,
Came back to Albany in force,

Des Pyctes[1] e Danays mouz des genz[2] menaynt,
La terre de Albanye par tut destruaynt;
Le mur ke Romayn fist mult sovent prochaynt.[3]
Les vilayns de la terre assignez estaynt[4]
De garder le mur, e sovent rebotaynt
Gawayn[5] e Melga, mès al darayn cessaynt.
Kaunt Brettouns fayllirent, e à Rome envaynt
A prier lour eyde,[6] e Romayns deveaynt,[7]
Les messagers retournent, les Brettouns dolaynt,[8]
Fors de l'eveske de Loundres ayde nul avaynt.[9]

Archbishop Guethelin.

Li bon eveske, Gutelyn[10] le oy nomer,
S'en vayt[11] en Brettayne le Mayndre outre mer,
Ses parens i trouve, ke ly tenent cher,
Adroynus ly rays[12] tent le regne enter;
A ky cel erceveske est alé counter
Coment la Graunde Brettayne[13] se perde saunz governer,
E dist, "Maundé ws suy de soccours prier,
" Le regne de Brettayne à ws comaunder."
Li rays Adroen,[14] avertiz e sage,
Respount à l'erceveske en[15] curtayse langage,
" Ceste Brettayne la Mayndre est mon heritage,
" Jà l'ay en demene sanz contek e gage;[16]
" Jeo ne lerray ceste pur autre heritage,[17]
" Ke à nul me fayndray,[18] ke sait de moun lynage;

---

[1] *Peihtes*, B.
[2] *assez de genz*, B. C. D.
[3] This line is omitted, by evident carelessness, in D.
[4] *assez i estaient*, B.
[5] *Guanius*, B.
[6] *de aide*, B. C. *de l'ayd*, D.
[7] *le veoint*, B. *le veaynt*, C. *la veaynt*, D.
[8] *dalaynt*, C.
[9] *saveient*, B.
[10] *ercevesqe Gouncelin*, B. *ercevesqe Gutlyn*, D.
[11] *S'en va*, B.
[12] *Aldroel le rei*, B. *Adroenus reis*, D. *Aldroenus* in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[13] *Bretaygne le Grand*, C.
[14] *Aldroel*, B.
[15] *qe en*, C.
[16] *e sage*, C.
[17] *Ceste joie ne lerrai pur autre seigneurage*, B. *je ne lerray ceşt pur altry seygnurage*, C. *Ceste joye ne lerray pur altre seignurage*, D.
[18] *N'à nul ne fendroi*, B. *Jà à nul ne faudra*, C. *Ne à nul me faudray*, D.

Brought with them many people of the Picts and Danes,
Destroyed everywhere the land of Albany;
Very frequently they approached the wall made by the Romans.
The peasantry of the land were appointed
To guard the wall, and often repulsed
Guanius and Melga, but at last they gave up.
When Britons failed, and sent to Rome
To supplicate their aid, and the Romans refused,
The messengers return, the Britons lamented,
They had no one to aid them except the bishop of London.

The good bishop, Guethelin I heard him named,
Goes into Britain the Less beyond sea,
Finds his kinsmen there, who hold him very dear;
Adroenus the king holds the whole kingdom;
To whom the archbishop is gone to relate
How Great Britain is going to ruin for want of a ruler,
And says, "I am sent to you to ask for succour,
"The kingdom of Britain to offer to you."

King Adroenus, experienced and prudent,
Replies to the archbishop in courteous language,
"This Britain the Less is my inheritance,
"I have it in possession without dispute or pledge,
"I will not leave it for another lordship,
"But I will not desert any one who is of my lineage;

Adroenus sends his brother Constantine;

" Constantyn,[1] mon frere, enprendra cel vayage,
" Of deus myl bon chuvalers, chescun en pleyn age,[2]
" E deus mil des esquyers, e iij. mil de pedage.
" Ore va, sir erceveske, of cel vasselage,
" Salvez[3] Brettayne à tut[4] mon cosinage."
Le erceveske est lez, e soun congé[5] demaunde,
E vayt of Constantyn en Brettayne le Grande.
Kant il sount venuz en Westmerlaunde,[6]
La terre trovent destrute,[7] le pople mendinaunde;
La terre gist warette,[8] si n'y ad viaunde,
Fors pessoun de mer[9] e bestes[10] de la launde.
Chacent lour enemys, les tollent lour demaunde.[11]

Who is made king of Britain.

Venent[12] à Cyrecester, où Gutelyn comaunde
Le regne à Constantyn, of tote là gerlaunde.
[Trestut la comune i est assentaunte.[13]]
Constantyn est rays, et la terre gwye;
Une damoysele ad pris pur femme e pur amye,
Parent à l'ercevesk, ke l'avayt[14] nurrye,
Trays fiz avayt,[15] le nouns pur veirs ws dye,
Constans, Ambrosius,[16] Uther; Constans en le abbeye
De Wyncestre est moyne, le ray son pere ly prie.
Ses freres fet-il noryr mult ben, ne dotez mye.
En le dyme an de soun regne, un traytur, par envye,
Ke servist le rays,[17] un jour, à mydye,

---

[1] *Constancius*, B.
[2] *en paynage*, C.
[3] *Et salvez*, B. C. D.
[4] *et tut*, B. *et tote*, D.
[5] *et congé*, C.
[6] *Sunt arivez à Toteneis, plus vount en Westmerlande*, B.
[7] *en destruction*, C.
[8] *warecte*, C. *waret*, D.
[9] *de la mer*, B.
[10] *beste*, D.
[11] *lour viande*, B.
[12] *E vount à Cicester, où Gouncelin comande*, B. *Vount*, C. D. " Et facta intra Silcestriam con-" cione, erexerunt Constantinum in " regem, regnique diadema capiti " ejus imposuerunt." Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[13] This line is omitted in A. and C.
[14] *qi le avoyt*, C. " Dederunt " etiam ei conjugem, ex nobili " Romanorum genere ortam, quam " Guethelinus archiepiscopus edu-" caverat; cumque illam cogno-" visset, genuit ex illa tres filios, " quorum nomina fuerunt Constans, " Aurelius Ambrosius, et Uther " Pendragon." Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[15] *engendroyt*, C.
[16] *Ambros*, B. D.
[17] *Qe servist lis*, C.

" My brother Constantine will undertake this expedi-
" tion,
" With two thousand good knights, each in the vigour of age,
" And two thousand esquires, and three thousand foot.
" Now go, sir archbishop, with this army,
" Save Britain for all my cousins."

The archbishop is joyful, and asks his leave,
And goes with Constantine into Great Britain.
When they are come into Westmoreland
They find the land destroyed, and the people beggars;
The land lies uncultivated, and there is no food,
Except fish of the sea and beasts of the forest.
They drive away their enemies, take their food from them.
They come to Cirencester, where Guethelin delivers
The kingdom to Constantine, with all the crown.
All the commons are consenting to it.

Constantine is king, and rules the land;
He has taken a damsel for his wife and love,
A relative of the archbishop, who had educated her,
He had three sons, the names I tell you truly,
Constans, Ambrosius, Uther; Constans in the abbey
Of Winchester is a monk, at the request of the king his father.
He caused his brothers to be very well educated, doubt it not.
In the tenth year of his reign, a traitor, through hatred,
Who served the king, one day, at noon,

Tua sir Constantyn en une vergerye,[1]
Vortyger le fel, ke covayt la ballye.
La terre de Brettayne gist ore destablye;
Ne sevent ky fere rays de la seygnurye,
Constans raised to the throne. A Constantyn[2] est alez ke l'ordre ad gwerpye,
Ke rays serrayt del regne, Vortyger l'afye.
Del faus sank estayt de la Walesserye.[3]
Vestuz est Constans en regal[4] vestement;
Vortiger à Loundres le mene gentement,[5]
E par graunt vaidye le coroune ly tent.
Constans de Brettayne le regal prent;[6]
Treason of Vortiger. E sire Vortiger fet justizer le gent,[7]
Ke estudye e pense quel houre et coment
Avenir put al regne; li rays ad nul parent,
Fors soul ses deus freres, ke sunt en juvent,
En garde of Vortiger[8] son or e son argent.[9]
E en graund descayte dist-il al ray[10] sovent,
Ke gens li venent sour, covent ke say defent.[11]
Li rays respount e dist, "Sire, ben me assent;
"Ke tote ma terre sayt à ton comaundement."
Vortiger fet tost de Pyctes[12] venir cent
En l'ostel le ray pur servir privement.
Le ray les honur plus ke à ly[13] apent;
Murder of king Constans. Entrez sount sa[14] chaumbre mout sodaynement,
Le rays ount-il jà tuez, sanz concelement,
De son chef à Vortiger ount-il fet present.
Perduz ad le regne, len cloister[15] ensement.

---

[1] *en le vergerye*, C.

[2] *Constans*, B. D. "Et adivit "Constantem monachum." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[3] *Walecherie*, B. *Walescherye*, C. D.

[4] *en real v.*, D.

[5] *gentilment*, C.

[6] *E Constans de B. le r. emprent*, B. *Et Constans de B. le regalté en prent*, C. *en prent*, D.

[7] *E fet Vortiger justiser la gent*, B. C. D.

[8] *en garde ad Vortiger*, B. *à Vortiger*, C.

[9] This line is omitted in D.

[10] *dist al ray sovent*, D.

[11] *he se defent*, D.

[12] *de Putes*, B.

[13] *Le rei les honure, e plus qe li*, B.

[14] *en sa*, C.

[15] *le cloystre*, C.

Slew sir Constantine in a garden,
Vortiger the wretch, who coveted his kingdom.
The land of Britain lies now unsettled;
They know not whom to make king of the lordship.
He (Vortiger) has repaired to Constans, who has deserted his (monastic) order,
Vortiger assures him that he shall be king of the kingdom.
He was of the false blood of the Welshery.

Constans is garbed in the royal vest;
Vortiger leads him nobly to London,
And by great artfulness has given him the crown.
Constans assumes the regality of Britain;
And he makes Vortiger the governor of the people,
Who studies and reflects when and how
He can arrive at the kingdom; the king has no relative,
Except only his two brothers, who are in their minority,
In Vortiger's keeping his gold and silver.
And in great deceit he says to the king often
That people are coming to attack him, and he must be on his defence.
The king replies and says, "Sir, I quite agree to it;
"Let all my land be at your command."
Vortiger immediately brings a hundred Picts
To serve secretly in the king's household.
The king honours them more than he ought;
They have entered his chamber very suddenly,
They have already slain the king, without concealment,
Of his head they have made a present to Vortiger.
He has lost the kingdom, and the cloister also.

Vortiger usurps the throne.

Le ray Constans est mort, sicom oy avez,
E sir Vortiger rays est corounez.
Haut se porte par tut, mout est-il dotez.
Uther Pendragoun e Ambrose le aynez,
Freres al ray Constans, sont la mer passez
En Brettayne le Mayndre à lour parentez.
E à Cauntrebiry est Vortiger alez;
Noveles ad resceu ke iij. nefs arryvez
Sount pur veirs en Kent of chuvalers armez,[1]

Arrival of Hengist and Horsa.

Horsus[2] e Hengist, de Germenye sount nez,
De cele[3] chuvalerye duters[4] appelez.
Le ray Vortiger à ly les ad maundez,[5]
Dount sount, e dount venent, les ad aresonez.
Hengist respount, e dist si com tost orrez.[6]
" Sire, salve ta pes, nous sumes[7] de Germenye,
" Enchacez par le[8] soverayn ke la terre gwye;
" E pur ceo[9] ke nous ne avums terre ne manauntye,
" Par taunt[10] sumes entrez en vostre seygnurye,
" E pryums servyse, si ws plest,[11] pur vostre genturye."
Vortiger demaunde[12] ke Hengist ly dye
Quele est loure creaunce; e il[13] respount e prye:
" Sire [rays] de[14] Brettayne, ne ws coroucez mye;
" Neez sumes e norryz de la paenerye;
" Nos deus en ky nous creoums[15] sunt en la mau-
" merye.

Gods worshipped by the Saxons.

" Sire, si ws plest, lour nouns[16] ws dirroums,
" Saturnus, Mars, Jupiter, Mercurius, Appolynus,[17]

---

[1] This line is omitted in B.
[2] *Hors*, B.
[3] *teel*, C.
[4] *dustrez*, B. *dustres*, C.
[5] *Vortiger les ad demandez*, B. C. D.
[6] *e dit si cum vus orrez*, B.
[7] *sumus*, B.
[8] *le* omitted in B.
[9] *Pur ceo qe*, B. C. *Pur ceo qe nus n'y avoms*, D.
[10] *E par taunt*, B. C. D.
[11] The words, *si ws plest*, are omitted in B.
[12] *commaunde*, C.
[13] *il* omitted in B.
[14] *Sire roi de*, B. *roys*, C. *Sire rey de*, D.
[15] *deus qe nus creoms*, D.
[16] *les nouns*, B.
[17] *appelloms*, B. D. *Appollonis*, C.

King Constans is dead, as you have heard,
And sir Vortiger is crowned king.
He carries himself high everywhere, much is he feared.
Uther Pendragon and his elder brother Ambrosius,
Brothers of king Constans, have passed the sea
Into Britain the Less to their kindred.
And Vortiger is gone to Canterbury;
He has received news that three ships have arrived
In Kent, in truth, with armed knights.
Horsus and Hengist, they are by birth from Germany,
Named the leaders of that knighthood,
King Vortiger has had them brought into his presence,
He has questioned them whence they are and whence they come.
Hengist replies, and says, as you will soon hear.

" Sire, by your leave, we are from Germany,
" Banished by the sovereign who rules the land;
" And, because we have neither land nor dwelling " place,
" We are therefore entered into your lordship,
" And ask for service, if you please, for your gen- " tility."
Vortiger asks Hengist to tell him
What is their faith; and he replies, and says:
" Sir king of Britain, be not angry;
" We are born and bred in paganism;
" Our gods in whom we believe belong to idolatry.

" Sire, if you please, we will tell you their names,
" Saturn, Mars, Jupiter, Mercury, Apollo,

" E Venus, e dame Dyane,[1] ke nous aoroums."
Lors ceo dist Vortiger,[2] " Nous ws responoums,
" De vostre mescreaunce durement endoloums,
" Mès pur ceo ke nos enemys, sicom nous[3] enten-
" doums,
" Sou[r] nous beent coure,[4] e[5] abatre nos mesouns,
" De ws e de vos genz eide desiroums,
" Ws touz en tele servyse retenir voloums."
The Scots defeated. Escotez ke avynt[6] après saunz targer.
L'ost d'Albanye se fet apparayller,
La terre devers le North ount pris à gaster.
Vortiger le oyt dire, le Humbre va passer,
Les paens en sa route, ke sevent del mester,
S'en vount de bon ayre of les[7] Escoz medler,
Countes e barouns fount-il tresbucher;
La victorie est lour, les Escoz ne pount durer.[8]
Vortiger retourne en Lyndesey[9] arer,
Terre e manauntye à Hengist fet doner.[10]
Hengist asks for land to build a castle. Kant Hengyst avayt propre[11] terre e tenement,
Ala dire[12] à Vortiger mout curtaysement,[13]
" Sire rays, si ws plest, ore à may entent:
" Jeo suy de gentil sank e de noble gent,
" Ws affyez de may,[14] si poez surement.
" De une place de terre ws pri ke bonement
" Doner me voylliez, si voster quer se assent,
" Un chastel peus fere à vostre avauncement,[15]
" E où pussums ensembler, pur tenir[16] parlement."

---

[1] *E Venus la Diane*, B. D. *Et Venus de la Dyane*, C.
[2] *Lors dit Vortiger*, B. C. *Lors dist le rey Vortiger*, D.
[3] The word *nous* is omitted in B. and D.
[4] *Sur nous bient cure*, B. and D. *Sur nus beent cure*, C.
[5] *e* omitted in B. and D.
[6] *cum avint*, B. C. D.
[7] *od les*, B.
[8] *l'Escoz ne poet dorer*, C.
[9] *à Lyndesay*, C.
[10] *va doner*, B.
[11] *ad proprie*, B. *ad propre*, D.
[12] *Va dire*, B.
[13] *couvertement*, B. C. D.
[14] *en moy*, B. C.
[15] *Où chastel pusse fere pur vostre aprowement*, B. *U chastel puis fere pour vostre apruement*, C. D.
[16] *E où nous pussoms ensemble tenir p.*, B. *E ù puissoms e. t. p.*, C. D.

" And Venus, and lady Diana, whom we worship."
Then says Vortiger, "We answer you,
" We deeply lament your misbelief,
" But inasmuch as our enemies, as we understand,
" Are eager to attack us, and batter down our houses,
" We desire assistance of you and of your people,
" And are willing to retain you all in such service."

Hear what happened afterwards without delay.
The army of Albany gets itself ready,
They have begun to ravage the land towards the north.
Vortiger hears of it, goes and crosses the Humber,
The pagans in his army, who are knowing in such work,
Go willingly to fight with the Scots,
They put to the rout earls and barons,
The victory is theirs, the Scots cannot resist.
Vortiger returns into Lindsey,
Causes land and habitation to be given to Hengist.

When Hengist had his own land and tenement,
He went and said to Vortiger very courteously,
" Sir king, if you please, now listen to me:
" I am of gentle blood and of noble race,
" Put your trust in me, as you may with safety.
" For a space of ground I ask you honestly
" To give me, if your heart agree to it,
" That I may make a castle for your advantage,
" And where we may meet to hold conference."

Vortiger respount, e dye vertiement,[1]
" Ceo ne frai-jeo pas,[2] saunz commune assent."
Taunt[3] prye Hengist, k'il ad grauntement
De taunt cum une curraye put teyndre par estent.
Hengist builds Thangcaster. Hengyst par vaidye le quir de un tor enprent,[4]
De un cutel le tranche en un corraye[5] descent,
Ke place[6] pur un chastel assez large comprent.[7]
La thour est tost levé, le mur ensement;
Tauncastre ad à noun,[8] où Hengist se defent.
Après le chastel fet, vyndrent de Germenye
Dis e viij. nefs[9] playns de chuvalerye,[10]
Of la fyllye[11] Hengist, plus bele ne fust en vye,
Arrival of Rowena. Rouenne[12] avayt à noun, Vortiger l'afye,
E la prent à femme, escotez la vaydye.
Rowena and Vortiger. Al chastel de Thauncastre vynt sire Vortiger.[13]
Devaunt li en la sale, tost après manger,
Vynt Rouenne[12] la bele le ray saluer,
Of un coupe de or playn de vyn cler,
E dist, "Sir, wessail!"[14] Le ray fet demaunder
Ke ceo sayt à dire, e dist ly translater,
" Sire, ele bayt à ws, e ws resaluer
" La devez par Drinkhayl é la baiser."[15]

---

[1] *e dit verroiment*, B. *et dist verrayement*, C. D.

[2] *Qe ceo ne freit-il pas*, B. D.

[3] *Mès tant*, B.

[4] *tor prent*, B.

[5] *une correie*, B.

[6] *La place*, B.

[7] *large prent*, B.

[8] *Thuancastre ad noun*, B. *Twangcastre*, C. *Twancastre*, D. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, " Dictum namque fuit postmodum " Britannice Kaercorrei, Saxonice " vero Thancastre, quod Latino " sermone castrum corrigiæ appel- " lamus." The place here meant is uncertain.

[9] *Tresze niefs*, B. *xviii. neefs*, C. D.

[10] *de sa chivalrie*, B.

[11] *Od la fidle*, B.

[12] *Ronewenne*, B. *Rouen*, C. D. *Rowena*, Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[13] *Thuancastre vint Vortiger*, B. *Twangcastre*, C. *Thwancastre*, D.

[14] *wissail*, B. *weysseyl*, C. *wesseyl*, D. " Accedens deinde pro- " pius, regi flexis genibus dixit, " *Laford king, wacht heil!* . . . . . " Respondens deinde Vortegirnus, " *Drinc heil!* jussit puellam potare." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[15] *e la devez beiser*, B. *par drink hayle, et la devez bayser*, C. *par drenkheyl, et la devez bayser*, D.

Vortiger replies, and says in truth,
" That I will not do, without the common assent."
Hengist begs so hard, that he gets by grant
As much in extent as he can enclose with a hide.
Hengist craftily takes the skin of a bull,
Cuts it with a knife into a thin thong,
Which encloses a place large enough for a castle.
The tower is soon raised, and the wall also ;
It is named Thangcaster, where Hengist defends himself.

After the castle is made, there came from Germany
Eighteen ships full of knights,
With the daughter of Hengist, there lived no fairer woman,
Rowena was her name, Vortiger affiances her,
And takes her for his wife, listen to the stratagem.

Sir Vortiger came to the castle of Thangcaster.
Before him in the hall, immediately after dinner,
Came Rowena the fair to salute the king,
With a cup of gold full of clear wine,
And said, " Sir, weshail ! " The king inquired
What that meant, and the interpreter told him,
" Sire, she drinks to you, you ought the salute
" To return by Drinkhail ! and kissing her."

Hengist par cautel le ray fet enyverer,[1]
Ensi ke[2] Vortiger va Rouenne exposer,
E donne à sire Hengist Kente tut enter,
Saunz sue sir Gorangoun,[3] ke là devait regner
Vortiger avayt de une autre mulier
Trays fiz engendrez, ly aynez Vortimer,
Kantygerne e Fascent[4] les altres oy nomer;
L'amur dame Rouenne[5] les fet oblier.
Les parenz Hengist tost fet-il[6] maunder,
Octa, e Dissa, e Gerdyker[7] le ber;
Of ccc. nefs de gens passez sont[8] la mer.
Cel tens en Brettayne vynt saint Germayn precher,
E renoveler la fay, la creaunce affermer.
Les genz de Germenye le rays tent si cher,
E taunz[9] de riche[s] douns les fet de son doner;[10]
E cels par my la terre comencent à popler,
Ke noumbre de paens à Kristyens ad poer,[11]
Ke Brettayne se doute[12] de mal encombrer.
Tuz dyent en commun, e cryent[13] de fyn quer,
Ke Cristien e paen ne dayent[14] communer.
Vortiger despisent, e vount corouner
Vortymer son fiz, e le fount regner.[15]

Arrival of new settlers from Germany.

---

[1] *fet iverer*, B. *fet enveyer*, D.

[2] *Issint qe*, B. *Issy qe*, C. D.

[3] *sire Goragon*, B. *Goragoner*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him *Goranganus*.

[4] *Katigern e Pascence*, B. *Kartigern et Faschent*, C. *Paschent*, D. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are: "Generaverat namque filios "primitus, quibus erant nomina "Vortimer, Katigernus, et Pas-"centius."

[5] *Rouener*, D.

[6] *fet-il tost*, C.

[7] *et Ebissa et Kerdih*, B. *Octa et Edissa et Cerdilz ly beer*, C. *Kerdik*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Missis illico legatis, vene-"runt Octa et Ebissa et Cerdich, "cum trecentis navibus armata "manu repletis."

[8] *Od treis cens niefs de gens passez unt la mer*, B.

[9] *tant*, B.

[10] *du son doner*, C.

[11] *est poer*, B. *est pere*, C. *est per*, D.

[12] *Li Breton se doute*, B. C. D.

[13] *et dient de fin quer*, C.

[14] *od paen ne doit*, B. *à payen ne dayt comvyner*, C. D.

[15] This line is omitted in C.

Hengist had craftily intoxicated the king,
So that Vortigern goes and marries Rowena,
And gives sir Hengist the whole of Kent,
Without the knowledge of sir Gorangon who ought to reign there.
Vortiger had of another wife
Begotten three sons, the eldest Vortimer,
I have heard the others named Katigern and Pascentius;
The love of lady Rowena caused them to be forgotten.
He soon caused Hengist's kinsmen to be sent for,
Octa, and Ebissa, and Cerdic the noble;
They have crossed the sea with three hundred ships full of people.
At that time St. Germanus came to preach in Britain,
And to renew the faith, to confirm people's belief.
The king held the people of Germany so dear,
And made them so many rich gifts out of his wealth;
And they began to increase in the midst of the land,
That the number of pagans equalled that of the Christians,
And Britain fears some great revolution.
All say in common and exclaim with anxious heart,
That Christians and pagans ought not to live together.
They despise Vortiger, and proceed to crown
His son Vortimer, and cause him to reign.

Vortimer made king.

Rays[1] est Vortymer, en Brettayne regnayt;
Curtays estait par tut, le pople mult amait.[2]

Murdered by Rowena.

Rouenne, sa marastre,[3] par mult graunt[4] descayt,
Par un feloun bayvre, a mort le pusonayt,[5]
En la cytez de Loundres ent[er]rez[6] estayt.
E Vortiger soun pere le regne recoverayt,[7]
Par bataylle de gwerre[8] la mestrie avayt.
Rouenne à Vortiger[9] issynt après parlayt,
Ke en Germenye à Hengist maundayt[10]
De venir en Brettayne; e cyl, kant ben savayt
Ke Vortymer fu mort, de aide se purvayt,
Of ccc. mil [as] armes[11] en Brettayne arivayt,
E, par counseyl Rouenne,[12] à Vortiger envayt,

Hengist returns.

Ke Vortymer en vye aver trové quidayt,
Pur ly tolir le regne, cel host i menayt,
E, si le ray vousist, l'ost returnerayt,
E pur salver sa terre of ly demorayt,[13]
E parler of le ray, si demorer i dayt.[14]
Seur ceo de jour certayn e de lu priayt.
Saunz penser de fraude, Vortiger l'ottrayt.
Chescoun de Saxonays bon coutel portayt
Privement desuz, ke nul homme l'aparçayt,[15]
E kaunt l'un hoste à l'autre ensemble[16] serrayt,

---

[1] *Says*, A. *Vortimer est roys e en*, C.

[2] *mult l'amait*, C. D.

[3] *marathre*, D.

[4] *en trop grant*, B. D.

[5] *boire à mort l'empoisonait*, B. *bayver à mort l'en pusuynait*, C. *l'enpusonayt*, D.

[6] *enterrez*, B. C.

[7] *percoverayt*, C.

[8] *et guere*, B.

[9] *od Vortiger*, B. *Rouen ouf Vortiger issint parlayt*, C.

[10] *Q'il en Germenie à sire Hengist mandeit*, B. C. D. A. has *Vortiger* in place of *Hengist*.

[11] *Od treis centz mil as armes*, B. *Ouf ccc. mille as armes*, C. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, "Hengistus, ergo, audito obitu "Vortimerii, trecenta millia arma- "torum sibi associavit, paratoque "navigio in Britanniam reversus "est."

[12] *Ronewe*, B. *Et par le counseille Rouen*, C.

[13] *Ou pur sauver la terre od le demurreit*, B. *Ou*, D.

[14] *demorer deit*, B. C. D.

[15] *desoutz qe nul se aparceit*, B. *s'aperscait*, C. D.

[16] *assemblé*, B. C.

Vortimer is king, and reigned in Britain;
He was courteous everywhere, and the people loved him much.
Rowena, his stepmother, through very great treachery,
With a wicked drink poisoned him to death,
In the city of London he was buried.
And Vortiger his father recovered the kingdom,
He had the mastery in battle and war.
Rowena thereafter spoke to Vortiger,
That he should send into Germany to Hengist
To come into Britain; and the latter, when he had certain knowledge
That Vortimer was dead, provided himself with aid,
Arrived in Britain with three hundred thousand armed men,
And, by the advice of Rowena, sends word to Vortiger,
That he expected to have found Vortimer alive,
That he brought thither that army to deprive him of the kingdom,
And, if the king wished, the army should return,
Or, to save the land, it would remain with him,
And confer with the king if it was to remain.
For that he asked him to fix a certain day and place.
Without a thought of fraud, Vortiger granted it.
Each of the Saxons carried a good knife
Privately under the dress, that no one perceived it;
And when one army should be together with the other,

Neme yhoure sexes,[1] sir Hengist dirrayt,
Chescoun Saxonais un Brettoun *tuerayt.*

The meeting at Ambresbury, and slaughter of the Britons.

En kalendes de May, kant florisent les prez,
Al meme de Anbrebire[2] là sount assemblez,
Le ray Vortiger of cent desarmez,[3]
E Hengist of soun host de tresoun avisez.
Saxonays à Brettouns kant sount acostez,[4]
Neme your sexes,[5] Hengist ad comaundez.
Els sakent[6] les cotels, si ount[7] là tuez
Ccc. e xl.[8] de barouns renomez.
Le Brettouns de bastouns e peres ount blescez
Les uns de Saxonays, des peres[9] ount assez.

Escape of earl Eldol.

Le counte de Gloucestre,[10] ke Edol est nomé,[11]
Un bastoun fort e graunt ilokes ad trové,
Lxx. Saxonays[12] cil soul ad tué,
Saunz playe à Gloucestre[13] est-il eschapé.
Vortiger est pris, à Loundres amené.

---

[1] *Nimes ȝoure sexes,* B. *Nim yur saxes,* C. *Nimes yhure sexes,* D. *Nemet oure saxas,* Geoffrey of Monmouth, here and below.

[2] *Ambresbire,* B. *A mem de Ambrebiry,* C. *A meme de Aumbrebire,* D. The corresponding passage of Geoffrey of Monmouth is, "Postremo jussit et cives et Saxones "Maii kalendis, quæ jam instare "incipiebant, juxta Ambrii cœnobium convenire, ut ibidem præ"dicta statuerentur."

[3] *od gens desarmez,* B. *ouf genz desarmez,* C. *oue gentz desarmez,* D. *cent,* in MS. A., is probably a mere clerical error for *gent.*

[4] *Saxonais e Bretouns quant est acoustez,* C. *Saxonays à Bretoun kaunt est acostez,* D.

[5] *Nimet ȝoure sexes,* B. *Nim yur saxes,* C. *Nimes yhure saxes,* D.

[6] *E caus sakent,* B. *les sakent,* C.

[7] *si sont là,* B.

[8] *Treis cenz et cessaunte,* B. *ccc. et lx. de barouns nomez,* C. *Treis centz et xl.,* D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Audito ocius signo, "abstraxerunt Saxones cultros "suos, et astantes principes invaserunt, ipsosque nihil tale præmeditantes jugulaverunt circiter "quadringentos sexaginta, inter "barones et consules."

[9] *de peres,* B. C. Geoffrey of Monmouth's words are, "Eripiebant enim Britones ex tellure "lapides et fustes, atque sese defendere volentes, proditores illi"debant."

[10] *Claucestre,* D.

[11] *Edolf est nomez,* B. "Aderat "ibi consul Claudiocestriæ, nomine "Eldol, qui visa proditione, sustulit palum quem forte invenerat, "et defensioni vacavit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[12] *de Saxonais,* C.

[13] *de Gloucestre,* C. *à Claucestre,* D.

Sir Hengist should say, "Take your knives,"
Then each Saxon was to kill a Briton.

On the calends of May, when the meadows are in flower,
At the abbey of Ambresbury, there they are assembled,
King Vortiger with a hundred men without arms,
And Hengist with his army meditating treason.
When the Saxons are side by side with the Britons,
Hengist has given the order, "Take your knives."
They draw their knives, and have there killed
Three hundred and forty barons of renown.
The Britons have wounded with staves and stones
Some of the Saxons, they have stones enough.

The earl of Gloucester, who is named Eldol,
Has found there a strong and great staff.
He alone has slain seventy Saxons,
Without wound he has escaped to Gloucester.
Vortiger is made prisoner, and carried to London.

Loundres est la lour,[1] e Nicole la cité,
Everwik e Wyncestre pris ount[2] e wasté.
The legend of Vortiger's castle. Hengist en Brettayne[3] est mester justiser,
E de sa prisone delivré[4] Vortiger.
Vortiger en Wales[5] s'en va sojourner,
Où counsayl li donne un chastel fermer.[6]
Les machouns[7] i sount, ke kant k'il pount overer
Del matyn dekes al vespre[8] en terre chet arer.
Counsail n'ad fors un dount fere le ovre enter,[9]
Fors quere cel enfaunt ke nasquyt saunz per,
E fere de soun sank temprure al morter.
A quere[10] cel enfaunt s'en va li messager,
E à Kaermerlyn soun venu reposer,
Où deus juvencels se dounent à tencer,[11]
Merlyn e Dynaburt,[12] issi les oi nomer.
Dynaburt comence Merlyn reprover,
Ke unkes ne fust home à son engendrer.
Li messager demaunde si mere put aver.[13]
Origin of Merlin. Dynaburt dist, "Oyl, sa mere ws voyl moustrer,
"Fyllie al ray de Merce,[14] nonayn de saynt Per."
De si bon esplayt les messagers sount lez,
Merlyn e sa mere al ray ount[15] menez.
Vortiger la mere taunt ad conjurez,

---

[1] *est lour*, B. *est le lure*, C.
[2] *unt pris*, D.
[3] *de Bretaygne*, D.
[4] *delivera*, B. *deliver*, C. D.
[5] *Gales*, B. C.
[6] *affermer*, B. D. *U counsayle ly doun un chaustel affermer*, C.
[7] *Les mesons i sunt, e qanqe pount overer*, B. *macouns*, D.
[8] *Du matin au vespre*, B. *Del matin jeckes à vespere*, C. *De matyn jekes al vespre*, D.
[9] *dount le overe feit entier*, B. *dount loer fere enter*, C. *dount li over fere entere*, D.
[10] *Pur quere*, D.
[11] *al tencer*, D.
[12] *Dinabus*, B. *Dinaburghe*, C. *Dinaburk*, K. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls them "Merlinus atque "Dabutius." Wace also calls this youth Dinabus.
[13] *Les messagers demandent si pere put aver*, B.
[14] *de Mete*, B. C. D. *Merce* is an evident error. Geoffrey says, "Mater vero fuerat filia regis De-"metiæ, quæ in ecclesia sancti "Petri in eadem urbe inter mona-"chas degebat."
[15] *sount*, B. *unt-il*, C. *ount-il*, D.

London is theirs, and Lincoln the city,
They have taken and laid waste York and Winchester.

Hengist is chief ruler in Britain,
And Vortiger delivered from his prison.
Vortiger is gone to live in Wales,
Where he is advised to fortify a castle.
The masons are there, but all the work they can do
Between morning and evening, falls down at night.
There is only one counsel for completing the work,
That of finding the child which was born without father,
And mixing its blood with the mortar.
The messengers go to seek that child,
And they are come to Caermerlin to rest,
Where two lads begin to quarrel,
Merlin and Dinaburt, so I have heard them named.
Dinaburt begins to reproach Merlin,
That there was never any man at his begetting.
The messenger asks if he might have a mother.
Dinaburt says, "Yes, his mother I will show you,
" She is daughter of the king of Demetia, a nun of
" St. Peter's."

The messengers are glad at so good a success,
They have conducted Merlin and his mother to the king.
Vortiger has so much solicited the mother,

K'ele counsayt à ly[1] ke nul home unkes nez
Aprochayt soun cors, mès fu travayllez[2]
Par un espiryt sodayn ke le avayt encayntez,[3]
Par nature de home e de aungel medlez;
Aprochent à femmes tel espiriz assez.

Merlin explains the mystery.

Merlyn, saunz targer, vynt al ray e dit,
" Quel est la resoun, sire, ke te fist
" Fer venir ma mere hors de soun habit,
" E moy ovekes ly, si tost saunz respit?"
Li ray Vortiger à Merlyn respoundit,
" Un chastel vodray fere, e començay la syte,[4]
" Ben fu fet al vespre, le matyn tut fayllit;[5]
" Le mestre de mes clerks divinayst e purvyst
" Ke le sank[6] de cel enfant ke saunz pere nasquyt
" Le mur frait[7] ester, ke temprer vousist
" Of le morter del mur, ke jammès fayllist."
Merlyn saun[z] counsayl respount à Vortiger,
" Sir, vos devynours fetes appeler."
Merlyn jà commence les à reprover,[8]

The water under the foundations.

" Quele chose suz le founz,[9] où il fount overer,
" Trovera cil qe voyl le parfound sercher?"[10]
Conclus sount les clers,[11] ne sevent lour mester.
" Sir," ceo dist Merlyn, " ws poez trover[12]
" Sourse de ewe coraunt, e ne put jà cesser,[13]
" E desuz la sourse verrez reposer
" Deus dragouns orribles, ke jeo fray lever."

---

[1] *conust à li*, B. D.
[2] *mès mult fu travaillez*, B. C. D.
[3] *ke l'aveyt enceyntez*, D.
[4] *comencé ai le sit*, B. *comencey le sit*, D.
[5] *Qe fet fu le vespre au matin chait*, B. *Qe fest fu le vespre, al matyn chait*, D.
[6] *Ke saunk*, D.
[7] *Freit le mur*, B. C. D.
[8] *à resouner*, C. *à resoner*, D.
[9] *Que chose south le founz*, B.
[10] *vous poez i trover*, C.
[11] *les mestres*, B.
[12] *Sire, dist Merlyn, vus poez i trover*, D.
[13] *Sourse de eawe que court et ne put cesser*, B. C. *Surse de aeke qe court, et ne poet cesser*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls it *stagnum*: " et " invenies stagnum sub ea quod " turrim stare non permittit . . . . " Præcipe, rex, hauriri stagnum per " rivulos."

That she confessed to him that no man ever born
Approached her body, but that she was laboured
Suddenly by a spirit, which had made her with child,
By a mixture of the nature of man and angel;
Such spirits often approach women.

Merlin, without delaying, came to the king and said,
" What is the reason, sire, which made you
" Bring my mother out of her convent,
" And me with her, so quickly and without respite?"
King Vortiger replied to Merlin,
" I would build a castle, and began the site,
" It was well advanced in the evening, but in the
" morning it was all fallen;
" The master of my learned men decided by divina-
" tion
" That the blood of the child which was born without
" father
" Would make the wall stand, if it were mixed
" With the mortar of the wall, that it would never
" give way."

Merlin without hesitating replies to Vortiger,
" Sire, let your diviners be called."
Merlin now begins to reprove them,
" What thing under the foundation, where they are
" working,
" Will he find who will seek to the bottom?"
The learned men are posed, they know not their craft.
" Sire," said Merlin, "you will find
" A spring of running water, and it will never cease,
" And under the spring you will see reposing
" Two horrible dragons, which I will cause to rise."

The two dragons.

Le ray Vortiger à l'ewe s'en alayt,[1]
Le founz[2] de l'overayne asserchér[3] fesayt.
Cum Merlyn avayt dit, tut illokes trovayt.
Les dragouns se levent,[4] l'un tut blank estayt,
L'autre fu tut rouge, ke se adrescayt,
Tost entre les deus la batayle començayt;
Le blaunk par poer la rouge[5] malmenayt.
" Ke ceo signifye?"[6] le rays demaundayt.
Merlyn en ploraunt tel respounse fesayt.[7]
" Le dragoun blank, pur veyr, sir, signyfye
" Les gens Saxonays ke sount de Germenye;
" Le rouge, les Brettouns, ke noun de seygnurye
" Perdrount par les Saxonays,[8] kar lour est la
" mestrie.
" Cristiens destruerount, eglyse e abbye,
" E mettrount à confusyoun tute la Brettanye."[9]

Merlin's prophecies.

Ke Merlyn dyst plus, devyner ne put home mye,[10]
Si noun après le fet, tel fu sa vaydye;
Le Latyn est escriz de sa prophecye
En la fyn del livre, ke l'em ne l'oblye.
Kaunt Merlyn parla, prophetez[11] avayt;
Vortiger ly vynt, e bel ly requerayt,[12]
Ke[13] ly vousist dire coment il morrayt.
[E Merlyn ou rey tantost respondeit,][14]
Les fiz Constantyn fuyr le counseyllyayt;
" Lur pere fu trahy, tu faistes la descayt;
" E venger le[15] volent, en venaunz sunt taundrayt."[16]

---

[1] *au li s'en aleit*, B. *al leu s'en alait*, D.
[2] *Les founz*, D.
[3] *ensercher*, B. C. D.
[4] *s'en levent*, C.
[5] *le rouge*, D.
[6] *Quei ceo signefie*, B.
[7] *tels respouns doneit*, B.
[8] *par Saxonais*, D.
[9] *tote Bretanie*, B. *tut Bretaygne*, C. *tut Bretanye*, D.
[10] *devyner put*, C. D.
[11] *prophete*, B. *propheles*, C.
[12] *li prioit*, B. *ly preyait*, C. *priait*, D.
[13] *Q'il*, B.
[14] This line is found only in MS. B.
[15] *les*, B. *se volent*, D.
[16] *en venant sunt sceaundreit*, B. *saundrait*, C. D.

King Vortiger went to the water,
He caused the foundations of the work to be explored.
He found there all as Merlin had said.
The dragons arose, the one was all white,
The other was all red, which rose erect,
Immediately the battle began between the two;
The white by strength overcame the red.
"What does that mean?" the king asked.
Merlin weeping made the following reply:

"The white dragon, in truth, sire, signifies
"The Saxon people who come from Germany;
"The red, the Britons, who the name of lordship
"Will lose through the Saxons, for the mastery is
"theirs.
"They will destroy the Christians, church and abbey,
"And will throw all Britain into confusion."
What Merlin said more, one could not guess,
Except after the fact, such was his cunning;
The Latin of his prophecy is written
At the end of this book, that it may not be forgotten.
When Merlin spake, he had the spirit of prophecy.
Vortiger went to him, and asked him fairly,
That he would tell him how he should die.
And Merlin immediately replied to the king,
He advised him to fly the sons of Constantine;
"Their father was betrayed, thou didst the treason;
"They intend to avenge it, they are at this time on
"their way."

E dist ke Vortiger chacez par eus serrayt
Dedenz un chastel, e là arderayt.
De ly e de Hengist escotez com alayt.

Ambrosius and Uther make war on Vortiger.

Ambrose e Uther[1] fiz Constantyn estayent,
En Brettayne de là lour norture avayent,
[En Bretayne de scà od poer ariveient,][2]
La terre sour Vortiger par gwere conquerayent,

Ambrosius made king.

E les Brettouns Ambrose en ray coronayent.[3]
Vortiger à force où il fust queraynt,[4]
Totes ses manauntises à terre cravauntayent.

Death of Vortiger.

Il fu à son chastel, e ly dedenz ardayent.
De Edol[5] duk de Gloucestre consayl ne ayde avayent.

War between Ambrosius and Hengist.

Kaunt Hengist oyt dire ke ceus sunt aryvez,
E Vortiger ount ars,[6] e ses genz tuez,
Assembler son host tost ad comaundez,
E Ambrose[7] e soun frere sount-il encountrez.
La gwere fu mout graunde, mout i ad mellez,
Saunk de am pars,[8] Hengist est grevez.
Le duk de Glouscestre,[9] Edol[10] appelez,

Duke Eldol's demand.

Dist à Ambrose,[11] "Sire, un jour asseez
"Joe serray par ma vie, si Dé le m'ad grauntez,[12]
"Ke pusse de Hengist aver me[s] voluntez.[13]
"Hengist par tresoun tua mes parentez,[14]

---

[1] *Aurelius et Uter*, B.

[2] This line is omitted in MS. A., but is found in B., C., and D., and supplied here from B.

[3] *E Aurelius en rey les Bretons coroneient*, B. *Et les Bretouns Ambros en rey corounayent*, D.

[4] This line is omitted in B.

[5] *Edolf*, B. *De Edol de Gloucestre duk counsaille et ayde*, C. *De Edol duk de Claucestre counsaille et eyde aveynt*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Eldol dux Clau-"diocestriæ."

[6] *fu ars*, B.

[7] *Aurel*, B. *A Ambros et à son frere sount-il encountrez*, C. *et à son frere*, D.

[8] *amb parz*, C.

[9] *Claucestre*, D.

[10] *Edolf*, B.

[11] *Aurelius*, B. *Dist al rays Ambros*, C. *Dist al rey Ambros*, D.

[12] *Me serroit pur ma vie, si Dieu me eust grantez*, B. *Me serrait par ma vie, si Deu me peust grauntez*, C. *Me serrait pur ma vie, si Dieu me eust grantez*, D. The words of the text of Geoffrey of Monmouth are, "Sola dies pro omnibus diebus "vitæ meæ mihi sufficeret, si con-"gredi cum Hengisto mihi Deus "concederet."

[13] *mes voluntez*, C.

[14] *me parentez*, B.

And he said that Vortiger would be driven by them
Into a castle, and there he would be burnt.
Listen now how it went with him and Hengist.

Ambrosius and Uther were the sons of Constantine,
They had their education in Britain beyond sea,
They arrived in Britain on this side with power,
By war they conquered the land from Vortiger,
And the Britons crowned Ambrosius for king.
They sought with the army where Vortiger was,
Broke to the ground all his dwelling places.
He was in his castle, and they burnt him in it.
They had neither counsel nor aid from Eldol, duke of Gloucester.

When Hengist hears say that these are arrived,
And have burnt Vortiger, and slain his people,
He has immediately ordered his army to assemble,
And they have encountered Ambrosius and his brother.
The battle was very great, there was hard fighting,
Blood flowed on both sides, Hengist is hard pressed.
The duke of Gloucester, named Eldol,
Says to Ambrosius, "Sire, with one day satisfied
" I shall be for my life, if God has granted it me,
" That I may of Hengist have my will.
" Hengist by treason slew my kinsmen,

" Le counte[1] de Brettayne, ne[2] barouns renomez;
" Ne eschapa fors may soul de touz le barnez,[3]
" Al parlement de pès[4] où fumes assemblez.
" Ke venger me pusse, jeo ws pri,[5] suffrez."
E ly [ray] Ambrose li dist, " Ore t'en alez;[6]
" De may e de moun frere ben ws affiez."

Battle between Ambrosius and Hengist.

Le ray ne vout targer, soun host apparaylle;[7]
Le duk Edol li prye ke se hast à la[8] bataylle.
Kant Hengist le veyt,[9] sa route fourme[10] e taylle,
Assemblez sount les deus, Edol[11] Hengist assaylle,
Soven[t] sount à l'esprove[12] quel[13] de eus plus vaylle,
Sovent la[14] victorie l'un de l'autre faylle.
De ambe pars sount mors chuvalers e petaylle.[15]
Kant plus fort est[16] l'estur, sourvynt de Cornewaylle
Ly bon duk Gorloys,[17] ke à Brettouns se battayle.[18]

Hengist defeated and taken.

De la venue Gorloys, Edol[19] put joyr,[20]
Vers Hengist se mot, si le va sallyr[21]
Par le nasel de l'haume,[22] ke le fet chayr.[23]
Sovent dist, " Mercy Deu, ore ay moun desir!"
Occrya, fiz Hengist, of Eosa fuyr,[24]
S'en vount à Everwik, ne pount plus soffrir.

---

[1] *Les countes*, B. C. D.
[2] *ne* is omitted in B. *les barouns*, D., which also omits *ne*.
[3] *les baronez*, B. C. D.
[4] *du pees*, C.
[5] *sire, jeo prie*, C. D.
[6] *Le rei Aurelius li dit, Ore alez*, B. *Ly roys Aurel Ambrose ly dist, Ore alez*, C. D.
[7] *ad paraillé*, C. *mès son host apparaylle*, D.
[8] *la* omitted in B.
[9] *le seet*, B. D. *le sete*, C.
[10] *toute ferme*, B.
[11] *Edolf*, B.
[12] *Sovent à l'esprof sunt*, B. C. D.
[13] *lequel*, C.
[14] *de la*, B. *Sur la victorie*, C. D.
[15] *pedaille*, C. D.
[16] *fu*, B. *en l'esture*, C.
[17] *Corloys*, A.
[18] *se baile*, B. *se baylle*, D.
[19] *Edolf*, B.
[20] *joier*, B. *De la venue Edol, Gorloys pout joir*, D.
[21] *se met . . . va seiser*, B. *le mot, si le va saisyr*, C. *si le va saysire*, D. The words of the corresponding text of Geoffrey of Monmouth are, " Quem [Gorloim] cum " aspexisset Eldol, securior effectus, " cepit Hengistum per nasale cassi- " dis, atque totis viribus utens, ip- " sum intra cives extraxit."
[22] *de l'alme*, C.
[23] *qe se fet chair*, D.
[24] *Octa fitz Hengist et Eosa va fuir*, B. *Octa fiz Hengist ouf Eosa fuyre*, C. *Octa fiz Hengist oue Eossa fuir*, D.

" The earls of Britain, and famous barons;
" None escaped except me alone of all the baronage,
" Where we were assembled in conference for peace.
" Suffer, I pray you, that I may avenge myself."
And king Ambrosius said to him, " Now, proceed;
" I authorize you to trust in me and my brother."

The king would not delay, he prepares his host,
Duke Eldol prays him to hasten to battle.
When Hengist sees him, he forms and distributes his army,
The two are met, Eldol attacks Hengist,
They are often at the trial which of them is strongest,
Often one fails of victory over the other.
On both sides knights and footmen are slain.
When the struggle is greatest, arrives from Cornwall
The good duke Gorlois, who joins the Britons in the fight.

Eldol may rejoice in the coming of Gorlois,
He advances to Hengist, and goes and seizes him
By the nasal of the helm, so as to throw him down.
Often says he, " Thank God, now I have my desire!"
Octa, son of Hengist, fled with Eosa,
They go to York, they can no longer resist.

Le ray, par sa victore, la cité Conaun prist,[1]
Of tut le tresore ke fust à sir Hengist.
Les mors de son host devotement sevelist,
E à tuz[2] les nafrez medecine purvyst.
Pus maunde parmy sa terre,[3] ke chescun venyst
Judgment of Hengist. Al jugement Hengist, ke jadis[4] les trahist.
Quant tuz furent venuz, ly rays lors enquist
Ky[5] dorrait le jugement tost e saunz respit?
Le eveske de Gloucestre,[6] Edaldus fu dit,
Frere al duk Edol[7] ke la gwere conquyst,
Par auncien ensaumple le jugement rendist.
Kant Hengist vynt en place, escotez cum il fist.[8]
" Agag, ray de Amaleg,[9] fist mult grant despit
" A les fiz de Israel, lour meres quant coylist[10]
" Les fruz de lour ventres, quant lour fiz occyst,[11]
" [Luy prophete Samuel son jugement parfist,][12]
" Ly coupa de sa main[13] en peces cum il gist.
" Ansint ore fray tay,[14] kar tel est toun merit."
Death of Hengist. Kant Edol,[15] frere l'eveske, le jugement oyt,
La teste Hengist copayt, ke en nule part[16] guenchist.
Kant Hengist fu mort, le ray s'en alayt
A Everwyk u North,[17] où Octa estayt,
E Eosa, soun cosyn, genz de grant descayt.

---

[1] Geoffrey of Monmouth calls it, " oppidum Kaerconan, quod nunc " Cununguburg appellatur."

[2] *tuz*, omitted in D.

[3] *la terre*, B.

[4] *jà*, B.

[5] *ke*, C.

[6] *de Claucestre*, D.

[7] *Frere le duc Edolf*, B. D.

[8] This line is omitted in B. *cum il fust*, C.

[9] *Amalech*, B. *Amaloge*, D. The reference, of course, is to 1 Sam. xv.: " And Samuel said, As thy " sword hath made women child- " less, so shall thy mother be child- " less among women. And Samuel " hewed Agag in pieces before the " Lord in Gilgal."

[10] *quant tolit*, B. *quant tollist*, C. D.

[11] *Le frut de lour ventres, quant lour mere occist*, B. *Le fruit de*, D.

[12] This line is found only in D.

[13] *de ces mayns*, C.

[14] *Auxi fra joo toi*, B. *Ansint fray jeo tay*, C. *fray je tay*, D.

[15] *Edolf*, B.

[16] *qe nul part*, B. C.

[17] *en North*, B. *el North*, D.

The king, by his victory, took the city of Conan (Conisbrough),
With all the treasure which belonged to sir Hengist.
He devoutly buried the dead of his host,
And provided medicine for all the wounded.
Then he sends orders through his land, that every one should come
To the judgment of Hengist, who had formerly betrayed them.
When they were all come, the king then demanded
Who should give the judgment promptly and without respite?
The bishop of Gloucester, he was called Eldaldus,
Brother of duke Eldol who gained the battle,
Pronounced the judgment according to old precedent.
When Hengist took his place, listen how he spoke.
" Agag, king of Amalek, did very great evil
" To the children of Israel, when he took from their " mothers
" The fruits of their wombs, when he slew their sons,
" The prophet Samuel executed his judgment,
" With his hand cut him in pieces where he lay.
" Thus now will I do with thee, for such is thy " desert."
When Eldol, the bishop's brother, heard the judgment,
He cut off the head of Hengist, who flinched in no way.

When Hengist was dead, the king proceeded
To York in the North, where Octa was,
And Eosa, his cousin, people of great deceit.

Octa and Eosa submit.

Hors de la cyté li un e li autre[1] vait,
Chescun a harde al col,[2] al ray mercy criayt.
Le ray les receust, e garder les fesayt.
Edaldus le eveske al matyn le[s] jugayt;[3]
Escotez ore coment le jugement donayt.
" Le pople de Gabaon, quant perduz avayt
" Ceo ke lour lynage à tort purchaçayt,
" Al fiz de Israel[4] mercy demaundayt,
" Pardoné lur est, je lo ke sy sayt
" Endrayt de ceste gent." E ly ray l'ottrayt.

Ambrosius restores the churches and towns.

En terre près de Escoce maindre les grauntayt
Le rais Aurel Ambrose[5] lors fet assembler
Le pople de sa terre, sa pès affermer;
Eglises abatues volt-il[6] relever;
Ses citez e ses viles par tut renoveler.[7]
A Everwyk comença la vile redrescer;[8]
A Loundres puis alayt la cité restorer;[9]
Après à Wyncestre la vile renoveler;
Al darayn à Salesbire s'en ala sojorner.[10]
Un abbaye de costé pus ala visiter,
E puys la mountaygne où Hengist le fer
Fist par [sa] tresoun[11] les Brettouns tuer.

Wishes to raise a monument at Ambresbury,

Là pur remembrance[12] le lu volt honurer,
A mont de Ambrebire,[13] le lou oy nomer.
A li fet venir machoun e charpenter,[14]

---

[1] *l'un e l'autre*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth represents Octa as going first alone to the British king.

[2] *Chescun hard à col*, B. C. *Chescoun harde al col*, D.

[3] *les jugait*, C. D.

[4] *A les fitz de Israel*, B. *As fiz*, D. See Joshua, ch. ix. Pierre de Langtoft, and his original, Geoffrey of Monmouth, have certainly not taken a very correct view of the transaction between the Israelites and the Gibeonites.

[5] *Le rei Aurelius lors*, B.

[6] *voleit-il*, B.

[7] *remesoner*, B. D.

[8] *à redrescer*, D.

[9] *la vile renoveler*, C.

[10] *reposer*, B. C. D.

[11] *par sa tresoun*, B. C. D.

[12] *Le rei pur remembraunce*, B. C. D.

[13] *de Ambresbire*, B. *de Ambyrbiry*, C.

[14] *mason e karpenter*, B. *machun et carpenter*, C.

Out of the city both of them go,
Each with a halter at his neck, and cried the king mercy.
The king received them, and caused them to be placed under guard.
Next morning Eldaldus the bishop judged them;
Now listen how he gave the judgment.
" The people of Gibeon, when they had lost
" That which their forefathers had obtained wrongly,
" Asked for mercy of the children of Israel,
" Pardon was given them, I advise that it be so
" In the case of this people." And the king granted it.
He gave them leave to settle in the land bordering on Scotland.
King Aurelius Ambrosius then called an assembly of
The people of his land, to establish his peace;
He determined to restore the churches which had been thrown down,
To rebuild everywhere his cities and towns.
At York he began to raise his town again;
He next went to London to restore the city;
Afterwards to Winchester to rebuild the town;
Finally he went to Salisbury to take repose.
He then went to visit an abbey near it,
And afterwards the mountain where Hengist the fierce
Caused the Britons to be slain by treason.
There he determined to do honour to the place for a remembrance,
On the mount of Ambresbury, as I have heard it named.
He called to his presence masons and carpenters,

Pur fere toumber les mors soulum lur mister;[1]
E volt ke cel overayne à tuz jours pusse durer.[2]
Le eveske de Legioun se profer à parler,[3]
and sends for Merlin. E dist ke Merlyn, le[4] divinour Vortiger,
Covendrait venir cel overayne deviser.
Merlyn[5] i vint, le ray li fist maunder.
" Merlin," dist li rays,[6] "ses-tu ordiner
" Coment ceste place purrayt ahourner,[7]
" Les cors[8] ke cy gisent pur en memor aver?"[9]
Sends to Ireland for the Giant's Dance. Merlyn dist, "Sir rays, te covent enveer
" Message en Irlaunde, e de iloke porter
" La Carole de Giaunce,[10] les peres descoupler.
" N'i ad home en ce mounde ke[11] purra mover
" La maindre de totes, si noun par mester
" De grant enchauntement;" les fet autre cher,[12]
Comence en riaunt sa parole[13] escoter.
" Sir," ce dist Merlin,[14] "nul home pur dener
" Purra la value des peres achater,
" Lour vertu est tele, e tel est lour poer,
" Pur maladiè garrir, pur playe ben saner."[15]
Li Brettoun escoute,[16] e comence à crier,
" Sir rays, pur teles peres, day troben aler."[17]
Of countes e barons[18] le ray va counsayler,
S'en vount pur elire of Merlyn messager.[19]

---

[1] *solunc lour mestier*, B.
[2] *puit durrer*, B.
[3] *pur parler*, C.
[4] *le*, omitted in B., C., and D. "Merlinus vates Vortegirni." Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[5] *E Merlin*, B. C. D.
[6] *fet li rei*, B. D. *fet ly rays*, C.
[7] *aourner*, B. *ahurner*, C.
[8] *Des corps*, C.
[9] *pur memorie aver*, B. D. *pur memor aver*, C.
[10] *La Karoles des Geanz*, B. *La Carole de graunt*, C. *La Karole des Geauntz*, D. It is taken literally from Geoffrey of Monmouth, who says, "Mitte pro Chorea Gigantum, " quæ est in Killarao monte Hi- " berniæ."
[11] *N'ad en le munde qe*, B.
[12] *le rei fist*, B. *le rei fet altre cher*, D.
[13] *Comença en riaunt la parole*, B. *Comença en ryaunt*, C. D.
[14] *fet Merlin*, B. C. D.
[15] *pur plaies saner*, B. D.
[16] *Les Bretons escotent*, B. *Ly Breton esculte e comença cryer*, C. *comença crier*, D.
[17] *deit home bien aler*, B. C. D.
[18] *Ou countes et ou barons*, B.
[19] *un messager*, B.

To raise a tomb to the dead according to their rank ;
And he wished this work to last for ever.
The bishop of Legion (Caerleon) offers to speak,
And says that Merlin, Vortiger's soothsayer,
Ought to be called to design this work.
Merlin came there, the king sent for him.
" Merlin," says the king, " knowest thou how to
" devise
" How this place may be adorned,
" In order to have in memory the bodies which lie
" here ? "
Merlin says, " Sir king, it is meet to send
" A message into Ireland, and to bring thence
" The Dance of the Giants, and to uncouple the stones.
" There is no man in this world who can move
" The least of them all, except by skill
" Of great enchantment ;" the king made other cheer,
Began laughing to listen to his words.
" Sire," says Merlin, " no man for money
" Can buy the value of those stones,
" Their virtue is such, and such is their power,
" To cure maladies, or quite heal wounds."
The Briton listens, and begins to shout,
" Sir king, for such stones, one might very well go."
The king goes to counsel with earls and barons,
They proceed to elect a messenger with Merlin.

The Irish king defeated.

Uther, frer le rays, of Merlyn est eluz,
Of xv. mil as armes; en Irlande sunt venuz,
Li sire de la terre encountre est coruz,[1]
Gilleman out à noun,[2] ke vout aver rescuz
Uther e Merlyn, mès il fu là venuz.[3]
Tost à la Carole[4] est Uther descenduz;
La grandure de peres[5] kant il ad aparceuz,
Dist à daun Merlin, "Nos travayls sount perduz,
" Poer n'ad nul homme la Carole mover suz."[6]
" Sir," fet Merlyn, "homme ad graunz vertuz,
" Les peres par aide de Deu en Brettayne erent
" venuz."[7]

Merlin brings home the stones.

Kànt eles ne pount abbatre la Karole[8] par engyn,
Of rise grande al peres[9] s'en ala daun Merlin,
Abati la Karole plus tost ke nul devyn.
Chargées sunt les nefs Uther al matyn,[10]
Returnez[11] devers Brettayne pur honurer son lyn,
Ke Hengist trahist, li faus Saxonyn.
Le rays maunda ses countes e sa chuvalerye,
Les seygnurs de la terre,[12] e tut la clergye.
Merlyn demaunde els tuz[13] les perres prent e gwie,
E la Karole asset,[14] cum ele fust establye
Par gyaunce[15] en Irelaunde en auncesserye.[16]

The feast at Salisbury.

Ly rays regarde les gens,[17] devotement les prie[18]
A la Pentecouste porter ly[19] compaygnye.

---

[1] *encountre eaus est coruz*, B. *encontre els*, C. D.

[2] *amm*, B., perhaps for *à nun*.

[3] *vencuz*, B. D.

[4] *à la Karone*, B.

[5] *des peres*, B. D. *La graindre des peres*, C.

[6] *Poer ad nul home la Karole mette jus*, B. D., except that the latter has *mettre* for *mette*.

[7] *erent veuz*, D.

[8] *les peres*, B. C. D., which is probably the correct reading, though Geoffrey has "Ad imperium ejus " indulserunt multimodis machina- " tionibus, et aggressi sunt *choream* " *deponere*."

[9] *as peres*, D.

[10] *Uthēr le matyn*, D.

[11] *Returne*, C. D.

[12] *de sa terre*, C. D.

[13] *Merlin devant eus touz*, B. *devant els tuz*, C. *devaunt els touz*, D.

[14] *assiete*, B. *assete*, C. *asseet*, D.

[15] *geanz*, B. *giauntz*, D.

[16] *auncesterie*, B.

[17] *le gent*, C.

[18] *lour prie*, B.

[19] *li porter*, B.

Uther, the king's brother, is chosen with Merlin,
With fifteen thousand men at arms, they are come into Ireland,
The lord of the land has hastened to meet them,
Gilleman was his name, who would have resisted
Uther and Merlin, but he was there vanquished.
Uther has soon arrived at the Dance;
When he has perceived the greatness of the stones,
He says to dan Merlin, "Our labours are lost,
"No man has strength to move away the Dance."
"Sir," said Merlin, "man has great capabilities,
"The stones with God's help will be brought into "Britain."

When they could not take down the Dance by their skill,
Dan Merlin went with great laughter to the stones,
He took down the Dance more quickly than any conjuror.
Uther's ships are loaded in the morning,
And returned towards Britain to do honour to his kindred,
Whom Hengist betrayed, the false Saxon.

The king sent for his earls and his chivalry,
The lords of the land, and all the clergy.
Merlin, in presence of them all, takes the stones and guides them,
And raises up the Dance as it was established
By giants in Ireland in days of ancestry.
The king looks upon the people, and prays them devoutly
To bear him company at Pentecost.

A Salesbire s'en vount, li ray se joye;[1]
Quinz jours tint feste, sulum l'estory wus dye.[2]
Arrival of Pascentius. Le fiz Vortiger, ke Dampne Deu maudye,
Pascencius,[3] cel hour vynt [de] Germenye,[4]
Venger la mort son per, mès tost par seygnurye
Fu rosez[5] arere; en Irlaunde est fuye,
Al ray Gilleman,[6] ke avayt la ballye,
Ly prie e requert de succour e aye.[7]
Et Gilleman[8] li graunte, e baner desplye,
E vent en Brettayne; le ray de maladye
Cochait à Wyncestre, Uther la mestrie
De l'host en prent sur ly; or Deu les condye!
Death of Ambrosius. Par consayl de Pascence, un Copa[9] par noun
Se fist fisicien e dona la puson[10]
En habit de moyne al ray en sa meson.
Mors est li ray Ambrose, e Copa[11] le felon
Escapez à Pascence,[12] ke fist la tresoun.
The great star appears. Quant le rays Ambrose[13] par puson mors estayt,
Le eveske de Wyncestre soun cors entumbayt.
Une grandesime estayle en le ayr se moustrayt,
De molt grant lumer, un soul ray i vayt,[14]
Dont issist[15] le fu en fourme de dragon tut drayt.[16]
Le dragon de sa buche deus rays lusaunz gettayt,
L'un covery tute Fraunce, li autre environayt
La terre de Irlaunde, le pople ke le vayt

---

[1] *s'en joie*, B. *s'en est joye*, C.

[2] *Uit jours tint sa feste, cum nous dit l'estorie*, B. *xv. jours tynt sa feste cum l'estorie vous dye*, C. *sicum dist l'estorye*, D. It may be remarked that Geoffrey of Monmouth makes the duration of the feast much shorter: "festumque "Pentecostes regaliter celebravit, "tribusque sequentibus diebus con- "tinue celebrationi vacavit."

[3] *Pascens*, B.

[4] *de Germenye*, C. D. *en*, A. B.

[5] *arrosez*, B.

[6] *au rei Guillomar*, B.

[7] *et de aie*, B. *Le pry et le requert de socur et de aye*, C.

[8] *Guillomar*, B.

[9] *Cappas*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him *Eopa*.

[10] *dona li poison*, B.

[11] *Mort est Aurelius, et Cappa*, B.

[12] *Eschapez est de Pascence*, C. *Eschapez est à Passence*, D.

[13] *Aurelius*, B.

[14] *un soul ray aveit*, B. C. D.

[15] *issint*, B.

[16] *de dragon dreit*, B. D.

They proceed to Salisbury, the king is joyful;
Fifteen days he held the feast, I tell you according to the history.
The son of Vortiger, whom may the Lord God curse,
Pascentius, came at that time from Germany,
To avenge the death of his father, but soon by strength of the nobles
Was driven back, he is fled to Ireland,
To king Gilloman, who had the rule,
Prays and asks him for succour and aid.
And Gilloman grants it him, and unfolds his banner,
And comes into Britain; the king in sickness
Was lying at Winchester, and Uther the command
Of the army assumed; now may God be his leader!

By the advice of Pascentius, one named Eopa
Counterfeited a physician, and gave the poison,
In the disguise of a monk, to the king in his house.
King Ambrosius is dead, and the wretch Eopa
Escaped to Pascentius, who was the author of the treason.

When king Ambrosius was dead by poison,
The bishop of Winchester entombed his body.
A very great star showed itself in the sky,
With very great light, a single ray comes from it,
From which issues straight forth fire in the shape of a dragon.
The dragon threw out from his mouth two bright rays,
One covered all France, the other surrounded
The land of Ireland, the people who saw it

Merlin's interpretation of it.

Ke ço [1] signifye chescun se mervellayt.
Uther à son hoste Merlyn appelayt;
E Merlyn de l'estayle,[2] cum Uther ly priayt,
Tut sicom avint pur veyrs devinayt.
" Allas!" dist Merlyn, "le rays Ambrose [3] est mort;
" Brettayne est desore en mult grant descensort.[4]
" Sire duk Uther, alez, assez serras [5] tu fort
" Russer arer tes enemys,[6] ke ver[s] tay ont le tort;
" Ou tu perderas pur nent Brettayne sanz resort.
" Si tu veus combatre, l'estàyle te report
" La corone de Brettayne; or va, si te confort.[7]
" Le dragon suz l'estayle tay, Uther, signifye;
" Le ray ke cover Fraunce, un fiz ke ta amye
" Conceyvera de tay, ke Fraunce e Lumbardye,
" E mouz des autres terres, avera en sa ballye.[8]
" Le ray ke caint Irelande une fillye te certifye,[9]
" Ke ta femme enfantera, quant tu le averas [10] marye.
" Cele avera fiz e feylles ke tute Brettanye
" Tendrount en heritage of la seygnurye."

Uther's victory.

Kant Merlyn avayt dit trestut son devys,[11]
Le duk Uther se mette devers ses enemys,
Passence e Gilleman [12] en bataylle sunt occys.
Uther, of la victorye, retorne of ses amys,[13]
[E va [14] à la Karole, où le corps est mis] [15]
Ly ray Ambrose,[16] son frere, de tuz le plus gentiz; [17]
E peus vait à Wyncester, le chastel ad repris.

He is elected king, and crowned.

Par commune assent, Uther fet [18] maunder
Le pople de Brettayne, pur ly corouner.

---

[1] *Quei ceo*, B.
[2] *E Merlyn l'estaylle*, C.
[3] *qe rey Aurel est mort*, B.
[4] *desore mis en desconfort*, B. *est ore mys en desconfort*, C.
[5] *si serrez*, C.
[6] *tes enemis reroser*, B. D. *reruser*, C.
[7] *reconfort*, B.
[8] *en bayllye*, C. D.
[9] *un feylle certifye*, C.
[10] *l'averas*, D.
[11] *son avis*, B. C. D.
[12] *Guillomar*, B. *Gilloman*, D.
[13] *à ses amys*, C.
[14] *vait*, C. D.
[15] This line is omitted in A., but is found in all the other three MSS.
[16] *Aurel*, B.
[17] *de touz les plus gentyls*, B.
[18] *fit*, B.

Each wondered what that signifies.
Uther sent for Merlin to his army;
And Merlin concerning the star, as Uther prayed him,
Divined truly just as it afterwards happened.

" Alas!" said Merlin, "king Ambrosius is dead;
" Britain is henceforth in very great misfortune.
" Sir duke Uther, go, thou wilt be strong enough
" To drive back thine enemies, who are in the wrong
" towards thee;
" Or thou wilt for nothing lose Britain beyond re-
" covery.
" If thou wilt fight, the star brings thee
" The crown of Britain; now go, and take comfort.

" The dragon under the star signifies thee, Uther;
" The ray which covers France, a son which thy
" mistress
" Will conceive by thee, who France and Lombardy,
" And many other countries, will have in his sove-
" reignty.
" The ray which encircles Ireland announces to thee a
" daughter,
" Which thy wife will bear when thou shalt have
" married her.
" She will have sons and daughters, who all Britain
" Will hold in heritage with the lordship."

When Merlin had said all his prophecy,
The duke Uther marches against his enemies,
Pascentius and Gilloman are slain in battle.
Uther, with the victory, returns with his friends,
And goes to the Dance, where is placed the body
Of king Ambrosius, his brother, of all men the most gentle;
And afterwards proceeds to Winchester, and has retaken
the castle.

By common assent, Uther calls together
The people of Britain, to crown him.

Tuz venent à Wyncestre, nès un ne volt targer.[1]
La coroune rescait, e comence à regner,[2]
Ke Merlyn e ses diz ne puysse oblier.[3]
Deus draguns de fyn or fet le ray forger;
L'un pend à Wyncestre à l'eglise[4] saint Per;
L'autre en batayle devaunt ly fet porter;[5]
Uther named Pendragon. E[6] Uther Pendragoun l'en comença[7] nomer.
Octa, fiz Hengist, e Eosa, son cosyn,
Par malvays counsail unt rumpu la fyn
Ke al ray Ambrose devant,[8] sotillent par engyn
Quere power e ayde del pople Saxonyn.
Aryvez sunt u north[9] of nefuz e cosyn;
Arses unt[10] les viles, le pople Albanyn
Tuez par espeye, si propheta Merlyn.
War with Octa and Eosa. Le rays ad la novele oy de cel destruccion,[11]
Ke vers le North est fet en sa regioun.
Assembler fet son host, counte, duk, e baroun,[12]
Des cytez, e des burges, des viles envyroun;
Nul demort ke[13] put chaucer esporoun.
Le rays à Everwik leva[14] son dragoun.
Octa, fiz Hengist, e Eosa,[15] son compaygnoun,
Se prestent[16] à combatre of le ray Brettoun.[17]
Dure fu la batayle, e grant occysioun[18]
De gens[19] de ambe pars par confusioun.
Le jour s'en depart; la nout par ensoun

---

[1] *nès un veut tager*, B.
[2] *comence regner*, C.
[3] *ne pues oblier*, C.
[4] *en l'eglise*, B. C. D.
[5] *en bataile devant li fist porter*, B. *devaunt ly*, C. D.
[6] *E* is omitted in B. and D.
[7] *le comence*, B. *se comença*, D.
[8] *Ke au rei Aurelilis deivent*, B. *Ke al rais Ambros donaynt sotilent par enyin*, C. *donayent sotyllent par engyn*, D.
[9] *Il rivez sunt en north*, B. *en north*, D.
[10] *sunt*, B.
[11] *ad novele de*, B. *ad la noveloy de le destrecioun*, C. *oy*, which seems to be required by the sense, is also omitted in D.
[12] *duk, baroun*, D.
[13] *demoert qe*, B. *Nul demort he put*, C. *he poet*, D. *ne put*, A.
[14] *leve*, B. C. D.
[15] *Eos*, B. *Ose*, D.
[16] *profrent*, B. *profrount*, D.
[17] *ovesqe le Breton*, B.
[18] *l'occisioun*, B.
[19] *Des gens*, B. D.

They all come to Winchester, not one will delay.
He receives the crown, and begins to reign,
So that Merlin and his sayings he cannot forget.
The king causes two dragons to be made of fine gold;
One hangs in the church of St. Peter at Winchester;
The other he causes to be carried before him in battle;
And people on that account begin to call him Uther Pendragon.

Octa, son of Hengist, and Eosa, his cousin,
By evil counsel have broken the agreement
Which he made before with king Ambrosius, contrive by cunning
To seek strength and assistance from the Saxon people.
They are arrived in the north with nephews and cousins;
They have burnt the towns, the people of Albany
Slain with the sword, as Merlin prophesied.

The king has heard the news of that destruction,
Which is done towards the north in his territory.
He causes his army to assemble, earls, dukes, and barons
From the cities, and boroughs, and towns around;
No one remains behind who can put on a spur.
At York the king raised his dragon.
Octa, son of Hengist, and Eosa, his companion,
Make ready to combat with the Briton king.
Hard was the battle, and great slaughter
Of people on both sides through confusion.
The day passed away, and night after it.

Aproche, e ly rays se prent en tapisoun,[1]
Al mount de Thamer[2] repose en pavillon.
Le duk de Cornewaille, dan Gordelains[3] par noun,
Fist le ray mounter, e en dormysoun
Coure sur les Saxonays; par cele[4] sugecioun,
Eopa e Eosa,[5] of lour nacioun,
Sount tuz pris e menez à Londres[6] en prison.

The king's feast at Easter.

Le ray tynt ses Paskes à Loundres la cyté;[7]
Mout fu la feste riche, of tut ly barné.[8]
Le duk Gorloys i fust par grant[9] amysté,
E la dame Ingerne[10] sa femme esposé,
Si bele creature fu nule part trové.[11]

Uther's love for the lady Igerne.

Li rays la regarde, e sa coupe dorré
Li maunde, e la prie ke ele se face haité.
Ly rays de la dame est tut enamouré.[12]
Le duk l'aparçait, e devent iré.
Al matyn s'en alt, e ne prist congé,[13]
Drait à Tynsel,[14] son chastel affermé;
Dedenz est dame Ingerne salvement gardé.[15]
Li rays se corouce, e si ad joré
Ke si le duk ne amende à sa volunté,
Ke hors de sa court sanz congé est alé,
Le duk de ses terres serrayt desherité.[16]

---

[1] *se prent à tapison*, B. D. *se prent al tapisoun*, C.

[2] Geoffrey of Monmouth calls the mountain *Damen*: "insecuti sunt "eos cadentes usque ad montem "Damen."

[3] *Gorlois*, B. D. *Gorloys*, C.

[4] *tiel*, B.

[5] *E Octa et Eosa, et tut lour nacioun*, B. *Octa et Eosa, ouf lur nacioun*, C. *Eoppa*, D.

[6] *à Loundres*, B. D.

[7] *sa cité*, B. C.

[8] *od tote la baroné*, B.

[9] *od grant*, B.

[10] *Igerne*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls her *Igerna*.

[11] *en nul part fu trové*, B.

[12] *est tost enamuré*, C.

[13] *s'en aleit, et nent prist cungé*, B. *s'en alayt, et ne prist coungé*, C. *s'en alait, et ne prent congé*, D.

[14] *Droit à Tintagel*, B. *Tintageol*, C. *Tintygeol*, D. "Posuit eam in "oppido Tintagol in littore maris, "quod pro tutiori refugio habebat." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[15] *Igerne sauvement gardé*, B.

[16] *Le duk de sa terre serra desheritée*, C.

Approaches, and the king seeks concealment,
He reposes in his tent on the mountain of Thamer.
The duke of Cornwall, named dan Gorlois,
Caused the king to mount, and while they are sleeping
To rush upon the Saxons; through this suggestion,
Octa and Eosa, with their nation,
Are all captured and carried to London to prison.

The king held his Easter in the city of London;
Very rich was the feast, with all the baronage there.
Duke Gorlois was there in great friendship,
And the lady Igerne, his wife by marriage,
So fair a creature was found nowhere.
The king looks at her, and his gilt cup
Sends to her, and begs her to make good cheer.
The king is all enamoured of the lady.
The duke perceives it, and becomes angry.
In the morning he departs, without taking leave,
Straight to Tintagel, his strong castle;
Dame Igerne is safely guarded within it.
The king is enraged, and has sworn
That if the duke does not make amends at his will,
Who has gone away out of his court without leave,
The duke should be disinherited of his lands.

Le duk doute mout le ray e sa pousté;
Ayde en Irlaunde des amys[1] ad maundé.
War with duke Gorlois. Uther Pendragoun ray est des Brettouns,
Le pople de sa terre trestut ad somouns,[2]
Assega le chastel de Dunolt[3] envirouns,
Des launces e des espeyes se guyount les barouns,[4]
E raskayle de la terre des peres e baustouns.[5]
Gorloys se tent dedenz cum en tapisouns.
[D]es[6] amours Ingerne le rays est affolez.
Un[7] Ulfin fiz Cradoc del duk fu privez;
Of ly est le rays forement[8] counseylez,
Coment of la dame put fere ses voluntez.
Ulphyn respont e dist ke[9] en terre n'est homme nez
Ke prendra Tintresel[10] ù ele est gardez,
"Si noun par Merlyn, si ws li mandisez."[11]
Uther consults Merlin. Merlyn vin[t] al ray par son comaundement,[12]
E ly rays li counte[13] trestut son talent;
Aprocher à la dame à force li covent.
Merlyn respont e dist, "Sir, ne say coment
"Homme prendra Tintresel,[14] où la dame attent.
"N'ad entré fors une, où un encontre cent[15]
"Defenderayt le chastel, à men ascient."
"Merlyn," fet li ray, "ore à may entent,[16]

---

[1] *des amis en Irland*, B. C. D.

[2] *en ad somouns*, C. D.

[3] *de Dumolt*, B. D. *Assegé à le chaustel de mult envyrouns*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls it "castel-"lum Dimilioc." The reading of B. D. may be for *Dimiolt*.

[4] *se guioit li barons*, B. *se guyent les barons*, C.

[5] *et des bastouns*, D.

[6] *Des*, B. *De les amur*, C. *Les amours*, A.

[7] *Un* is omitted in B., C., and D. Geoffrey of Monmouth's words are: "dixit cuidam familiari suo, nomine "Ulfin de Ricaradoch." It would appear from Geoffrey that Ulfin was the familiar of Uther, and not of duke Gorlois.

[8] *seurment*, C.

[9] *ke* is omitted in C.

[10] *Tintagel*, B. *Tintageol*, C. *Tintygeol*, D.

[11] *si vous ly maundisez*, C.

[12] *par son maundement*, B. D.

[13] *E li rei conust*, B.

[14] *prendroit Tintagel*, B. *prendroyt Tintageol*, C. *Tintygeol*, D.

[15] *où un home vaut cent*, B. C. D. The two latter omit the following line. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "ipsum tres armati milites prohi-"bere queunt, licet cum toto regno "Britanniæ astiteris."

[16] *attent*, B.

The duke fears greatly the king and his power;
He has sent for aid from his friends in Ireland.

Uther Pendragon is king of the Britons,
He has summoned all the people of his land,
He besieged the castle of Dimilioc round about,
The barons are armed with spears and swords,
The lower orders of the land with stones and staves.
Gorlois keeps within as in a hiding place.

The king is mad with the love of Igerne.
One Ulfin, son of Cradoc, was intimate with the duke;
With him the king has consulted in confidence,
How he could do his will with the lady.
Ulfin replies and says that there is no man born on earth
Who will take Tintagel, in which she is kept,
" Except through Merlin, if you send for him."

Merlin came to the king at his command,
And the king acquaints him with all his desire;
He must absolutely approach the lady.
Merlin replies and says, " Sire, I know not how
" One will take Tintagel, where the lady is residing.
" There is only one entry, where one against a " hundred
" Would defend the castle, in my opinion."
" Merlin," said the king, " now listen to me,

" Si jo n'ai mon desir, tel dolur me susprent,
" Ke tost de ma vie frai le finement."[1]

Obtains access to the lady by means of his enchantments.

Escotez[2] cum Merlin comença parler:
" Ore[3] te confort, sire rais, de bon quer,
" E tu averas [la dame] tut à ton voler.[4]
" Le duk sire Gorloys te frai resembler;
" Ulfyn serra Jordan,[5] ke est son conseyller;
" E joe serrai Britel,[6] son prime[7] botyler.
" Issint en Tryntesel[8] purras-tu entrer,
" E fere de la dame cum de ta mulier.
" N'i avera homme del mounde[9] ke savera juger
" Tay del duk Gorloys, ne nul de li altrer."[10]
Ly rays ad de la dame quant ke volt aver;[11]
Quant il ad fet cum Merlin le savayt enseygner,
Le matyn à son host se prist[12] à returner.
La dame conceust la nouyt par lour dayler

Birth of king Arthur.

Un fiz; quant fust nez Arthur le fist nomer.[13]
Uther Pendragoun à l'hoste est revenuz;
Le chastel sir Gorloys est tost abbatuz,[14]
E Gorloys est mort, son host est tost vencuz;[15]
Dame Ingerne[16] est dolenz, son seygnur ad perduz.
Li rays de rechef à la dame est coruz,
La semblance Gorloys[17] si ad revestuz.

---

[1] *frai finissement*, B.

[2] *Escotez ore coment*, C.

[3] *Des ore*, B.

[4] *Tu averas la dame tut à toun*, B. C. D. *averas entre tut*, A.

[5] *Jurdan*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him *Jordanus de Tintagol*.

[6] *Bretel*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth gives his name as Bricel: " Mutatus est et Ulfin in Jordanum, " Merlinus in Bricelem."

[7] *privé boteler*, C. D.

[8] *Tintagel*, B. *Tintageol*, C. *Tyntigeol*, D.

[9] *el mounde*, B.

[10] *ne vus de li autrer*, B. *ne nus de li altrere*, C. *ne vus de luy altrer*, D.

[11] *Il ad de la dame quanque il voet aver*, B.

[12] *se prest*, C.

[13] *Arthurge fist nomer*, C. *Arthur fist nomer*, D.

[14] *assegez*, C.

[15] *venuz*, B.

[16] *Igerne*, B.

[17] *sire Gorlois*, B.

" If I have not my desire, such grief lays hold of me
" That soon I shall make the end of my life."
Hear how Merlin began to talk:
" Now comfort thee, sir king, with good heart,
" And thou shalt have everything at thy will.
" I will make thee resemble the duke sir Gorlois;
" Ulfin shall be Jordan, who is his adviser;
" And I will be Bricel, his chief butler.
" Thus thou wilt be able to enter into Tintagel,
" And do with the lady as with thy wife.
" There will be no man in the world who will be
" able to judge
" Thee from duke Gorlois, nor neither of the others."
The king has of the lady all he wants to have;
When he has done as Merlin was able to instruct him,
In the morning he hastens to return to his army.
The lady conceived that night through their dalliance
A son; when he was born, she caused him to be named Arthur.

Uther Pendragon is returned to the army;
The castle of sir Gorlois is all battered down,
And Gorlois is dead, his army is entirely defeated.
Lady Igerne is in grief, she has lost her lord.
The king again has repaired to the lady,
And has again put on the semblance of Gorlois.

La dame ad grant mervayle, e dist, "Tu m'as
"desceuz;[1]
"Mon seignur est morz, le veir ay ben conuz."[2]

Capture of Tintagel.

Le ray se retorne, sa fourme tost reprent,
Et Trintesel[3] le fort assalt vigorousement.
Pur la mort le duk, n'ad nul ke ad talent[4]
Le chastel defendre,[5] le rays sanz torment[6]
Le chastel ad pris, dame Ingerne[7] ensement.
"Gordeloys,"[8] dist-il, "est mort pur son contrarie-
"ment;[9]

Uther Pendragon marries Igerne.

"E jo suy sanz femme, esposer me covent
"Tai pur ta bealté;" e dame Ingerne se assent.[10]
Uther Pendragon li counta coment
Of ly avayt jeu, dont ele fu meyns dolent.
Après Arthur[11] fu nez, la dame grosse se sent;
Quant venuz fu le tens de son enfauntement,[12]
Enfauntait une fillye, ke Anne par noun aprent.[13]

Renewal of the war with the Saxons.

Le ray sustynt le regne en molt[14] grant honur,
E of dame Ingerne[15] vesquit en amour.
Après mult des anz chaist en langour.[16]
Octa e Eosa, ke furent là en tur[17]
De Londres, de prisoun eschapez[18] saunz retour,
En Germenye s'en vount quere[19] aide e soccour,

---

[1] *tu me desceuz*, D. It may be remarked that Pierre de Langtoft has made two visits of Uther to Igerne out of the one told by Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *le voir jeo ai conuz*, B. *le verray jeo conu*, C.

[3] *Tintagel*, B. *Tintegeol*, C. *Tyntigeol*, D.

[4] *nul q'ad talent*, B.

[5] *à defendre*, D.

[6] *retourment*, B.

[7] *Igerne*, B.

[8] *Gorlois*, B. C. D.

[9] *contrarient*, B.

[10] *Igerne s'assent*, B.

[11] *Après qe Arthur*, B. *Arthurge*, C.

[12] *de l'enfauntement*, B. C. D.

[13] *pur noun enprent*, B. *qe Amy par noun apent*, C.

[14] *oue mult*, D.

[15] *Igerne*, B.

[16] "Cumque dies et tempora præ-
"terissent, occupavit infirmitas re-
"gem, eumque multis diebus vex-
"avit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[17] *furent en la tour*, B. D. *furent là en tour*, C.

[18] *De Loundres en prison eschapent*, B. *eschapaynt*, C. *eschapeynt*, D.

[19] *pur quere*, B.

The lady has great wonder, and says, "Thou hast
" deceived me;
" My lord is dead, I have learnt well the truth."

The king returns, quickly resumes his form,
And vigorously assaults Tintagel the strong.
On account of the death of the duke, none had any
courage
To defend the castle, the king without trouble
Has taken the castle, and lady Igerne likewise.
" Gorlois," says he, "is dead through his perversity;
" And I am without wife, it would be agreeable to
" me to espouse
" Thee for thy beauty;" and lady Igerne consents.
Uther Pendragon related to her how
He had lain with her, wherefore she was the less
sorrowful.
After Arthur was born, the lady perceived herself big;
When the time was come for her confinement,
She gave birth to a daughter, who was named Anne.

The king sustained the kingdom in great honour,
And lived with dame Igerne in love.
After many years he fell into infirmity.
Octa and Eosa, who were there in a tower
Of London, escaped from prison without return,
Go into Germany to seek aid and succour,

Repairent en Brettayne cum genz de grant valur.
Kardoyl ount destrut, la terre tut est lour;[1]
Escoce ount-il pris, e mys en dolour.
Quant Uther Pendragoun la novele out oye,
Meintenant fet maunder [Lother] de Lyndesye,[2]
Ke out Anne,[3] sa fyllye, esposé cum amye,
Vers Escoce est alez of sa chuvalerye,
Ke le ray de Brettayne li dona[4] en ballye.
Octo e Eosa sour li ount mestrie;
Rechacés est Lother pur salver sa vye.
Le [rais][5] tost son pople fet maunder, e prie
Ke nul li faille en gwere, escotés sa vaydie.

Uther's stratagem.

Kant le rays ad tut son hoste assemblé,[6]
Une bere à son os[7] avait charpenté,[8]
E dist devaunt les tuz ke leynz serrait posé,[9]
E vait[10] devers le north of baner levé.[11]
Octa e Eosa of ly sont encountré,
Unkes puys en gwere ne fu si fer medlé.[12]
Chuvalers furent bons,[13] de eus fu grant pyté,
Ke ne usent par tens[14] Kristiens esté.
Del north dekes al suth[15] unt-il conquesté,
Ke dit est, saint Alban pris unt[16] la cyté.
Li rays en son chayer, cum en chastel[17] turelé,
Se prest[18] à la batayllе de bone volunté.

---

[1] This line is omitted in C.

[2] *de Loudonie*, B. *maundre Lot de Ludneye*, C. *Loth de Londonye*, D. *l'oste de Lyndesye*, A. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "Commit- "titur itaque exercitus Britanniæ "Lot de Londonesia, ut hostes lon- "gius arceret."

[3] *Amie*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls Uther's daughter *Anna*.

[4] *donayt en bayllye*, D.

[5] *rey*, D.

[6] *avoit son pople assemblé*, B. C. D.

[7] *à son oes*, B. D. *à son us*, C.

[8] *karpenté*, D.

[9] *E dit devaunt eus touz, leinz serrai porté*, B. C. *là enz*, D.

[10] *va*, B.

[11] *od dragon levé*, B. *oue dragoun levée*, C. D.

[12] *si ferment lée*, C. *ne fu si fere medlé*, D.

[13] *firent bons*, B.

[14] *Q'il ne eussent en temps*, B.C.D.

[15] *jesqe al sieu*, B. *jesqe su*, C. *jeqes al seu*, D.

[16] *pris est*, C.

[17] *son char cum chastel*, B. D.

[18] *Si prest*, B.

And return into Britain with people of great bravery.
They have destroyed Carlisle, the land is theirs;
They have taken Scotland, and put it to grief.

When Uther Pendragon had heard the news,
Immediately he sends for Lot of Lindsey,
Who had married as a lover Anne, his daughter,
And he is gone towards Scotland with his chivalry,
Which the king of Britain had placed under his command.
Octa and Eosa have the mastery over him;
Lot is obliged to retreat to save his life.
The king immediately calls together his people, an prays
That none fail him in the war, listen to his cunning stratagem.

When the king has assembled all his army,
He had had built a bier for his use,
And said before them all that he would be placed within it,
And goes towards the north with his banner raised.
Octa and Eosa have met with him,
Never since in war was there such a fierce battle.
The knights were good, it was great pity of them,
That they had not in time been Christians.
They have conquered from the north to the south,
As is said, they have taken the city of St. Albans.
The king in his chair, like a turreted castle,
Hastens to the battle with good will.

Octa se approche al ray tut de gré;[1]
Le rays li encountre,[2] fert de launce e de l'éspé,
Octam e Eosam arere ad rossé.
Molt fu de cele bataylle longe[3] la duré;
De ambe pars sont morz, de[4] ambe pars naffré,
Chuvalers, esquiers, e mult[5] de gens à pé.
Death of Octa and Eosa. Octa e Eosa al darayn sont tué,
E lour compaynye tut esparplyé.
Uther's exultation. Uther Pendragoun dist en grant risé,[6]
" Her ceste houre estaye demy-mort appelé;
" Melz voyl combatre malade, e[7] en chayer mené,
" E aver la mestrye, ke saynz estre[8] sur pé;[9]
" En honur vaut meud morir ke vivre en hounteté."
Cels ke escapayent à la[10] bataille finye,
Sont alez purver un mult[11] grant felonye,
Murder of Uther. Le rays enpusoner de male beverye.
Le ray gist à[12] seynt Alban en sa maladye;

---

[1] *Octa procha au rei tut de bon gré*, B. *à roy coite de gree*, C.

[2] *Li rei encountre fert*, B. *ly roys ly contrest' de launce*, C. *Le reis ly countrefert de*, D.

[3] *et lung*, B.

[4] *et de*, B.

[5] *chivalers, esquiers, multz de*, B. *chivalers e esquiers, et mult*, D.

[6] In abridging this part of the history, Pierre de Langtoft has omitted the passage in the original which explains this: "Cumque edocti es- "sent Octa et Eosa adventum "Britonum, regemque in feretro "advectum, dedignati sunt cum eo "præliari, quia in vehiculo adve- "nerat; aiebant enim ipsum semi- "mortuum esse, nec tantos viros "cum hujusmodi homine pugnare "decere." The subsequent passage, here translated by Pierre de Langtoft, stands as follows in the original: "Tanta inde lætitia cepit "regem, ita ut cum prius sine "juvamine alterius sese erigere "nequiret, levi conamine erectus, "resedit in feretro, ac si subitam "sanitatem recepisset. Solutus "etium in risum, hilari voce in "hunc sermonem prorupit: Voca- "bant me ambrones isti regem "semimortuum, quia infirmitate "gravatus in feretro jacebam. Sic "equidem eram. Malo tamen se- "mimortuus ipsos superare, quam "sanus et incolumis superari, se- "quenti vita perfunoturus. Præ- "stantius enim est mori cum ho- "nore, quam cum pudore vivere."

[7] *e* is omitted in B. *combatre en cheer mené malade*, C.

[8] *quant saunz estre*, C.

[9] *souz pé*, D.

[10] *e à la*, B.

[11] *mult*, omitted in B. and D. *par veir un grant*, C.

[12] *E gist à*, B. *Il gist à*, D.

Octa approaches the king very willingly;
The king encounters him, strikes with lance and sword,
Has driven back Octa and Eosa.
Very long was the duration of this battle;
There were dead on both sides, and wounded on both sides,
Knights, esquires, and much people on foot.
Octa and Eosa are killed at last,
And their company entirely dispersed.
Uther Pendragon said in great laughter,
" Yesterday at this hour I was called half-dead;
" I prefer fighting in sickness, and carried in a chair,
" And having the mastery, than being in health and " on my legs;
" It is more worthy to die in honour than to live in " shame."

Those who escaped from the battle when it was ended,
Are gone to prepare a very great crime,
To poison the king with a wicked beverage.
The king lies at St. Albans in his sickness,

Murder of Uther Pendragon.

La fountayne est près dont homme l'ewe trie
E melle le vyn[1] le rays à sa mangerye.
Un povre,[2] ke par pays les almones prie,
Aporte[3] la puyson par cele gent haye;
Est myse en la fountayne, le ray use escrye,[4]
Et morust sanz targer; le pople e la clergye
A la Karole le portent, son cors est là sevelye,
E Ambrose son frere, i ad[5] mult grant nobleye.
Quant le rays fu seveli[6] Uther Pendragoun,
Un duk de Germanye, Colegrym[7] par noun,
Aryvait en Brettayne pur fere destruccioun.
Le pople de la terre, en[8] grant devocioun,
Sount alez à Sicestre,[9] pur fere eleccioun
Des seygnurs e des rays,[10] par ki proteccioun
Colegrym pussent mettre à confusioun.[11]

Arthur elected king, and crowned.

Arthur[12] est eleu, e doné la coroun,
Cum celi ke fust ayr de la regioun.
Kant Arthur fu fet rays, de xv. aunz estait.
Of le host dé Brettayne mult tost s'en alait[13]
Sur Colegrym vers le north, ke of li avait
Pictes e Escoz, e la batayle donayt.
A Everwyk pur veirs Arthur les chascayt.[14]
Colegrym est assegez, desore ne set ke dayt.

---

[1] *E medle od vin le rei*, B. *E melle o vin al ray*, C.

[2] *Le povere*, B. *Le povre*, C. *Le pover*, D.

[3] *Ad porté*, B. *Al port la*, C.

[4] *E mis en la funtaigne, le rei le use et crie*, B. D. *le ray l'ew se escrie*, C.

[5] *Près de Aurelius son frere, à mult*, B. D. *Près de Ambros son frere ouf mult*, C.

[6] *fu mort*, B. C. D.

[7] *Colgrim*, B. "Audito namque "prædicti regis obitu, Saxones "concives suos ex Germania invi- "taverant, et duce Colgrino ipsos "exterminare nitebantur." These are the words of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[8] *ouf*, C.

[9] *à Cycestre*, C. D. "In civi- "tatem Cilcestriæ." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[10] *De seignur e rei*, B. *De seygnur et de roys*, C. *De seygnour et reis*, D.

[11] *Colgrim pensent mettre à grant confusioun*, B.

[12] *Arthurge*, C.

[13] *tost aleit*, B. C.

[14] *le chaceit*, B. D. *par vers*, A. *le chaceit*, C.

The fountain is near from which they draw the water
And mix with the king's wine at his meal.
A pauper, who goes over the country begging alms,
Brings the poison prepared by that hated people,
It is put in the fountain, the king uses it and cries,
And died without delay; the people and the clergy
Carry him to the Danse; his corpse is buried there,
Near his brother Ambrosius, there was present great nobility.

When king Uther Pendragon was buried,
A duke of Germany, named Colgrim,
Arrived in Britain to make destruction.
The people of the land, in great devotion,
Are gone to Silchester, to make election
Of a lord and king, by whose protection
They may put Colgrim to confusion.
Arthur is elected, and given the crown,
As he who was heir to the region.

When Arthur was made king, he was fifteen years old.
He very soon proceeded with the army of Britain
Against Colgrim towards the north, who had with him
Picts and Scots, and gave battle.
Arthur in truth drove them to York.
Colgrim is besieged, henceforth he knows not what to do.

War with Colgrim.

Ralduf,[1] frere Colegrym, kant le veyr[2] savayt,
Of vj. mil as armes son frere ayder volayt.
Cador de Cornewayle le ray Arthur envayt,[3]
Ralduf[4] desconfist, e ses gens tuayt.
Ralduf[5] s'en fuyst, e de quer pensayt,
Of Colegrym son frere ke parler volayt.[6]
Reer fist sa barbe,[7] cum menestral s'en vayt,
Harpe porte en sa mayn;[8] à Colegrym parlayt
De sa deliverance, e cum de ceo daylayt,[9]
Un duk de Germenye, ke homme Goderik nomait,[10]
U north of vj. c. nefs guerreyer venayt.[11]

Arthur obtains assistance from Hoel, king of Armorica.

Quant Arthur de Goderik[12] la venu entendist,
A Londres de bon aire son host venir fist,
Dés clers e des lays consail sur ceo prist,
Ke du ray de Armorik, ke Oeel[13] fu dit,
Fiz la sore Arthur,[14] ayde Arthur requist.
Oeel, quant de son[15] uncle la novele oyst,
Xv. m. as armes vayllians li transmyst;
A Suthamtoun aryvent, Arthur les assyst.[16]
La cité de Nicole est tost assegez,
Li duk Goderyk i fu, of li renaez;[17]

---

[1] *Badulf frere Colgrim*, B. *Radulf*, C. *Baldulf*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Audita itaque "fratris sui fuga, Baldulfus, cum sex "millibus virorum, obsidionem pe- "tivit, ut ipsum inclusum liberaret."

[2] *le rey*, D.

[3] "Quod edoctus Arturus, jussit "Cadorem ducem Cornubiæ, cum "sexcentis equitibus et tribus milli- "bus peditum, eadem nocte illi ob- "viare." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *Badulf*, B. *Radulf*, C. *Ke Baldulf*, D.

[5] *Baldulf*, D.

[6] *Od Colgrim son frere parler bon serreit*, B. C. D.

[7] *Rire fist la barbe*, B.

[8] *en main*, B. C. D.

[9] *daillait*, B. *de ceo dalyayt*, C.

[10] *qe Cheldrik se nomait*, B. *ke Cherdik se nomait*, C. *Cordike*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth has, "qui "duce Cheldrico."

[11] *En north od sis cenz nefs sur Arthur armeit*, B. *sur Arthur arivayt*, C. D.

[12] *de Cheldrik*, B. *Cerdyk*, C. D.

[13] *qe Hoel*, B. *Cel*, C. "Mittun- "tur in Armoricam ad regem Hoe- "lum." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[14] *Fitz la soer Arthur*, B. *la sure*, C.

[15] *Kaunt Cel de son*, C.

[16] *Arthur les seisit*, B. *saysist*, C. D.

[17] *Le duk Cheldrik i est, od touz ses reneiés*, B. *Li duk Cerdik i est*, C. *Le duk Cerdike i est oue touz les renaez*, D.

Baldulf, Colgrim's brother, when he knew the truth,
Determined with six thousand men at arms to aid his brother.
King Arthur sent Cador of Cornwall,
He defeated Baldulf, and slew his men.
Baldulf fled, and thought in his heart,
That he would talk with Colgrim his brother.
He causes his beard to be shaved, and goes as a minstrel,
And carries a harp in his hand; he spoke to Colgrim
Of his deliverance, and while they were conversing of this,
A duke of Germany, who was called Cheldric,
Came to make war in the north with six hundred ships.

When Arthur heard of the arrival of Cheldric,
He caused his army to come to London in great haste,
And took counsel upon it of his clergy and laymen,
That of the king of Armorica, who was called Hoel,
Son of Arthur's sister, Arthur should request aid.
Hoel, when he heard the news of his uncle,
Sent him fifteen thousand valiant men at arms;
They arrive at Southampton, Arthur receives them.

The city of Lincoln is immediately besieged,
Duke Cheldric was there, with the unbelievers;

Le ray Arthur survent, la guere est comencez.
A la venue primere vj. m., pur veritez,
Sont mors de Saxonays, les Brettons sunt [mult] leez.[1]
Li uns sunt mors des playes, li altres sunt na ez;
Cels ke fuyrent Arthur les ad chacez
Al boys de Calidoun, où els sunt embuschez.[2]
Quant Arthur les vynt près, els sunt enrengez,[3]
E Brettons sanz nombre ont-il là tuez;
Compromise with the Saxons. Le covert du boys les payens ad salvez.
Arthur fet abbatre del covert assez;
Entrez e issues sunt tost estopez;
Les Saxonays se morent, tant sunt enfaminez.[4]
Al rays sunt-il renduz, la pes est demaundez;
Revenent en Germenye, quant unt fet ensuretez[5]
De trewage al rays, cum fu purparlez;
E sur cel hostage unt à ly baillyez.
They break their faith. Quant els sunt en mer, tost changent corage,
Dyent k'il ne lerront, pur clerk ne pur hostage,[6]
Ke Arthur ne destruent, e trestot son manage.[7]
Retornent, e prenent terre, vile, e boscage,
Tote de Totenesse dekes[8] à la grant rivage
De Saverne vers la mer; à Bha[9] funt estage,
E tuent les waynours ke suent[10] le waynage.
Quant Arthur l'oyt dire, fist pendre[11] lur hostage.
Dist, " Ceus[12] mescreans mult sunt de fauslynage;
" Des covenauns me fayllent, e me font[13] damage.

---

[1] *Sessons, le Bretons sunt mult leez,* B. *les Bretons sunt mult lees,* C. D.

[2] *Calidon, qe Fiskirton est nomez,* B. In this MS., after this line, by oversight, or through some cause or other, about seventy lines of the text are omitted.

[3] *revigurez,* C. *revygorez,* D.

[4] *enfamez,* C. D.

[5] *Rymunt en G. quant fet unt surtez,* C. *Revount en Germenye quant fet ount seuretez,* D.

[6] *pur trew ne pur hostage,* C. *pur trewe ne hostage,* D.

[7] *e tut son menage,* D.

[8] *jeskes,* C. *jekes,* D.

[9] *Ba,* C. D.

[10] *fuent,* C.

[11] *prendre,* C.

[12] *Et dist ceus,* C. *Et dist cels mescreauntz,* D.

[13] *mult funt,* C. *De covenaunt . . . . et mult me fount damage,* D.

King Arthur arrives, the war is commenced.
At his first coming, in truth, six thousand
Are slain of the Saxons, the Britons are very glad.
Some are dead of their wounds, others are drowned,
Those who fled, Arthur has driven them
To the wood of Calidon, where they establish themselves among the trees.
When Arthur came near them, they have recovered courage,
And they have there slain Britons without number;
The cover of the wood has saved the pagans.
Arthur causes enough of the cover to be cut down;
The entrances and issues are soon closed up;
The Saxons are dying through the severity of famine.
They have surrendered to the king, peace is demanded;
They return into Germany, after they have given sureties
Of tribute to the king, as was agreed in the negociations;
And upon this they have delivered hostages to him.

When they are at sea, they soon change their minds,
Say that they will not cease, for truce nor hostages,
From destroying Arthur, and all his people.
They return, and take land, town, and wood,
From Totness to the great shore
Of Severn towards the sea; at Bath they make a halt,
And slay the labourers who are following agriculture.
When Arthur heard tell of it, he causes their hostages to be hanged;
And said, "Those misbelievers are of very false lineage,
"They break their covenants with me, and do me "much damage.

" Ore, Brettons, combatez, e pernoms le vayage;[1]
" Les Saxonays sunt noz, les testes lerront pur gage."
Address of bishop Dubricius. Lors dist saint Dubrik,[2] eveske de Karlioun,
" Ws ke estes Kristiens, escotez ma resoun;
" Deu morust pur ws, combatez en son noun,
" Defendez voster terre de confusioun,
" Ke payen ne la gayne." Arthur e ly baroun
Resceyvent de l'eveske absolucioun
Des pecchez, e se vount of say beneyçoun.[3]
Arthur prent l'esku, le ymage de la Marie[4]
Purtrait fu dedenz, ke Arthur ne l'oblye.
Caliburn, Arthur's sword. Se ceynt ke Caleburne,[5] la meyllur espeye
Ke unkes en Brettayne fu forgé ou furbye.
As Saxonays se mette, ke ne fuent mye,
Combatent jekes la nouyt, severé est là partye.[6]
Les paens sur un mount sunt tuz endormye;
Arthur les survent al jour par grant vaidye,
Devotement ahoure[7] la mere Deu, e prye
En totes ses bataylles de counsayl e aye.[8]
Il soul of Calèburne ad mort e honye[9]
Lxx. hommes de la renaerye.[10]
Death of Colgrim and Baldulf. Colegrym e Ralduf[11] tuez sunt, e fuye[12]
E le duk Cordik,[13] of sa companye.

---

[1] *combatoms, enpernoms le vayage*, C.

[2] *Auberik*, C.

[3] *De pecchez .... oue la benyçoun*, D.

[4] *le ymage Marye*, C. D.

[5] *Kaliburn*, C. D. "Accinctus " etiam Caliburno gladio optimo " et in insula Avallonis fabricato." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[6] *jesqes à nuyt sur la partye*, C.

[7] *adhour*, C. *aoure*, D.

[8] *et de aye*, C. *les bataylles*, D.

[9] *ad tuez et honyez*, C.

[10] *de la payenerye*, C. *Sessaunte e x. homes de la renayrye*, D. The number slain by Arthur with his favourite sword is much greater in the text of Geoffrey of Monmouth: " Abstracto igitur Caliburno gladio " ... quemcunque attingebat, Deum " invocando, solo ictu perimebat; " nec requievit impetum suum fa- " cere, donec *quadringentos et sep- " tuaginta* viros solo Caliburno gla- " dio peremit."

[11] *Baldulf*, D.

[12] *de illoqe sunt fuye*, C. D.

[13] *Cerdic*, C. *Cerdike*, D. "Ce- " ciderunt illico Colgrinus et Bal- " dulphus ejus frater ... at viso " sociorum periculo Cheldericus " continuo in fugam versus est." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

" Now, Britons, fight, and let us undertake the battle;
" The Saxons are ours, they will leave their heads
" for pledges."

Then said St. Dubricius, bishop of Caërleon.
" You who are Christians, listen to my discourse;
" God died for you, fight in his name,
" Defend your land from confusion,
" That a pagan may not win it." Arthur and the barons
Receive from the bishop absolution
Of sins, and go forth with his benediction.

Arthur takes the shield, the image of Mary
Was pourtrayed within it, that Arthur might not forget her.
He girds himself with Caliburn, the best sword
That ever was forged or furbished in Britain.
He attacks the Saxons, who do not fly at all,
They combat till night, when the combatants are separated.
The pagans are all gone asleep on a hill;
Arthur falls upon them at daybreak with great craft,
Devoutly he worships the mother of God, and prays
In all his battles her counsel and aid.
He alone with Caliburn has put to death and shame
Seventy men of the infidel army.
Colgrim and Baldulf are slain, and flies
The duke Cerdic with his company.

Arthur's victory.

Ben 'unt la victore Arthur e sa gent.
Cador de Cornewaile, par comaundement,
Vers Albanye s'en va, of Oel, privement,[1]
Nevuz le ray Arthur,[2] fu grevé malement;
Cordike ke fuyst assally durement[3]
Aclude, où Oel[4] fust, mès Cador of sa gent
Lour nefs prent of les bens, la mer lour defent.[5]
E Cordik of sa route assalt taunt egrement,
Cerdic put to death. Ke Cordik[6] est pris, e mort par jugement,[7]
E li remenant tuz[8] tuez nettement.

Arthur invades Scotland, and reduces Loch Lomond.

Kant Arthur entendist ke Cador avait
Venku cele guere, en Morreve[9] s'en vait,
Sur les Escoz e Pyctes seygnurer volayt.
Les gens de la terre à une ryvere[10] chascait,
Ke brace est de mer, idles lx. avayt,[11]
Des lx. roches [en]virounez[12] estayt,
Multitude des idles[13] trop i demorayt.
Arthur par navye les idles tuz passayt,
E[n] les dures roches[14] ilokes enfamayt,
Par quay mil à mort[15] le rays Arthur menayt.
Ly rays de Irlaunde, Colman[16] home nomayt,
Pur aider as Escoz Arthur approchayt
The Irish and Scots conquered. Of vi. m. as armes; Arthur se afforcait
Of le duk Cador[17] ke trestuz demaglayt.

---

[1] *s'en va Ceel priveement*, C. *où Oeel privement*, D.

[2] *Nevow le frere Arthur*, D.

[3] *Cerdik qe fuyst assalist vilement*, C.

[4] *Aklud, où Oeel*, D. *Ceel*, C.

[5] *se defent*, C. *ou lour biens, la mere les defent*, D.

[6] *Cerdik*, C. D.

[7] *sans jugement*, C.

[8] *tuz* is omitted in C. and D.

[9] *et Morref*, C. *en Murref*, D. "Deinde duxit exercitum suum Mu-" reif." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[10] "Ingressi autem stagnum Lu-" mond .... hoc autem stagnum " sexaginta insulas continens, sexa-" ginta flumina recipit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *igles xl. avayt*, D.

[12] *de lx. roches environnez*, C. D.

[13] *des egles*, C. D.

[14] *En les dures roches*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "Nam, " Arturus collecto navigio flumina " circuivit, ipsosque per quindecim " dies obsidendo tanta afflixit fame " ut ad millia morerentur."

[15] *al mort*, D.

[16] Geoffrey of Monmouth calls this chieftain "Guillamurius rex Hiber-" niæ."

[17] *duk de Cador*, C.

Well gained the victory have Arthur and his people.
Cador of Cornwall, by command,
Proceeds towards Albany, where Hoël, privately,
Nephew of king Arthur, was in great sickness;
Cerdic in his flight assailed hard
Alclud, where Hoel was, but Cador with his people
Takes their ships with their goods, and shuts the sea against them,
And with his forces attacks Cerdic so furiously,
That Cerdic is taken, and put to death by judgment,
And the rest all slain entirely.

When Arthur understood that Cador had
Conquered in this war, he proceeds into Murray
He wished to be lord over the Scots and Picts.
He drove the people of the land to a river,
Which was an arm of the sea, it had sixty islands,
It was surrounded with sixty rocks,
A great multitude of eagles dwelt there.
Arthur with his navy passed all the islands,
Starved them there on the hard rocks,
Whereby king Arthur drove a thousand to death.
The king of Ireland, Colman they named him,
To aid the Scots approached Arthur
With six thousand men at arms; Arthur exerted himself
With the duke Cador that they slew them all.

E Irays e Escoz si dure demenayt,
Ke tote la clergye mercy li cryait.
Li eveske vynt nu pez, le saint Deu portayt[1]
Devaunt tuz li altre, e si bel parlayt,[2]
Ke salve la seygnurye Arthur la pees ottrait.
Oeel,[3] son nefu, mult se merveyllait
De l'estange si grant de roche ke là vayt.[4]
Le refrene li rays[5] promette k'il verrayt
Assez greignurs roches ke Arthur li moustrait.

York rebuilt.

La pees de Escoce est fet, Arthur est alez
Tenir se[s] noelez à Everwik la cyté.[6]
Mult ad grant dolur quant il est entrez.
Ly eveske par paens est mort e exilez,
Eglises abatues, religiouns oustez.[7]
Li ray Arthur adresce ke jus sunt jettez;[8]
Piram,[9] son chapelayn, eveske est sacrez,
E metropolitan le rays li ad nomez.[10]

Lot, Augusel, and Urian restored.

Molt fu la feste bele, e riche douns donez
A Lother e à ses freres, ke furent là priez.
De Lyndeseye ad Lother trestut li countez;[11]

---

[1] *L'eveske nue peez que le seinte Dieu porteit*, B. *le sainz Deu*, C. *Luy evesque nu pez ly seinz Dieu portait*, D.

[2] *si bien-parlayt*, D.

[3] *Hoel*, B.

[4] *Des estanks si granz, de roches que là veit*, B. *De l'estraunge si grant de roches*, C. *De l'estaungle grant des roches qe là vait*, D.

[5] *Li rei li refreine*, B. *Ly roys ly refreygne*, C. *Le rey luy refrene*, D.

[6] *A tenir ses noeles . . . sa cité*, B. *sa cytez*, C. *Tenir ses noels à Everwik sa citez*, D.

[7] *regiouns ousté*, B. *religiouns hostez*, C. *ostez*, D.

[8] *qe jus est jecté*, B. *qe jeus est jettez*, C. D.

[9] *Piramus*, B. *Pirram*, D.

[10] *le rei l'ad sacré*, B.

[11] *De Lounesse à Loth tote la counté*, B. *De Ludney à Lote tute ly countez*, C. *De Loudenye ad Loth tut luy countez*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "Erant ibi tres "fratres regali prosapia orti, Lot "videlicet, atque Urianus, necnon "et Auguselus, qui, antequam Sax-"ones prævaluissent, principatum "illarum partium habuerant. Hos "igitur ut ceteros paterno jure do-"nare volens, reddidit Auguselo "regiam potestatem Scotorum, fra-"tremque ejus Urianum sceptro "Murefensium insignivit, Lot autem ".... ad consulatum Loudonesiæ "ceterarumque comprovinciarum "quæ ad eum pertinebat reduxit."

And treated Irish and Scots with such severity,
That all the clergy cried to him for mercy.
The bishop came barefoot, carrying the consecrated host
Before all the others, and spoke so eloquently,
That, retaining the lordship, Arthur granted them peace.
Hoel, his nephew, marvelled very much
At the very great lake of rocks which he sees there.
The king checks him, and promises that he should see
Much greater rocks which Arthur would show him.

The peace of Scotland is established, and Arthur is gone
To hold his Christmas at the city of York.
Much had he great grief when he entered it.
The bishop by the pagans is dead and destroyed,
The churches thrown down, the monks driven out.
King Arthur restores what are thrown down;
Pyramus, his chaplain, is consecrated bishop,
And the king has appointed him metropolitan.

Very fair was the feast, and rich gifts given
To Lot and to his brothers, who were invited there.
Lot has all the county of Lothian;

Anne,[1] sore le rays, avait esposez.
Augusel, son frere, de Escoce est jà feffez;[2]
De Morreve Uryan[3] est enheritez.
Arthur fist le doun de tuz les countrez,[4]
A tenir de ly[5] of les regaltez.

Arthur's marriage with Gwainovere.

Le ray Arthur après par mariage se lye[6]
A lynage de Rome, si com l'estory crye;[7]
Gainovere après sa femme, ke par[8] grant curtaisye,
Fust en Cornewaile of[9] Cador norrye;
Si bele creature fust nul en Brettaynye.
Après les esposaylles, Arthur of sa navye

Conquest of Ireland,

Arive[10] en Irlaunde, demaunde la seygnurye.
Gilman, ke fu rays,[11] tut li countredye;
Irlaunde à defendre se profre par espeye.
La batayle par là fu molt tost finye.
Pris est sir Gilleman, Arthur ad la mestrie;
Desore est toste Irelaunde[12] en sa mayn saysye,
E rays de raitels[13] sunt à ly[14] chevye.
[Ke feauté ly fount, et cyl de els s'afye.][15]

and other countries.

Quant Arthur avait Irlaunde conquesté,
Of poer en Hiselaunde[16] est-il arivé;
Tote la terre ad pris e saisy par pousté.

---

[1] *Amy*, C.

[2] *Agusel son frere d'Escoz est feffez*, D.

[3] *De Murreive Urian*, B. *De Ogorref Urian*, C. *De Murref Urian*, D.

[4] *celz countrez*, C. *de tote cele contrez*, D.

[5] *lx.*, A.

[6] *Arthur par mariage selye*, C.

[7] *Al lygnage*, D. *cum dit l'estorie*, B.

[8] *Gonevre ad pris à femme, par*, B. *Gaymore*, C. *Gonovere ad pris à femme ke par*, D. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are: "Deni- "que .... duxit uxorem Guanhu- "maram, ex nobili genere Roma- "norum editam, quæ, in thalamo "Cadoris ducis educata, totius in- "sulæ mulieres pulcritudine super- "abat."

[9] *Fust de Cornewaille oue*, D.

[10] *Ariva*, C.

[11] *Guillomar qe fu rei*, B. *Guillomans*, D.

[12] *tote Irlaunde*, D.

[13] *Et rays et rateles*, C.

[14] *à li sunt*, B.

[15] *Et touz ly fount fealté, et cil de els s'affye*, D. This line is omitted in A. and B.

[16] *en Island*, B. *Hiseland*, C. *Islaunde*, D.

He had espoused Anne, the king's sister.
Augusel, his brother, is already enfeoffed of Scotland;
Urian has the inheritance of Moray.
Arthur made the gift of all the countries
To be held of him with the regalities.

King Arthur afterwards allies himself by marriage
With the lineage of Rome, as the history informs us;
He has taken to wife Gainovere, who through great courtesy
Was educated in Cornwall with Cador;
There was no one so fair a creature in Britain.
After the marriage, Arthur with his navy
Arrives in Ireland, and claims the lordship.
Guillamure, who was king, refuses it him altogether;
And offers to defend Ireland with the sword.
The battle there was very soon ended.
Sir Guillamure is taken, Arthur has the mastery;
Henceforth all Ireland is seized into his hand,
And kings and kinglets are submitted to him,
Who have performed fealty to him, and he has received their fidelity.

When Arthur had conquered Ireland,
He is arrived with forces in Iceland,
He has taken and seized the whole land through his power.

Doldau, ray de Guthland,[1] fet ly ad feauté;
La terre est tote sowe,[2] par gwere l'ad gayné.
Le rays de Orkeneye, Gwynase fu nomé,[3]
Encountrant le rays est gentement alé,
La terre li comaunde, Arthur ly set gré,
La terre ly redoune de ly tenir en fé,[4]
A li e à ses hairs fesaunt homanité.[5]

Arthur's nobleness.

Puys ke li rays Arthur, sire de Brettoun,
Avait taunz de terres en sa subjeccioun,[6]
Curtais se fet e larges de promesse e de doun.
Nul n'ad ke se playnt,[7] counte ne baroun,
Chuvaler ne clerk, esquyer ne garçoun.
Parmy tote[s] terres taunt[8] vole son renoun,
Ke delà la mer n'ad[9] nul ke teent regioun,
K'il ne quyde perdre, u tenir raunçoun.[10]
Chescun endrait de say[11] purvayt la garnisoun;
Lur cytez e lur viles aforcent[12] enviroun,
Pur doute del ray Arthur, ceo fu la resoun.[13]

Norway conquered, and Lot made king.

Arthur ne demort, ne volt[14] reposer,
Fet maunder de sa terre tuz li maryner.
Les genz de mer se atirent, le ray volt passer,[15]
En Norwaie tut drait li fount ariver.
Le ray de cele terre morust einz lur entrer
Arthur saysist la terre, e va corouner
Lother de Lyndeseye en Norwaye seygnurer.[16]

---

[1] *Goutland*, B. *Gutteland*, C. "Doldavius rex Gothlandiæ," in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *La terre est sue*, B.

[3] *Gunvasin fu nomé*, B. "et Gunfasius rex Orcadum." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *à tenir de li en fee*, B. *tenir de luy en fee*, D.

[5] This line is omitted in D.

[6] *en subjeccioun*, C.

[7] *N'i ad nul qe se pleint*, B. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[8] *taunt*, omitted in C.

[9] *Ke delà mere n'y ad*, D.

[10] *ou tenir par raunscoun*, B. C. *Q'il ne le quide perdre, ou tenir par raunçoun*, D.

[11] *en droit sei*, B.

[12] *enforcent*, D.

[13] *lur resoun*, C.

[14] *ne ne veut*, B. *ne ne voet*, C.

[15] *le rei vount il passer*, B. D. *ly roys fount-il passer*, C.

[16] *Loth de Lounesse Norweie ad à governer*, B. *Loth de Ludeney en Norway seygnurer*, C. *Loth de Loudenye Norweye à governer*, D.

Doldau, king of Gothland, has done fealty to him;
The land is all his, by war he has gained it.
The king of Orkney, he was named Gunfasius,
Is gone gently to meet the king,
Delivers his land to him, and Arthur is thankful to him,
He gives the land back to him to hold in fee,
Doing homage to him and his heirs.

After king Arthur, lord of the Britons,
Had so many lands in his subjection,
He shows himself courteous and liberal of promise and gift.
There is no one who complains of him, earl nor baron,
Knight nor clerk, squire nor valet.
Amidst all lands his renown flies to such a degree,
That beyond the sea there is no one who holds region,
But he expects to lose it, or to have to ransom it.
Each in regard to himself provides garrison;
They strengthen their cities and their towns all round,
For fear of king Arthur, that was their reason.

Arthur does not rest, he is unwilling to repose,
He sends for all the mariners of his land.
The people of the sea draw to him, the king wishes to pass it,
They cause him to arrive straight in Norway.
The king of that land died before they entered it.
Arthur seizes the land, and proceeds to crown
Lot of Lindsey to be lord in Norway.

Le pople ne se paye, un altre fount nomer,
Raculfer, estre rays, e Lother enchacer.[1]
Lother avait un fiz[2] de sa mulier,
Walwayn[3] out à noun le joven bacheler.[4]
Cum Arthur vist Raculfer[5] son hoste aprocher,
Lother e sire Wawayn vount Raculfer tuer,
La terre lur demort, Lother volt[6] là regner.

Arthur invades France.

Le rai Arthur de ilokes vait à grant randon,
Passaunt la mer vers France, la gentil regioun.
La realme fu si en garde de sir Thomas Foloun,[7]
Ke la tint par gwere de la pape Leoun.[8]
Of Arthur combat, mès il ne avayt fusoun.[9]
Fullo[10] s'en fuyst, queraunt [la] tapisoun.[11]
Arthur li[12] suyst, cum vaylliaunt baroun.
Fullo[13] fu là salvé par bone evasioun.
Fullo se[14] purvyst de aide e garnisoun,[15]
Returne à la bataille, à sa confusioun.

---

[1] *Ricolf est rei, e Loth en chacer*, B. *Raculf . . . . et Loth*, C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "At "Norwegenses indignati illum reci- "pere, erexerant jam quendam Ri- "culfum in regiam potestatem."

[2] *Loth avoit fitz*, B.

[3] *Gawein*, B. *Wawayn*, C. "Erat "tunc Walvanus filius prædicti Lot, "duodecim annorum juvenis, obse- "quio Sulpicii papæ ab avunculo "traditus, a quo arma recepit" Geoffrey of Monmouth. This was the Gawayn whose name is so celebrated in medieval romance.

[4] *trop joefne bacheler*, C. *tro juven*, C. *trop joven*, D.

[5] *Ricolf*, B. *Raculf*, C. D.

[6] *Loth veut*, B. *Loth fount là regner*, D.

[7] *La reaume fu en la garde un chivaler Frolloun*, B. *Le realme fust en la garde ly sire Thoms*, C. *Le realme fu en la garde luy sir Thomas Folloun*, D. It is not easy to conjecture how the words *sir Thomas* originated. Geoffrey of Monmouth says: "Erat tunc provincia Gallia "Romæ Flolloni tribuno commissa, "qui eam sub Leone imperatore "regebat." Pierre de Langtoft has changed the emperor into the contemporary pope.

[8] *par true de l'emperour Leoun*, B. *par trew de la pape Leoun*, C. D.

[9] *se cumbait, mès il n'en dit foisoun*, B. *se combate*, C. D.

[10] *Frolle*, B. *Fulloun*, C. *Fullo*, D.

[11] *la tapisoun*, B. C. D.

[12] *li*, omitted in B.

[13] *Frollo*, B. *Folounc*, C. *Follo*, D.

[14] *E se purvist*, B. *Folloun se purvist*, C.

[15] *eide, et de sa garnisoun*, B. *de ayde et de g.*, C. *purvist de bone garnisoun*, D.

The people are not satisfied, they cause another to be named,
Riculf, to be king, and to expel Lot.
Lot had a son by his wife,
Walwayn was the name the young bachelor had.
When Arthur saw Riculf approach his army,
Lot and sir Walwayn go and kill Riculf,
The land remains to them, and they make Lot reign there.

King Arthur goes from thence with great rapidity,
Crossing the sea towards France, the gentle region.
The kingdom was then in the keeping of sir Thomas Flollo,
Who held it as tributary to pope Leo.
He fights with Arthur, but he had not forces enough.
Flollo flies, seeking a place of refuge.
Arthur pursues him, like a valiant baron.
Flollo was there saved by a good escape.
Flollo provides himself with aid and troops,
Returns to battle, to his confusion.

Defeats and pursues Flollo.

Li rays Arthur comence Fullom[1] rechacer.
En une cyté forte l'em ly vayt asseger;[2]
Defaute i ad de vyn, e ren n'y ad[3] à manger,
Morir li estoyt de faym,[4] ou la cité voyder.
Al ray Arthur[5] ad maundé messager,
E prye ke soul e soul pussent encountrer
En chaump de batayle,[6] pur victore aver,
Son regne pur le soen, à ki le poet gayner.
Et Arthur le grant de molt gentil quer.[7]

Duel between Arthur and Flollo.

En la praerye desuz la cytez
Où Sayne court par my, ke Paris est clamez,[8]
Sont li ij. barouns à chyval[9] mountez,
Chuvalers plus beaus[10] ne furent en regnez;
Brochent les destrers, defollent[11] les prez.
Li rays Arthur à joyndre[12] fu plus avysez,
Follom amount le piz del dart[13] ad donez,
Ke Follo chet à la terre,[14] son destrer estraez.
Follo,[15] cum vayllaunt, est tost resuscitez;
Le destrer Arthur en launcaunt[16] ad tuez.
Arthur est à la terre, li Brettouns unt cryez,[17]
"Mors est noster rays, allas! ke fumes[18] nez!"

---

[1] *Frollon rechacer*, B. *Feloun rechater*, C. *ly Folloun*, D.

[2] *si le va enseger*, B. *l'en vait asseger*, D.

[3] *De vin i ad defaute, e rien n'ad*, B. C. *De vin i ad defaute, e rien à m.*, D.

[4] *Morir de faime l'estut*, D.

[5] *A sire Arthur*, B. *Al rey sire Arthur*, D.

[6] *As champs en bataile*, B. *En chaumpe en bataylle*, C. *Al chaumps en bataylle*, D.

[7] *de mult genti quer*, B.

[8] *par mye, Paris est nomez*, C.

[9] *al chival*, D.

[10] *leals*, C.

[11] *defoulent*, C. D.

[12] *Sir Arthur al joyndre*, B. *Le rey Arthur al joyndre*, D.

[13] *Frolle amount du pice du dart*, B. *Folloun à mounte del pice del drayt*, C. *Folloun amount del pice del dart*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth, in describing this scene, says: "At "Arturus gestans cautius lanceam, "Flollonem in summitate pectoris "infixit, usque telo vitato, quan- "tum vigor sinebat, illum in terram "prostravit."

[14] *Qe Frollon gist à terre*, B. *Ke Felloun*, C. *Ke Folloun chet à tere*, D.

[15] *Frolle*, B. *Folloun*, C.

[16] *en levaunt*, B.

[17] *à terre, li Bretoun ad criez*, B. *est à tere*, D.

[18] *sumez*, C.

King Arthur begins to pursue Flollo again.
They proceed to besiege him in a strong city;
Wine runs short, and there is nothing to eat,
He was constrained to die of hunger or void the city.
He has sent a messenger to king Arthur,
And asks that they may meet single and single
In field of battle, to have the victory,
His reign for his, to which ever could gain it.
And Arthur grants it with very gentle heart.

In the meadow below the city
Where Seine runs through the middle, which is called Paris,
The two barons are mounted on horse,
There were no fairer knights in any kingdom;
They spur their horses, trample the fields.
King Arthur was more cautious in the encounter,
He has struck with his spear Flollo in the top of the breast,
That Flollo falls to the ground, thrown from his horse.
Flollo, like a valiant man, is soon on his legs again;
In striking with his spear he has slain Arthur's steed.
Arthur is on the ground, the Britons have cried out,
"Our king is dead, alas! that we were born!"

Arthur par vigour est vistement levez,[1]
E Follom en le front en levaunt ad nafrez.[2].
Kant Arthur vait son sank, Caliburn ad sakez,
Death of Flollo. Follom ad jà saysy,[3] la teste ly ad copez,
Del col jekes al rayns le cors ly ad severez.
Le provost de Parys le clef[4] ly ad portez,
La cyté est delivré,[5] e Fraunce of tuz les fez.
Arthur par coup d'esspeye les ad desrenez.[6]
Hoel sent to conquer Aquitaine. Quant la bataylle est fet, e Parys est rendu,
E par le[7] ray Arthur le duk Oel[8] est mu
Tut drait en Aquytayne, le ray Wighard[9] i fu.
Oel ad pris le regne cum noun defendu;
Gaynez est Gascoyne, le ray Wighard[9] vencu.
Arthur of sa route est alez vers le suth,[10]
De Parys à les mounz, taunt ad combatu,
Ke homages e servyses[11] de tuz ad il resceu,[12]
Par aide de la dame ke depaynt est[13] en l'escu;[14]
Sayn le nefyme an à Parys est venu,
[Of clers e od lais sa feste i ad tenu.][15]
Arthur gives rewards to As utaves de Paske,[16] Arthur, le gentil ber,
Volt ses gentis homes de terres[17] avauncer.

---

[1] *relevez*, D.

[2] *E Frolloun en levaunt el frount li ad naufrez*, B. *E Foulloun en levaunt en la frunt ad naufrez*, C.

[3] *Frollo ad seisi*, B. *Follo ad jà saisye*, D.

[4] *le chef*, A. *les clefs*, B. D.

[5] *La cité li delivre*, B. *La cité delivere*, C. *La cité luy delivere*, D.

[6] This line is omitted in D., and in fact it appears like an unnecessary addition.

[7] *Par le rei*, B. C. *Par le reis*, D.

[8] *Hoel*, B. *Oeel*, C. D.

[9] *le Witard*, B. *ly roy Wigard*, C. *Wigart*, D. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, Arthur now "divisit exercitum suum in duas "partes, et unam Hoelo duci com- "misit, præcepitque illi ut ad ex- "pugnandum Guitardum Pictaven- "sium ducem."

[10] *vers le su*, B. *vers le seu*, D.

[11] *Qe homes e services de tut i ad resceu*, B. *et servise de tuz il ad receu*, C. *del tote il ad resceu*, D.

[12] This line is omitted in D.

[13] *qe peint est en l'escu*, B. *qe paynt est en l'escu*, C.

[14] This line is omitted in D.

[15] This line is wanting in A. *Ouf clers et ouf lays sa feste ad tenuz*, C. *Et oue clers et lais, sa feste ad là tenu*, D.

[16] *As octaves des Paschez*, B. *As utas de Pasce*, C. *As utains de Paske*, D.

[17] *des teres*, D.

Arthur, by strength, is soon up again,
And Flollo has wounded him in the forehead as he rose.
When Arthur sees his blood, he has drawn Caliburn,
He has now seized Flollo, has cut off his head,
He has divided his body from the neck to the reins.
The provost of Paris has brought him the key,
The city is delivered, and France with all the fees.
Arthur by dint of the sword has conquered them.
When the battle is over, and Paris is surrendered,
Duke Hoel is sent by king Arthur
Straight into Aquitain, king Guitard was there.
Hoel has taken the kingdom as not defended;
Gascony is won, and king Guitard vanquished.
Arthur with his army is gone towards the south,
From Paris to the mountains, he has combated so much,
That he has received from all homages and services,
By the assistance of the lady who is painted in his shield;
On the ninth year he is arrived in health in Paris,
He has held his feast there with clergy and laity.

At the octaves of Easter, Arthur, the gentle baron,
Will reward his gentle men with lands.

his followers.

Il doune Normondye à sir Roduer,[1]
Ke fu par drait de fé[2] son chef botillier,
E Aungeve à Ky,[3] ke fu son panneter.
Ses autres gentis homes tuz[4] fist enheriter
Des terres e des rentes,[5] de molt gentil quer,
Par my la terre de Fraunce sa pes fet crier.

The great feast of Pentecost at Caerleon.

Quant Arthur ses gens avauncez avait,
E de la Pentecouste la feste approchait,
Tenir cele feste en Brettayne volait,
Pur veir à Karlyoun, e si la fesait.[6]
De or fu la corone ke porter beayt,[7]
La terre de deus eglises la province honurait,
Une de saint Jules, ke martirez estait,[8]
L'autre de saint Aron,[9] le rays[10] Arthur fundait,[11]
Un covent des chanoynes[12] ilokes confermait,
E metropolitane de cel houre la nomayt,
La flour de clergye en cel tens ke[13] regnayt.
Arthur, par counseyl de cels ke ly servaynt,
Fist maunder trestuz ke servyse[14] li devaynt,
Les rays e les princes ke suz li[15] regnaynt,
Countes, dukes, e[16] barouns, ke de ly tenaynt,

---

[1] *Normandie à sire Beduer*, B. C. *Bedewere*, D. "Tunc largitus est "Beduero pincernæ suo Neustriam, "quæ nunc Normannia dicitur." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *du fé*, B.

[3] *Angeou à Key*, B. *Et Angu et Kay*, C. *Et Angeou à Kayo*, D. "Caioque dapifero Andegavensium "provinciam." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *tuz* omitted in B. C.

[5] *De teres et de rentes*, C. *De teres et de renies, pus fet sa pees crier*, D., which omits the next line.

[6] *le fesoit*, B. *le fesuit*, C. This and the two following lines are given in two in D. :

La feste de Pentecoste tenir pensait,
A Kalioun en Bretaygne, et si le fesait.

[7] *veiait*, B.

[8] *L'un de seyn Julie, qe martir estoit*, B. *L'un de seynt Julii he martir estayt*, C. *Le un de sein Juli, le martyr e.*, D.

[9] *Aaron*, B. C. D.

[10] *qe sire*, B.

[11] *Aaron ou chanoyns confermait*, D., which omits the line following.

[12] *E covent de chanoigns*, B. C.

[13] *cel temps là*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

[14] *tuz qe servise*, C.

[15] *qi soith li*, B.

[16] *e*, omitted in D.

He gives Normandy to sir Beduer,
Who was by right of fee his chief butler,
And Anjou to sir Kay, who was his seneschal.
He caused his other gentle men all to receive in heritage
Lands and rents, with very gentle heart,
Through the land of France he caused his peace to be proclaimed.

When Arthur had rewarded his people,
And the feast of Pentecost approached,
He resolved to hold that feast in Britain,
At Caerleon, in truth, and so he did.
Of gold was the crown which he desired to wear,
The territory of two churches honoured the province,
One of St. Julius, who was a martyr,
The other of St. Aaron, which king Arthur founded,
He confirmed there a convent of canons,
And from that time named it metropolitan.
Where the flower of the clergy at that time reigned.

Arthur, by counsel of those who served him,
Caused to be invited all who owed him service,
The kings and princes who reigned under him,
Earls, dukes, and barons, who held of him,

Chuvalers, cytezayns,[1] ke fealté li fesaynt,
Deça la mer e delà ke à ly enclinaynt.
Les genz ke là vindrent escotez quels estaynt.

Enumeration of the guests.

Les ij. rays i vindrent de Moref[2] en Albanye,
Les ij. rays de Wales,[3] ly rays de Orkanye,
Rothe li rays de Irlaund[4] of molt grant navye;
E les iij. eveskes[5] ke unt la primacye,
De Londres e de Everwyk, of lour clergye,
E Dubrice de Legioun, hommes[6] de sainte vye,
Le counte[7] de Gloucestre, le duk de Cornubye,
Le counte de Oxenforde, le counte de Surye,
Le counte de Wyncestre of sa chuvalerye,
E tuz les autres countes e duks de Brettanye.
E les [riches] vavasurs[8] i sont par compaignye,
E totes les dames,[9] chascune ben quayntye.[10]
Delà la mer vyndrent,[11] of mult grant noblye,
Le ray de Norweye, e Lother de Lyndesye,[12]
Le ray de Danemark, le ray de Germenye,
Le ray de Portingale, of la cher hardye,
Le ray de Naime,[13] le ray de Armorye,[14]
Le ray des Almauns, le ray de Grifonye,[15]
Le duk de Lorayn, e le duk de Estrye,
Le duk de Burgoyn,[16] le duk de No[r]mondye,[17]

---

[1] *Chevalers et cytizayns*, C. *Chivalers et citayns*, D.

[2] *Les dous reis i venent de Murreve*, B. *de Morref et de Albanie*, C. *i venent de Murref et Albanye*, D.

[3] *Gales*, C.

[4] *Le riche rei de Irland*, B. D. *Ly ryche roys de Irland*, C.

[5] *ersceukes*, B.

[6] *E Dubrice de Kerlion, homme*, B. *Et Gudrice de Legioun homme*, C. *Et Dubrice de Legioun, home*, D.

[7] *Le duk*, B. C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Morvid consul Claudiocestriæ." *Consul* is generally interpreted by *comes*.

[8] *Les riches vavasours*, B. C. D.

[9] *Les beles dames*, B. *Et tuz les beals dames, chescon*, C.

[10] *cointie*, B. *quanti*, C.

[11] *i vindrent*, B. C. D.

[12] *Le rei de Norweie, Loth de Loudonie*, B. *de Nortvay, Loth de Ludenay*, C. *Loth de Loudonye*, D.

[13] *de Naverne*, B. D. *de Navern*, C.

[14] *De Armenie*, B.

[15] *Le rei de Alemaigne, le rei de Griffonie*, B. *Le rey de Alemayne*, D.

[16] *de Burgonye*, C.

[17] *de Normundie*, B.

Knights, citizens, who performed fealty to him,
Those who bowed to him on this side the sea and the other.
The people who came there, listen who they were.

The two kings of Moray and Albany came there,
The two kings of Wales, the king of Orkney,
Rothe king of Ireland, with very great navy;
And the three bishops who have the primacy,
Of London and York, with their clergy,
And Dubricius of Caerleon, a man of holy life;
The earl of Gloucester, the duke of Cornwall,
The earl of Oxford, the earl of Surrey,
The earl of Winchester, with his chivalry,
And all the other earls and dukes of Britain,
And the rich vavasors are there in company,
And all the ladies, each very well dressed.
From beyond sea came, with very great nobility,
The king of Norway, and Lot of Lindsey,
The king of Denmark, the king of Germany,
The king of Portugal, with the bold mien,
The king of Navarre, the king of Armory,
The king of the Allemans, the king of Grifony,
The duke of Lorrain, and the duke of Austria,
The duke of Burgundy, the duke of Normandy,

Les xij. pers de Fraunce, le abé de Saint Dynye,[1]
Li quens de Aquitayne, li quens de Chartre Guerye,[2]
Li quens de Payters, li sire de Coucye,[3]
Horrere[4] quens de Flaundres, of la barbe florye,
Legere de Bolyoun,[5] quens playn de curtaysye,
Li quens de Seynt Pole,[6] e son frere Urrye,[7]
Hewyn quens de Gynes, ke n'est pas oblye,
Ly senescal de Fraunce, of la baronye.

Their rich dresses.

Mult est grant le pople[8] ke vint à Legioun ;[9]
Vestuz estaint les rays tuz en ciclatoun ;
Les countes e les duks e tuz li baroun
En le plus riche drap ke sait[10] en regioun,
Plusurs en hermenye,[11] forayne la peliçoun ;
E les riche dames se moustrent[12] enviroun
Vestues en dras de or à la processioun.
Le erceveske de Brye,[13] of grant devocioun,
Fist la sollempneté, e mist la coroune
Al chef le rays Arthur, of la Deu[14] beneyçoun.

The coronation of king Arthur and queen Gaynor.

Li bon rays Arthur s'en est ore corouné,[15]
Dubryce li erceveske dame Gaynor[16] ad mandé,
Rayne de Brettayne pur ester corouné.
Ele veent à grant nobleye[17] à la sollempneté.
Des dames e damoyseles la suent[18] grant plenté ;

---

[1] *l'abbé de sein Deneye*, B. *Dionye*, C.

[2] *de Chartres Gwerrye*, C. *Chartres Guerrye*, D.

[3] *Curtenie*, B. *Gurtenye*, C. *Courtenye*, D.

[4] *Holdeyn*, B. *Horrer*, C. *Horere*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Holdinus rex Rutenorum."

[5] *Liger de Boloyne*, B. *Leger quens de Boloygne*, C. *Legher de Boloyne*, D. "Leodegarius consul "Bononiæ." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[6] *Poel*, B. D.

[7] *Urie*, B.

[8] *le poeple grant*, B. *fu grant le pople*, C. *fu le pople grant*, D.

[9] *à Kerlioun*, B.

[10] *qe fut*, B. *qe fust*, C. D.

[11] *hermine*, B. *hermyn*, C. *ermyne*, D.

[12] *mistrent*, C.

[13] *L'erceveske Dubrice*, B. D.

[14] *Deu*, omitted in B. C. D.

[15] *jà coroné*, B. *s'en est coruné*, C.

[16] *Gonevere*, B. *Gwanore*, D.

[17] *vint of nobleie*, B. *vint ouf grant nobley al*, C.

[18] *Dames et damoyseles ly siwent*, C.

The twelve peers of France, the abbot of St. Denis,
The earl of Aquitaine, Guerin earl of Chartres,
The earl of Poitiers, the lord of Coucy,
Holdin earl of Flanders, with the florid beard,
Leger of Boulogne, an earl full of courtesy,
The earl of St. Pol, and his brother Urie,
Hewin earl of Guines, who is not forgotten,
The seneschal of France, with the barony.

Very numerous are the people who came to Caerleon;
The kings were all dressed in siclaton;
The earls and dukes and all the barons
In the richest cloth there was in the country,
Many in ermine, outside their furred mantles.
And the rich ladies showed themselves around
Clad in cloths of gold at the procession.
The archbishop Dubricius, with great devotion,
Performed the ceremony, and placed the crown
On the head of king Arthur, with God's benediction.

The good king Arthur is now crowned,
Dubricius the archbishop has sent for lady Gaynor,
In order to be crowned queen of Britain.
She comes with great attendance of nobility to the ceremony.
Of ladies and damsels great plenty followed her:

Un columbe blaunche chescun ad port
En sa palme destre, en noun de regalté.[1]
Gaynor de la coroune Dubryce ad[2] dubbé.
The feast. La messe est[3] chaunté, e dit mult hautement;
Le ray e la rayne regal[4] vestement
Obstent,[5] e se vestent de dras mult richement,
En Aquytaigne cum al rays[6] apent.
La rayne al palays est alé gentement;
Ly rays of banere al pavillouns estent.[7]
Ly sires mangent par eus,[8] les dames ensement;
La norture de Rome auncien l'aprent.
Le servise fu riche,[9] e l'aparaylement.
[Ke] tuz les sage clers[10] jekes à l'orient
Ne saveraynt juger la maité de la gent.[11]
The games on the third day. Le terce jour de la feste juent chuvalers;[12]
Joustes of les launces là furent[13] les primers,
Hourdent[14] e tornayent, e fount tel mesters.[15]
Dames e damoysels regardent volunters[16]
Coment li barnez en diverse maners

---

[1] *En sa paume destre, en signe de regauté*, B. In Geoffrey of Monmouth it is only four of the queens who carry doves: "Quatuor quo- "que prædictorum regum reginæ "quatuor albas columbas de more "præferebant."

[2] *Gonever ad la coroune, Dubrice l'ad*, B. *Gwanore*, D.

[3] *i est*, C. D.

[4] *lour regal*, B.

[5] *Oustent*, B. *Hostent*, C. *Ostent*, D.

[6] *En antiquité cum à reis apent*, B. C. The line is omitted in D.

[7] *Li reis et li barné à pavilioun e tent*, B. *Ly roys ouf ly barné à pavillouns e tent*, C. *Le reis oue la barné à pavyllioun et tent*, D.

[8] *Li sires mangerent par sei*, B. *mangient par sei*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says that this was the custom, not of ancient Rome, but of the Trojans: "Antiquam namque "consuetudinem Trojæ servantes, "Britones consueverant mares cum "maribus, mulieres cum mulieri- "bus, festivos dies separatim cele- "brare."

[9] *fu si ryche*, C. D.

[10] *Qe touz les sages*, B. C. D.

[11] *Ne saveroient dire ne juger la moitié de l'estent*, B. *Ne savaynt dire la maytée de l'estent*, C. D.

[12] *de sa feste i vinent chivalers*, D.

[13] *Joustes of launces furent les p.*, B. *Joustes oue launces là furent*, D.

[14] *Burdeient et turneient*, B. *Burdent*, C. *Bourdayent*, D.

[15] *tiel mestries*, C. *tels mesters*, D.

[16] This and the three following lines are omitted in D.

Each carried a white dove
In her right palm, in sign of royalty.
Dubricius has invested Gaynor with the crown.

Mass is chaunted, and said very loudly;
The king and the queen the royal garment
Take off, and dress in cloths very richly,
As pertains to the king in antiquity.
The queen is gone to the palace in gentle fashion;
The king with banner to the pavilions and tents.
The lords eat by themselves, the ladies similarly,
The breeding of ancient Rome teaches it.
The service was rich, and the laying of it out.
All the wise clerks from hence to the east
Would not be able to estimate half the people.

The third day of the feast the knights employed in games;
Justs with the lances were there first,
They tilt, and tourney, and perform such feats.
The ladies and damsels look on willingly,
As the barons in divers manners

Juent des espeyes, lutent, launcent[1] peres,
Harpent e vyelent, tresgettunt li legers;[2]
Enamourées devenent plusurs de muliers.[3]

The king's liberality in gifts.

Le quarte jour de la feste fist Arthur maunder
Touz ke sa[4] coroune vindrent honurer,
E rentes e terres[5] as uns fet-il[6] doner;
Des cytez, burges, e viles les autres fet[7] feffer.
Countes, duks, e barouns, chuvalers, esquyer,
Cytayn, burger,[8] serjaunt, e home de mester,
Fet ly[9] ray Arthur richement[10] rewarder.
La feste est ja ferue, Arthur s'en joyst.[11]
Ly erceveske Dubrice chaunge son habit;
En leu solitarye se fist heremyt.[12]
David le uncle[13] Arthur en son leu[14] est elyt,
E sacrez par la pape tost[15] saunz countredit.

Arrival of messengers from Lucius of Rome.

Le rays à Karlioun est of sa barnage,[16]
U xij. gentils chuvalers venent[17] de meure age,
Par Lucy de Rome, ke lors[18] tynt le senage.
Lour lettres li deliveirent, escotez tel langage.
" Lucy, senatour de Rome, ke teent[19] l'estage,
" Maunde à sir Arthur, ke ly[20] rende trewage
" Dont Brettons sont tenuz, par auncyen usage,
" Al senatour de Rome, e[21] tost saunz custage;[22]

---

[1] *launcount*, C.
[2] *Harpent et violunt, trejettent juguleres*, B. C.
[3] *des muliers*, B. D. *En armurs devenent*, C.
[4] *à sa c.*, B.
[5] *E terres e rentes*, B. *Rentes et terres*, C.
[6] *fist-il*, B.
[7] *fist*, B.
[8] *Citezayn*, B. *Cytaine, burgese*, C. *burgers*, D.
[9] *Fist-le*, B.
[10] *riche*, B.
[11] *se joist*, B.
[12] *e là se fist hermit*, B.
[13] *David, uncle*, B. C. D.
[14] *en son noun*, C.
[15] *le pape, tut sanz*, B.
[16] *Le rei est à Kerlion of tut son baronage*, B. *Ly roys est à Karlioun oue tut son b.*, C. D.
[17] *Où venent xij. gentyls chivalers*, D.
[18] *Par Luci qe de Rome lors*, B. D. *Par Lucy sire de Rome lors eynt le senage*, C.
[19] *qe tynt*, D.
[20] *k'il ly rende*, C. *q'il le renke trewage*, D.
[21] *e*, omitted in C.
[22] *saunz estage*, D.

Play with swords, wrestle, throw stones,
The jongleurs harp, fiddle, and perform sleight of hand;
Many of the women become enamoured.

The fourth day of the feast, Arthur sent for
All who came to honour his crown,
And caused rents and lands to be given to some;
He caused others to be enfeoffed with cities, boroughs, and towns.
Earls, dukes, and barons, knights, esquires,
Citizens, burgers, serving men, and artizans,
King Arthur caused them to be richly rewarded.

The feast is now finished, and Arthur rejoices at it.
Archbishop Dubricius changes his habit;
He turns hermit in a solitary place.
David, Arthur's uncle, is elected in his place,
And soon, without contradiction, consecrated by the pope.

The king is at Caerleon with his baronage,
Where come twelve gentle knights of mature age,
From Lucius of Rome, who then held the senatorial power.
They deliver their letters to him, listen to such language.
" Lucius, senator of Rome, who holds the power,
" Demands of sir Arthur that he render the tribute
" Which the Britons owe, by ancient custom,
" To the senator of Rome, and soon and without
" cost;

" Li face les[1] amendes de cel grant outrage
" Ke Arthur fist en France par son vasselage,
" E en altres terres[2] ke sount de son homage,
" Et tenuz de Rome par trewe et par servage.[3]
" E si ceo ne voyle, Lucy maunde[4] message,
" Ke en Brettayne vendra of tut son barnage,
" E Arthur destruera e tot son lynage."

Speech of Cador of Cornwall.

Le ray Arthur regarde la bele[5] companye,
E se mette al chastel de geaunterye.[6]
Li barnez se mervayle;[7] Cador de Cornubye
Suryst, e dist, "Ataunt ke Deu ne suffra mye
" Ke Brettayne par noun use perde chuvalerye,
" Ne par amour de femme sayt mys en oblye.
" V. aunz en ceste raite[8] avoums nous dormye,
" Ne volt Deus ke nous perdums par surquiderye,
" Deça la mer ne delà, terre ne seygnurye."
Ly rays Arthur ad joy, e molt ben s'afye,
E à son barné[9] sa resoun parle e dye,

Arthur's declaration.

" Beals amys trestuz, ben avez oye,[10]
" Coment ly Romayn nous e ws defye.
" V. auns en repos avoum fet folye;[11]
" Ore tost saunz targer aprestoms la navye,[12]
" E pensoms ariver drait en Normondye.
" Rome dait estre nostre, e la senasye;[13]
" Belynus,[14] noster auncestre, la conquist par espeye."[15]
Les ij. rays de Gales, le ray de Albanye,
Le riche rays Irays, et Lother de Lyndesye,[16]

---

[1] *ses*, B.
[2] *En les altres terres*, C. D.
[3] This line is omitted in D.
[4] *Lucy ly maund*, C. D.
[5] *sa bele*, B. D. *sa bealle*, C.
[6] *de geauncerye*, C. *al chastel*, D. "secessit Arturus cum eis in "giganteam turrim, quæ in introitu "erat." The scene is, of course, at Caerleon in Monmouthshire, the Isca of the Romans.
[7] *unt mervaille*, C. *ount merveylle*, D.
[8] *riote*, B. *ryot*, C. D.
[9] *barnage*, D.
[10] *ore bien avez oie*, B.
[11] This line is omitted in D.
[12] *aprestoms nous navie*, B.
[13] *senacie*, B. D.
[14] *Belyns*, B. D. *Belins*, C.
[15] *l'espeye*, D.
[16] *de Londonie*, B. *Loth de Ludenye*, C. *Loth de Loudenye*, D.

" That he make him amends for the great outrage
" That Arthur did in France by his prowess,
" And in other lands which are of his homage,
" And held of Rome by tribute and by servage.
" And if he will not do this, Lucius sends him word,
" That he will come into Britain with all his baronage,
" And will destroy Arthur and all his lineage."

King Arthur looks at the fair company,
And places himself in the giant castle.
The barons are astonished; Cador of Cornwall
Smiles, and says, "At length God will not suffer
" That Britain shall lose chivalry through want of
" use,
" Nor it be put in oblivion through love of woman.
" Five years have we slept in this riotousness,
" God wills not that we shall lose through presump-
" tion
" Land or lordship, on this side of the sea or the
" other."
King Arthur has joy, and feels very confident,
And he speaks his reason to his baronage, and says,
" Fair friends, all of you, you have heard distinctly,
" How the Roman defies us and you.
" Five years in repose we have done folly;
" Now quickly without delay let us get ready the
" fleet,
" And let us think of arriving straight in Normandy.
" Rome ought to be ours, and the senatorial power;
" Belinus, our ancestor, conquered it by the sword."
The two kings of Wales, the king of Albany,
The rich Irish king, and Lot of Lothian,

Dyent ke pur veir en la prophecye
Sibyle la sage ad trové[1] par clergye;
Et ausi dist sovent Merlyn par augorye;[2]
Ke Arthur prendra France e Rome par mestrie.
Sir Cador dist, "Aloums, Deus nous sayt en aye![3]

The raising of forces.

Kant Arthur avait sa resoun[4] moustrez,
Le pople de vj. igles[5] i fust aprestez,
Irlaunde, Hyselande,[6] Gutland,[7] Orkenay, of genz assez,[8]
Norwey, e Danemark, of [vj.] xx. mil armez;[9]
De Fraunce e terres delà, de[10] countés e duchez,
Quatre xx. mil hommes, chescun ben armez.
Unkes jour de vye ne fust Arthur si lez.

Speech of Guerin of Chartres.

Taunt cum il enparlent,[11] survynt li quens Geryn,
Sire fu de Chartres, estret de gentil lyn;[12]
Sa robe fu de purpre, son mauntel fu marbryn.[13]
En saluaunt le rays, curtaysement s'enclyn,[14]
E dist, "Te remembre, sire,[15] du riche ray Belyn,
" De Brennyus, son frere, e del ray Constantyn.[16]
" Tu es de lour lynage,[17] il furen[t] ty[18] cosyn.
" Rome est ton de drayt,[19] passez al matyn,
" Of x. mil as armes je voys[20] toun chemyn."

---

[1] *est trové*, D.

[2] *Et auxi dit s. M. par augurie*, B. *Et ausint . . . augurye*, C. *augurye*, D.

[3] *seit aye*, C. D.

[4] *ses resons*, B.

[5] *de sis iles*, B. *de vi. idles*, C.

[6] *Island*, C. *Islaund*, D.

[7] *Guthlaunde*, D.

[8] This line is omitted in B.

[9] *of sis vint mil armez*, B. *ouf vi. xx. m. armés*, C. *oue vj. xx. mil armez*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth states that the six islands were to send *sexies viginti milia* combatants.

[10] *of*, B. *et de terres de là ouf*, C. *oue*, C. D.

[11] *cus emparlent*, B. *eles emparlent*, C. *els enparlent*, D.

[12] *de noble lin*, B. C.

[13] This line is omitted in D. In B. it and the following line are transposed.

[14] *se enclyn*, C.

[15] *E "Sire," dit-il, "te remembre,"* B. *Et dist, "Sire, te remembre,"* C. D.

[16] This line is omitted in D.

[17] *de son lygnage*, D.

[18] *tes*, B. *ton*, C. *il fu ton*, D.

[19] *est ton dreit*, D.

[20] *jeo voise*, D.

Say that in truth in the prophecy
Sibyl the wise had found by scholarship;
And also Merlin often said it by augury;
That Arthur shall take France and Rome by mastery.
Sir Cador said, "Let us go, may God be our aid!"

When Arthur had explained his intentions,
The people of six islands were there ready,
Ireland, Iceland, Gothland, Orkney, with people enough,
Norway, and Denmark with six score thousand men in arms;
From France and the lands beyond sea, from counties and duchies,
Four score thousand men, each well armed.
Never day of his life was Arthur so joyful.

While they were talking, arrived the earl Guerin,
He was lord of Chartres, sprung from gentle lineage;
His robe was of purple, his mantle was of "marbrin."
In saluting the king, he bows courteously,
And said, "Remember you, sire, of the rich king "Belinus,
"Of Brennius, his brother, and of the king Con- "stantine.
"Thou art of their lineage, they were thy cousins.
"Rome is thine by right, cross over to-morrow "morning,
"With ten thousand men at arms I go thy road."

Arthur, les comaunde trestuz returner,[1]
L'ost[2] k'il ount grauntez aler ordiner;
Le terce kalendes de August ly venent encountrer,
Al porte de Barmesflet, tost[3] saunz targer.
Arthur sends back the messengers with his reply.
Les messagers de Rome fet-il regarder
Des riche douns assez, si les va charger[4]
Al senatour de Rome de son message arer;
Ke ren ne tent de ly, ne tenir volt[5] clamer,
Mès Rome à Brettayne dait estre tributer;
Belynus[6] la conquist, e Brennyus son frere;
Arthur la chalaunge, e la volt[7] seygnurer.
Ataunt al senatour s'en vount li messager.
Le senatour, si tost cum oyst recorder
Respounse del ray Arthur, comence à mervayler,
Kaunt ke fay[8] ly dayvent fet il tost maunder.
Lucius calls together his forces.
Venuz sont à la demaunde[9] le senatur Lucye
Et le ray de Grece, le ray de Hyspanye,[10]
Boctus[11] ray de Mede, e li rays de Libye,
Pandrase ray de Egypte, e ly rays de Turye,[12]
Le ray de Babiloyn[13] of sa compaynye,
Teuker[14] ray de Fryge, of ly rays de Syrye,
Ypolitus de Grece, ray de gentilrye,[15]

---

[1] *Arthur comaunde l'ost returner*, C.

[2] *Loth*, C.

[3] *de Barbeflete mult tost*, B. *de Barhflet tost*, C. *de Barbeflte tost*, D.

[4] This and the preceding line are omitted in B.

[5] *voet*, B. C.

[6] *Belins*, B. C. The line is omitted in D.

[7] *voet*, B. C.

[8] *E quanque foi li deivent*, B. *E quant qe foy ly devount*, C. *Et quanke fey li deyvent*, D.

[9] *al mandement*, B. D. *al maundement l'emperur Lucy*, C. Pierre de Langtoft gives only a few names from the strange list we find in Geoffrey of Monmouth—he evidently looked on them as hard words, which might conveniently be spared.

[10] *Le riche rei de Grece, le rei Ispanie*, B. *Ly riche roy de Grece, ly roy de Ispanie*, C. D.

[11] *Boccus*, B. *Boct*, C. *Boctus*, D. "Boccus Medorum," Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[12] *et le rei Turkie*, B.

[13] *Babilonie*, B. *Babilonye*, C

[14] *Theuker*, C. Geoffrey calls him "Teucer dux Phrygiæ."

[15] *Ipoliptus . . . . de genturie*, B. *Ypolitus roy de Grece, roy de g. . . .*, C. *gentillerye*, D. Geoffrey calls him king of Crete, "Hippolytus "Cretæ."

Arthur commands them all to return,
To go to ordain the army which they have granted;
On the third of the kalends of August they come to meet him,
At the port of Barbefleet, quickly without delay.
He caused the messengers of Rome to be rewarded
With rich gifts enough, and he charges them
With his message back to the senator of Rome;
That he holds nothing of him, nor will he acknowledge to holding anything,
But Rome ought to be tributary to Britain;
Belinus conquered it, and Brennius his brother;
Arthur lays claim to it, and will be lord over it.
At length the messengers return to the senator.
The senator, as soon as he hears related
The reply of king Arthur, begins to wonder,
And immediately causes to be summoned all who hold allegiance to him.

There are come at the call of the senator Lucius
Both the king of Greece, the king of Hispania,
Boccus king of Media, and the king of Libya,
Pandrasus king of Egypt, and the king of Turye;
The king of Babylonia, with his company;
Teucer king of Phrygia; with the king of Syria,
Hippolytus of Greece, a king of gentility,

Et Chiron[1] le vayllaunt, ray de Boetrye,[2]
[Phares rei de Hunes,[3] of la barbe flurie,][4]
Countes, duks, e barouns, of lur chuvalerye ;[5]
De tot son homage n'est un soul oblye.[6]
Fount crier as armes, s'en vont vers Brettaynye.

Arthur proceeds to Normandy.

Ceste novele pur veirs ne put estęr celez,
Si dist cum ele fust[7] en Brettayne aportez,
Et cryé par la terre, le rays Arthur est lez.[8]
A Modrede son cosyn sa terre ad comaundez,
Et la rayne sa femme, ke ele sait ben gardez.
Les barouns[9] sont là touz of ly apparaylez,
A Suhamptoun sont venuz, les nefs sunt aprestez,
Et Arthur e son host en mer sount entrez.[10]
Parmy cel haute mer le venz les ad[11] chacez.

Arthur's dream, and its interpretation.

Endormiz est ly rays, par sounge i ad trovez
Molt mervaylluse chose ;[12] sires, escotez.
Li rays Arthur ad veu en[13] avysioun,
Tut drait vers Espayne la riche regioun,
Un urse venir volaunt en guyse de falcoun,
De l'alayn k'il gettait[14] le ryvage[15] enviroun
Tremblait cum fet tere par subversioun.
Hors de l'occident vist venir un dragoun,
Ke clareté gettait assez par resoun ;
Se batayllent ensemble, le urse ad grant raundon,
Le dragoun assayllist, al for de lyoun.[16]
[Le dragon ad levée pur rendre rewardoun ;][17]

---

[1] *E Chion*, B. Et Youn, C. Hioun, D. Geoffrey gives this name as "Aethion Bœotiæ."

[2] *Boecie*, B. D. *de Beechye*, C.

[3] *roy de Tunes*, C. *de Tynes*, D. This name does not appear in Geoffrey's list.

[4] B. C. D.

[5] *oue la chevalrye*, C. D.

[6] *De tote homage ne unt un soul ublye*, C. *n'out un soul oblye*, D.

[7] *Si tost cum ele fu*, B. C. *Si tost cum ele fust*, D.

[8] For this line and the next, D. has one line, *Arthur à Modrede sa tere ad comaundez.*

[9] *Les Bretons*, C. *Les Bretouns sunt jà touz*, D.

[10] This and the two preceding lines are omitted in B.

[11] *le vent les unt*, B. *les ventz les unt*, C.

[12] *moult de merveillouse chosis*, B.

[13] *ad eu en*, C.

[14] *De l'aleine q'il gette*, B.

[15] *le livage*, C.

[16] *à foer de leoun*, B. *al foer*, C. D

[17] C. *Le dragoun se leve pur rendre reguerdoun*, D.

And Aethion the valiant, king of Bœotia;
Phares king of the Huns, with his florid beard;
Earls, dukes, and barons, with their chivalry;
Of all his homage there is not one forgotten.
They raise the call to arms, and proceed towards Britain.

This news in truth could not be concealed,
As soon as it was brought into Britain;
And proclaimed through the land, king Arthur is joyful.
He has entrusted his land to Modred his cousin,
And the queen his wife, that she may be well guarded.
The barons are there all with him arrayed,
They are come to Southampton, the ships are ready,
And Arthur and his army have put to sea.
The wind has driven them through the high sea.
The king has fallen asleep, by dream he has discovered
A very marvellous thing; lords, listen to it.

King Arthur has seen in a vision,
Right towards Spain, the rich region,
A bear come flying in the guise of a falcon.
With the breath he emitted the shore around
Trembled as does the earth by subversion.
Out of the west he saw a dragon come,
Which gave out reasonably great light.
They fight together; the bear has great energy,
Attacks the dragon, with the courage of a lion.
The dragon has risen to give him recompense;

Le urse le[1] chascait à terre, si le arst en carboun.[1]
Quant Arthur après leve hors de dormisoun,[2]
Demaunde de ses clers la interpretacioun.[3]
Un clerk respont al ray,[4] ke treben s'entent,
" Sire, tot ton sounge[5] te dirray[6] verrayment,
" Tu es le dragoun ke vynt[7] de l'occydent,
" Ly urse est un gyaunt de ky, en combataunt,[8]
" Tu averas la mestrye, ma[9] resoune ne ment."
Mès ly rays Arthur entendy[10] autrement.

Arthur arrives at Barfleur. Hears of the giant, and of the rape of Helen.

Li jours est beals e clers, les oysels unt cryé,[11]
Al porte de Barbeflete ly rays est aryvé.
Les rays e les princes des terres avaunt nomez,
Sicom fu purveu, ilokes sount encountrez.
Quant tuz furent venuz, al ray fu nuncyez
Ke un gyaunt orrible de Espayne ad robbez
Heleyne nece Oel,[12] e cele ad menez
Sus à Mount[13] Michel pur fere ses voluntez.
Chuvalers del pays ne sount pas si osez,[14]
K'il feussent une fez al gyaunt assemblez,
Par terre ne par mer, ke ne fussent devorez.[15]
Ly rays vaillaunz Arthur[16] s'en est purpensez,
E à son [Kay] panneter[17] ad dit en privétez,
E à son botillyer, sir Roduer[18] nomez,
Ke al matyn passerayt, sanz counsayl demaundez,
Sus à la mountayne, jekes il ayt trovez[19]

---

[1] *Le ourse chait à terre, cum lard en carboun*, B. *Le urs chayt à tere, si le ardayt cum carboun*, C.

[2] *se leve de dormisoun*, B. D. *si leve hors de d.*, C.

[3] *la entrerputteysoun*, C.

[4] *al ray* omitted in D.

[5] *trestut toun songe*, B. C. D.

[6] *tey dirrai*, D.

[7] *qi vient*, B.

[8] *à qi cumbament*, B. *à qi combatement*, C. D.

[9] *Avera tu par temps, qe ma r.*, B. C. *Averas tu par tens qe ma*, D.

[10] *entendit*, B. *entendist*, C. D.

[11] *li aubes escrevez*, B. *ly aubs est crevez*, C. D.

[12] *Elene nez Oel*, C. *Elene nece Hoel*, D.

[13] *Sus al Mount*, D.

[14] *ne furent si oseez*, B. C.

[15] *q'il ne fuissent*, B. C. The line is omitted in D.

[16] *Li vailant rei Arthur*, B. C.

[17] *A Key son paneter*, B. C. D.

[18] *Beduer*, B. *Bedwer*, C. D.

[19] *jesqe il ad trovez*, B. *à la Mount Michel jesqez il ad trovez*, C.

The bear drove him to the ground, and then burns
him to ashes.
When afterwards Arthur wakes from his dream,
He asks of his clerks the interpretation.

A clerk, who is very knowing, replies to the king.
" Sire, I will tell thee truly all thy dream,
" Thou art the dragon which came from the west,
" The bear is a giant of whom in combating
" Thou wilt have the mastery: my explanation is not
false."
But king Arthur understood it otherwise.

The day is fair and clear, the birds have raised
their note,
The king is arrived at the port of Barfleur.
The kings and princes of the lands before named,
As was provided, are there met together.
When all were come, it was announced to the king
That a horrible giant from Spain had carried away
Helen the niece of Hoel, and had taken her
Up on Mount Michel to do his will on her.
Knights of the country had not so much courage
As once to encounter the giant,
By land or by sea, lest they should be devoured.
The valiant king Arthur has resolved,
And has told it in privacy to Kay his seneschal,
And also to his butler, named sir Beduer,
That he would cross in the morning, without asking
advice,
Up to the mountain, until he should have found

Le gyaunt orribel dount il ount countez.
Arthur of les deus al mount[1] est alez,
Aparceu est de un feu sour le mount levez.
Un altre vist de costé plus haut arder assez.[2]
Espyer la mountayne est Roduer enveez.[3]

Beduer goes first.

Halt en la mountayne vynt sire Roduer ;[4]
Une veylle i trove, ke plort quant vayt[5] le botyler,
E dist, " Beaus amys, retornez arer ;
" A perdre ta juvence tu n'as pas mister.
" Ly gyaunt molt desire[6] ta char dégaster ;
" Arthur à tut[7] son hoste à ly ne averay[8] poer."
Roduer un toumbe i va regarder ;
Demaunda ki[9] la toumbe fist apparayller.
La veylle respount e dist cum ws orrez parler.

Murder of Helen.

" La nece le duk Oel,[10] ki cors fu si gent,
" En cele toumbe cochait, pur quai suy dolent.[11]
" Jeo fu sa norice ; ly gyaunt, quant la prent,
" Si dure la estraint[12] e teent, ke cele, par sa juvent,[13]
" Tost entre ses braz morust sodaynement.[14]
" Si tu te veus salver, amys, fuez-ws ent ;[15]
" Sour cel autre mount ly gyaunt tay atent."
Quant Roduer le vayt, son chymyn reprent.
Revenuz est al rays ly quens sire Roduer,[16]
E counté la novele ; le ray fet murne cher,

---

amoun, B. *amount s'en est alez*, D.

[2] *plus ardant assez, B. plus haut ardant assez*, C. D.

[3] *le m. est Beduer alez*, B. C. *est Bedewer enveyez*, D. "Bedue- "rum dirigunt ut rei certitudinem "exploret." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *Quant en le m. vient li Beduer*, B. *ly m. vint ly Bedwer*, C. *veent ly Bedewer*, D.

[5] *qe veit*, B.

[6] *Li geant desire*, B.

[7] *of tut*, B. *oue tote*, D.

[8] *n'averayt*, C. *ne avera*, D.

[9] *E demaunde qi*, B. *E demand à qi*, C. *Et demaunda ki la toumbe fist reparayller*, D.

[10] *Hoel*, B.

[11] *cochera, par qi su si dolent*, B.

[12] *l'estrèit*, B.

[13] In D. this line concludes, *qe perdist sa joventé*, and the next line is omitted.

[14] *Entre les brace le geaunt morust sodaynement*, D. In which MS. the three lines which follow in our text are omitted.

[15] *fuez ent*, C.

[16] *Venuz est au rei li quens Beduer*, B. *li quens Bedwer*, C. D.

The horrible giant of whom they have related.
Arthur with the two is gone to the mountain,
He has perceived a fire raised upon the hill,
And he sees beside it another burning rather higher.
Beduer is sent to spy the mountain.

High in the mountain came sir Beduer;
He finds an aged woman there, who laments when she sees the butler,
And says, "Fair friend, return back;
" Thou hast no need to lose thy youth.
" The giant desires much to devour thy flesh;
" Arthur with all his host would not have power against " him."
Beduer goes and sees a tomb there;
He asked who caused the tomb to be built.
The old woman replies and says as you will hear her words.

" The niece of duke Hoel, whose body was so " beautiful,
" Was laid in that tomb, wherefore I am in grief.
" I was her nurse; the giant, when he takes her,
" Compresses and holds her so hard, that she, through " her youth,
" Soon died suddenly in his arms.
" If thou desirest to save thyself, friend, fly hence;
" On that other mountain the giant is waiting for thee."
When Beduer sees him, he takes the road back.

Sir Beduer the earl is returned to the king,
And relates the news; the king makes sorrowful cheer

Pur la mort Heleyne, e pur l'amur[1] son pere.
Venger volt sa mort, se fet aprester;[2]
Se scaynt de Caliburne, l'escu vait[3] enbracer.
Vers le mount se mette à pé, demort ly esquiel
[Soutz] en la praerye[4] les chuvals regarder.
Arthur est mounté,[5] of Kay e Roduer,
E trova ly gyaunt en tentes à manger.[6]
Arthur de [sa] launce[7] ly va saluer.
Ly gyaunt la mascheue[8] ne volt oblyer.
Tant cum li gyaunt la mascheue dait lever,
Arthur de la[9] launce ly va contraryer.[10]
Fort fu la batayle, e dure l'endurer.[11]
Arthur ne fu unkes en estur si fer.[12]
Se covre suz l'esku, de l'espey li va doner[13]
Ly gyaunt en le visage,[14] ke tut est senglanter.
Ly gyaunt prent Arthur, si le va trusser,
En haut de iiij. pez son cors fist lever.
Arthur se corouce, comence revigourer,[15]
Assalt[16] ly gyaunt, kar il ad ben mester;[17]
De Caliburne se daylle, ly gyaunt entestrer[18]
U parfound de la teste[19] jekes al manyer.[20]
Le cervele li decreve,[21] ly gyaunt va cocher;

Battle between Arthur and the giant.

---

[1] *Helin, et pur la mort son*, C. *Elyne, qe il bye vengere*, D.

[2] *De combatre oue le geaunt se fet aprestere*, D.

[3] *veut*, B.

[4] *Soutz en la prairie l. c. pur garder*, B. *chevals garder*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[5] *amount*, B. C. D.

[6] *al manger*, D.

[7] *sa launce*, B. C. *la launce*, D.

[8] *mascue*, B. D. *mescu*, C. "Mox "ut illos . . . aspexit, festinavit "clavam suam sumere." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[9] *sa*, B. C.

[10] *contrailler*, D.

[11] *dur fu l'endurer*, C. D.

[12] This line is given in the margin in A.; it is found in B. C. and D.

[13] *d'espeie va doner*, B. D.

[14] *el visage*, D.

[15] For this and the following line, D. has, *Arthur ly resalt, kar il en ad mester.*

[16] *E assaut*, B.

[17] *il ad mester*, C. *il en ad mester*, C.

[18] *entester*, B. C. *encester*, D.

[19] *De parfund la teste*, B. *il parfound la teste*, C.

[20] *mayner*, C.

[21] *La cervele se drive*, B. *Le cervele de ly deryve*, C. *Le cervele se deryve*. D.

For the death of Helen, and for the love of her father,
He resolves to avenge her death, and makes himself ready;
Girds himself with Caliburn, goes and grasps his shield.
He takes the road towards the mount on foot, the esquire remains
In the meadow below to watch the horses.
Arthur has mounted, with Kay and Beduer,
And he found the giant in tent at his meal.
Arthur with his spear goes and salutes him,
The giant will not forget his club.
While the giant is preparing to raise his club,
Arthur goes against him with his spear.
Strong was the battle, and hard the enduring;
Arthur was never in so fierce a contest.
He covers himself with his shield, and strikes with his sword
The giant in the face, that it is all covered with blood.
The giant takes Arthur, and lifts him,
He raises up his body four feet.
Arthur becomes angry, and begins to recover his force,
Attacks the giant, for he is in great need;
He fences with Caliburn, splits the giant's skull
Deep into the head down to the jaw.
The brains flow from him, the giant falls down;

Arthur de Caliburne ly ala decoler.
Kay porta la teste as tentes pur baner.[1]

The church of Tombelaine founded.

Kant Arthur à son hoste victour repairayt,
E à cel gyaunt la teste[2] coupé avayt,
E le duk Oel[3] la mort Heleyne savait,
Ne fu pas mervail k'il se dolusayt.[4]
Eglise sur sa toumbe[5] founder i fesayt,[6]
Pur quay le Mount Heleyne le leu appelayt;[7]
Uncore reteent le noun, e tendra par cel drayt.[8]
Arthur vynt sur Aube, une ryve[re] nomé;[9]
En pavyllouns e tentes s'en est herbegé.[10]

Arthur defies the emperor Lucius.

Ly emperur Lucy, à l'altre part de gré[11]
Pur ly e pur son host ses tentes ad levé.
Arthur son nefuz Wawayn ad maundé,
Ly quens de Oxenforde, ke Boefs[12] est appelé,
E ly bon Geryn,[13] de Chartres quens clamé,
Son message aler les ad comaundé,
Et dire à l'emperour, par Arthur le sené,
Ke Fraunce lesse en pes, k'il ad chalangé,
Et totes les altres terres ke sount de son fée;

---

[1] *à tentes cum baner*, B. *al tentes*, C.

[2] *le chef*, B. D. *la chef*, C.

[3] *Houel*, C.

[4] *q'il dolent esteit*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[5] *la tumbe*, B. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth does not say the hill was called Mount Helen, but Tomb Helen (Tombelaine), which is correct. "Qui nomen ex tumulo "puellæ nactus, Tumba Helenæ "usque in hodiernum diem voca-"tur."

[6] *et fesayt*, C.

[7] *em appellait*, C.

[8] *tel dreit*, B. *noun, entendra par teel drait*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[9] *sus Aube, un rivere n.*, B. *suz Aube un ryver*, C. *une ryver*, D. "Ut autem ad Albam fluvium "venit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[10] *son ost herbergé*, B.

[11] *de guee*, B. *du gwee*, C. *del gwé*, D.

[12] *Befs*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Duos autem consules, "Bosonem de Vado-Boum et "Guerinum Carnotensem, Walga-"nium etiam nepotem suum, Lucio "Tiberio direxit." Pierre de Langtoft has evidently read Bofo for Boso (a mistake very easy to make), and he has perhaps fallen into some confusion between the name he has thus made into Boefs, or Oxen, and the name of the town, Oxen-ford.

[13] *Gweryn*, D.

Arthur went and cut off his head with Caliburn.
Kay carried the head to the tents as a banner.

When Arthur repaired as conqueror to his army,
And had cut off the head of this giant,
And duke Hoel learnt the death of Helen,
It was no wonder if he were overcome with grief.
He caused a church to be founded there over her tomb,
For which reason he called the place Mount Helen.
Still it retains the name, and will hold it by that right.

Arthur came to the Aube, a river so named;
And he is there lodged in pavilions and tents.
The emperor Lucius on the other side of the ford
Has raised his tents for himself and his army.
Arthur has sent for his nephew Gawayn,
The earl of Oxford, who is named Boso,
And the good Guerin, who is entitled earl of Chartres,
Has commanded them to go as his embassy,
And say to the emperor, from Arthur the sage,
That he must leave France in peace, which he has claimed,
And all the other lands which are of his fee;

U ke al matyn veygne[1] en chaump u en pré,
Al for de chuvaler,[2] sur destrer mounté,
Par cors encountre cors là sayt desrayné,[3]
Ly quel ad meyllur drayt à la digneté.
Les messagers s'en vount[4] de bone volunté,
Et Lucy l'emperer issint unt salué,

They deliver their message.

Li messagers sont venuz devaunt cel emperer,[5]
Wawayn parla primes, kar il fu latymer.
" Sire, à may entent,[6] nous sumes messagers
" Le ray de Brettayne, Arthur, le vaylaun[t] beer;
" Te comaunde sa terre ke tu fas[7] voyder;
" Ou al matyn en chaump[8] te voyssyez[9] presenter,
" Par launce e par espeye mountez esprover[10]
" Ky dait par resoun en Fraunce seygnurer,"

Gawayn slays Quintilianus.

Li emper[er] Lucy respoundi saunz tençoun,
Ke Fraunce volt-il prendre oum sa regioun.
Un chuvaler parlayt, Quyntillyus par noun,[11]
" Bald[12] en dit, coward en fet, tuz jurs est li Brettoun."
Wawayn se retorne[13] cum hardy baroun,
Et coupe de bon braundon[14] la teste del feloun,
Et parla vers Romayns,[15] e lur dist resoun.

---

[1] *E al matin vienge*, B. D. has again substituted one line for this and the next, *Ou qe al matyn vyenge sur destrer mounté.*

[2] *Au foer de chivaler*, B. *Al foer de chevaler*, C.

[3] *corps soit la desrenée*, B. *derayné*, C.

[4] *messageres vount*, B. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[5] *Li messagers qe sunt devant l'emperer*, B. *devaunt l'emperer*, D.

[6] *entendez*, B. D.

[7] *face*, C.

[8] D. adds here, *mountez pur esprover*, and omits the next line, forming, as is so frequently the case in this MS., one line of two.

[9] *te voile*, B. *tey voylle*, C.

[10] *gentement prover*, B.

[11] *Quintelin out à noun*, B. *Quintillus out à n.*, C. D. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are, "Interfuit Caius Quintilianus ejus- "dem nepos, qui dicebat Britones "majus jactantia atque minis abun- "dare, quam audacia et probitate "valere."

[12] *Baud*, B.

[13] *E Gawein se turne*, B.

[14] *brand*, B. C. D.

[15] *E parle à les Romeins*, B. *Et parla vers les Romayns*, C. D.

Or let him come in the morning into field or meadow,
With the courage of a knight, mounted on a steed,
There let it be decided by body against body,
Which has the better right to the dignity.
The messengers go forth with good will,
And they have thus saluted the emperor Lucius.

The messengers are come before the emperor
Gawayn spoke first, for he was knowing in language.
" Sire, listen to me, we are messengers
" Of the king of Britain, Arthur, the valiant baron;
" He commands thee that thou clear out of his land;
" Or that in the morning thou show thyself in the field,
" To decide on horseback with spear and sword,
" Who ought by right to be lord of France."

The emperor Lucius replied without disputing,
That he will take France as his territory.
A knight spoke, his name was Quintilianus,
" The Briton is always bold in word and coward in deed."
Gawayn turns, like a bold baron,
And cuts the wretch's head off with his good sword,
And addresses himself to the Romans, and tells them what is right.

" Plus vaudrayt à ws tuz chacer[1] à mesoun,
" Ke encountre Arthur[2] porter gomphanoun."

Anger of Lucius.

Lucy le emperer tost se corouçayt,
Ke Quyntyllyus issynt occys[3] estayt.
Ly Romayn al destrer court à grant esplayt,[4]
Ly uns après ly altre,[5] après Wawayn alayt.
Un grant sire as armes[6] les autres tuz passayt,
Geryn de sa launce[7] gwenchist, e ly donayt
Tut drayt parmy le cors, e à terre mort[8] cochayt.
Ly quens de Oxenforde, Boefs, se apparaylait[9]
De la chuvalerye ke l'un e l'autre fesait,
Se torne de sa launce, ke unkes encountrayt,
Mort of la mounture à mort[10] cravauntayt.

The Romans pursue the Britons.

Marcellyus, un Romayn, Quintillium volayt[11]
Venger par espeye,[12] mès Wawayn ly tuayt,
E à tuz les deables de enfer[13] li comaundayt:
" Saluez Quyntillium," Wawayn li disayt;
" Plus vaut Bretton en fet, quant son dever vait,
" Ke manascer[14] les genz, u tuer par descayt;
" Nent[15] valt avauncement, si cure ne i sayt."[16]

---

[1] *cocher*, B. C. D.

[2] *sire Arthur*, B.

[3] *Qe Quintelin issint qe occis esteit*, B. *Quintillus*, C. D.

[4] *à grant desplayt*, C.

[5] *L'un avant li autre*, B. *Ly un avaunt ly altre*, C.

[6] *des armes*, B. D.

[7] *de la launce*, B. *Gweryn d. s. l. ghengist ly d.*, C. *Gwerin*, D.

[8] *cors, arere mort*, B. *cors, à tere mort*, C. D.

[9] *Boes s'aparcait*, B. *le parcayt*, C. *se aparcyt*, D.

[10] *of sa mounture à tere*, B. *au tere*, C. *oue la mountoure à tere*, D.

[11] *Marcellus du Romayn, qe Quintillus voleit*, B. *Quintillum volait*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, " Interea Marcellus Mutius maximo " affectu volens Quintilianum vindi- " care."

[12] *de l'espeye*, B. C. D.

[13] *d'enfern*, C. This and the four following lines are omitted in D. Geoffrey of Monmouth relates this circumstance somewhat more " clearly:—" Præcepit etiam ei " Walganius, quem intra castra tru- " cidaverat, in infernum renunciare " Britones minis et jactantia hoc " modo abundare."

[14] *manauncer*, C.

[15] *Nient*, B. C.

[16] *si sanz overe seit*, B. *si sanz oner sait*, C.

"I It would be better for you all to be sleeping at home,
" Than to carry pennon against Arthur."

Lucius the emperor soon became angered,
That Quintilianus was thus slain.
The Romans ran to their steeds with great eagerness,
One after the other, and pursued Gawayn.
A great lord at arms passed all the others,
Guerin turned with his lance, and struck him
Right through the body, and laid him dead on the earth.
The earl of Oxford, Boso, perceived
The deeds of knighthood which both performed,
Turns with his spear, whom he ever encountered
He hurled him to the ground with his horse.
Marcellus, a Roman, desired Quintilianus
To avenge with the sword, but Gawayn slew him,
And sent him with a message to all the devils in hell:
" Salute Quintilianus," Gawayn said to him;
" A Briton is of more worth in deeds, when he sees his duty,
" Than to threaten people, or slay them by deceit;
" Advancement is of no worth, if one gives no care to it."

Wawayn ly curtays, of sa compaygnye,
Se mette en son chemyn, e Boefs, e Gerye;[1]
Les Romayns les suyent, e halt les escrie.
A un boys sount venuz de grant arberye,
But the latter receive reinforcements, and gain the victory.
U vj. mil de[2] Brettouns lur venent en aye,
[Les Romayns en chacent par mult grant envie.][3]
Petroge[4] le senatur sa baner desplye,
Of x. mil as armes s'en vent de Romanye,[5]
Les Brettouns assayllent pur aver la mestrie.
Hyderius fiz [Noun][6] survint de Brettaynye,
Of vj. myl as armes; ly quens Boefs s'afye,[7]
Petroge[8] le senatour par poer ad saysye,
Tant se entretoylent, les chuvalers ount[9] guerpye,
A terre sunt amedeus par launce e par espeye.
Sus levez est ly quens, Petroge[10] par hatye
Pris est e menez à la chuvalerye,
Où Arthur attent, la novele est oye,
Coment ses messagers braçaynt la folye.
Petreius and others taken prisoners.
Li deus quens e Wawayn[11] al ray ount presentez
Le senatur Petroge,[12] e prisouns assez;
A Parys les envayt estre enprisonez.
Çador de Cornewaile là[13] les ad menez;[14]
Roduer li botillier[15] of ly est alez,
Et Richer de Pountyf, chuvaler amez.[16]

---

[1] *Boefs de Guerie*, B. *Guerye*, D.

[2] *des Bretons*, C. D.

[3] This line is supplied from C. D.

[4] *Petron*, B. *Pedroge*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Petreius Cotta."

[5] *s'en venent en Romeneie*, B. *se vent*, C. *se veent*, D.

[6] In A. a blank is left for this name; it is here introduced from B. *Sidernis*, C. *Siderius fiz Nun*, D. He is called "Hiderus" in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] *armes se vynt de Nomandye*, C. In Geoffrey of Monmouth it is "cum quinque milibus."

[8] *Petron*, B.

[9] *qe chivaus unt*, B. *entredcillent les chevaux unt*, C. *qe chivals ount*, D.

[10] *Petron*, B.

[11] *et Gawein*, B.

[12] *Petron*, B.

[13] *Cador et Bedewere là*, D.

[14] *amenez*, B.

[15] *E Beduer le boteler*, B. *et Bedwer ly boteler*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[16] *avisez*, B. D.

Gawayn the courteous, with his company,
Proceeds on his road, and Boso, and Guerin;
The Romans follow them, and shout loudly at them.
They have arrived at a wood thick with trees,
Where six thousand Britons come to their aid,
They drive the Romans from it with great energy.
Petreius the senator displays his banner,
Comes from the Romans with ten thousand men at arms,
They attack the Britons to have the mastery.
Hiderus son of Noun arrives from the Britons
With six thousand men at arms; earl Boso takes confidence,
Has seized Petreius the senator by force.
They struggle together so long, the knights have left them,
They are both on the ground through spear and through sword.
The earl has risen up, Petreius by force
Is taken and carried to the knights,
Where Arthur waits for him; the news is heard,
How his messengers have punished their folly.

The two earls and Gawayn have presented to the king
The senator Petreius, with prisoners enough;
He sends them to Paris to be imprisoned.
Cador of Cornwall has escorted them thither,
Beduer the butler is gone with him,
And Richerius of Pountif, a prudent knight.

Par comaundement[1] le emperer Lucye,
Sont xv. myl eluz de sa chuvalerye;
Catels e Caruce,[2] deus de la senacye,
E Wandre ray de Mire,[3] e Sertouns de Lylye,[4]
Sount alés vers Parys chescum cum espye.
The Britons taken in an ambuscade.
Cador desavisez, of sa compaynye,
Aproche vers la vile[5] où els sunt enbuschye.
Là sont les Brettouns encountré par hatye,
Pur veir des Romayns fu la covaytye
Deliverer les prisouns hors de waymentye,
Et tuer les Brettouns par privé felonye.
Taunt dure fu la medlé, taunt fort la contrarye,
Ke chescun des Brettouns eust là perdu[6] la vye,
Ne fust le duk de Payters, Gutredus[7] par non ws dye,
Ke vynt of iij. mil as armes[8] à Brettons en aye;
As Romayns [taunt] se medle de l'espeye[9] fourbye,
Ke ly rays de Mire[10] est mort par sa folye,[11]
Et iiij. des meud vanés de Romanye.[12]
[Borel et Catel, lour vies unt finie;][13]
De Lylye li rays e Karuks[14] sunt fuye.

[1] *comaundent*, B.

[2] *Catellus et Carice*, B. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are: "Ipsis quoque præfecerunt "Vulteium Catellum et Quintum "Carutium senatores, Evandrum "etiam regem Syriæ, et Sertorium "Libyæ regem."

[3] *Gwander rei de Sire*, B. *E Vander ray de Sire*, C. *Guander rey de Syreys*, D.

[4] *Sertorius de Libie*, B. *Sertouns de Libbye*, C. *Libye*, D.

[5] *vers le val*, B. D. *vers le vale*, C.

[6] *eust perdu*, B. C.

[7] *de Peiters, Ucherd son noun*, B. *le duk Poiters, Guttrede son noun*, C. *Guttrede par noun*, D. Geoffrey calls him "Guitardus dux "Pictaviensium."

[8] *as armes*, omitted in C. D.

[9] *taunt se medle of l'espé f.*, B. *A' Romayns tant se medle de l'espey*, C. *taunt se medle qe le rey de Sirye*, D.

[10] *Sire*, B. C.

[11] *par folie*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

[12] *E quatre meuz vanez de la Romanie*, B. *E iij. meoutz vanez de la R.*, C. *Est mort oue qatre melz vanez*, D.

[13] This line is omitted in A. and supplied here from B. *Borellus et Catels les vies*, C. D.

[14] *Le rei de Libre et Carut*, B. *Libbye*, C. *Lybie . . . . Karucus*, D.

By command of the emperor Lucius,
Fifteen thousand of his knights are chosen;
Catellus and Carutius, two of the sénatorial body,
And Evander king of Syria, and Sertorius of Libya,
Are gone towards Paris each as a spy.
Cador uninformed, with his company,
Approaches towards the valley where they are in ambuscade.
There the Britons are encountered with fury.
In truth the desire of the Romans was
To deliver the prisoners out of grief,
And slay the Britons by secret treachery.
So hard was the battle, so strong the encounter,
That every one of the Britons would there have lost his life
Had it not been for the duke of Poitiers, Guitard was his name I tell you,
Who came with three thousand men at arms in aid to the Britons;
He charges so the Romans with furbished sword,
That the king of Syria is slain through his folly,
And four of the most distinguished of the Romans.
Borellus and Catellus have ended their lives there;
The king of Libya and Carutius are fled.

Le provost de Paris les prysouns ad ponnye,[1]
Et Cador veent à court[2] chantaunt of la mestrie.

Lucius, embarrassed, determines to await assistance from the emperor Leo.

Lucy le emperer ad grant dolur al quer,
Nout e jour[3] ne seet de quel part torner,[4]
Aide beayt attendre de Lyoun le emperer;[5]
Vers la cyté de Heest[6] enprent soun aler.
Encountre la my nout[7] fet Lucy trumper;[8]
Nes un de soun host là volt[9] demorer.
Arthur fu garny, se fet aprester;
Escotez coment son host va ordyner.

Order of the British army.

Li bon rays Arthur, de sa gent saysye,[10]
Son host en vij. escheles lovrer fust[11] establye.
V. m. v. c. lv. del[12] chuvalerye
Tynt chescun eschele, si cum l'estory crye;[13]
Là furent par[14] acounte la legioun complye.
La primere eschele avayt en bayllye
Mon sir Augusel, ray[15] de Albanye,
Et le duk Cador en la destre partye.
La secounde tynt Boefs e ly quens Gerye;[16]
La terce le ray de Danes e Lother de Lindesye;[17]
La quarte avayt Wawayn e Hoel de Armorye.[18]
Assignez sunt les autres, sicom je ws dye,

---

[1] *les persons privie*, B. *les prisons punye*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *vint al court*, D.

[3] *ne jour*, B. C. D.

[4] *qel part se put turner*, B. *quele part tourner*, D.

[5] *bieit . . . de Leon l'emp.*, B. *du Leon*, C.

[6] *de Hostum*, B. *de Hoest*, C. D. "Hæsitando .... an, intra "Augustodunum receptus, auxi- "lium Leonis imperatoris expectet." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] *la mynuyt*, C.

[8] *tremper*, D.

[9] *voet là*, D.

[10] *de ses gens affie*, B. *s'afye*, C. *de ses gentz saisye*, D.

[11] *escheles fu lors*, B. *lors fu*, C. D.

[12] *Sis mil, sis cenz, lx. et vj. de la*, B. *de la c*, C. D.

[13] *cum dit l'estorie*, B.

[14] *là fu par*, B. D. *là fu par acountre*, C.

[15] *le rei*, B.

[16] *Guerrie*, B.

[17] *Loth de Loudonie*, B. *de Ludenye*, C. D. "Tertiæ vero turmæ "Aschil rex Dacorum atque Lot "rex Norwegensium." Geoffrey "of Monmouth."

[18] *de Aumarie*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "dux Armori- "canorum."

The provost of Paris has punished the prisoners,
And Cador comes to court chaunting with the victory.

Lucius the emperor has great grief at heart,
Day nor night does he know on which side to turn,
He was anxious to wait for aid from the emperor Leo,
And begins his march towards the city of Autun.
Against midnight Lucius causes the trumpets to sound;
Not one of his host is willing to remain there.
Arthur was warned, and made him ready;
Listen how he proceeds to marshal his army.

The good king Arthur, having assembled his people,
His army was then drawn up in seven squadrons.
Five thousand five hundred and fifty-five soldiers
Each squadron contained, as the history proclaims;
These made by reckoning the legion complete.
The first squadron had in charge
My lord Augusel, king of Albany,
And the duke Cador on the right side.
The second held Boso and the earl Guerin;
The third, the king of the Danes, and Lot of Lindsey;
The fourth had Gawayn and Hoel of Armorica.
The others were assigned, as I tell you,

A Rodwer e Kay,[1] e à Holdyn de Ruffye,[2]
A Gutred de Payters,[3] duk de grant noblye,
Al quens de Laycestre,[4] Ingent, ke Deu benye!
Al quens de Dorcestre, Jon le fiz Helye,[5]
Al Cursal de Sicestre,[6] ke mult del hoste guye;
Cil gardent les escheles,[7] seint Gorge les cundye!
Urbegen de Ba, mult vayllaunt baroun,[8]
Sen legio de coste of gent par legioun,[9]
Ilokes de fyn or levayt un dragoun;
Le leu assez ben aforcait[10] enviroun
Al malades[11] e nafrez pur[12] recreacioun.
Arthur's address to his men.
Le rays Arthur i veent, e dist en sa resoun
A tuz soun barnage,[13] par grant[14] devocioun:
" Ws estes mes homes liges,[15] je ws dai guerdoun;
" Trente realmes ay en ma[16] subjeccioun.
" Par Deu, joe ose ben dire,[17] tesmoyne Salomoun,
" Romayn est orgullous e pryvé[18] feloun.
" A tort demaunde trewe de nostre regioun.
" Amys, si ws volez,[19] saunz collusioun,
" Lealment fere la gwere, sachez ly[20] Brettoun
" Enpartra[21] la victore, volt Romayn ou noun."

---

[1] *Beduer e Key*, B. C. *Bedwere et Kay*, D.

[2] *Ruscie*, B. *et Russie*, D. " Holdinus dux Rutenorum," in Geoffrey of Monmouth."

[3] *Witard de Peiters*, B. *Gutterd*, C. *Cuttrede*, D.

[4] *de Lorcestre*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him " Vigenis de " Legecestria."

[5] *Jonathas filz de Helie*, B. *Jonan*, C. D. The name in Geoffrey of Monmouth is, " Jonathal " Dorecestrensis."

[6] *A Cursal de Citre*, B. *de Cicestre*, C. D. " Cursalem de Cai- " cestria," in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] *les chastels*, D.

[8] *Urgen de Baa, vailant baron*, B. *Urbygoun de Baa*, C. *Urbigon*, D. " Quartæ vero Urbgennius de " Badone." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[9] *Se logea de cost of genz de legioun*, B. *Se logea de cost*, C. *Se logea de coste oue gentz pur legioun*, D.

[10] *aforcent*, B. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[11] *A mdlades*, C.

[12] *par*, B.

[13] *tuz de son b.*, C. D.

[14] *en grant*, B. D.

[15] *liges*, omitted in B.

[16] *en ay en ma*, C.

[17] *Par quei ose bien dire*, B. *Par quai jeo*, C. *Pur quei*, D.

[18] *et mult privé*, B.

[19] *voillez*, C.

[20] *qe li*, B. *sacher ly*, C.

[21] *emportra*, D.

To Beduer and Kay, and to Holdin of Russia,
To Gwitard of Poitiers, a duke of great nobility,
To the earl of Leicester, Ingent, whom may God bless!
To the earl of Dorchester, Jonathal son of Hely,
To Cursal of Chichester, who leads much of the army;
These have the charge of the squadrons, may St. George be their guide!

Urbigen of Bath, a very valiant baron,
Lodged on one side with people by legion,
There he raised a dragon of pure gold;
The place around was very commodious
For the sick and wounded for recreation.
King Arthur comes there, and says in his discourse
To all his baronage, through great devotion:
" You are my liege men, I owe you reward;
" I have under my subjection thirty kingdoms.
" By God, I dare well say, witness Solomon,
" The Roman is haughty and a secret traitor.
" He demands wrongfully tribute of our region.
" Friends, if you will, without deceit,
" Loyally make the war, know that the Briton
" Will gain the victory, whether the Roman will or " not."

The armies in presence.

En le val de Suese i sount[1] descenduz
Les Romayns aprestez of launce e esku;[2]
Quident sanz encountre passer desconuz.
Les Brettouns les venens,[3] ly emperer est desceuz.
Arthur, de ses escheles quant est[4] apparceuz,
Et ordiner les vist[5] as entrez e issuz,
Nul force en fist,[6] mès tut tynt cum deduz.

Address of Lucius.

Li emperer Lucye, quant pur veir savayt
Ke le rays Arthur son dragoun levayt,
A les riches rays ky[8] homage avayt,
Et à tut son host, en prechaunt disait,
" Jadis à nos auncestre chescun enclinayt
" Ke fu rays de terre, e trewe les donayt;
" Arthur n'ad resoun encountre may par drayt."[9]
Ataunt en xii. escheles son host devisayt;
A rays, duks, e countes trewer[10] les comandait;
Un egle de fyn or pur baner[11] adrescayt.
La riche terre de Legers le emperer passait,[12]
Et Arthur e son host[13] assayllir comencayt.

Death of Beduer.

Dure fu la batayle en cel orient,[14]
Ly Brettouns dure menez al comencement.[15]
Ly quens sir Bedewers[16] fu morz en[17] la gent;
Kay, son compaynon, nafrez malement.[18]

---

[1] *En val de Suesie sunt jà*, B. C. D. " Quandam vallem, quam " Lucius transgressurus erat, in- " greditur, quæ Suesia vocabatur." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *oue launces et escuz*, C. D.

[3] *les survenent*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[4] *fust*, B. D. *fu*, C.

[5] *fist*, B.

[6] *ne fist*, B.

[7] *condeduz*, C.

[8] *de ki homaye*, B. *qe homage*, C.

[9] *encuntre nous de dreit*, B. *nus par d.*, C. D.

[10] *guier*, B. *Al roys et à ducks, countes guyer*, C.

[11] *pur baner de fin ore*, C.

[12] *de Langres l'emperour passoit*, B. *de Legeres l'emperer passayt*, C. This line is omitted in D. " Civi- " tatem aditurus Lengrias cum ex- " ercitibus suis ingreditur." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[13] *de son host*, C.

[14] *en tel o.*, C.

[15] *à l'encomencement*, B.

[16] *Li quens Beduer*, B. C. D.

[17] *entre*, B. C. D.

[18] *mortelement*, B. C. D.

In the valley of Suesia are there descended
The Romans ready with spear and shield;
They think without opposition to pass unperceived.
The Britons come, the emperor is deceived.
Arthur, when he came in view of his squadrons,
And saw them forming at the entries and issues,
Made no account of it, but held it all as pleasure.

The emperor Lucius, when he knew for truth
That king Arthur was raising his dragon,
To the rich kings whose homage he had,
And to all his host, made this address,
" Formerly to our ancestors every one bowed
" Who was king of land, and gave them tribute;
" Arthur has no right against me by justice."
Thereupon he divided his army into twelve squadrons;
He intrusted the command of them to kings, dukes, and earls;
He raised up an eagle of pure gold for his banner.
The emperor was passing the rich land of Langres,
And began to attack Arthur and his army,

Fierce was the battle at that moment,
The Britons hard pressed at the beginning.
The earl sir Beduer was slain among the people;
Kay, his companion, mortally wounded.

Buctus, ray de Mede, ly tuayt verrayment.[1]
Kay, ke fu nafrez, le cors sus prent,[2]
Al dragon de or le porta gentement,[3]
Devaunt le rays Arthur fu le enterrement.

Battle between Hirelgas and the king of Media.

Hirenglas,[4] nefuz li quens Bedwer,
Voet la mort son uncle à tut fyns venger,
Trais cenz armés se fet assocyer,
Les escheles des Romayns par my va percer,
Cum entre pors en chaump[5] passa cum sengler,
Tut drait al ray de Mede chevaucha[6] li beer;
L'estur entre les deus fu felun e fer.
Hirenglas[7] saysist le ray par power,
E par coupe d'espeye la teste fist[8] voler.
A la toumbe son uncle le cors fist-il[9] porter,
Et en[10] despyt des Romayns le fet[11] là desmembrer,
As oysels e as chens sa chare doune à manger.
Le cors le ray de Mede est mys à viletez.
Ly ray de Babiloyne[12] devent mult irez;
Son host ben confort, si les ad pryez,
Enpensent[13] des Romayns, de batailes donez,[14]
Ke tuz [jours][15] par victore enportaynt les grez.
Les Romayns se vigourent,[16] à Brettons unt donez
Playes des launces ne serrount jà curez.[17]

---

[1] *Boccus le rei de Mede le tua veirement*, B. *Boccus, roy de Medde*, C. *Boctus . . . . . le tua*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Boccus rex Medorum."

[2] *le corps mort susprent*, C. D.

[3] *gentilment*, C.

[4] *Hirelgas*, B. *Lyrengals*, C. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are: "Hirelgas ergo nepos Bedueri "ultra modum ob mortem ipsius "commotus."

[5] *prez e chaumps*, B. *entre pores à chaunces p.*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[6] *chyvachoy*, C.

[7] *Hirelgas*, B. *Yrengals*, C.

[8] *ly fist voler*, C. D.

[9] *fet-il*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

[10] *En despit*, D.

[11] *les fet là*, C. *Romayns le cors là d.*, D.

[12] *Lucis l'emperour devient*, B. *Lucy l'emperour devint*, C. D.

[13] *Q'il pensent*, B. *Ke enpensent*, C. D.

[14] *de batailles assez*, B. D. *assez*, C.

[15] *Qe tuz jours*, B. C. D.

[16] *se afforcent*, B. *as Bretons*, C. *se vigouroun*t, D.

[17] *Ploies qe jamès ne serrunt curez*, B. C. D.

Boccus, king of Media, in truth slew him.
Kay, who was wounded, takes up the body,
Carried it gently to the dragon of gold,
The interment took place in presence of king Arthur.

Hirelgas, nephew of the earl Bedwer,
Seeks at all risks to avenge the death of his uncle,
Takes with him three hundred men at arms,
Cuts through the middle of the squadrons of the Romans,
Passed like a wild boar among pigs in the field,
The baron rode straight to the king of Media:
The contest between the two was cruel and fierce.
Hirelgas seized the king by force,
And with a blow of the sword made his head fly off.
He caused the corpse to be carried to the tomb of his uncle,
And has it cut to pieces in despite of the Romans,
He gives his flesh to eat to the birds and dogs.

The corpse of the king of Media is treated with infamy.
The emperor Lucius is greatly enraged;
He has encouraged his army, and has prayed them,
To think of the Romans and of past battles,
When always by victory they carried the prize.
The Romans take courage, they have given to the Britons
Wounds with spears which will never be cured.

Deaths on both sides.

Pur veirs, en cel contemple sunt muz de genz[1] tuez;
Les nouns des Romayns ke morz sunt escotez.
Alphame, ray des Irys, est mort en cel estur;[2]
Le ray de Babiloyne fu occys en dolur;[3]
Maryus e Milvus, li deus senatour;[4]
Chuvalers e serganz, pitayle en tristour,
Sunt morz sanz nombre, de nul i ad retur.[5]
Les Brettonz sunt morz, gent de grant noblye,
Doldyns quens de Flandres, of sa chuvalerye;
Li quens de Boloyne,[6] e iij. de Brettanye[7]
Mestres counsaylers, dont avaynt la ballye,
Cursal de Sicestre, de Salesbire Gudtrilye,[8]
Et Urbigere de Ba,[9] lur vies unt finye.
Les genz de lur escheles, tristes e marrye,
A Wawayn e Hoel sunt alez quere aye.
Survynt le seneskal Chymark de Tirye,[10]
Rymark e Bletoun,[11] e ly quens Languye.
Sir Hoel e Wawayn ne les fuyent mye.[12]
Dure fu la batayle, meynt coup d'espye;
Cels[13] e muz des alters de la partye Lucye

---

[1] *mult gens*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *rei d'Espaigne, fu occis à dolours*, B. *roy des Irrays*, C. *rey d'Espayne*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Alifantinam rex "Hispaniæ."

[3] This line is omitted in B. and D., or rather it and the previous line are made into one.

[4] "Quintus quoque Milvius et "Marius Lepidus senatores occu- "buerunt." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[5] *de nul n'y ad retour*, C. *n'ad*, D.

[6] *Holdinus rex Rutenorum et Leodegarius Boloniensis.*" Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] Geoffrey of Monmouth calls them "tres etiam consules Britan- "niæ."

[8] *Cicestre, de Salesbiri Guttelie*, B. *Gottrebie*, C. The corresponding names in Geoffrey of Monmouth are "Cursalem Caicestrensis, Galluc "Salesberiensis, et Urbgennius de "Badone."

[9] *E Urgen sire de Baa*, B. *Urbyger de Baa*, C. *Urbigon*, D.

[10] *Kimark de Tigrie*, B. C. *Chimar de Tigrye*, D. "Kimarcocus "siquidem consul Trigeriæ." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *Rimark de Blecton*, B. *de Bletton*, C. *et Blecton*, D. "Cor- "ruerunt etiam tres inclyti proceres, "Richomarius et Bloccovius atque "Lagivius de Bodloano." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[12] *mès de la partye Lucye*, D., which omits the next line.

[13] *Geaunz*, B.

In truth in that moment many people were killed;
Listen to the names of the Romans who were slain:

Alifantinam, king of Spain, is dead in this contest;
The king of Babylon was slain in grief;
Marius and Milvius, the two senators;
Knights, and sergeants, and footmen, in sadness,
Are dead without number, there is no return for any of them.

Of Britons are slain, people of great nobility,
Holdin, earl of Flanders, with his chivalry;
The earl of Boulogne, and three of Britain
Master counsellors, of which they had the charge,
Cursalem of Chichester, Galloc of Salisbury,
And Urbigen of Bath, have ended their lives.
The men of their squadrons, sad and downcast,
Are gone to seek aid of Gawayn and Hoel.
There arrived the seneschal Kimarcoc of Trigeria,
Richomarc and Bloccon, and the earl Lagivius.
Sir Hoel and Gawayn show no inclination to fly.
Hard was the battle, with many a sword blow;
Those and many others of the party of Lucius

Sunt morz en cel estur; Wawayn ad la mestrie,
Par ayde de sir Hoel, ke cele[1] route guye.

Gawayn's danger.

Wawayn mult se aforce, et reprent vigour,
Et dist al duk Hoel, "Alums quer honur,
" Perçoms les escheles jekes à l'emperour!"[2]
Tant fesaint des armes ice[ls] deus[3] à cel jour,
Ke nul put elire li quel de els[4] fu melliour.
Of Lucy[5] se medle, des Romayns fu-il flour;
Assez tost des Romayns à Lucy vint[6] soccur.
Le duk Hoel aproche, vist Wawayn en labour,
Se medle de l'espeye de tuz pars[7] entour.
Le emperer les chace par poer en l'estour.
Jà sunt Arthur [venuz et la dolour,][8]
Ly nouncyent coment tuez sunt de lure
Des countes e des duks;[9] li rays en ad dolur.[10]

Arthur exhorts his men.

Arthur de[11] Caliburne hors en ire sakayt,
Et [à][12] tut son host mult haut escryait,[13]
" Ke fetes-ws, Brettouns? tornez à l'esplait;
" Tuez e nafrez, ke nul[14] eschapé sait;
" Tuz mourrount de l'espeye;" escotez k'il disayt.[15]
"Des been[16] fez vos auncestre remembrez-ws,
" Brettons,
" Remembrez des honurs de xxx. regiouns,
" Des homages e[17] servyces ke sunt en nos bandouns,

---

[1] *tel*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[2] This and the preceding line are transposed in A.

[3] *armes les dous*, B. *armes et cels ii.*, C. *icels ij. à icest jour*, D.

[4] *Nul home puit eslire quex de eus*, B. *Ke nul home pout ellire quel de els*, D.

[5] *A Lucy*, D.

[6] *vient*, B.

[7] *de tot pars*, C.

[8] These words, which are omitted in A., are here supplied from B. C. D. *sunt al rey Arthur*, D.

[9] *countes et les ducks*, C. *Les countes et les duks*, D.

[10] *tristour*, B. D.

[11] *de* omitted in B. C. D.

[12] *à* omitted in A. C.

[13] *crieit*, B. *en mult haut cryait*, C.

[14] *mal*, B.

[15] *l'espeye, si Dieu m'eyt*, D.

[16] *bon*, B. *Les benfez*, C. This and the eight following lines are omitted in D., which has these omissions frequently.

[17] *e de*, B.

Are slain in that battle; Gawayn has the mastery,
By aid of Sir Hoel, who commands that division of troops.

Gawayn exerts himself much, and recovers strength,
And says to duke Hoel, "Let us go seek honour,
"Let us cut through the squadrons up to the emperor!"
These two did such feats of arms that day,
That no one could choose which of them was the best.
He (Gawayn) engages Lucius, who was the flower of the Romans;
Immediately succour of the Romans comes to Lucius.
Duke Hoel approaches, sees Gawayn hard pressed,
Fights with his sword on all sides round.
The emperor repulses them by force in the battle.
Already they and grief have come to Arthur,
They announce to him how of theirs are killed
Earls and dukes; the king is grieved at it.

Arthur in anger drew out Caliburn,
And shouted very loud to all his army,
"What are you doing, Britons? turn and do deeds;
"Slay and wound, that none escape;
"All shall die by the sword;" hear how he continued.

"Remember, Britons, the good deeds of your forefathers;
"Remember the honours of the thirty kingdoms,
"The homages and services which are at our disposal

" De cytez e viles, des chastels envyrouns,
" Ke nus e vos[1] auncestres conqueymes sur feluns.
" Remembrez des Romayns ke n'avaynt fusuns
" Al riche rays Belyns, à ky par grant resouns
" Fu trwe rendu de Rome, ke ore aver volums."

Arthur's prowess.

Quant il avait dit[2] tuz ses volentez,
De Caliburne se medle cum homme forsenez,[3]
A destre e à senestre le pople ad tuez,[4]
Pez e mayns e jaumbes saunz noumbre ad copez.[5]
Du ray de Babye[6] la teste li ad[7] trenchez;
Li ray de Bythynnye là fu[8] decolez.
Les genz de ambe pars des armes fount assez.[9]
Les Romayns en l'estur sunt sovent ben. menez;
Mès certes ly Brettouns valent plus d'assez.[10]
De launce u de espeye[11] ke Arthur ad tochez,
Morz tut saunz resort à terre sunt russez.[12]
Et quant li rays Arthur est tut plus irez,[13]
Moriz de Gloucestre,[14] of vj. myl mountez,

Death of the emperor Lucius.

Vynt sur l'emperour molt ben avysez.
Jà sunt les escheles des princes assemblez,
Parmy le cors Lucy la launce est jà[15] passez;

---

[1] *nus e vos*, B. C.

[2] *Quant Arthur ad dit*, B. C. *A ceste parole Arthur, cum home forsenez*, D.

[3] *medle, de totes partz ad tuez*, D.

[4] This line is omitted in D.

[5] *Pees e meins as uns e jambes ad coupés*, B. *of uns ou jaumbes*, D.

[6] *Libie*, B. D. *Oue roye de Labbie*, C. "Duos reges, Sertorium " Libyæ, Bithyniæque Polytetem." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[7] *teste en ad tr.*, D.

[8] *de Buinie fu là d.*, B. *de Bitimye fu là d.*, D.

[9] *sount tuez*, B.

[10] *vaillant meint feez*, B. *plus valent multz de fez*, C. This and the preceding line are omitted in D.

[11] *De launceoun de espeye*, C.

[12] *Mort sanz resort à terre sunt trebuchez*, B. *M. s. r. . . . rusez*, C. D.

[13] *tut le plus irrez*, C. D.

[14] *Morwid de Gloucestre*, B. *Morvide*, C. D. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are "Ecce Mor- " vid consul Claudiocestriæ cum " legione."

[15] *jà* omitted in B. C. D.

" Of cities, and towns, and castles, round about,
" Which we and your ancestors conquered from the
" wretches.
" Remember the Romans who were not strong enough
" For the rich king Belinus, to whom by great right
" Tribute was paid from Rome, which we intend now
" to have."

When he had said all he would,
He makes use of Caliburn like a man who is mad,
And has slain the people to the right and to the left,
Has cut off feet and hands and legs without number.
He has cut off the head of the king of Libya;
The king of Bithynia was there beheaded.
The people on both sides performed deeds of arms enough.
The Romans in the battle often did very well;
But truly the Britons were much more worth.
Whoever Arthur has touched with spear or sword,
All without reprieve are thrown dead to the earth.
And at the moment when king Arthur is the most angry,
Morvid of Gloucester, with six thousand on horse,
Came upon the emperor with very great skill.
Already are the squadrons of the princes assembled,
The lance has already passed through the body of Lucius;

L'estory ne dit mye[1] ky le coup ly ad donez,
Nepurquant sa mort à Wawayn est rettez.
Morz est ly emperer, les Romayns sunt perduz,
Et les riches rays ke of li sunt venuz.[2]
Les cors à Brettons[3] ke mort furent conuz
Sunt richement seveliz par Arthur le pruz,
Chescun en son pays ù il fu conuz[4]
Sire de seygnurye, ausynt les autres tuz.[5]

Arthur presents his body to the citizens of Rome.

Sire Arthur prent le cors Lucy l'emperer,
E as cytesayns[6] de Rome le fet presenter;
Les saluz par Brettons, ke fount enveyer
La teste lur emperour pur eus enrycher;
[Eissint fesoient as Romains liverer][7]
Par[8] tribute de Brettayne, ke taunt fust arer.
Le pople des Romayns s'en va decliner[9]
Pur la mort Lucy, ke fu lour emperer.
Arthur en Burgoyne les cytés edifye;[10]
En le yver i demort jekes la[11] Paske-florye;

Arthur marches into Italy. Is stopped by news of the treason of Modred and the queen, and

Après les mounz passayt devers Lumbardye
Pur conquere Rome e tut Ytallye.[12]
Lettres à ly [sunt] venuz[13] hors de Brettanye,
Cum trompes sonaunz à manger[14] en Pavye,
Ke Modred son nefuz, ke avayt la ballye[15]
De la garde[16] de Brettayne, e de sa amye,[17]

---

[1] *ne dit pas*, B. C. D. "Tunc "etiam Lucius imperator intra "turmas occupatus, *cujusdam* lan- "cea confossus interiit." Geoffrey of Monmouth, who does not say that the blow was ascribed to Gawayn.

[2] *qe oue ly esteint venuz*, D.

[3] *des Bretons*, B. D. *de Bretouns*, C.

[4] *pais dount il est tenuz*, B. *dount i furent muz*, D.

[5] *les ad il touz*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[6] *cytayns*, D.

[7] This line is omitted in A., and supplied from B. C.; D. also omits it.

[8] *Pur tribute de Br.*, B. D.

[9] This and the following line are omitted in B. C. D.

[10] *edifyez*, C.

[11] *et de mort jekes à la*, C.

[12] This line is omitted in B.

[13] *li sunt venuz*, B. C. D.

[14] *Cum ses trumpes soneient à mager*, B. *Cum s. t. sonaynt à manger*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[15] *en baillie*, B. C. D.

[16] *La garde*, B. C. D.

[17] *et Ganore sa amye*, D.

The history does not tell who gave the blow,
Nevertheless his death is ascribed to Gawayn.

Dead is the emperor, the Romans are overthrown,
And the rich kings who are come with them.
The bodies of the Britons who are dead and known
Are buried richly by Arthur the noble,
Each in his country where he was known
Lord of lordship, and so all the others.

Sir Arthur takes the body of Lucius the emperor,
And causes it to be presented to the citizens of Rome;
He salutes them from the Britons, who send them
The head of their emperor to enrich them:
Thus they caused it to be delivered to the Romans
For the tribute of Britain, which was so much in arrear.
The people of the Romans fall into decline
For the death of Lucius, who was their emperor.

Arthur builds the cities in Burgundy;
In the winter he remains there until Palm Sunday;
Afterwards he crossed the mountains towards Lombardy
In order to conquer Rome and all Italy.
Letters are come to him from Britain,
As the horns were sounding to dinner in Pavia,
That Modred his nephew, who had the charge
Of the keeping of Britain, and of his beloved;

returns to Britain.

Gaynore[1] la rayne, ke Deu la[2] maudye!
Esposez l'ad[3] Modred, e de la seygnurye
De Brettayne la Grande corouné se crye.[4]
Chelryke est venuz hors de Germenye
En Brettayne à Modrede[5] of grant chuvalerye,
A ky [le][6] faus Modrede par fyaunce s'afye,[7]

The Saxons join Modred.

Ke tote la terre de Humber[8] jekes en Albanye,
Et Kent of les appendaunz, averayt en sa vye,
Et ses heyrs après, par sa garauntye.[9]
Un tel covenant est fet, Chelryke sur ceo s'afye;[10]
Vii. c. nefs ly venent, chescun replenye
Dès bone genz as armes[11] de la paenerye,
Quatre [vint] myl[12] par noumbre, est dit en l'estorye.[13]
Repayrés est Arthur par[14] la novele oye,
E à Hoel, son cosyn, ray de Armorye,[15]
Dona des terres delà la garde e la mestrie.
Se haste devers Brettayne, là demort-il mye;
Encountrayt of Modred e sa compaynye.[16]
La guere se comence, Arthur li defye.
Cum Arthur aryvayt, les paens par envye.[17]

Death of Augusel and Gawayn.

Li rays Augusel of la cher hardye,
Et li curtays Wawayn, ount morz par coup d'espeye.
Nevuez Iwayn fiz Auguselle[18] cum Arthur applye,

---

[1] *Gonevre*, B.

[2] *qe Dampnedieu maudie*, B. C.

[3] *Esposez ad M.*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[4] *corouné li crie*, B.

[5] *E Bretaigne of Modred*, B.

[6] *le* omitted in A.

[7] *par fiaunce affie*, C. D.

[8] *del Humber*, B. *à Humber*, C.

[9] This line is omitted in D.

[10] *e Cheldric s'affie*, B. *de ceo s'affie*, C. "Cheldricum, Saxonum "ducem, in Germaniam direxerat, "ut in illa quoscunque posset "associaret sibi." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *des armes*, B.

[12] *Quatre vint mil*, B. C. D.

[13] *ce dit l'estorie*, B.

[14] *pur*, B.

[15] This and the two following lines are displaced in MS. A., but they are here restored to their place on the authority of the three other manuscripts.

[16] *et oue sa comp.*, C. *à Modrede, et Arthur ly deffye*, D., which omits the next line.

[17] *par hatie*, B. C. D.

[18] *Iwan neveu Augusele*, B. C. *Iwain nevouz Auguseel*, D. Wace calls him also *Ivain le fil Urien . . . . niés Aguisel.* Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Successit autem "Auguselo in regnum Eventus "filius Uriani fratris sui."

Gaynor the queen, may God curse her!
Modred has married her, and of the lordship
Of Great Britain proclaims himself crowned.
Cheldric is come out of Germany
Into Britain to Modred with a great number of knights,
To whom the false Modred binds himself by pledge,
That all the land from Humber as far as Albany,
And Kent with its appurtencies, he should have in his life,
And his heirs after him, by his guarantee.
This covenant is made, Cheldric confides in it;
Seven hundred ships come to him, each filled
With good men at arms of the pagan people,
Four score thousand in number, it is said in the history.
Arthur is returned for the news he has heard,
And to Hoel, his cousin, king of Armorica,
He gave the guard and mastery of the lands beyond sea.
He remains not there, but hastens towards Britain;
He met with Modred and his company.
The war begins, Arthur defies him.
When Arthur arrived, the pagans through hatred
King Augusel with the bold mien,
And the courteous Gawayn, have put to death with the stroke of the sword.
Iwayn, nephew of Augusel, unites with Arthur,

Et veent à la terre, devotement ly prye
Iwayn made king of Scotland. Ke chuvaler li face; le rays Arthur l'ottrie,
Et prent son homage de regne e baronye.
Desore est ray de Escoce Iwayn, ke ben la guye.
Iwayn sa banere desplyayt[1] le jour
Ke de chuvalerye resceu avayt[2] le honur.
Vigrous estayt e vistes,[3] e sage guerrayour;
Li rays Arthur ly ayme pur son grant valour.
De tote pars[4] assayllent Modrede, ly fals gillour;
S'en alt[5] à Wyncestre, fuyant cum traytour.[6]
Guenevor becomes a nun at Caerleon. Gaynor[7] la rayne, quant savait del retour[8]
Arthur en Brettayne, ke fu son seygnur,[9]
De Everwik se part, e wayfe[10] son sojour,
A Karlyoun s'en vait e wayfet sorour[11]
En habite de nonayne, sa joye change en plur.
Quant Arthur entendist ke[12] Wawayn fu sevelye,
Et Augusele à Wybre en la Walescerye,[13]
Kay près de Kame en la terre[14] de Normendye,
Et Bedewere à Bayoun en Aquytanye,
Doldouns[15] quens de Flaundres en sa demeyne abbye,
Le remysayle del hoste durement relye,
Et li faus Modred de rechef defye.[16]
Arthur pursues Modred. Arthur est issuz, of le fere visage;
Modrede li encountre of tut son barnage;
Fort fu la batayle, molt dure la dayllage.[17]

---

[1] *desplia*, B.D. *desplia cel jour*, C.
[2] *resceu out*, D.
[3] *et fort*, C.
[4] *De totes partz*, B. *Oue Arthur assalt Modrede*, D., in which manuscript the two preceding lines are omitted.
[5] *S'en alait*, C. *S'en ist*, D.
[6] *cum faus treitour*, B.
[7] *Gonure*, B. *Gonore*, D.
[8] *le retour*, B. D. *de retour*, C.
[9] *De Arthur en Bretaygne, wayve son socour*, D., which makes one line of this and the preceding.
[10] *s'en part, e weive*, B. *s'en part, et waigne*, C.
[11] *s'en vint e se fet sorour*, B. C. *s'en veent, et se fet sorour*, D.
[12] *oy dire qe*, B.
[13] *à Wibire en la Walecherie*, B. D. *à Wybirs en le Walescherye*, C.
[14] *en tere de N.*, D.
[15] *Doldins*, B. D.
[16] *E ly fals Moddrede egrement deffye*, C. D.
[17] *daliage*, B. C. D.

And comes to the land, devoutly he prays him
That he make him a knight; king Arthur grants it,
And takes his homage of kingdom and barony.
Henceforth Iwayn is king of Scotland, who rules it well.

Iwayn displayed his banner the day
That he had received the honour of knighthood.
He was vigorous and quick, and a prudent warrior;
King Arthur loves him for his great valour.
From all sides they attack Modred, the false deceiver,
He goes to Winchester, flying like a traitor.
Gaynor the queen, when she knew of the return
Of Arthur into Britain, who was her lord,
Departs from York, and abandons her dwelling.
Slie goes to Caerleon, and makes herself a sister
In the habit of a nun, her joy changes into weeping.

When Arthur heard that Gawayn was buried,
And Augusel at Wybury in the Welshery,
Kay near Caen in the land of Normandy,
And Beduer at Bayonne in Aquitaine,
Dolduns, earl of Flanders, in his own abbey,
He reforms laboriously the rest of his army,
And again defies the false Modred.

Arthur is gone forth, with the fierce countenance;
Modred meets him with all his baronage;
Strong was the battle, and very hard the weapon-play.

Genz de ambe parz sount tuez par outrage.
Battle on the river Cambula. Modrede vers Cornewaylle s'en fuyst[1] cum sage,
Of lx. mil as armes de [son] menage,[2]
S'aprochent en fuyaunt[3] jekes à un[4] ryvage.
Modrede s'enbusche de près[5] en un privé boskage,
Ordayne en vj. escheles[6] les genz de soun hostage,
Morir melz volait, ke morir hors de estage[7]
Estre chacez cum chens, mult est[8] grant hountage.
Guere fet prendre, e pense wayner le wage.[9]
L'eschele ke fu plus fort de son vasselage[10]
Gwya li fals Modrede encontre son lynage.
Arthur's bravery. Arthur en ix. escheles ad fet sa garnyson;
Regarde le host Modred, e dist à li baroun,
" Tuz jours ws ai trové de bon affeccioun;
" Ore[11] est le tens venuz de prover par resoun.
" Les vayllaunz chuvalers enbrochant[12] l'esporoun,
" Ne faylle nul à l'autre[13] pur nul passioun."
Modred slain by Arthur. Pur veir, quant Arthur vist[14] Modrede le feloun,
Se mette toste vers ly of merveyllus raundoun,
Devaunt ly fet porter[15] de fyn or soun dragoun,[16]
Et fert ly fals Modred al mont del[17] mentoun,
Ke saunk de ambe pars enruby[18] le sabloun;
En l'un e l'autre de saunk fu grant effusioun.

---

[1] *s'en fui*, B.

[2] *Of quarant mil as armes de son menage*, B. *de son menage*, C., in which this and the preceding line are transposed. *de son menage*, D.

[3] *en suant*, C.

[4] *jesqe un*, B. " Arturus autem . . . prosecutus est eum . . . . usque ad flumen Cambula." Geoffrey of Monmouth. " Joste Camblan " fu li bataille." Wace.

[5] *Moddred de près s'enbuche*, C. *de près se bouche*, D.

[6] Geoffrey of Monmouth says, " ex quibus fecit turmas tres."

[7] *qe sovent hors d'estage*, B. C. *qe viver en hountage*, D., which omits the two following lines.

[8] *qar mult est*, B. C.

[9] *Guere fort enprendre, e pus weyver le wage*, B. *Gwere fort enprendre et puis vayver le wayge*, C.

[10] *de sen e de vasselage*, B. *de sen et vasselage*, D.

[11] *Sire est*, B.

[12] *en brochaunt*, D.

[13] *un li autre*, B. *nul à altre*, C.

[14] *vait*, D.

[15] *Devant ly fet-il porter*, C.

[16] This line is omitted in D.

[17] *amount du*, B. *amount del*, D.

[18] *en rubra*, B. D. *en ruba*, C.

People on both sides are slain by violence.
Modred flies towards Cornwall like a prudent man,
With sixty thousand men at arms of his own household,
They approach in the flight to a river.
Modred lies in ambush near it in a secret wood,
Arranges the people of his army in six squadrons,
He chose rather to die, than often from his position
Be driven like dogs, it is very great disgrace.
He decides on war, and hopes to gain the prize.
The squadron of his followers which was the strongest
False Modred led against his kindred.

Arthur has formed his army in nine squadrons;
He views the army of Modred, and says to his barons,
" I have always found you of good affection;
" Now is the time come to prove it sincerely.
" Let the valiant knights, striking their spurs,
" Not fail one another for any suffering."
In truth, when Arthur sees Modred the wretch,
He goes immediately towards him with marvellous energy,
Causes his dragon to be carried before him,
And strikes false Modred above the chin,
That blood on both sides reddens the ground;
In both of them there was great effusion of blood.

Arthur carried to the isle of Avalon.

Arthur, fu nafré, parmy sa wambeysoun[1]
Passa le coup de sa espeye;[2] Arthur pur garysoun
Se fist de ilokes porter en le ylle de Avaliroun.[3]
Pur veyr ne say counter si mort sayt u noun,[4]
Mès unkore est[5] vifs, ceo[6] dyent ly Brettoun.
A Constantyn son cosyn dona la regioun,
Fiz le duk Cador, chuvaler de grant renoun.[7]

Chiefs slain in the battle.

En memes cel estour ke Arthur fu nafrez,
Fu Modrede e Chelryke[8] amedeus tuez;
Elphad, Egbryhtte, Bronnylle,[9] freres entrejurez,
Gylpatryk e Gylmark, de Saxonye nomez,[10]
Gyllascope e Gyllegrym,[11] Irays forbanez,
[De la partie Modred sunt à mort liverez.][12]
Et de l'eschele Arthur ilokes unt pris congez
Edbrytte[13] ray de Norway, Cador, ses parentez,
Askyllus ray de Danemark,[14] li sire de cytez;[15]
Cassibelan[16] le joven fu là[17] demaglez.
Maynte bele dame fu là demariez.[18]

---

[1] *gambesoun*, B.

[2] *de l'espeie*, B. *d'espeye*, D.

[3] *en l'ille Avaloun*, B. C. *en le igle de Avaloun*, D. "Ad sananda "vulnera sua in insula Avallonis ad- "vectus." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *s'il seit mort ou noun*, B.

[5] *est* omitted in C.

[6] *ceo* omitted in B. D.

[7] *de renoun*, B. D. This line is omitted in C.

[8] *sunt Modred e Cheldric*, B.

[9] *Elays, Egbrith, Brumenge*, B. *Alphad, Ebroc, Brounille, de Saxonye nomez*, C. *Elphat, Eglyret, Bomille, de Saxone nomez*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth gives the following account of those slain on Modred's side:—"Corruerunt etenim "in parte Modredi, Cheldricus, Ela- "fius, Egbrictus, Bunignus, Sax- "ones; Gillapatriæ, Gillamor, Gis- "lafel, Gillarium, Hibernenses."

[10] *Gilpatrik, Gillomark, freers entrejurez*, C. *Gillopatrik et Gillomarke, freres entrejorez*, D.

[11] *Gillasel, Gillarion*, B. D. *Gylasel et Gillaroune*, C.

[12] This line, omitted in A., is here supplied from B. C. D.

[13] *Egbrith*, B. *Egtrick*, C. *Odbrikt*, D. The corresponding names, as given by Geoffrey of Monmouth, are: "In parte autem "Arturi, Olbrictus rex Norwegiæ, "Aschillius rex Daciæ, Cador "Limetiæ, Cassibellaunus, cum "multis millibus suorum tam "Britonum quam ceterarum gen- "tium quas secum adduxerat."

[14] *ray de Danes*, C. D.

[15] *des citez*, D.

[16] *Cassebalaze*, D.

[17] *il fu*, C.

[18] This line is omitted in D.

Arthur was wounded, through his gambeson
The stroke of the sword passed, Arthur for cure
Caused himself to be carried thence into the isle of
Avalon.
For truth, I cannot tell if he be dead or not,
But the Britons say he is still alive.
He gave the kingdom to Constantine his cousin,
Son of duke Cador, a knight of great renown.

In this same battle in which Arthur was wounded,
Modred and Childric were both slain;
Elafius, Egbert, Bronnil, sworn brothers,
Gilpatric and Gilmark, named from Saxony;
Gilloscop and Gilmarium, banished Irish;
These were given to death on the side of Modred.
And of the army of Arthur there have departed
Albrict, king of Norway, Cador, his kinsman,
Askil, king of Denmark, the lord of cities,
Cassibelan the young was there destroyed.
Many a fair dame was there deprived of her husband.

L'an de la batayllę fu, pur veritez,
Cynk cens xlij. aunz après ke Deu fu nez.

Constantine succeeds to the crown of Britain.

Constantyn à Loundres la coroune rescayt,
Et sur les fiz [1] Modrede la guere [2] comencayt.
Ly un à Wyncestre en le eglyse tut drayt
De sa mayn demene la teste li [3] copayt.
Ly altre en mouceles [4] à Loundres trovayt
Dedeynz un abbaye, ù il le decolayt.
Trais aunz en Brettayne Constantyn regnayt,
Conaun à Stanhengles [5] son nevuz li tuayt,
Del regne de Brettayne ray regner volayt.
Dedenz la Karole Conaun entumbayt [6]
Le cors le ray son uncle,[7] k'il tua par descayt.

Conan usurps the crown.

Conaun le tuayt sun uncle par tresoun,[8]
Resceuz ad [9] la corone de la regioun,
Un altre uncle avayt, ke deverait [10] par resoun
Tenir tute Brettayne en protecciouu.
Conaun ad pris cely,[11] e mys en sa prisoun,
Et ly e ij. fiz ad mors saunz achesoun; [12]
Il memes cel an morust en [13] dampnacioun.

Vortiporius chosen king.

Vortyperius tost après est elyt [14]
En ray de Brettayne, e Vortyperius l'enprist; [15]

---

[1] *le fitz*, B.

[2] *sa gwere*, C. D.

[3] *de l'un la teste coupeit*, B.

[4] *en musceles*, B. *en museles*, C. *en mounceles*, D. "Alterum vero "Londoniis in quorundam fratrum "cœnobio absconditum, atque tan-"dem juxta altare inventum, "crudeli morte affecit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[5] *Stanheges*, B. *Stanhingles*, C. Pierre de Langtoft appears to have misunderstood Geoffrey of Monmouth, who does not say that Constantine was slain at Stonehenge, but that he was buried there. "Et juxta Uther Pendragon "intra lapidum structuram sepultus "est, quæ haud longe a Salesberia "mira arte composita Anglorum "lingua Stanheng nuncupatur."

[6] *l'entumbait*, C.

[7] *Le corps de son uncle*, C. D.

[8] *Conan, qe son uncle tua par treson*, B. *Conan qe tua*, C.

[9] *Ad rescu*, B.

[10] *qe devoit*, B. *qe devayt*, C. D.

[11] *ad celi prés*, B. D.

[12] *e ses dous fitz ad mort sanz cheson*, B. *et ses ij. fiz*, C. D.

[13] *Il morust cel an en*, B. *Il memes morust cel an*, D.

[14] *Un Vortapus après est eslit*, B. *Vortiperior après est elyte*, C. *Vortiporius après est ellit*, D.

[15] *Vortapus li prist*, B. *Vortiperior l'emprist*, C. *Vortipor l'emprist*, D.

The year of the battle was, in truth,
Five hundred and forty-two years after God was born.

Constantine received the crown at London,
And began war upon the sons of Modred.
One at Winchester straight in the church
With his own hand he cut off his head.
The other he found in concealment in London
Within an abbey, where he beheaded him.
Three years Constantine reigned in Britain,
His nephew Conan slew him at Stonehenge,
He wanted to reign king of the kingdom of Britain.
Conan entombed within the Dance
The body of the king, his uncle, whom he slew treacherously.

Conan slew him, his uncle, by treason,
He has received the crown of the kingdom.
He had another uncle, who ought rightfully
To hold all Britain in protection.
Conan has seized him, and put him in his prison;
He has put both him and his two sons to death without cause;
He himself died the same year in damnation.

Vortiporius soon after is elected
As king of Britain, and Vortiporius undertook it;

De tuz les Saxonays voider la terre[1] fist,
Ke sur li aryvaint, en hounte e en despyt.[2]
Quatre aunz regnayt, son cors à Londres gist.
Malgo, soun cosyn, rays après remist;
Plus beals ne plus vaillians nul en za[3] nasquist;
Vij. rays e vij. regnes sur paens conquyst.
Le terce an de soun regne en peché sodomyt
A Wyncestre en bayne morust de mort subyt.

Careticus succeeds to the crown.

Vortiperius[4] est mort, ne say ky dait regner,
For[s] sire Carecius, ke fu trop fort medler.[5]
Les Saxonays entendent ke il ne put endurer,[6]
Pur Gormounde[7] enveyent, ray de Affryk le fer;
Irlaunde ad conquys, la terre fet garder,[8]

Gormound's invasion.

Devers la Grande Brettayne[9] molt tost[10] se mette en mer,
Se vent à Cyrecestre,[11] et la fet asseger.
Le ray Karecius,[12] ke pees ne volt aver,[13]
La cyté guerpist, pur doute de encombrer.
Gormounde quant k'il trove fet[14] playnement tuer,
La vile de Cyrecestre tote là fet arder.[15]
Kateryke[16] par Saverne vers Walès va passer,
Pur veyrs l'estory de ly plus ne vol[17] counter.

---

[1] *sa terre*, C. D.

[2] *pur fere ly despit*, C. D.

[3] *et plus vaillaunt nul en scea*, B. *en ça*, C. D. Pierre de Langtoft abridges Geoffrey of Monmouth, who says he was, "omnium fere "Britanniæ pulcherrimus, multo- "rum tyrannorum depulsor, robus- "tus armis, largior ceteris, et ultra "modum probitate præclarus."

[4] *Vortapus*, B. *Vortiperior*, C. *Malgo est jà mort*, D.

[5] *Fors sire Caterice, qi fu trop medler*, B. *Caroncus, qe fust trop feer medler*, C. *Carencus, qe fut trop fere m.*, D. "Careticus, "amator civilium bellorum, in- "visus Deo et Britonibus." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[6] *ne poet durer*, C.

[7] *Gurmund*, B. *Gurmound*, C. D

[8] *fet-il garder*, C.

[9] *Bretaygne le Graund*, C.

[10] *tost* omitted in D.

[11] *à Wincestre*, B. *Cicestre*, D.

[12] *E le rei Caterice*, B. *Corencus*, C. *Carencus*, D.

[13] *ne puit aver*, B. D. *ne poet pees aver*, C.

[14] *fet-il*, C.

[15] *de Circestre après fist arder*, C. D.

[16] *Caterice*, B. *Corencus*, C. *Carencus*, D.

[17] *ne voet*, B.

He cleared the land of all the Saxons,
Who came upon him, in shame and despite.
Four years he reigned, his body lies in London.
Malgo, his cousin, remained king after him;
No more handsome or more valiant was born on this side the sea;
He conquered on the pagans seven kings and seven kingdoms.
The third year of his reign in sin of sodomy
He died a sudden death at Winchester in a bath.

Vortiporius is dead, I know not who ought to reign,
Except sir Careticus, who was very much given to fighting.
The Saxons understand that he cannot resist,
Send for Gormound king of Africa the fierce;
He has conquered Ireland, places the land under guard,
Very soon puts to sea towards Great Britain,
Arrives at Cirencester, and lays siege to it.
King Careticus, who will not have peace,
Abandons the city, for fear of disaster.
Gormound causes to be slain outright all he finds,
And causes the town of Cirencester to be entirely burnt.
Careticus passes across the Severn towards Wales,
In truth, I will relate the history of him no further.

The Britons driven into Cornwall and Wales.

Gormounde va destrure la terre jekes à la mer;
Clerk nent plus ke chen voet esparnyer.[1]
Les Brettouns hors del regne par ire e par poer[2]
En Cornewayle e Wales fet-il tuz chacer.
Les ii. ercevêskes, Thon[3] li Loundrer,
Ly altre de Everwyk, Tadyke l'oy[4] nomer,
Of prestres e of clers, al boys s'en vount[5] mucer,
Et vyvent là des herbes, ly chaitif caruer[6]
Vist ore cum eveske, ke herbes [va] manger.[7]
Brettoun en Brettayne n'ad pas un dener.

The crown of Britain lost.

La coroune de Brettayne desormès[8] est perduo,
Et la monarchye fynement tolue;

The heptarchy.

La partye petyt ke n'est pas vencue[9]
Des tyrauns mescreaunz en servage est tenue.
Et en vij. realmes est Brettayne[10] purveue,
A partir e deviser, e tenir par trewe.
Les realmes sunt donez, la regalté rescewe.

The seven kingdoms enumerated.

La primer regioun Kent est appelé,
Dunt Kaunterbyre est chef, ù ore est le sée;[11]
Suthsex[12] la secounde, dunt Cirecestre[13] est le cyté;

---

[1] *Clerk plus qe chien ne veut*, B. *qe cheent*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *Les Bretouns hors du regne en Wales fet touz chacer*, D., for this and the following line.

[3] *Teon*, B. D. *Theon li Loundrer*, C. "Tres igitur archipræsules, vi-
" delicet urbis Legionum, Theonus
" Londoniensis, et Thadioceus
" Eboracensis, cum omnes ecclesias
" sibi subditas usque ad humum
" destructas vidissent, ... diffu-
" giunt ad tutamina nemorum in
" Gualias cum reliquiis sanctorum." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[4] *Tadoc oi nomer*, B. *Yadok l'oy nomer*, C. *Tadoke oy*, D.

[5] *se vount muscer*, C. *à boys s'en vount mounter*, D.

[6] This line is omitted in C. *cum bestes vount manger*, D., which omits the two following lines.

[7] *les herbes va manger*, B. C.

[8] *des ore mès*, D.

[9] *qe ne fu pas vencu*, C. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[10] *E en vii. royalms en Bretaygne*, C. This enumeration of the seven kingdoms is not found in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[11] *e ore i est le see*, B. *et ore est le see*, C. D.

[12] *Southsex*, B.

[13] *dount Cicestre citée*, B. *Cyrcestre est cité*, C. *Cicestre est cité*, D.

Gormound proceeds to destroy the land up to the sea;
He will spare one of the clergy no more than a dog.
The Britons out of the kingdom, by anger and by violence,
He causes all to be driven into Cornwall and Wales.
The two archbishops, Theon the Londoner,
The other of York, Thadioc I heard him called,
With priests and clergy, go to hide in the wood,
And live there on herbs, the wretched ploughman
Lives now like a bishop, who goes eating herbs.
The Briton possesses not a penny in Britain.

The crown of Britain henceforward is lost,
And the monarchy finally taken away;
The small part which is not conquered
Is held in serfdom by unbelieving tyrants.
And Britain is distributed into seven kingdoms,
To share and devise, and hold by tribute.
The kingdoms are given, the royalty received.

The first kingdom is called Kent,
Of which Canterbury is head, where now is the see;
Sussex the second, of which Chichester is the city;

Westsex est la terce,[1] e Wyltoun chef clamé;
Midlesex[2] la quarte, e Loundres chef nomé;
Estangle est la quinte, Norwyce,[3] pur verité,
De Suthfolk e Northfolk chef est apelé.
La syme est Lindesey, ke Merce[4] fu cryé,
Nichole en est chef de la digneté.
La setyme[5] regioun de terres e de fée
Est Northumberland, dunt est assigné[6]
Everwik le chef,[7] grande est la largeté,[8]
De l'Humber en Escoce le regne est lymité.
Gildas, en ses estoryes, pur veir, nous ad counté,
Ke ly rays Morgounde[9] la terre ad si doné;
La seygnurye de Fraunce quere est-il alé.
Pus la mort Arthur fu nul ray taunt doté.[10]

Origin of the new population.

Les vij. regiouns sunt jà replenye
Del gentil lynage ke vynt de Germenye.
Mult de manere[11] de gent tynt cele compaynye:
Les Englays sunt de l'ydle joy[n]aunt [à Saxonye];[12]
Lour lynage en Estangle unt pris manauntye,
Et parmy[13] la terre puys lur saunk est ramye,[14]
Ke només sunt Englays, e sunt en grant ballye.
Ensint[15] est Engleterre ke avaunt fu Brettanye.
Cil ke ore la tenent, e unt la seygnurye,[16]
Sunt trestuz paens, de la[17] mescreauntye.

Saint Augustin arrives.

Pur veir en Engleterre en cel tens aryvayt
Saint Augustyn le eveske, grant pyté[18] avayt

---

[1] *Westsexe la terce*, C.
[2] *Middilsex*, B. *Middelsexe*, C.
[3] *Norwyche*, C. *Norwiz*, D.
[4] *Mert*, C.
[5] *sime*, D.
[6] *à Everwike assigné*, D., which omits the three following lines.
[7] *Everwik est la chief*, B.
[8] *graunt en largeté*, C.
[9] *Gurmund*, B. *Morgund*, C. *Kaunt le rey Gurmounde*, D.
[10] This line is omitted in D.
[11] *Mult maner*, C. *Mout maner des gentz tient*, D.
[12] *Les Engleis sunt des isles joynant à Saxonie*, B. C. *de l'ygle joynaunt à Saxonye*, D.
[13] *E pus pur mi*, B. C. D.
[14] *lor saunk est ore ramie*, C. *lour saunk est si ramye*, D.
[15] *Issint*, B. *Et issint est*, C.
[16] *Ly uns qe la tenent par tel seygnurye*, C., the meaning of which is not clear. This and the following line are omitted in D.
[17] *Estoyent du linage de la*, C.
[18] *qe grant pité*, B. D. *Un seint evesqe qe grant pité*, C.

Wessex is the third, and Wilton proclaimed its head;
Middlesex the fourth, and London named its head;
East Anglia is the fifth, Norwich, in truth,
Was proclaimed head of Suffolk and Norfolk.
The sixth is Lindsey, which was called Mercia,
Lincoln is the head of the dignity.
The seventh kingdom of lands and of fees
Is Northumberland, of which is assigned
York as head, its extent is great,
From the Humber into Scotland the kingdom is bounded.
Gildas, in his histories, in truth, has told us,
That king Gormound has distributed the land thus;
And is gone to seek the lordship of France.
Since the death of Arthur, no king was so feared.

The seven kingdoms are now filled
With the noble race which came from Germany.
Many kinds of people held this company.
The English are from the island, adjoining to Saxony;
Their lineage have taken their dwelling in East Anglia,
And since their blood has ramified through the land,
That they are named English, and are in great possession.
Thus it is England, which was formerly Britain.
Those who at that time hold it, and have the lordship,
Are all pagans, of the infidel race.

In truth, at this time arrived in England
Saint Augustine the bishop, he had great commiseration

De la crestienté, ke destrute estait.[1]
La pape Gregore de Rome en Engleterre l'envait,
Le fay de saint eglise precher li comaundait.[2]
Augustyn,[3] kaunt il vynt, à payn un trovait
Ke la parolé Deu entendre volait.
Saint Augustyn[4] en Gales as Brettouns[5] alait,
Ilokes sa fay[6] gardé trover ben savayt.
Tut drait à l'abbye[7] de Bangor declinayt;
Of grant devocioun le abbé ly rescayt.

The monastery of Bangor.

Le abbé de Bangor Dynoke[8] out à noun,
Parfit en clergye,[9] saint en religioun;
Ij. mil e cent moynes sunt en sa mesoun,[10]
Ke tut de lur maynovre vivent en boscun.[11]
Dynoke[12] de soun covent ad fet devysioun;
En vij. leus les ad mys, dunt checun porcioun
Furent iij. c. moynes[13] en congregacioun.
Dynoke,[14] chef abbé, est alez à sermoun[15]
Of saint Augustyn[16] le eveske, par my la regioun,
En le regne de Merce, voet le ray ou noun,
Va ly meymes precher,[17] e dire sa resoun.
Austyn va vers Kente en predicacioun;
Dynoke[18] e ses moynes sunt à Norhauntoun,
La primere semayne denz[19] la passioun
S'en vount vers Laycestre,[20] et desuthe Berdoun.

---

[1] *Del cristienté, qe tut drayt estayt*, C.

[2] *comendoyt*, C.

[3] *Saint Austin*, C. *Austyn*, D.

[4] *Seint Austin*, B. C. D.

[5] *à Bretons*, B. D.

[6] *la fei*, B. C.

[7] *à l'abbé de Wangor*, C.

[8] *Dynot*, B. *Wangor*, *Amok*, C. "Abbas autem eorum Dinoot "vocabatur." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[9] *en la clergé*, C

[10] This line is added in the margin in A.

[11] *Qe touz . . . vivent en comun*, B. C. D.

[12] *Dinot*, B. *Amok*, C.

[13] *sustint ccc, moignes*, B. C. *sustent*, D.

[14] *Amok*, C.

[15] *al sermoun*, D.

[16] *Austin*, B.

[17] *Va ly moyne precher*, D.

[18] *Amok*, C. *Dinoke*, D.

[19] *dedenz*, B.

[20] *devers Leicestre*, B.

For its Christianity, which was destroyed.
Pope Gregory sent him from Rome into England,
He commanded him to preach the faith of holy church.
Augustine, when he came, hardly found one
Who would listen to the word of God.
Saint Augustine went into Wales to the Britons,
There he knew well he should find the faith preserved.
He proceeded straight to the abbey of Bangor;
The abbot received him with great devotion.

The abbot of Bangor was named Dinoot,
Perfect in learning, saintly in religion;
There are two thousand and a hundred monks in his house,
Who all live in common with the labour of their hands.
Dinoot has made a division of his convent.
He has put them in seven places, of which each portion
Were three hundred monks in congregation.
Dinoot, the chief abbot, is gone to sermon
With Saint Augustine the bishop, through the region,
In the kingdom of Mercia, whether the king will or not,
Goes himself to preach, and explain his doctrine.
Augustine goes towards Kent in his preaching;
Dinoot and his monks are at Northampton,
The first week within the Passion
They proceed towards Leicester, and below Berdoun.

Slaughter of the British monks.

De mil e v.^{xx}. moynes[1] est fet occisioun.
Pur veirs en cel contemple des Englays e Brettoun[2]
Sunt genz saunz noumbre mys[3] à confusioun.
Les Brettouns après de Wales[4] sunt issuz,
A Laycestre[5] en Merce sunt quaintement venuz,
Par commune assent sunt là[6] purveus
Ke en Northumberland sunt-il descenduz.

Cadwan made king.

Cadwan unt fet rays, et realment vestuz,[7]
Sur Edelfred ke fu ray ilokes conuz;[8]
[A nettement destrure est Cadwan coruz.][9]
Edelfred fu sage, ne volt ester desceuz.[10]
Lur guere est jà[11] fynye, l'amur est[12] purveuz;
Cum freres sunt jurez, e vivent en deduz.[13]
Edelfred sa femme, k'il avait esposez,
Enceynte la forbanayt loynz de ses regnez,
E devers Wales est ele al ray Kadwan[14] alez,
En lermes l'ad moustré ke à tort fu exilez.[15]
Kadwan par sa lettre de ceo li ad priez,
Et[16] Edelfrede le ray sa priere ad veez.[17]
La femme sir Kadwan fu cel houre enceyntez;[18]

Births of Edwin and Cadwallo.

La une et l'autre en chaumbre sunt à une fez
Delyverez de ij. fiz, dunt Kadwan est lez.

---

[1] *mil et xx. v. moynes*, D. "Et "sic mille ducenti eorum in ipsa "die martyrio decorati." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[2] *e du Bretoun*, B.

[3] *mys saunz noumbre*, D.

[4] *de Gales*, B.

[5] *De Leicestre*, B. Pierre de Langtoft has wandered rather confusedly in this part of his narrative from the text of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[6] *sunt il là*, B. D.

[7] *unt-il fet rei, e regalment unt vestuz*, B.

[8] *Sur Edilfrid qe fu illoqes rei tenuz*, B.

[9] This line is omitted in A., and supplied here from B. *I ayloyt pur destrure et Kadwal se coruz*, C. *I alaynt pur destrure et Cadewan sç corouz*, D.

[10] *estre destruz*, B. C. D.

[11] *jà* omitted in C. *là*, D.

[12] *est* omitted in B.

[13] This line is omitted in D.

[14] *Ele est devers Gales au rei Cadwan*, B. *Ele est devers Wales*, C. D.

[15] *Lermaund l'ad mustré q'en tort l'ad exilez*, B. *est exillez*, C. D.

[16] *Et* omitted in C.

[17] *ad viez*, B.

[18] *enfantez*, C.

There is made a slaughter of a thousand and fivescore
monks.
In truth, at this time, of English and Britons
People without number are put to confusion.

The Britons afterwards have issued from Wales.
They are come subtly to Leicester in Mercia,
By common assent they have there provided
That they have invaded Northumberland.
That they made Cadwan king, and have dressed him
in the royal robes,
Over Ethelfred who was there acknowledged king;
Cadwan has hastened to destroy everything.
Ethelfred was wise, he was unwilling to be destroyed.
Their war is already finished, and love procured;
They are like sworn brothers, and live in happiness.

Ethelfred his wife, whom he had married,
Banished, though pregnant, far from his kingdoms,
And she is gone to Wales to king Cadwan,
In tears she has explained to him that she was exiled
wrongfully.
Cadwan by his letter has expostulated with him on
this affair,
And king Ethelfred has denied him his prayer.
The wife of sir Cadwan was pregnant at the same
time;
They are both in chamber at one time
Delivered of two sons, at which Cadwan is glad.

Le fiz Edelfrede Edwyn est[1] appelez;
Le fiz Kadwan, Kadwal[2] la mere l'ad nomez.
De xv. aunz kant estayent, à lour parentez
En Brettayne la Mayndre sunt-il enveez;[3]
Salamon fu rays, of ly sunt demorez,[4]
En chaumbre e en sale de tuz les plus privez;
En gueres e en batayles de tuz les plus vanez.[5]
Quant lur peres sunt morz, aprochent les estez,
Du ray Salomon pris unt lur congez.

Cadwallo made king.

Cadwan en Wales[6] est tost aryvez,
Par commune[7] assent rays est corounez.
Edwyn en Northumberland à ses heritez[8]
A Cadwal[9] en amur curtaysement menez.
Les festes sunt tenues of sollempntez assez,[10]

The scene on the river of Douglas.

Le ray e sire Edwyn, e Bryan fiz Anyas,[11]
S'en alaynt dedure al lak de Duglas.[12]
"Sire," çoe[13] dist Edwyn "trop volunters portas
"Çoroune en cest[14] realme, si pur ws osas."
Kadwal [s'en] va saunz[15] respouns sun pas,
Et sur l'oer[16] du lak se cochait al bas.[17]
Bryan soun neveu se coverist[18] de se[s] dras.

---

[1] *est Eadwyn*, B. *est Edwin*, D.

[2] *Cadwallin*, B., in which MS., as well as in C. and D., this and the preceding line are transposed. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "quorum alter videlicet Caduallo "nuncupatur, alter vero Edwinus."

[3] *sunt enveyez*, D.

[4] *Of Salomon le rei sunt-il demorez*, B.

[5] This line is omitted in D.

[6] *Cadwalin en Gales*, B. *Kadwal*, C. D.

[7] *Et par comune*, C. D.

[8] *ad ses heritez*, B.

[9] *Ad Cadwalin*, B.

[10] *tenuez sollempnement assez*, B. C. D.

[11] *Brian fitz Amaas*, B. *Amas*, C. D. Geoffrey of Monmouth does not give us the name of Brian's father.

[12] *au lak de Douglas*, B. *de Anglas*, C. *à lak de Douglas*, D. Geoffrey has it correctly the river. "Cumque inde juxta fluvium Du-"glas colloquium facere incœpis-"sent."

[13] *çoe* omitted in B. C. D.

[14] *en cel*, D.

[15] *Le rei Cadwal s'en va sanz*, B. *Cadwal s'en va*, C. D.

[16] *sur le eure*, B. *sur le hoer*, D.

[17] *en somoil cocheit bas*, B.

[18] *li coveri*, B. *le coverist*, C. *ly coverist*, D.

The son of Ethelfred is called Edwin;
The son of Cadwan its mother has named Cadwallo.
When they were fifteen years of age, to their kindred
In Britain the Less they are sent;
Salomon was king, they dwell with him,
In chamber and hall the most in confidence of all,
In wars and battle of all the most distinguished.
When their fathers are dead, at the approach of summer,
They have taken their leave of king Salomon.
Cadwallo is soon arrived in Wales,
By common assent he is crowned king.
Edwin in Northumberland to his inheritance
Has courteous in love conducted Cadwallo.
The feasts are held with great pomp.

The king and Sir Edwin, and Brian son of Anias,
Went to take recreation to the lake of Douglas.
" Sir," said Edwin, "I would wear very willingly
" A crown in this kingdom, if I dared for you."
Cadwallo goes his way without reply,
And lays him down on the bank of the lake,
His nephew Brian covered him with his clothes.

Bryan plurt e dist très sovent[1] allàs!
Ses lermes enmoylaynt[2] le nees al ray par cas.
Li rays le avayt dit,[3] " Bryan, beau neveu,
" Dy may par amurs, pur quele[4] resoun plores-tu?
" Si nul en ce pays te ayt offendu,[5]
" Tost fra tun assez, u il serra pendu."
" Beals uncles," dist Brian, " jo ne suy pas enmeu,[6]
" Mès jeo plore pur Brettayne, dunt tu es isseu;
" Pur le pople[7] cristien ke là est tut venou,[8]
" Et li fals paen si tost en halt acreu;[9]
" Par lur fals lynagè sovent [enginé fu][10]
" Le ray Aurel Ambrose, e Constantyn desceu;
" Puys le ray Melga le regne fu rendeu,[11]
" Unkes fu Brettoun[12] si vaylliaunt ne si preu,[13]
" Ke pust conquere[14] lur heryté perdeu.[15]
" Ore cesti Edwyn de tay est taunt coneu,
" K'il bee[16] porter corone du north e jekes al suth;[17]
" Ta perte est[18] pardurable, tun sank est mescreu;[19]
" Quant Arthur morust, Brettayne perdi l'eskeu.
[" Allas! qe tiel hounte à nous est avenu."][20]

---

[1] *trop sovent*, B. D. *plorrait e dist*, C.

[2] *enmoyllaunt*, C. Geoffrey of Monmouth's words are, " Flevit " Brianus, lacrymæque ex oculis " ejus manantes ita cecidérunt, ut " faciem regis et barbam irrora- " rent."

[3] *Le rei le voit e dit*, B. *Ly roys le vait et dist*, C. D.

[4] *par quel resun*, B. *pur quay plores-tu*, C.

[5] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[6] *esmu*, B.

[7] *Pur pople*, C. D.

[8] *qe las est e vencu*, B. *ke la en est vencu*, C.

[9] *as creu*, B. *entru*, C.

[10] These two words, omitted in A., are supplied from B. C. D.

[11] *Malgo le regne fu perdu*, B. *le regne avait perdu*, C. D.

[12] *Unqes ne fu Bretun*, B. *Bretaygne*, C.

[13] *piu*, B.

[14] *reconquer*, C. *Ke pout reconquere*, D.

[15] *le herite rendu*, B.

[16] *bie*, B. *bye*, C. D.

[17] *du north jesqe al su*, B, *northe jekes*, C.

[18] *ert*, B.

[19] *ert mes coru*, B. This and the two following lines are omitted in D.

[20] This line, omitted in A. C., is supplied from B.

Brian weeps and says very often Alas!
His tears accidentally wet the king's nose.

The king perceives it, and says, "Brian, fair nephew,
"Tell me, for love's sake, for what reason do you
"weep?
"If any one in this country has offended thee,
"He shall soon make amends, or he shall be hanged."
"Fair uncle," said Brian, "I am not personally offended,
"But I weep for Britain, from which thou art
"sprung;
"For the Christian people which is there all vanquished,
"And the false pagans so soon increased in power.
"By their false kindred was often entrapped
"King Aurelius Ambrosius, and Constantine deceived;
"Since king Melga was the kingdom given up;
"There was never a Briton so valiant or courageous,
"Who could reconquer their lost inheritance.
"Now this Edwin is so intimate with thee,
"That he aims at bearing the crown from the north
"to the south;
"Thy loss is everlasting, thy blood is debased;
"When Arthur died, Britain lost its shield.
"Alas! that such a disgrace has come upon us!"

Cadwallo quarrels with Edwin, and goes to Wales.

"O," dist sir Cadwale, "cum tu[1] as ben dit!
["Va, senescal, à Edwyn, et die sanz respit,][2]
"Si il portast corone, trop [à mai] serrait[3] despit.
"Pur quai sa priere de tut ay countredit.
"En Gales m'en voys, ke cy n'ay nul delyt."
En presence les cytezayns corouner se fist
Edwyn tut drayt à la cyté de Everwyk.[4]
Quant Cadwal[5] le seet, ne volt fere respit.[6]

Cadwallo defeated by Edwin.

Kadwal sun host aprest, [et] veent[7] en Engleterre
Edwyn li veent countrere, e comence[8] la guere.
Edwyn par poer fet Cadwal[9] retrere,
Ses genz[10] ad perduz, desore ne seet ke fere;
S'en alt vers Armoryk, où quide[11] ayde quere
Du ray[12] Salomon, seygnur de la terre.

Story of the augurer Pellitus.

Edwyn va destrure les terres à Brettouns;[13]
Les chastels abate, e arde les mesouns;[14]
Chuvalers e sergauns de terre chace en tapisuns.[15]
Un augurer li vynt, Pellicus[16] out à nouns,

---

[1] *O Dieu, dit Cadwallin, qe tu,* B. *O, dit Cadual, qe tu as,* C.

[2] This line, omitted in A. and B., is supplied from C. D. *et die à Edwyn,* D.

[3] *à moy serreit,* B. C. D.

[4] B. C. D. give these two lines thus,—

Edwin vers Everwik en chemin se mist,
En presence les citains coroner se fist.*

[5] *Cadwallin,* B. *Kadwan,* C. *Cadwal,* D. *Edwale,* A.

[6] *devent dolent e trist,* B. C. D.

[7] *e vint,* B. *et vent,* C. *e veent,* D.

[8] *encontre, e comencent,* B. D.

[9] *Cadwalin,* B. This line is omitted in C. *Cadwal,* D.

[10] *Des genz,* C.

[11] *S'en aut vers Aumariche, où il quide,* B. *S'en aylle,* C.

[12] *Au roy S.,* C.

* *citezeins,* C.

[13] *as Bretouns,* D.

[14] This line is omitted in D.

[15] *mette en prisouns,* D. B. and C. have, instead of this line, the two following,—

Chivalers e serganz met en ses prisons,
Les gaignours de terre chace en tapisons.

[16] *Pellitus,* B. D. *Pellitus ad nouns,* C. "Venerat namque ad "eum quidam sapientissimus augur "ex Hispania, vocabulo Pellitus, "qui volatus volucrum cursusque "stellarum edoctus, prædicebat ei "omnia infortunia quæ accide- "bant." Geoffrey of Monmouth. Pierre de Langtoft has omitted the cause of Cadwallo's hostility to the Augurer, namely, that he informed Edwin of the most secret movements of his enemies, so as to enable him always to prevent their attacks.

" Oh !" said sir Cadwallo, " how thou hast spoken
" well !
" Go, seneschal, to Edwin, and say without delay,
" If he bore the crown, it would be very great dis-
" grace to me.
" Wherefore I have refused altogether what he asks.
" I depart into Wales, for here I have no pleasure."
In presence of the citizens Edwin caused himself to be crowned
Forthwith in the city of York.
When Cadwallo knows it, he will make no delay.

Cadwallo gets his army ready, and comes into England ;
Edwin comes against him, and begins the war.
Edwin by force makes Cadwallo retreat,
His people he has lost, henceforth he knows not what to do ;
He goes to Armorica, where he expects to get assistance
Of king Salomon, lord of the land.

Edwin proceeds to lay waste the lands of the Britons ;
He throws down their castles, and burns their houses ;
Knights and serjeants of the land he drives into hiding-places.
An augurer came to him, Pellitus was his name,

Ke seet les aventures devyner par resouns;
Edwyn ly reteent pur se[s][1] riche douns.
Kadwal par tempest en mer est tormentez,
Perduz sunt ses nefs,[2] ses genz tuz naez,
For[s] sa nefs demeyne nul n'y est salvez.
A un porte par chaunce est Cadwal aryvez,[3]
Gwarnet[4] est le noun, où malade est cochez.
Saunz manger e beyvre[5] iij. jours ad jonez;
Bryan, sun neveu, le quarte jour l'ad[6] pryez
K'il voyse à la foreste; et quant il ad trovez
De la salvagine, et il[7] de voluntez
Les mangerait,[8] si noun, tost morrait de grez.

Cadwallo's repast.

Bryan of [son] arke al boys est alez,[9]
Kant faylly de sa praye, un poy devynt irez,[10]
Une pece de sa quyse du coutel ad coupez,
Hastelez en ad fet,[11] al ray l'ad donez.
Le ray pur veneysoun trestut l'ad mangez,
Sus se leve du lyt, à Bryan ad jurez,
Ke unkes char si douce ne mangast en sun hez.[12]

He repairs to Britany, and confers with king Salomon.

En Brettayne la Mayndre, Armoryk nomez,
Al ray Salomon par mer est-il passez;
Trop been est resceu, tut li ad countez,
Coment de Brettayne la Grande appelez
Par gens mescreauns est desheritez;[13]
Le regne est par Englais en Engleterre chaungez.
Salomon li respount de bone voluntez.[14]

---

[1] *ses*, D.
[2] *des neefs*, C.
[3] *est-il arivez*, B.
[4] *Guernet*, B. Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "In sequentis diei "aurora applicuerunt in quandam "insulam quæ Garnareia nuncupa-"tur." This island is supposed to be meant for Guernsey.
[5] *ou beivere*, B.
[6] *le tierz jour ad*, B. *jour ad*, C. D.
[7] *et cyl*, C. D.
[8] *La mangeroit*, B. *Le mangerayt*, C. D.
[9] *Brian of son ark est au bois alée*, B. *auf son ark al bois est*, C. D.
[10] *vint irré*, B.
[11] *Hasteleste ad fet*, B. *Hastes ad jà fete*, C. *Hastelet*, D.
[12] *douce manga en son hée*, B. *en ses hez*, C. *si douce mangeyt en son hé*, D.
[13] *mescreaunce et desherytez*, C.
[14] This line is omitted in D.

Who knows how by science to divine things to come ;
Edwin retains him by his rich gifts.

Cadwallo is thrown about at sea by tempest,
His ships are lost, his men drowned,
Except his own ship, there is not one saved.
By chance Cadwallo is arrived in a port,
Its name is Gwarnet, where he is in bed sick.
He has fasted three days without eating and drinking ;
On the fourth day he has prayed Brian, his nephew,
To go into the forest ; and when he has found
Any game, he willingly
Would eat it, if not, he should die quickly.
Brian is gone to the wood with his bow,
When he failed of his prey, he became a little angry,
A piece of his thigh he has cut with his knife,
He has made a roast of it, and given it to the king.
The king has eaten it all for venison,
He rises up from the bed, has sworn to Brian,
That he never eat such sweet flesh in his life.
In Britain the Less, named Armorica,
To king Salomon he has passed by sea ;
He is very well received, has told him all,
How of Britain called the Great
He is disinherited by unbelieving people ;
The kingdom is by the English changed into England.
Salomon replies to him with good will.

"Sire," fet Salomon,[1] "grant dolur en ay
"De Brettayne la Grande, ke est en tel desray;[2]
"Treben[3] la gardait Belyns[4] le riche ray,
"Constantyn après, e Lucyus, la fay[5]
"Resceu par bapteme ne perdist unkes ray,
"Ne playn pé de terre, la mort Arthur or vay.[6]
"Je suy de sun saunk, ceste terre est may,[7]
"Cum Arthur fist Brettayne, jo le defenderay.
"Si vus çoe faysez,[8] grant joye en averay."

Cadwallo's speech.

"Sire," dist Cadwal, "ne day enmervayllez;[9]
"Ton regne par nos auncestres tut fu[10] conquestez;
"Sachez les conquerurs furent les melz vanez,[11]
"Dunt tu e ly altres estes[12] engendrez.
"Ly ray Lucyus, ke fu baptizez,
"Morust sanz hair de say, son[13] regne alienez.
"Arthur n'en avait[14] fiz ne fillye engendrez,[15]
"Ne parenz for[s] neveuz, à tuz se[s] regnez.[16]
"Wawayn fu ly un, bons e leals assez;[17]
"Modrede fu ly altre, al deable est comaundez.
"De la chuvalerye reen est demorez,
"Fors trym[18] de la terre, ke est desherytez.
"Des Brettons est toun sank, sir, pur Deu, aidez.
"Sire, de ceste perte blamer ne [me] devez,[19]
"Kar cels ke avaunt furent estayent donez;[20]

---

[1] *dit Salomon*, B.

[2] *en tiel affray*, B. *qe est ore en tel*, C.

[3] *Trop bien*, B. D. *Trobien*, C.

[4] *Arthur*, D.

[5] This and the next line are omitted in D.

[6] *Unkes plein pé de tere ne perdist, bien le say*, D.

[7] *est à may*, C.

[8] *Si vus tant feisses*, B. C. D.

[9] *ne ta merveillez*, B. *ne tay en mervaillez*, C. D.

[10] *pur veir fu*, B. C. *par vos auncestres pur veir fu*, D.

[11] This line is omitted in D.

[12] *Dount ly altres et tu estes*, C.

[13] *saunz heyr, son*, D.

[14] *n'avayt fiz*, C. D.

[15] *ne filde en citez*, B.

[16] *Ne parent fors neveu pur touz ses regnez*, B. C. D.

[17] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[18] *creyme*, B. *creme*, C. D.

[19] *Sire, de ceste part blamer ne me devez*, B. C. *ne me devez*, D.

[20] *touz donez*, B. C. This and the two following lines are omitted in D.

" Sire," says Salomon, " I have great grief
" For Great Britain, which is in such trouble;
" Belinus, the powerful king, kept it well,
" Constantine after him, and Lucius, the faith
" Received by baptism never king afterwards lost,
" Nor a full foot of ground, now I regret the death of
" Arthur.
" I am of his blood, this land is mine,
" As Arthur did Britain, I will defend it.
" If you do that, great joy I shall have of it."

" Sire," said Cædwallo, " do not be surprised;
" Thy kingdom was all conquered by our ancestors;
" Know that the conquerors were the best reputed,
" From whom thou and the others are descended.
" King Lucius, who was baptized,
" Died without heir of his body, his kingdom passed to
" another line.
" Arthur had neither son nor daughter begotten,
" Nor kinsmen, except nephews, for all his kingdoms.
" Gawayn was the one, good and loyal enough;
" Modred was the other, he is sent to the devil.
" Of his knights none are left,
" Except the . . . . of the land, which is disinherited.
" Thy blood is of the Britons, sire, for God's sake,
" give us aid.
" Sire, you ought not to blame me for this loss,
" For those who were before were the cause;

" Sicom Gildas dist, tut est par pecchez,[1]
" Ke Deu ne les suffre pas guyer les dignetez."[2]

Brian sent secretly to Britain.

Le ray Salomon, parmy cel hyver,
Fist le ray Cadwal of ly sojorner.
Bryan, sun neveu, fount-il enveyer,
Trestut degysez, en Engleterre arer,
Pur tuer, si il pust, Pellice[3] le augurer.
Bryan s'en alayt, e passa la mer;
A Hamptoun un baston de fer fist forger;[4]
A Everwyk entre povres ala mendyer[5]
A la porte le rays kant fust à manger.

Meets his sister at Edwin's court.

Sa sore passa par [là], ke de l'ewe[6] va porter
En un bacyn al rays pur sun vin medler.
Bryan tost l'apele, la fet of ly parler.
Edwyn avait cele ravy par poer
Hors de Wyncestre, de l'abbye Saynt Per.[7]
La damoysele quydayt ke Bryan, sun frère,
Fust pris e menez pur enprisoner.
Mès Bryan quydait[8] ke il fu messager,
E vynt là si il pust par kas encountrer
Le augurer occyr, e nent pur begger.[9]
Sa sore mult privément le fet enseygner[10]
Coment à Pelice purrayt approcher.

Slays the augurer Pellitus.

Al matyn vint Pellice à la pardysoun,[11]
Et Bryan, entre povres queraunt cel[12] aumoun,

---

[1] *à touz les pecchez*, B. C.

[2] *ne les suffri pas guyer le regnez*, C.

[3] *Pellit*, B. *Pur tuer s'il poet ly augorer*, C.

[4] *fist de fer forger*, B.

[5] *mendiner*, B. *alait mendiner*, C. D.

[6] *par laa, l'ewe*, B., *par là, qe l'ewe*, C. D.

[7] This line is omitted in B. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, " illam rapuerat Edwinus " ex urbe Wigornensium, dum post " fugam Cadwallonis in provincias " Britonum desæviret."

[8] *diseit*, B. *ly dist*, C. *ly disait*, D.

[9] *E vint là pur occire, s'il puit rencontre* *
Pellit l'augurer, noun mie pur beger, B. C.
D. gives it in one line,
Pur occire Pellice, si l' poet encountrer.

[10] *ensigner*, B.

[11] *à la partison*, B. C. D.

[12] *cel* omitted in C.

* *s'il poet entrer*, C.

" As Gildas says, all is through sin,
" That God does not suffer them to rule the dig-
" nities."

King Salomon, through this winter,
Caused king Cadwallo to sojourn with him.
They cause Brian, his nephew, to be sent,
All disguised, back into England,
To kill Pellitus the augurer, if he can.
Brian went forth, and crossed the sea;
At Southampton he caused a staff of iron to be forged;
He went to beg among the poor at York
At the king's gate, when he was at dinner.
His sister passed by, who went to carry water
In a basin to the king to mix his wine.
Brian immediately calls her, and makes her to talk with him.
Edwin had carried her away by force
Out of Winchester, from the abbey of St. Peter.
The damsel supposed that Brian, her brother,
Was taken and led to be imprisoned.
But Brian told her that he was a messenger,
And came there, if he could by chance meet him,
To slay the augurer, and not to beg.
His sister very secretly gave him information
How he could approach Pellitus.

In the morning came Pellitus to the distribution [of alms],
And Brian, among the poor seeking those alms,

Se àproche à Pellyce e fert du[1] baustoun,
Ke sa cervele[2] li croule aval al taloun.
Bryan entre povers se met en tapisoun,[3]
Son chemyn s'en va en cel autre[4] regioun,
Assembles the Britons. E tost fet assembler trestut ly Brettoun,[5]
Et fust en Egcestre[6] la congregacioun.
Tuz vyndrent de Gales,[7] counte, duke, baroun,[8]
Nes un si noun enfaunt demorrayt[9] à mesun.[10]
Bryan counte e dist de cel occisioun,
Coment Pellice est mort, et par quele resoun ;
Le maunde à Cadwal et al ray Salomon.

Cadwallo defeats and subdues Penda. A Oxenforde s'en alt[11] li quens Bryan tut drayt,
Le hoste de tute Wales[12] dedeyn of ly estayt.
Penda, ray de Merce, ke en Lyndesey manait,[13]
Bryan en Oxenforde mult dure assegait.
Cadwal of x. mil chuvalers aryvayt,
Le sege de Oxenforde hastivement hostait ;
Il prist le ray Penda, e ses gens tuait.
Son host en iiij. escheles al duk devisayt,[14]
Salomon l'aprist, kant ses gens envayt,
Coment as Englais guerrayer devait.
Le ray de Lindesey, Penda, là jorait
Ke al ray Cadwal feal e leal serrait,
Trestuz les Brettouns Cadwal assemblait ;[15]

---

[1] *e doune du*, B. D. *Approche à Pelite, et ly doun du*, C.

[2] *la cervelle*, C. D.

[3] *à tapisoun*, C. D. gives for this and the next line, *En tapysaunt s'en va Brian de la regioun*, D.

[4] *Son chemin reprent, en l'autre*, B. *en altre*, C.

[5] *ly baroun*, C.

[6] *en Engilterre*, B. *en Excestre*, C. D.

[7] *de Wales*, D.

[8] *et baroun*, B.

[9] *demorrent*, C.

[10] This line is omitted in D.

[11] *s'en aille*, C. This is an error of Langtoft. According to Geoffrey of Monmouth, it was in Exeter, not Oxford, that Brian was besieged by Penda; "Peanda rex Mercio-"rum, cum maxima multitudine "Saxonum, venit Exoniam, Bria-"numque obsedit."

[12] *de tote Gales*, C. *dedeyn* omitted in D.

[13] *qe Lyndeseie nomeit*, B. D.

[14] *a donqe deviseit*, B. *a dunk divisayt*, D.

[15] *Cadwal oue ses Bretouns banere despliayt*, D.

Approaches Pellitus, and strikes him with his staff,
That his brains run down to his heel.
Brian conceals himself among the paupers,
And goes his way into the other region,
And soon causes all the Britons to assemble,
And the meeting was in Exeter.
All came from Wales, earl, duke, baron,
None but infants remained at home.
Brian relates and tells of this slaughter,
How Pellitus is dead, and for what reason;
He sends news of it to Cadwallo and to king Salomon.

Earl Brian proceeds direct to Oxford,
The army of all Wales was in it with him.
Penda, king of Mercia, who dwelt in Lindesey,
Very closely besieged Brian in Oxford.
Cadwallo arrived with ten thousand knights,
And quickly raised the siege of Oxford;
He took king Penda prisoner, and slew his people.
He then divided his army into four squadrons.
Salomon taught him, when he sent his men,
How he ought to make war upon the English.
The king of Lindesey, Penda, there swore
That he would be faithful and loyal to king Cadwallo.
Cadwallo assembled all the Britons;

Death of king Edwin.

[En Northumberland baner desplieit.][1]
Of levé gomphanoun[2] Edwyn l'encountrait[3]
En Hontinfeld[4] à chauns, ly ray[5] Cadwal tuayt
Edwyn e sun fiz, ke Offride[6] appelait,
Et Godolde[7] le rays, ke de Orkenay venayt
En[8] aide al rays Edwyn, ke mort là cochait.
Cadwal pus la victore pursuyst la guere,[9]
Se pena durement destrure Engleterre.[10]
Osryke,[11] cosyn Edwyn, ke hair fu de la terre,
Fust occys en bataille,[12] e sun neveu Eustere;
Et Gabon[13] de la Marche un albrastre va tretere[14]
Cadan, ray de Escoce,[15] ke sa mort vint quere.

Oswald made king,

Kant Northumberland fu taunt defolez,
Lour rays e son fiz e son neveu[16] tuez,
Saynt Oswalde del realme est ray coronez.
Cadwal sur li court, si li ad chacez
A Enesfeld u[17] north, si est enlogez[18]
Al chaump delez un boys,[19] ses genus ad plyez
A terre devotement, e Deu en ad pryez,[20]
Ke sauver li deygne des Brettuns aryvez.[21]

---

[1] This line, omitted in A., is supplied from B. C. D. *En N. Edwyn l'encountrayt*, D.

[2] *gumfanon*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[3] *le contrait*, C.

[4] *En Halfeld*, B. *Edenfeld*, C. D. "Et in campo qui Hevenfeld "appellatur obviam veniens, bellum "cum Britonibus commisit." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[5] *ly ray* omitted in C. D.

[6] *Offrith*, B.

[7] *Godbold*, B. C. *qe fu roys de Orkenay*, C. *Golbod le reis d'Orkeneye*, D. "Cum Godboldo rege "Orcadum." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[8] *En* omitted in D.

[9] *par victorie parfinit sa guere*, B. *parsiwi sa gwere*, C. After this line there is a considerable lacune in MS. B. *sa gwere*, D.

[10] *en Engleterre*, B.

[11] *Osry*, B. *Osrik*, D.

[12] *en la bataille*, B.

[13] *Gabaon*, B.

[14] *un alblaster vá trere*, B. D.

[15] Geoffrey of Monmouth says, "Sed et Ædanum regem Scotorum, "qui eis auxilio venerat," but has nothing about Gabon and his arbalast.

[16] *e lour neveuz*, B. D.

[17] *A Hevenefeld en*, B. *Hevenfeld*, D. "In loco qui vocatur Hevenfeld." Geoffrey of Monmouth.

[18] *si luy est enlogez*, D.

[19] *Et desouz un boys*, D.

[20] *si ad Dieu prié*, B. *et à Dieu priez*, D.

[21] *armé*, B.

In Northumberland he displayed his banner;
Edwin met him with raised pennon
At Hevenfeld in the field, king Cadwallo slew
Edwin and his son, who was called Offrid,
And king Godbold, who came from Orkney
In aid to king Edwin, who there lay dead.

Cadwallo, after the victory, pursued the war,
And laboured hard to destroy England.
Osric, Edwin's cousin, who was heir to the land,
Was slain in battle, and his nephew Eustere,
And Gabaon of the March shoots with an arbalest
Cadan king of Scotland, who came to seek his death.

When Northumberland was so much ravaged,
Their king and his son and his nephew slain,
Saint Oswald is crowned king of the realm.
Cadwallo attacks him, and has driven him
To Hevenesfeld in the north, and he is encamped
In a field near a wood, he has bent his knees
To the ground devoutly, and has prayed God,
That he will deign to save him from the Britons who
have arrived.

Deus oy[1] sa priere been à cele fez;
Al matyn eschapait, nul des sons nafrez.
and slain by Penda. Cadwal se corouce, après li ad maundez
Penda ray de Merce, ke ly ad martirez.
Oswy crowned. Le rais Oswald est mort, cum l'estory dit;[2]
Pur veir Oswyn,[3] sun frere, corone[r] se fist.
Grant aver à Cadwal pur pees tenir rendist.
Alfride, sun adverser, of Odwald requyst[4]
Ayde del ray de Merce, mès Penda le[5] countredist;
A guerrere Oswyn sun neveuz; ly venist[6]
La terre Cadwal, à ky la pees se prist.[7]
Cadwallo's feast, and its consequences. La feste al Pentecouste[8] à Lundres la cyté
Tint[9] Cadwale le rays en sale corouné.
Des Engleys e Brettuns trestut li barné
Sunt of le ray Cadwal à sa[10] sollempneté,
Si noun le rays Oswyn;[11] Cadwal deveent iré,
Demande le ray[12] Penda si Oswyn de gré
Se absente de la feste; Penda, par falseté,
Dist, "Oyl, sir, pur veirs, par grant iniquité.
" Il joure la mort Oswald serra ben vengé;
" Il pense à destrure tay e tun regné.
" Donez may la cure, e je, pur verité,
" A ws le meneray ou mort u mahanglé."[13]
Advice of Margadud. Cadwal est pensif en diverse corage,[14]
Counsail en ço kas[15] demaunde de son barnage.
Le ray de Devenays, Markaduk le sage,[16]

---

[1] *oist*, D.
[2] *cum l'estore ad dist*, D.
[3] *Oswy*, B. D.
[4] *encuntre li requist*, B. Our text seems to be corrupt.
[5] *le* omitted in B. D.
[6] *Oswy, si noun li venist*, B. D.
[7] *La lettre Cadwal, of qi la pes se fist*, B. *Lettre de Cadwal*, D. Our text is evidently corrupt in these two lines.
[8] *de Pentecoste*, B. D.
[9] *Teent*, D.
[10] *à la*, B. D.
[11] *Oswy*, D.
[12] *du rei*, B. D. *Oswy*, D.
[13] *maltaigné*, B. *maygné*, D.
[14] "Rex igitur in diversas medi-"tationes inductus." Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[15] *en cel cas*, B. *en ceo cas*, D.
[16] *Li rei de Avenois, Margadu le sage*, B. *Le rey de Venays, Margadud*, D. Geoffrey of Monmouth calls him "Margadud rex Demetio-"rum."

God heard his prayer well that time;
In the morning he escaped, with none of his men wounded.
Cadwallo is angered, he has sent after him
Penda king of Mercia, who has martyrized him.

King Oswald is dead, as the history says;
In truth, Oswy, his brother, caused himself to be crowned,
He gave great wealth to Cadwallo to obtain peace.
Alfred, his adversary, asked against him
Aid of the king of Mercia, but Penda refused
To war upon Oswy, his nephew; there came to him
The letter from Cadwallo, with whom peace was made.

The feast of Pentecost in the city of London
Held Cadwallo the king crowned in hall.
All the barony of the English and Britons
Are with king Cadwallo at his solemnity,
Except king Oswy; Cadwallo becomes angered,
Asks king Penda if Oswy intentionally
Absents himself from the feast; Penda, through treachery,
Says, "Yes, sire, in truth, through great iniquity,
" He swears the death of Oswald shall be revenged;
" He aims at destroying thee and thy kingdom.
" Give me the management, and I, for truth,
" Will bring him to you dead or maimed."

Cadwallo is thoughtful with divers feelings,
He has asked of his baronage counsel in the matter.
The king of the Devonshiremen, Margadud the wise,

Dist, "O my sire rays, entend à mon[1] langage;
"Les Englays sunt gentis, lur fet est ben salvage,[2]
"A nus e a nos auncestres unt fet sovent damage.[3]
"Il unt nos manauntises e nos[4] heritage.
"Le ray Penda de Merce, il[5] est de lur lynage,
"Donez li la cure de cel dalliage,
"E suffrez l'un e l'autre aler à la rage."[6]

War against Oswy.

Sire Cadwal se pay ben de la resun,
Et ausynt les countes e tut li baroun.[7]
Penda, ray de Merce, of sa[8] garnysoun,
Aproche Northumberland[9] pur fere destruccioun.
Quant Oswyn l'oyt dire, li maunde riche doun,
E prye amours e pes; Penda respound ke noun.
Oswyn counsail de Deu prye en affliccioun.
Escotez ore coment Deu lỳ fist guerdoun.

Penda slain.

En Northumberland Oswyn, ray clamez,
Desuth la ryve de Twede en la batayl[10] est entrez.
Deu, par sa priere, l'ad[11] taunt vigourez,
Ke Penda, ray de Merce, e xxx. dukes nomez,
Sunt à la batayle par Oswyn[12] tuez.
Wlfred,[13] fiz Pende, ke fust eschapez,
La novele à Cadwale ad jà nouncyez,
Et ke Edelberde,[14] de Merce duk appelez,
Et Wlfrede,[15] fiz Pende, sunt associez.
Cadwal de Lindeseye[16] ad Wlfride corounez.

---

[1] *entens mon langwage*, D.
[2] *savage*, B.
[3] This line is omitted in D.
[4] *e notre h.*, B. *et nostre h.*, D.
[5] *il* omitted in B. D.
[6] This line is omitted in D.
[7] *tuz li baron*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[8] *Maunda le rey Penda oue sa*, D.
[9] *Devers N.*, D.
[10] *en bataille*, B. *Pardesouz Twede en bataylle*, D. Pierre de Langtoft has strangely mistaken the locality. Geoffrey of Monmouth says "inivit "tamen prælium cum illo juxta "fluvium Winved," which is supposed to be in the West Riding of Yorkshire, in the neighbourhood of the present town of Leeds.
[11] *Tut par sa priere Dieu l'ad*, B. *taunt bien l'ad vigourez*, D.
[12] *en la b. par sire Oswy*, B. *en la b. par Oswy*, D.
[13] *Ulfrid*, B. *Wolfrede*, D.
[14] *Qe Edelbert*, B. *Ebe et Edelbert*, D.
[15] *A Wolfrede*, D.
[16] *en Lindeseie*, B.

Says, "O my lord king, listen to my words;
" The English are noble, their conduct is very fierce,
" They have often done injury to us and to our
" ancestors.
" They have our dwellings and our inheritance.
" King Penda of Mercia, he is of their lineage,
" Give him the care of this war,
" And suffer one of them to rage against the other."

Sir Cadwallo was well satisfied with the advice,
And also the earls and all the barons.
Penda, king of Mercia, with his army,
Approaches Northumberland to make destruction.
When Oswy heard news of it, he sends rich gifts,
And asks for love and peace; Penda replies in the
negative.
Oswy prays counsel of God in his affliction.
Hear now how God gave him his reward.

In Northumberland Oswy, king proclaimed,
On the bank of Twede is entered into battle.
God, through his prayer, has so much strengthened
him,
That Penda, king of Mercia, and thirty dukes of name,
Are slain by Oswy in the battle.
Wulfred, Penda's son, who escaped,
Has already announced the news to Cadwallo,
And that Ethelbert, called duke of Mercia,
And Wulfred, Penda's son, have entered into alliance.
Cadwallo has crowned Wulfred king of Lindesey.

Wlfrid ver[s] Oswyn la guere ad comencez;
Cadwal, quant l'oyt dire, la pees ad comaundez.

Death of Cadwallo.

Karaunt et iiij. aunz fu Cadwal rai de terre,
Unkes un soul an ne vesquit sanz guere.
Un ymage de metal son seneskal fist fere,
Le cors Cadwal[1] dedeynz fist quaintement attrere,
Sur un chuval de arreine[2] en Lundres le fist sere,[3]
En memoyr e en signe pur se[s] fez[4] retrere.
Le eglise saint Martyn fist Cadwal purtrere,
Devers la porte de l'est, là le dayt home quere.[5]

Accession of Cadwallader.

Cadwaldus[6] fu son fiz, cum Bede de ly escrit,
A ki après Cadwal le regne descendist.
Après les xij. aunz ke la coroune enprist,[7]
Chescun Brettoun altre par contek occist;
Frute issaunt de terre de tute pars fallist.
La remisaille des gens en Armorik[8] fuyst.
Le pople des Englays en Germenye transmyst
Pur gens de lur lynage, ke vindrent sanz respit,[9]
Et poplaint la terre ke Brettoun werpist.

Cadwallader leaves Britain.

Cadwaldus est entrez mult privément[10] en mer,
Et comence à Deu pitousement prier.[11]
" Jadis nos auncestres, ke solaynt regner,
" Avaynt jekes en Rome les genz[12] à justizer,
" E nous ne avoms cyté ne terre ne habiter,[13]
" Mès aloms cum owaylles la terre pasturer.
" Pecché l'ad tut fet; ore put repairer
" Englays en Brettayne, e fere[14] le regne enter.[15]
" Perdu le avom nous, si Deu ne volt aider,

---

[1] *de Cadwal*, B.
[2] *un chival armé*, B. *un chival de arme*, D.
[3] *fere*, D.
[4] *ces feez*, B. *et signe pur ses fez*, D.
[5] *pur veir la deit home quere*, D.
[6] *Cadwaldrus*, B.
[7] *corone prist*, B.
[8] *en Amoriche*, B.
[9] This line is omitted in D.
[10] *Cadwaldrus . . . poverment*, B. D.
[11] *crier*, B. D.
[12] *jesqe à Rome gens*, B.
[13] *où habiter*, B. D.
[14] *pur fere*, D.
[15] *entrer*, B.

Wulfred has begun war against Oswy;
Cadwallo, when he hears of it, has commanded peace.

Forty-four years was Cadwallo king of the land,
Never a single year did he live without war.
His seneschal caused an image of metal to be made,
And caused the corpse of Cadwallo to be subtilely drawn into it,
And caused it to be seated on a brazen horse, in London,
In memory and in sign to commemorate his deeds.
Cadwallo caused to be built the church of Saint Martin,
Towards the eastern gate, there we must seek it.

Cadwallader was his son, as Bede writes of him,
To whom, after Cadwallo, the kingdom descended.
After he had held the crown twelve years,
All the Britons were slaying one another through strife;
Fruit issuing from the ground failed on all sides.
The remains of the people fled into Armorica.
The people of the English sent into Germany
For folks of their lineage, who came without ceasing
And peopled the land which the Briton abandoned.

Cadwallader has put to sea very secretly,
And begins to pray to God imploringly.
" Formerly our ancestors, who used to reign,
" Had the people all the way to Rome under their " government,
" And we have neither city nor land to inhabit,
" But we go like sheep to graze on the land.
" Sin has done it all; now may repair
" The English into Britain, and form the entire king- " dom.
" We have lost it, unless God be willing to aid us.

" A nos veuz parenz nus covent aryver,[1]
" De counsail e de ayde[2] nus les covent prier."

Received by Alan, king of Armorica.

Tut drait en Armorik est Cadwaldre[3] venuz,
Neveuz le rai Salomon, le rais Alayn[4] l'ad rescuz.
Sa perte e sa meschaunce tut li ad conuz,
Dunt li rays Alayn est durement enmuz.[5]
Comande ke Cadwaldre ses eses e ses deduz[6]
Ait parmy sa terre de jours e de nuz.
Caduualdre s'apercait del ray ke fu si pruz,
De succours li prye, le ray l'ad entenduz.[7]

Cadwallader's vision.

La nouyt après, si tost Cadwald[re] estait cochez,[8]
Une voice de ceel par Deu l'ad nunciez
Ke en Brettayne ne veygne, ne nul de ses parentez[9]
Issuz de Brettayne, jekes la veritez[10]
La prophecye Merlyn sait pronunciez,[11]
[Q'il dit à Arthur en antiquitez,][12]
Et ke il voise à Rome, la voiz l'ad comaundez,
A Sergyoun la pape, ke cel houre tynt les sees;[13]
E quant assous serrait de tuz ses pecchez,
Entre le[s] sayns Deu serrait-il noumbrez;[14]
Et ke[15] Brettayne à Brettouus serrait liverez,[16]
Quant le tens vendra ke est prophetez.
Mainte bone relike serra relevez,
Pur poure de paen ke jadis fu celez.
Ore ad le rays Alayn le sounge escotez,

---

[1] *aloms ariver*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[2] *et eyde*, D.
[3] *Tut dreit à Armoriche est Cadwaldrus v.*, B. *Cadwaldrus*, D.
[4] *Nevouz rey Salomon reis Alayn*, D.
[5] *esmutz*, B.
[6] *qe Cadwaldrus aises e desduz*, B. *ke Cadwaldre eseez et deduz*, D.
[7] *l'ad tenduz*, D.
[8] *Cadwaldrus fu cochez*, B. D.
[9] *ne nul des parentez*, B. *ne nul de parentez*, D.
[10] *de Bretons jesqe les verités*, B. *de Bretoun*, B.
[11] *Seit de la prophecye Merlyn pronounciez*, D.
[12] This line is omitted in A., and is here supplied from B.
[13] *le seez*, D.
[14] *nomez*, D.
[15] *E dit qe*, B.
[16] *ert lyverez*, D.

" We must have recourse to our old kindred,
" We must pray them for counsel and aid."

Cadwallader is come straight into Armorica,
King Alan, the nephew of king Salomon, has received him.
He has acquainted him with all his loss and misfortune,
With which king Alan is deeply affected.
He commands that Cadwallader his ease and pleasure
Have amid the land both day and night.
Cadwallader perceives that the king was so generous,
Asks him for succour, and the king has listened to him.

The night after, as soon as Cadwallader was in bed,
A voice of heaven from God has announced to him
That he shall not go into Britain, nor any of his kinsmen
Issued from Britain, until the truth
Of Merlin's prophecy should be pronounced,
Which he said to Arthur in ancient times.
And the voice has commanded him that he should go to Rome,
To pope Sergius, who at that time held the see;
And when he should be absolved of all his sins,
He would be numbered among God's saints;
And that Britain and the Britons should be delivered,
When the time shall come which is prophecied.
Many a good relique shall be raised up again,
Which for fear of the pagans was formerly hidden.
Now has king Alan listened to the dream,

Les livers Aquyle e Sephou les prophez,[1]
De Sibylle e Merlyn, tuz ad recordez;
Et ad ray Caduualdre[2] ad dit cum ws orrez.
" Pur covaitye de terre Deu ne coroucez,
" Aynz alez à Rome, e vus confessez."[3]

He proceeds to Rome, and dies there.

Caduualdre par counsail à Rome est alez,[4]
Confessé, e[5] assols, ses pecché pardonez;
Après D. c. e iiij^{xx}. e ix. aunz[6] sunt passez
Ke Jhesu de la virgine en Bethlem fu neez,[7]
En la cyté de Rome à Deu est-il turnez.[8]

Ivor and Ini.

En Wales ala Ivor,[9] son fiz ainez,
Et Jouy,[10] son neveuz, dunt Bede counte assez.
Aprèz en Engleterre sunt-els aryvez,
Lx. aunz en guere par çà[11] par là chacez,
Par contek des Brettuns ount perdu heritez.
Engleis sunt saisys des terres e des fez,[12]
E tenent Engleterre cum fust ordinez
Jadis pur lour auncestre[13] pur les vij. regnez.

Pierre de Langtoft concludes the "Brut."

Puys l'our ke Brutus l'Abyoun[14] conquist,
Et la terre avayt, e les geaunz occyst,
Et Brettayne l'appelait, e habiter la fist,

---

[1] *Les lineys Aquile e Sophon les prophez*, B. *Sophon les prophetz*, D. " Tunc Alanus, sumptis diversis " libris, et de prophetiis Aquilæ " qui Sebstoniæ prophetavit, et de " carminibus Sibyllæ ac Merlini, " cœpit scrutari omnia, ut videret " an revelatio Cadwalladri scriptis " oraculis concordaret."—Geoffrey of Monmouth. On the prophecies of the eagle see an earlier part of the present Chronicle, p. 32.

[2] *Al rey Cadwaldre*, D.

[3] *confessez*, B.

[4] *est tournez*, B.

[5] *Confes est e*, B. *Confes et assouz*, D.

[6] *sis cenz e quatre vinz e ix. anz*, B. *D.c. et xxiiij. et ix. aunz*, D.

[7] This line is omitted in D.

[8] *est alez*, B.

[9] *En Guales s'en ala Ivor*, B. The words of Geoffrey of Monmouth are: " Filium autem suum Ivor, et Ini " nepotem suum, ad reliquias Brito- " num regendas, in insulam diri- " geret."

[10] *E Ini*, B. *Inni*, D. Pierre de Langtoft has evidently confounded this personage with Ini, king of the West Saxons, whose history is given in Bede.

[11] *par cya*, D.

[12] *et de feez*, D.

[13] *Jadis par auncestres*, B. *par lour auncestres*, D.

[14] *Albion*, B. D.

The books of the eagle which prophecied at Sephou,
Of Sibyl and Merlin, all he has called to mind;
And he has spoken to Cadwallader as you will hear.
" Anger not God through covetousness of land,
" But go to Rome, and confess yourself."
Cadwallader, by his advice, is gone to Rome,
Confessed, and absolved, his sins pardoned;
After six hundred and four score and nine years are passed
Since Jesus was born of the virgin in Bethlehem,
He is passed to God in the city of Rome.
Into Wales went Ivor, his eldest son,
And Ini, his nephew, of whom Bede tells enough.
After they have arrived in England,
Sixty years by war driven here and there,
Through strife among the Britons they have lost their inheritances.
English are seised of the lands and fees,
And hold England as it was arranged
Formerly by their ancestors for the seven kingdoms.

Since the time when Brutus conquered Albion,
And had the land, and slew the giants,
And called it Britain, and caused it to be inhabited,

Jekes à cel houre Cadwaldre perdist[1]
Le honur de Brettayne, e nul Brettoun remyst,
Peres[2] de Langetoft trove nent plus[3] par dit
K'il n'ad complye[4] e mys en cel escryt.[5]
Les trofles ad lessé, à veritez se prist.
Nul autre trovera homme ke le lyst,
Si noun li latymers en sun Latyn mentist.[6]

---

[1] *qe Cadwaldre la perdist*, B. *qe Cadwallan perdist*, D.

[2] *Pieres*, B.

[3] *ne plus*, B.

[4] *compilé*, B. D.

[5] *cest escrit*, B. *en ceste escrist*, D.

[6] *ly laimers en sen fet mentist*, D. B. adds here the following lines :—

Brutus finitur, per eum nullus reperitur.
Tempus nescitur redeunti quod stabilitur.
Tempus transibit, taurus mucrone peribit,
Merlinus scribit, quod Bruti turba redibit.
Le livere mestre Wace counte plus parfit,
E dit tut la lettre qe Peres trop salit.
Peres par tut lessa meint bone respit
Qe bon fust à lire e aver la delit.
Mestre Wace dit tut la lettre q'il trova,
Trufles e verité tretut complia.
L'un livere e l'autre, qi bien regardera,
Jeo di qe mestre Wace plus overtement parla.

D. has the following lines in place of those just given from B.

Finito Bruto, Brutones fugiunt relegati,
Extento scuto Daci remanent dominati.
Hic quod Beda legit Petrus scribendo peregit
Gallo sermone, te duce, Beda bone.
Cernitur in gestis Anglorum plurima pestis,
Captivis, mœstis, miseris est Anglia testis.
Sunt nam bis bina, fraus, fastus, gwerra, rapina
Plena, quibus pœna manus est Anglis aliena.

Until the time when Cadwallader lost
The honour of Britain, and no Briton remained,
Pierre de Langtoft finds no more in record
Than he has completed and put in this writing.
He has left the trifles, and stuck to the truth,
Whoever reads it will find no other,
Unless the interpreter lied in his Latin.

The Prophecies of Merlin.[1]

Merlin's prophecies.

Sedente itaque Vortegirno rege super ripam exhausti stagni, egressi sunt ij. dracones, quorum unus erat albus, et alius rubeus. Cumque alter alteri appropinquasset, commiserunt diram pugnam, et ignem anhelitu procreabant. Prævalebat autem albus draco, rubeumque usque ad extremitatem lacus fugabat. At ille cum se expulsum doluisset, impetum fecit in album, ipsumque retro ire coegit. Ipsis ergo in hunc modum pugnantibus, præcepit rex Ambrosio Merlino dicere, quid prælium draconum portendebat. Mox ille in fletum erumpens, spiritum hausit prophetiæ, et ait:—

" [Væ rubeo draconi,] nam exterminatio ejus fes-
" tinat. Cavernas ipsius occupabit albus draco, qui
" Saxones quos invitasti significat. Rubeus vero gen-
" tem designat Britanniæ, quæ ab illo opprimetur.
" Montes itaque ejus ut valles æquabuntur, et flumina
" vallium sanguine manabunt. Cultus religionis dele-
" bitur, et ruina ecclesiarum patebit. Prævalebit tan-
" dem oppressa, et sævitiæ exteriorum resistet. Aper
" etenim Cornubiæ succursum præstabit, et colla

[1] The prophecies of Merlin form the seventh book of Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia Britonum*. Pierre de Langtoft appears not to have liked the task of translating them; and he has stated (see before, p. 114) that he would give them in the original Latin at the end of his book, meaning of course his translation of Geoffrey, and accordingly we find them in the place in which we here give them in MS. A. The other MSS. which I have collated omit them; in C. the leaves which would have contained them are lost; and in A. the last leaf of the part containing the prophecies of Merlin is wanting.

" eorum sub pedibus suis conculcabit. Insulæ oceani Merlin's
" potestati ipsius subdentur, et Gallicanos saltus pos- prophecies.
" sidebit. Timebit Romulea domus sævitiam ipsius,
" et exitus ejus dubius erit. In ore populorum cele-
" brabitur, et actus ejus cibus erit narrantibus. Sex
" posteri ejus sequentur sceptrum, sed post ipsos ex-
" surget Germanicus vermis. Sublimabit illum æquo-
" reus lupus, quem Africana nemora comitabuntur.
" Delebitur iterum religio, et transmutatio primarum
" sedium erit. Dignitas Londoniæ adorabit Dorober-
" niam, et pastor Eboracensis septimus in Armorico
" regno frequentabitur. Menevia pallia Urbis Legio-
" num induetur, et prædicator Hiberniæ propter in-
" fantem crescentem in utero obmutescet. Pluet
" sanguineus imber, et dira fames mortales afficiet.
" His supervenientibus dolebit rubeus, sed emenso la-
" bore vigebit. Tunc infortunium albi festinabit, et
" ædificia hortulorum ejus diruentur. Septem scep-
" trigeri perimentur, et unus eorum sanctificabitur.
" Ventres matrum secabuntur, et infantes abortivi
" erunt. Erit ingens supplicium hominum, ut indigenæ
" restituantur. Qui faciet hæc, æneum virum induet,
" et per multa tempora super æneum equum portas
" Londoniæ servabit. Exin in proprios mores rever-
" tetur rubeus draco, et in seipsum sævire laborabit.
" Superveniet itaque ultio Tonantis, quia omnis ager
" colonos decipiet. Arripiet mortalitas populum, cunc-
" tasque nationes evacuabit. Residui natale solum
" deserent, et exteras culturas seminabunt. Rex bene-
" dictus parabit navigium, et in aula duodecimus
" inter beatos annumerabitur. Erit miseranda regni
" desolatio, et areæ messium infructuosos saltus redi-
" bunt. Exsurget iterum albus draco, et filiam Ger-
" maniæ invitabit. Replebuntur iterum hortuli nostri
" alieno semine, et in extremitate stagni languebit
" rubeus. Exin coronabitur Germanicus vermis, et
" æneus princeps humabitur. Terminus illi positus

Merlin's prophecies.

" est, quem transvolare nequibit. Centum namque
" quinquaginta annis in inquietudine et subjectione
" manebit, trecentis vero insidebit. Tunc exsurget in
" illum aquilo, et flores quos zephyrus procreavit eri-
" piet. Erit deauratio in templis, nec acumen gladio-
" rum cessabit. Vix obtinebit cavernas suas Germani-
" cus vermis, quia ultio proditionis ejus superveniet.
" Vigebit tandem paulisper, sed decimatio Neustriæ
" nocebit. Populus namque in ligno et ferreis tunicis
" superveniet, qui vindictam de nequitia ipsius sumet.
" Restaurabit pristinis incolis mansiones, et ruina alieni-
" genarum patebit. Germen albi draconis ex hortulis
" nostris abradetur, et reliquiæ generationis ejus deter-
" minabuntur. Jugum perpetuæ servitutis ferent, ma-
" tremque suam ligonibus et aratris vulnerabunt. Suc-
" cedent enim dracones, quorum alter invidiæ spiculo
" suffocabitur, alter vero sub umbra nominis redibit.
" Succedet leo justitiæ, ad cujus rugitum Gallicanæ
" turres et insulani dracones trement. In diebus ejus
" aurum ex lilio et urtica extorquebitur, et argentum
" ex ungulis mugientium manabit. Calamistrati varia
" vellera vestient, et exterior habitus interiora signabit
" vestimenta. Pedes latrantium truncabuntur. Pacem
" habebunt feræ, humanitas supplicium dolebit. Fin-
" detur forma commercii, dimidium rotundum erit.
" Peribit milvorum rapacitas, et dentes luporum hebe-
" tabuntur. Catuli leonis in æquoreos pisces trans-
" formabuntur, et aquilæ ejus super montem Arabium
" nidificabunt. Venedocia rubebit materno sanguine,
" et domus Corinei sex fratres interficiet. Nocturnis
" lacrymis madebitur insula ; unde omnes ad omnia
" provocabuntur. Væ tibi, Neustria, quoniam in te
" cerebrum leonis effundetur, et dissipatis membris a
" nativo solo eliminabitur. Nitentur posteri transvolare
" superna, sed favor novorum sublimabitur.
" Nocebit possidenti ex impiis pietas, donec sese geni-
" tore induerit. Apri igitur dentibus accinctus, cacu-

" mina montium et umbram galea transcendet. In- Merlin's
" dignabitur Albania, et convocatis collateralibus san- prophecies.
" guinem effundere vacabit. Dabitur maxillis ejus
" frenum quod in Armorico sinu fabricabitur. Deaurabit
" illud aquila rupti fœderis, et tertia nidificatione
" gaudebit. Evigilabunt rugientes catuli, et post
" positis nemoribus infra mœnia civitatum venabuntur
" Stragem non minimam ex obstantibus facient, e
" linguam taurorum abscindent. Colla rugientium one
" rabunt catenis, et avita tempora renovabunt. Exi
" de primo in quartum, de quarto in tertium, d
" tertio in secundum, rotabitur pollex in oleo. Sextu
" Hiberniæ mœnia subvertet, et nemora in planitiem
" mutabit, diversas portiones in unum reducet, e
" capite leonis coronabitur. Principium ejus vag
" affectui subjacebit, sed finis ipsius ad superos
" convolabit. Renovabit namque beatorum sedes per
" patrias, et pastores in congruis locis locabit. Duas
" urbes duabus palliis induet, et virginea munera
" virginibus donabit. Promerebitur inde favorem To-
" nantis, et inter beatos collocabitur. Egredietur ex
" eo lynx penetrans omnia, quæ ruinæ propriæ gentis
" imminebit; per illam enim utramque insulam amit-
" tet Neustria, pristina etenim dignitate spoliabitur
" Deinde revertentur cives in insulam; nam dissidium
" alienigenarum orietur. Niveus quoque senex in
" niveo equo fluvium Perizonis divertet, et cum
" candida virga molendinum super ipsum metabitur.
" Cadualadrus vocabit Conanum, et Albaniam in so-
" cietatem accipiet. Tunc erit strages alienigenarum;
" tunc flumina sanguine manabunt. Tunc erumpent
" Armorici fontes, et Bruti diademate coronabuntur.
" Replebitur Cambria lætitia, et robora Cornubiæ
" virescent. Nomine Bruti vocabitur insula, et nun-
" cupatio extraneorum peribit. Ex Conano procedet
" aper bellicosus, qui infra Gallica nemora acumen
" dentium suorum exercebit. Truncabunt namque quo-

Merlin's prophecies.

" que majora robora, minoribus vero tutelam præ-
" stabit. Tremebunt autem Arabes et Africani, nam
" impetum cursus sui in ulteriorem Hispaniam pro-
" tendet. Succedet hircus Venerei castri aurea habens
" cornua, et argenteam barbam; qui ex naribus suis
" tantam efflabit nebulam quanta tota superficies in-
" sulæ obumbrabitur. Pax erit in tempore suo, et uber-
" tate glebæ multiplicabuntur segetes. Mulieres in-
" cessu serpentes fient, et omnis gressus earum superbia
" replebitur. Renovabuntur castra Veneris, nec ces-
" sabunt sagittæ Cupidinis vulnerare. Fons aquæ
" vertetur in sanguinem; et duo reges duellum propter
" leænam de vado baculi committent. Omnis humus
" luxuriabit, et humanitas fornicari non desinet. Omnia
" hæc tria secula videbunt, donec sepulti reges in urbe
" Londoniarum propalabuntur. Redibit iterum fames;
" redibit mortalitas; et desolationem urbium dolebunt
" cives. Superveniet aper commercii, qui dispersos gre-
" ges ad amissa pascua revocabit. Pectus ejus cibus erit
" egentibus, et lingua ejus sedabit sitientes. Ex ore
" ipsius procedent flumina quæ arentes hominum fauces
" rigabunt. Exin super turrim Londoniarum procrea-
" bitur arbor, quæ, tribus solummodo ramis contenta,
" superficiem totius insulæ latitudine foliorum obum-
" brabit. Huic adversarius Boreas superveniet, atque
" iniquo flatu suo tertium illi ramum eripiet; duo vero
" residui locum extirpati occupabunt, donec alter alterum
" foliorum multitudine annihilabit; deinde vero locum
" duorum obtinebit ipse, et volucres exterarum regio-
" num sustentabit. Patriis volatilibus nocivus habe-
" bitur; nam timore umbræ ejus liberos volatus amit-
" tent. Succedet asinus nequitiæ, in fabricatores auri
" velox, sed in luporum rapacitatem piger. In diebus illis
" ardebitur quercus per nemora, et sex ramis tiliarum
" nascentur glandes. Sabrinum mare per septem ostia
" discurret, et fluvius Oscæ per septem menses ferve-
" bit. Pisces illius calore morientur, et ex eis pro-

" creabuntur serpentes. Frigebunt Badonis balnea, et Merlin's
" salubres aquæ eorum mortem generabunt. Londonia prophecies
" necem viginti milium lugebit, et Tamensis fluvius
" in sanguinem mutabitur. Cucullati ad nuptias pro-
" vocabuntur, et clamor eorum in montibus Alpium
" audietur.

" Tres fontes in urbe Guintonia erumpent, quorum
" rivuli insulam in tres portiones secabunt. Qui bibet
" de uno, diuturniori vita fruetur, nec supervenienti
" languore gravabitur. Qui bibet de altero, indefici-
" enti fame peribit, et in facie ejus pallor et horror
" sedebit. Qui bibet de tertio, subita morte pericli-
" tabitur, nec corpus ejus subire poterit sepulcrum.
" Tantam ingluviem vitare volentes, diversis tegumen-
" tis eam occultare nitentur. Cumque moles super-
" posita fuerit, formam alterius corporis recipiet. Terra
" namque in lapides, lapides in lignum, lignum in
" cineres, cinis in aquam, si superjecta fuerint, ver-
" tentur. Ad hæc ex urbe Canuti nemoris elimina-
" bitur puella, ut medelæ curam adhibeat, quæ, ut
" omnes artes inierit, solo anhelitu suo fontes nocivos
" siccabit. Exin ut sese salubri liquore refecerit, ges-
" tabit in dextera sua nemus Calidonis, in sinistra vero
" murorum Londoniæ propugnacula. Quacunque in-
" cedit, passus sulphureos faciet, qui duplici flamma
" fumabunt; fumus ille excitabit Rutenos, et cibum
" sub marinis conficiet. Lacrymis miserandis manabit
" ipsa, et clamore horrido replebit insulam. Interficiet
" eam cervus decem ramorum, quorum quatuor aurea
" diademata gestabunt, sex vero residui in cornua
" bubalorum vertentur, quæ nefando sonitu tres in-
" sulas Britanniæ commovebunt. Excitabitur Daneium
" nemus, et in humanam vocem erumpens clamabit,
" ' Accede, Kambria, et junge lateri tuo Cornubiam, et
" ' dic Wintoniæ, Absorbebit te tellus. Transfer sedem
" ' pastoris ubi naves applicant, et cetera membra
" ' caput sequentur.' Festinat namque dies qua cives

Merlin's prophecies.

" ob scelera perjurii peribunt. Candor lanarum no-
" cuit, atque tincturæ ipsarum diversitas. Væ per-
" juræ genti, quia urbs inclyta propter eam ruet.
" Gaudebunt naves augmentatione tanta, et unum in
" duobus fiet. Reædificabit ericius, oneratus pomis,
" ad quorum odorem diversorum nemorum convolabunt
" volucres. Adjiciet palatium ingens, et sexcentis tur-
" ribus vallabit illud. Invidebit ergo Londonia, et
" muros suos tripliciter augebit. Circuibit eam un-
" dique Tamensis fluvius, et rumor operis transcendet
" Alpes. Occultabit infra illam ericius poma sua, et
" subterraneas vias machinabitur. In tempore illo lo-
" quentur lapides, et mare quo ad Galliam navigatur
" infra breve spacium contrahetur. In utraque ripa
" audietur homo ab homine, et solidum insulæ dilatabi-
" tur. Revelabuntur occulta submarinorum, et Gallia
" sub tremore tremet. Post hæc ex Calaterio nemore
" procedet ardea, quæ insulam per biennium circum-
" volabit. Nocturno clamore convocabit volatilia, et
" omne genus volucrum associabit sibi. In culturas
" mortalium irruent, et omnia grana messium devora-
" bunt. Sequetur fames populum, atque dira mor-
" talitas famem. At cum calamitas cessaverit, adibit
" detestabilis ales vallem Galaes, atque ipsam in ex-
" celsum montem levabit. In cacumine quoque ipsius
" plantabit quercum, atque infra ramos nidificabit.
" Tria ova procreabuntur in nido, ex quibus vulpes,
" et lupus, et ursus egredientur. Devorabit vulpes
" matrem, et asininum caput gestabit. Monstro igitur
" assumpto, terrebit fratres suos, ipsosque in Neustriam
" fugabit. At ipsi excitabunt aprum dentosum in illa,
" et navigio revecti cum lupo congredientur. Quæ
" cum certamen inierit, finget se defunctam, et aprum
" in pietatem movebit. Mox adibit ipse cadaver,
" dum superstabit, anhelabit in oculos ejus et faciem.
" At ipsa, non oblita præteriti doli, mordebit sinistrum
" pedem ipsius, totumque ex corpore evellet. Saltu

" quoque facto, eripiet ei dexteram aurem et caudam, Merlin's
" et infra cavernas montium delitebit. Aper ergo illu- prophecies.
" sus, requiret lupum et ursum, ut ei amissa membra
" restituant. Qui, ut causam inierint, promittent ei
" duos pedes vulpis, et aures et caudam, et ex eis
" porcina membra component. Adquiescet ipse, pro-
" missamque restaurationem expectabit. Interim de-
" scendet vulpes de montibus, et sese in lupum muta-
" bit, et, quasi colloquium habitura cum apro, adibit
" illum callide, ipsumque totum devorabit. Exin trans-
" vertet se in aprum, et quasi sine membris expec-
" tabit germanos; sed et ipsos, postquam advenerint,
" subito dente interficiet, atque capite leonis corona-
" bitur. In diebus ejus nascetur serpens, qui neci
" mortalium imminebit. Longitudine sua circuibit Lon-
" donias, et quosque prætereuntes devorabit. Bos
" montanus caput lupi assumet, dentesque suos in fa-
" brica Sabrinæ deaurabit. Associabit sibi greges
" Albanorum et Kambriæ, qui Tamensem potando sic-
" cabunt. Vocabit asinus hircum prolixæ barbæ, et
" formam ipsius mutuabit. Indignabitur igitur mon-
" tanus, vocatoque lupo, cornu taurus in ipsos figet.
" Ut autem sævitiæ indulserit, devorabit carnes eorum
" et ossa, sed in cacumine Uriani cremabitur; favillæ
" rogi mutabuntur in cygnos, qui in sicco quasi in
" flumine natabunt. Devorabunt pisces in piscibus,
" et homines in hominibus deglutient. Superveniente
" senectute, efficientur submarini lupi, atque subma-
" rinas insidias machinabuntur. Submergent nava-
" lia, et argentum non minimum congregabunt. Fluc-
" tuabit iterum Tamensis, convocatisque fluminibus
" ultra metas alvei procedet, urbes vicinas occultabit,
" oppositosque montes subvertet. Adhibebit sibi fon-
" tes Galaes dolo et nequitia repletus. Orientur ex
" eo seditiones provocantes Venedotos ad prælia.
" Convenient nemorum robora, et cum saxis Gewi-
" seorum congredientur. Advolabit corvus cum mi-

Merlin's prophecies.

" luis, et corpora peremtorum devorabit. Super muros " Claudiocestriæ nidificabit bubo, et in nido ejus pro- " creabitur asinus. Educabit illum serpens Malverniæ, " et in plures dolos commovebit. Sumpto diademate " transcendet excelsa, et horrido racanatu populum " patriæ terrebit. In diebus ejus titubabunt montes " Pacaii, et provinciæ nemoribus suis spoliabuntur. " Superveniet namque vermis ignei anhelitus, qui emisso " vapore comburet arbores. Egredientur ex eo septem " leones capitibus hircorum turpati. Fœtore narium " mulieres corrumpent, et proprias communes facient. " Nesciet pater filium proprium, quia more pecudum " lascivient. Superveniet gigas nequitiæ, qui oculo- " rum acumine terrebit universos. Exsurget in illum " draco Wigorniæ, et eum exterminare conabitur; facto " autem congressu, superabitur draco, et nequitia vic- " toris opprimetur. Ascendet namque draconem, et " exuta veste insidebit nudus. Feret illum ad sublimi- " mia draco, erectaque cauda verberabit nudatum. Re- " sumpto igitur vigore, gigas fauces illius cum gladio " confringet. Implicabitur tandem sub cauda sua draco, " et venenatus interibit. Succedet post illum Totonen- " sis aper, et dira tyrannide opprimet populum. Eli- " minabit Claudiocestria leonem, qui diversis prœliis " inquietabit sævientem. Conculcabit eum sub pedibus " suis, apertisque faucibus terrebit. Cum regno tan- " dem litigabit leo, et terga nobilium transcendet. " Superveniet taurus litigio, et leonem dextro pede " percutiet. Expellet alium per regni diversoria, sed " cornua sua in muros Exoniæ confringet. Vindicabit " leonem vulpes Kaerdubali, et totum suis dentibus " consumet. Circumcinget eam Lindocalinus coluber, " præsentiamque suam draconibus multis horribili sibilo " testabitur. Congredientur deinde dracones, et alter " alterum dilaniet. Opprimet alatus carentem alis, et " ungues in genas venenatos configet. Ad certamen " convenient alii, et alius alium interficiet. Succedet

" quintus interfectus, residuosque diversis machinatio- Merlin's
" nibus interficiet. Transcendet dorsum unius cum gladio, propheçies.
" et caput a corpore separabit. Exuta veste ascen-
" det alium, et dexteram caudæ lævamque injiciet.
" Superabit eum nudus, cum nihil indutus proficeret.
" Cæteros tormentabit a dorso, et in rotunditatem
" regni compellet. Superveniet leo rugiens immani
" feritate timendus. Ter quinque portiones in unum
" reducet, et solus possidebit populum. Splendebit
" gigas colore niveo, et ad candidum populum germi-
" nabit. Deliciæ principes enervabunt, et subiti in
" beluas mutabuntur. Orietur in illis leo humano
" cruore turgidus. Supponetur ei in segete falcifer,
" qui, dum laborabit metere, opprimetur ab illo. Se-
" dabit illos Eboracensis auriga, expulsoque domino
" in currum quem ducit ascendet. Abstracto gladio
" minabitur Orienti, et rotarum suarum vestigia re-
" plebit sanguine. Fiet deinde piscis in æquore, qui,
" sibilo serpentis revocatus, coibit cum illo. Nascen-
" tur inde tres tauri fulgurantes, qui, consumptis pas-
" cuis, convertentur in arbores. Gestabit primus fla-
" gellum vipereum, et postgenito dorsum suum sub-
" vertet. Nitetur ipse flagellum ei eripere, sed ab
" ultimo corripietur. Avertent mutuo a sese facies,
" donec venenatum cibum projecerint. Succedet ei
" colonus Albaniæ, cui a dorso imminebit serpens.
" Vacabit ipse tellurem subvertere, ut patriæ segeti-
" bus candeant. Laborabit serpens venenum diffun-
" dere, ne herbæ in messes proveniant. Letali clade
" deficiet populus, et mœnia urbium desolabuntur.
" Dabitur in remedium urbs Claudii, quæ alumnam
" flagellantis interponet. Stateram namque medicinæ
" gestabit, et in brevi renovabitur insula. Deinde
" duo sequentur sceptrum, quibus cornutus draco
" ministrabit. Adveniet alter in ferro, et volantem
" equitabit serpentem. Nudato corpore insidebit dorso,
" et dexteram caudæ injiciet. Clamore ipsius excita-

Merlin's prophecies.

" buntur maria, et timorem secundo injicient. Secun-
" dus itaque sociabitur leoni, sed exorta lite congres-
" sum facient. Mutuis cladibus succumbent mutuo,
" sed feritas beluæ prævalebit. Superveniet quidam
" in tympano et cithara, et demulcebit leonis sævi-
" tiam. Pacificabuntur ergo nationes regni, et leonem
" ad stateram provocabunt. Locata sede ad pensas
" studebit, sed palmas in Albaniam extendet. Tris-
" tabuntur ergo Aquilonares provinciæ, et ostia
" reserabunt. Signifer lupus conducet turmas, et Cor-
" nubiam cauda sua circumcinget. Resistet ei miles
" in curru, qui populum suum in aprum mutabit.
" Vastabit ergo aper provincias; sed in profundo Sa-
" brinæ occultabit caput. Amplexabitur homo leonem
" in auro, et fulgor auri oculos intuentium excæcabit.
" Candebit argentum in circuitu, et diversa torcularia
" vexabit. Imposito vino inebriabuntur mortales, et,
" postposito cœlo, in terram respicient. Ab eis vultus
" avertent sidera, et solitum cursum confundent. Are-
" bunt segetes his indignantibus, et humor convexi
" negabitur. Radices et rami vices mutabunt, novi-
" tasque rei in miraculum. Splendor solis electro
" Mercurii languebit, et erit horror inspicientibus.
" Mutabit clypeum Stilbon Arcadiæ; vocabit Venerem
" galea Martis. Galea Martis umbram conficiet, et
" transibit terminos furor Mercurii. Nudabit ensem
" Orion ferreus. Vexabit nubes Phœbus æquoreus.
" Exibit Jupiter licitas semitas, et Venus deseret sta-
" tutas lineas. Saturni sideris livor pluendo corruet,
" et falce recurva mortales perimet. Bis senus nume-
" rus domorum siderum deflebit hospites ita transcur-
" rere. Omittent Gemini complexus solitos, et urnam
" in fontes provocabunt. Pensa Libræ oblique pende-
" bunt, donec Aries recurva cornua sua supponat.
" Cauda Scorpionis procreabit fulgura, et Cancer cum
" sole litigabit. Ascendet Virgo dorsum Sagittarii, et
" flores virgineos offuscabit. Currus lunæ turbabit,

" zodiacum, et in fletum prorumpent Pleiades. Officia
" jam nulla redibunt, sed clausa janua in crepidinibus
" Ariadne delitebit. In ictu radii exsurgent æquora,
" et pulvis veterum renovabitur. Confligent venti
" diro sufflamine, et sonitum inter sidera conficient."

Merlin's prophecies.

Incipiunt gesta quæ sunt Anglis manifesta,
Beda, pater, præsta Petro quod dicat honesta.
Lector narrabit id quod scriptura parabit,
Petrus dictabit quod sibi Beda dąbit.

Abdication of Cadwallader.

En les livres Bede des antiquitez,
Vi. cenz et iiij^{xx}. et iiij. aunz sunt passez[1]
Après ke de virgine[2] Jhesu Crist fu nez,
Quant le rays Caduualdre lessa ses[3] regnez
De la Grande Brettayne, dunt fust engettez[4]
Par les Saxonays, ke sunt enheritez.
Vers Brettayne la Mayndre est Caduualdre[5] passez,
Al riche ray Alayn e ses[6] parentez;
De ilokes alayt à Rome, cum il fu counsaylez.
Ser[g]yus la pape l'assolt de tuz ses[7] pecchez;
Caduualadre en la court à Deu est comaundez.[8]
L'an secounde après, al my[9] estez,

Invasion of Ivor and Iny.

Ivor e July,[10] ke furent ses deus nez,[11]
Sunt venuz de Irlaunde, en Gales aryvez,
Parmy Cestrechire unt guere comencez,
E[12] jekes à Wyncestre[13] la terre conquestez.

Ina king of Wessex.

Ine[14] rai de Westsexe cel houre fu clamez,
Ke parmy Engleterre ses lettres[15] ad maundez,
Coment les ij. Brettouns jà sunt[16] repayrez

---

[1] *sunt cuntez*, B. *countez*, D. This is the reading followed by Robert of Brunne, except that he differs in the number of years, "Sex "hundreth and four score and nien "yere mo er tolde."

[2] *de la virge*, B. D.

[3] *Cadwaladre lessa les*, B. *Cadwaldre leissa les*, D.

[4] *engendrez*, B.

[5] *Cadwaldrus*, D.

[6] *A riche . . e à ses*, B. *et à ses*, D.

[7] *de ses*, B. D.

[8] *est à Deu passez*, B.

[9] *à la mi*, B.

[10] *Ini*, B. *Inny*, D.

[11] *neez*, B. Robert of Brunne calls them cousins, "Kom his and "his kosyn Ini and Ivore."

[12] *E* omitted in B.

[13] *à Wircestre*, D.

[14] *Inne*, D. *Ive*, A.

[15] *ses brefs ad m.*, B.

[16] *sunt jà*, D.

In the books of Bede of the ancient stories,
Six hundred and four score and four years have passed
After Jesus Christ was born of the Virgin,
When king Cadwallader left his kingdoms
Of Great Britain, from which he was expelled
By the Saxons, who have taken the inheritance.
Cadwallader has crossed to Britain the Less,
To the rich king Alan, and his kindred;
Thence he went to Rome, as he was counselled.
Sergius the pope absolves him of all his sins;
Cadwallader in the court is dispatched to God.
The second year after, at Mid-summer,
Ivor and Iny, who were his two nephews,
Are come from Ireland, arrived in Wales,
Have begun war throughout Cheshire,
And conquered the land as far as Winchester.
Ina was at that time king proclaimed of Wessex,
Who has sent his letters through England,
How the two Britons are already come

Recoveryr la terre dunt furent exillyez.
Assembly of kings. Hastyvement se venent li rays e li barnez,
En le chaump Danays[1] tuz sunt assemblez,
Ke pus cel houre en çà est Campedene nomez.
Sibert, king of Essex, proposes Ina as chieftain. Hibert,[2] ray de Estsexe, of la barbe florye,
Lors parlast, e dist[3] à la chuvalerye,
" Nus sumes tuz issuz de gens de Germenye,
" Ke chacerent[4] les Brettuns hors de Brettanye,
" Cels deus ke sur[5] nous venent sunt Brettuns, ws dye,
" Et clayment drait aver[6] par auncesserye.
" Defendre nus covent, ou rendre manauntye.
" Chescun nus un chef[7] ke nostre guere guye,[8]
" A ky protecciоun chescun de nus se lye;
" Kar guere sanz guyour ne valt pas un alye."[9]
Les barouns[10] en parlent, checun sur altre crye,
" Ine ray de Westsexe, est digne aver mestrie,
[" E guier nus touz par sa seignorie."][11]
Ine[12] enprent le office, e baner desplye,
Et vayt à la batayle sur Ivor e Ingye.
Defeat of Ivor and Iny. Par desuz[13] Campedene, en la praerye,
Est feru la batayle, e vencu la partye
Des [Ireis] e Walays[14] ke vindrent en aye
A les ij. Brettons, ke ount le champe guerpye,
Et descomfiz se vount[15] arere à lur navye.

---

[1] "In a grete Daneis felde," according to Robert of Brunne's English translation. It is hardly necessary to say that Campden is a town in Gloucestershire.

[2] The initial letter is wanting in B. and D.

[3] *parleit e dit*, B. *parlait et dist*, B.

[4] *Qe chaceynt*, D.

[5] *Cels ke sur nus*, D.

[6] *le dreit clayment aver*, D.

[7] *Elisom nus un chef*, B. D.

[8] *tere gwye*, D.

[9] *sanz governour ne vaut un alie*, B. *ne valt un alye*, D.

[10] *Les barnez*, D.

[11] This line, omitted in A., is supplied from B.

[12] *E Ine*, B. *Ine prent*, D.

[13] *De sutz*, B. *De souz*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, " That is under Kampedene, a me- " dew I wene."

[14] *Des Ireis e de Waleis*, B. *Des Ireis et Waleis*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this passage, " The " Iris and the Wals with tham fled " away."

[15] *s'en vont*, B. This line is omitted in D.

To recover the land from which they were exiled.
In haste come the kings and the barons,
They are all assembled in the Danish field,
Which from that time to now is named Campden.

Sibert king of Essex, with the florid beard,
Then spoke, and said to the chivalry,
" We are all issued from people of Germany,
" Who drove the Britons out of Britain;
" These two who are coming against us are Britons,
" I tell you,
" And claim to have right by ancestry.
" We must defend ourselves, or give up our dwelling
" place.
" Let us elect for ourselves a chief to rule our war,
" To whose protection let each of us bind himself,
" For war without a ruler is not worth a piece of
" garlic."
The barons discuss it, each cries upon the other,
" Ina, king of Wessex, is worthy to have the mastery,
" And rule us all by his lordship."
Ina undertakes the office, and unfolds his banner,
And goes to battle against Ivor and Iny.
Below Campden, in the meadow,
The battle is fought, and vanquished the party
Of the Irish and Welsh who came in aid
To the two Britons, who have abandoned the field,
And retreat discomfited to their navy.

Quant la descomfiture fu turné sur Brettoun,
Ine prent les fealtez de ray e de baroun.
Les xv. jurs après sunt tuz à[1] Suthamtoun
En dedut e joye, pus vount vers Snaudoun,[2]
Et Ivor[3] et Ingy sunt en tapisoun.
Ine ad les Englays en sa proteccioun;[4]
Tuz suent sa banere, si sire Sibert noun,[5]
Ke par veylliesce repair à sa regioun.
Ivor e Ingy, a lur confusioun,
Triumph of the English over the Welsh.
Assayllent les Englais of lur[6] garnysoun.
Ine tost les chace arere al sablon;
En Irlaunde s'en vount, en Gales ne unt fusun.[7]
Les rays Englays retornent, et volent reposer;
A Bangor sunt venuz et volent sojorner.
A la Paske après Ine fet cryer,
Ke les rays s'en aylent lur regnes visiter,
Et chescun seygnur à sa[8] mulier.
Ine, ray de Westsexe, sa femme fet maunder,
Ke ele veygne à Mauncestre, of li là demorer.[9]
Egburge[10] la reyne i ala de bon quer.
Li ray Ine i vent sa femme conforter;
Edellus,[11] lur fiz, vye[12] ne pout aver,
Morz est maintenant, mult est dolent le pere.

---

[1] *Le quinzime jour après sunt à*, B. *Le quynzime jour*, D.

[2] *Snoudon*, B. *Swadoun*, D.

[3] *Où Ivor*, D.

[4] *en protection*, B. D.

[5] Robert of Brunne translates this:

"Bot Segbert of Estsex at home
"left stille,
"He was of grete elde, and
"myght not travaile."

[6] *à lour*, D.

[7] This line is omitted in D.

[8] *à meson à sa m.*, B. The line is omitted in D.

[9] *à Mamecestre od li demorer*, B. *oue ly demorer*, D. "Unto Malm-
"cestre," Robert of Brunne.

[10] *Edburg*, B. William of Malmsbury, who relates the part taken by the queen to persuade Ina to abdicate, calls her Ethelburga.

[11] *Adellus*, B. D. I believe that Pierre de Langtoft is the only authority who gives to Ina a son named Edellus or Adellus, a name which, however, may be only a misinterpretation of the Anglo-Saxon title æþele, a prince.

[12] *voye ne pout aver*, D.

When defeat had turned upon the Britons,
Ina takes the fealties of king and baron.
Fifteen days afterwards they are all at Southampton
In pleasure and enjoyment, afterwards they go to Snowdon,
Where Ivor and Iny are skulking.
Ina has the English in his protection;
They all follow his banner, with the exception of sir Sibert,
Who on account of old age repairs to his kingdom.
Ivor and Iny, to their confusion,
Assail the English with their forces.
Ina quickly drives them back to the beach;
They go away into Ireland, they have no strength in Wales.

The English kings return, and desire repose;
They are come to Bangor, and determine to sojourn there.
At Easter following Ina causes to be proclaimed,
That the kings should depart to visit their kingdoms,
And each lord to his wife.
Ina, king of Wessex, sends for his wife,
That she come to Manchester, to dwell with him there.
Edburgha the queen went there with good will.
King Ina went there to comfort his wife;
Edellus, their son, could not preserve life,
He is now dead, his father is much grieved.

Ine fu de Westsexe ray xxxvj.[1] aunz;
Ben gardayt Engleterre encountre mesfesanz;
Ivor e Ingy of lure alyaunz
Sunt sovent rechacez par Ine e sa pussaunz.[2]
Ina abdicates, and dies at Rome.
La rayne sa femme morust sanz enfaunce.
Vynt mortels batailles utraait par chaunce.[3]
Ine vint à Rome,[4] ne volt fere demoraunce,
Sun cosyn Edellard richement advaunce,[5]
Ly doune son realme of la purtenaunce.
A la court de Rome kant pris ad penaunce,
Rend l'espiryt à Deu en verray creaunce.
Deu nus face mercy kant serrums devyaunce![6]

De rege Adelardo.

Is succeeded by Ethelard.
Adellard[7] de Westsex est ray e seygnur,
De Norrays[8] e Surays dustre e guyour;
Les rais e li barnez ly funt grant honur.
Le ray Adellard le valt,[9] kar unkes suffri jour
Contek entre rays, ke il ne myst amur.[10]
Les Brettuns venquist sovent en estour.
En sun xiij. an[11] li fally vigour;
Cuthred succeeds.
A Cuthtred[12] sun cosyn, chuvaler de valur,
Dona tut sun regne,[13] e morust en langour.

---

[1] *xxx. et vj.*, D.

[2] This and the preceding line are omitted in D.

[3] *outrait-il par*, B. *outrahit par*, D. Both transpose this line and the preceding.

[4] *va à Rome*, B. *voit à Rome*, D.

[5] *Adelard richement avaunce*, B. D. *ad vaunte*, A., apparently.

[6] This line is omitted in B. and D., and it is not represented in Robert of Brunne's English version.

[7] Called Æthelheard in the Saxon Chronicle. Henry of Huntingdon calls him Ethelward. It is William of Malmesbury from whom Pierre de Langtoft appears here to be compiling, who calls him Ethelard cousin of Ina.

[8] *Des Norais*, D.

[9] *qe vaut*, B.

[10] *l'amour*, B. D. makes one of this and the preceding line, *Adelarde abate estrife, et mist touz jours amour.*

[11] *En son treszime an*, B. D.

[12] *A Cuctrede*, B. *Cutrede*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Tille Uttred his kosyn, a stiffe "knyght in stoure." The more correct form of the name is Cuthred.

[13] *Dona sa region*, B. D.

Ina was king of Wessex thirty-six years;
He protected England well against evil-doers;
Ivor and Iny with their allies
Are often repulsed by Ina and his power.
The queen his wife died without children.
He conquered twenty mortal battles through fortune.
Ina went to Rome, he will make no delay,
He advances in power his cousin Athelard,
Gives him his kingom with the appurtenances.
When he had done penance at the court of Rome,
He yields his spirit to God in true faith.
May God grant us mercy when we shall be departing.

Of king Athelard.

Athelard is king and lord of Wessex,
Leader and ruler of Northerns and Southerns;
The kings and barons show him great honour.
King Athelard deserves it, for he never suffered a day
Strife between kings, but he substituted love.
He often vanquished the Britons in battle.
In his thirteenth year vigour failed him;
To Cuthred his cousin, a valiant knight,
He gave all his kingdom, and died in feebleness.

Ehtumbez est à Ba, enprès [1] de sa sorour.
L'an avaunt morust Bede li confessour.
Henry of Huntingdon. Henry de Huntedoun puys l'an e un jour [2]
Des gestes des Englays est dist compliour; [3]
Le eveske de Nicole li prya de labour,[4]
Sun noun fust Alisaundre, ly bon viaundour.

[*De quinque plagis terræ.*]

His account of Britain, and of its five wounds. Henry [5] à l'eveske, en sa narracioun,
Counte de Brettayne [6] ad chaungé sun noun,
Et dist en [7] Engleterre, as Englays regioun,
Repleny de pople de diverse nacioun.
La terre ad suffert maynte passioun,
De v. mortels playes uncore n'ad garysoun.[8]
Noun pur ço Merlyn dist en sun sermoun,
Ke Brettayne [9] avera la reversioun,
Kant Kadwaldre appelera Conaune en compaynoun.

First wound, by the Romans. La primere playe,[10] en lyvre est escrit,
La guere ke Romayn sur Brettayne [11] fist,
Quant la terre entrayt, sur Brettoun la conquist,
Les beens enportait,[12] le pople enpoverist,
Et iij. mil livres [13] sur le regne myst;
Chescun an à Rome la terre le [14] rendist.

---

[1] *à Baa près de*, B. *enprès de*, D.

[2] *Henri de Huntindon, pus l'an e pus le jour*, B. *Henri de Huntyngton peus l'an et le jour*, D.

[3] *compilour*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Therfor this Henry "is cald a compiloure."

[4] *del labour*, D.

[5] This is the first place in which I have found the name written *in extenso*, and I shall adopt this form. It is usually written *Henr'*, with a contraction at the end, which may mean almost anything.

[6] *qe Bretaigne*, B.

[7] *E dit est*, B. D.

[8] This account of the five plagues inflicted on Britain is taken from the beginning of the first book of the *Historia Anglorum* of Henry of Huntingdon, as Pierre de Langtoft states.

[9] *Qe Breton avera*, B. D. Robert of Brunne's translation of this line is: "That Bretons at the last "salle haf this lond agayn."

[10] *playe* omitted in B.

[11] *sur Bretoun*, D.

[12] *emparteit*, B.

[13] *livers de or*, B. Robert of Brunne translates this reading: "Thre thousand pounde of gold to "pay ilk a 3ere."

[14] *les*, B. D.

He is entombed at Bath, near his sister.
The year before died Bede the confessor.
Since that year and a day Henry of Huntingdon
Is called the compiler of the deeds of the English.
The bishop of Lincoln requested him to undertake the work,
His name was Alexander, the liberal entertainer.

Of the five wounds of the land.

Henry to the bishop, in his narrative,
Relates that Britain has changed its name,
And is called England, the kingdom of the English,
Filled with people of different nation.
The land has suffered many an infliction,
Of five mortal wounds it has still no cure.
Nevertheless Merlin says in his discourse,
That the Briton will have the reversion of the land
When Cadwallader shall call Conan for his companion.

The first wound, it is written in the book,
Was the war which the Roman made upon Britain,
When he entered the land, conquered it from the Britons,
Carried away their goods, impoverished the people,
And set a tribute of three thousand pounds on the kingdom;
Every year the land paid it to Rome.

Second wound, by Scots and Picts.

La secunde playe la terre mult grevayt,
Kant le ray d'Escoce al Pyctes[1] se donayt,
Tut Northumberland par terre et mer wastayt;
Le pople de ço north fu mys en tel deplayt,[2]
Ke checun homme cum beste en champ se pesayt.[3]

Third wound, by the Saxons.

La terce par Englays issuz de Germenye,
Ke x. aunz[4] aryvaynt en la Brettanye;
Rechacez estayent sovent par mestrye,
Et sovent revyndrent par poer et aye;[5]
Al drayn enchaçaynt en la Walescerye
Brettuns, [ke] la[6] tyndrent par auncesserye:
Les Englays demorent en la seygnurye,
Et tenent la terre ke Brettuns unt guerpye.

Fourth wound, by the Danes.

La quarte playe pur veyr fu par les Danays,
Ke primes destruaynt trestuz le[s] Norays,[7]
Pus[8] la terre tote conquistrent sur Surays.
Lur Danegheld lors mistrent[9] sur clers e sur lays;
Al drayn returnaynt e lessaynt as Englays
La terre à tenir, pur un dener de pays[10]
Rendaunt pur la teste de bon[11] et de malvays.

Fifth wound, by the Normans.

La quinte an[12] donayt William le Conquerour,
Quant Engleterre conquist, e se fist seygnur.
Le ray Harald tuayt, ke perdist le honur;
Countes et barouns morirent en l'estour.
Les Englays unt vesquy jekes en çà tuz jour

---

[1] *à Pictis*, B. *à Pictes*, D.

[2] *desploit*, B. *de cel northe . . . desplait*, D.

[3] *se pessoit*, B. *se pessait*, D.

[4] *Ke x. fez*, D. This is the reading translated by Robert of Brunne, "That ten sithes aryved uppon the "Bretons."

[5] "And eft aryved on tham here "thorgh quantise of spie," Robert of Brunne.

[6] *qe la tindrent*, B. D.

[7] "The folk of the north . . . . "Sithen wan thei alle the south," Robert of Brunne.

[8] *Pur*, B.

[9] *Lour Dangildes surmistrent*, B.

[10] Robert of Brunne translates these two lines as follows:

"And left the Inglis the lond on "a forward dere
"To pay ilk a hede a peny to "tham by ȝere."

[11] *de bons*, B.

[12] *plaie*, B. D.

The second wound grieved the land much,
When the king of Scotland joined the Picts,
Ravaged all Northumberland by land and sea.
The people of the north were reduced to such distress,
That every man fed like a beast in the field.

The third was by English who came from Germany,
Who continued arriving ten years in Britain;
They were often driven back again by force,
And often returned through power and aid;
At last they drove into the Welshery
The Britons, who held it by ancestry.
The English remain in possession of the sovereignty,
And hold the land which the Britons have abandoned.

The fourth wound, in truth, was by the Danes,
Who first destroyed all the people of the north,
And then conquered all the land from those of the south.
Then they levied their Danegeld on clergy and laity,
At last they went away and left to the English
The land to hold for a penny of the country
Paying by the head for the good and the bad.

The fifth wound William the Conqueror gave,
When he conquered England, and made himself its lord.
He slew king Harold, who lost the honour;
Earls and barons perished in the battle.
The English have lived till now always

Desuthe estraunge garde, en servage et langour.
En la geste après troverez la dolur.

Cuthred's wars.

Henry de Huntingdone tesmoyne par escrit,
Le regne de Westsexe n'est pas petyt.[1]
Quant Adelard morust, e Cuthtred l'empryst,[2]
En sun primer an par lettre maunder fist
Les rays e les barouns, ke chescun venist
A sun parlement, par là où il pŭrvist.
Eadware, ray de Merce,[3] le venir countredist;
Pur quai le ray Cuthtrede[4] par guere ly suyst,
Et deus fez en chaump Cuthrede descomfist.[5]
Edbalde le orguillus la terce fez le prist;[6]

Death of Eadbald.

Edbalde fu nafrez, dont morust sanz respit;
Sun cors à Rependoun[7] en l'eglise gist.
Li Brettun sovent Cuthred assallyst;

Death of Cuthred.

Cuthrede,[8] cum vayllaunt, tuz jurs les venquist.[9]
Xv. aunz saunz plus regnayt, sa vye ben finyst;
Sun cors gist à Ba, en real habit.[10]

Sibert succeeds.

Après le ray Cuthrede,[11] resceust la regioun
Sibert[12] sun cosyn, amys al[13] Brettoun;
Si malement se mene, ke rays ne baroun
N'ad cure à demorer en sa subjeccioun.

Expelled, and Cynewolf elected.

Ke fet ly barnez del fol et fel felun?[14]
L'enchacent[15] hors de sé, et fount eleccioun
De Kynnulphe, ke estait de real[16] nacioun,

---

[1] *ne fu pas petit*, B. D.

[2] *et Cuctrede le prist*, B.

[3] *Edbald, rei de Merce*, B. *Edbaldus*, D. Robert of Brunne translates: "Bot Eadbald it withsaid, "kyng of Lyndesey;" and adds, apparently of his own idea, "He "was of the Bretons kynde."

[4] *Par quei le rei Cuctrede*, B.

[5] *Uctred li desconfit*, B.

[6] *la tierz foiz perist*, B. *la terce feez perist*, D.

[7] *a Repingdon*, B.

[8] *Uctrede*, B.

[9] *li venquist*, B. The lacuna in C. ends with this line.

[10] *regal abit*, B. *regal habit*, C.D.

[11] *Uctred*, B. *Cuttred*, C.

[12] *Sybrith*, B. *Sibryht*, C. *Sibrict*, D. *Sibriht*, Robert of Brunne.

[13] *à Breton*, B. C.

[14] *du fous e du felon*, B. *de fole et de feloun*, C. *del fole et le feloun*, D.

[15] *Le chacent*, C.

[16] *A Kynewolf . . . de regal*, B. *Kynulphe*, C. D. *regal*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Kynewolf "of the kynred of Adelardes blode."

Under foreign rule, in serfdom and suffering.
You will find their grief in the history which follows.

Henry of Huntingdon bears witness in writing,
That the kingdom of Wessex is not small.
When Athelard died, and Cuthred received it,
In his first year he sent word by letter to
The kings and barons, that each should come
To his parliament there where he made his provisions.
Ethelbald, king of Mercia, refused attendance;
For which king Cuthred pursued him with war,
And twice in the field Cuthred discomfited him.
Ethelbald the proud attacked him the third time;
Ethelbald was wounded, of which he died without reprieve;
His body lies in the church at Repingdon.
The Briton often attacked Cuthred;
Cuthred, like a valiant man, always vanquished them.
He reigned fifteen years and no more, and ended his life well;
His body lies at Bath, in royal garb.

After king Cuthred, received the kingdom
Sibert his cousin, who was a friend to the Briton;
He conducted himself so ill, that king nor baron
Desired to remain in his subjection.
What do the barons with the mad and wicked wretch?
They expel him from his throne, and make election
Of Cynewolf, who was of royal race,

Del saunk Edellard,[1] en ki proteccioun
Les Englays escha[pa]yent[2] de perdicioun.
Sibrythe fu sun fiz[3] cum lers en tapisoun,
Un porcher ly tuayt desuz un buscoun.[4]

De rege Kynnulpho.

Kynnulphe[5] la seygnurye rescayt mayntenant;
Les fealtez demaunde des Englays par taunt
Ke iij. de ces[6] auncestres les[7] avaynt avaunt.
Les rays de Merce et Kent e de Northumberland[8]
Al gentil ray Kynnulphe vount contrariaunt.
Kynnulphe, ke fu sage,[9] chuvaler si vayllaunt,
En guere taunt dotez, de cors si pussaunt,
Ke la victore[10] avayt sanz coup d'espeye e haunt.[11]
Xxvj. aunz[12] fu Kynnulphe regnaunt;
Jovene ne veuz ne[13] avayt femme ne enfaunt;
Mès tuz jours vesquyt rychc et manaunt;[14]
Sun cors gist à Wyncestre en un sarkeu[15] avenant.

De rege Bryctrico.

King Bertric. Le regne de Westsexe, ke large et longe estayt,[16] Brycthe,[17] cosyn Kynnulphe, of le honur rescayt.

---

[1] *Adelard*, B. C. D.

[2] *eschapeient*, B. *eschapent*, C. *eschapeynt*, D.

[3] *Sibrictus s'en fuist cum leers*, B. *Sibricht s'en fuyst cum*, C. D.

[4] *le tua desouth un bussoun*, B. *ly tua desouz un bussoun*, D.

[5] *Kynewolf*, B.

[6] *des*, B. *de ses*, D.

[7] *les* omitted in C.

[8] *e de Kente e N.*, B. *de Merce en Kent et N.*, C. *e de N.*, D. "Bot of Kent and Lyndesey and "Northumberland," Robert of Brunne, who uses Lyndesey for Mercia more constantly than the original text.

[9] *Kynewolf fu si sage*, B. D.

[10] *La victorye*, D.

[11] *par coup d'espeie e hant*, B. *par coup d'espeye et haunt*, D.

[12] *Vint et vj. aunz*, D.

[13] *ne* omitted in C.

[14] This line is omitted in D.

[15] *Son cors est à Wincestre*, B. *en sarcu*, C. *en sarcue*, D.

[16] *qe longe et large estait*, C.

[17] *Brictrik*, B. *Brichtric*, C. *Brictrik*, D. The name, as given in Henry of Huntingdon, is Bertric.

Of Athelard's blood, under whose protection
The English escaped from ruin.
Sibert fled like a thief skulking about,
A swineherd slew him under a bush.

Of king Cynewolf.

Cynewolf now receives the sovereignty;
He demands the fealties of the English, inasmuch as
Three of his ancestors had them before.
The kings of Mercia and Kent and of Northumberland
Are opposed to the gentle king Cynewolf.
Cynewolf was so wise, so valiant a knight,
So much feared in war, so powerful of body,
That he had the victory without blow of sword and spear.
Twenty-six years was Cynewolf reigning;
In youth or in age he had neither wife nor child;
But always he lived powerful and wealthy;
His body lies at Winchester in a becoming shrine.

Of king Bertric.

The kingdom of Wessex, which was large and long,
Bertric, the cousin of Cynewolf, received with the honour.

Offa, ray de Merce, une feylle Edburge[1] avayt;
Bryctike par amurs al mouster[2] la esposayt.
Attacks of the Danes. Le iiij. an de sun regne sur ly aryvayt
Un duk de Danemark, ke Ebryke[3] se nomayt.
Brictike sun seneskal, ke le nun Herman portayt,[4]
Of le duk Helrike à Humbre[5] encountrait;
Dure fu la batayle taunt cum ele durait,
Herman i fu tuez, le duk le coup donait,
E [arere] en Danemark[6] si tost repairait,
Ke le ray Brictike atayndre ne poayt,
Venger la mort Herman, ke Kylrike[7] tuayt.
En le xi. an[8] Brictike, grant pople ke mescrait
Venuz de Danemark sur Brictike assemblayt.[9]
Brictike en batayle[10] taunt ben se menayt,
Ke morz sunt les Danays, le rays Norays aidayt.
Bertric poisoned by his queen. Edburke[11] la rayne enpusoner volait
Le fiz le ray de Kent, le bayvre apprestayt.
Le ray Brictike revynt,[12] ke reen de ço savayt,
E par ignoraunce du pot un jour bevayt,[13]
Dedeynz le mays après sa vye terminayt;
A Teucbyre[14] entoumbé sun cors reposayt.

De rege Egbricto.

Accession of Egbert. Egbrythe, neveuz Sibrith,[15] ke jadis fu demys
Del regne de Westsexe, où avait mespris,

---

[1] *Edburghe*, C. *Edhburge*, D.
[2] *à mouster*, D.
[3] *qe Rebrut*, B. *ke Kylryk*, C. *qe Kebrike*, D. "Kebriht he hight," Robert of Brunne. This was the beginning of the Danish invasions.
[4] *Hermeyn parcait*, C.
[5] *Rebrith à l'Umbre*, B. *Kylrik*, C. *Kebrike al Humbre*, D.
[6] *Arere en Denemarche*, B.
[7] *qe Rebrith*, B. *Kilryk*, C.
[8] *unzime an*, D.
[9] *sur Brichtrik arivait*, C.
[10] *en la bataile*, B. D.
[11] *Edburg*, B.
[12] *reveent*, D.
[13] *un jour gusteit*, B. C. D.
[14] *A Teukebiri*, B. *A Teukesbyry*, C. William of Malmsbury says he was buried at Warham.
[15] *Egbrith, neveu Sigbrith*, B. Robert of Brunne calls him Sibert's cousin.

Offa, king of Mercia, had a daughter named Edburga;
Bertric through love espoused her in the church.
In the fourth year of his reign there came against him
A duke of Denmark, who was named Ebric.
Bertric's seneschal, who bore the name of Herman,
Met with duke Ebric on the Humber;
Hard was the battle as long as it lasted,
Herman was slain there, the duke gave the blow,
And returned so quickly into Denmark,
That king Bertric could not overtake him,
To avenge the death of Herman, whom Ebric slew.
In the eleventh year of Bertric, a great number of the unbelievers
Come from Denmark assembled against Bertric.
Bertric behaved so well in battle
That the Danes are slain, the king of the Northerns aided.
Edburga the queen intended to poison
The son of the king of Kent, she prepared the drink.
King Bertric returned, who knew nothing of that,
And through ignorance one day drank of the pot,
Within the month after he ended his life;
Entombed at Tewkesbury his body reposed.

Of king Egbert.

Egbert, nephew of Sibert, who formerly was deposed
From the kingdom of Wessex, where he had misbehaved,

Fu jovencs exilez hors de sun pays
Par le ray Bryctike, est noriz en Paris,[1]
Of Charles, ke fu rays et sire de Saint Dynis.
Egbriche fu fiz Aylrike,[2] ke duk fu gentilz
De Wycombe et de Thame, ke Redynge[3] sur Thamys,
Sa mere, sore[4] Sibrythe, rays Westrays jadys.
Egbryth du ray Charles sun congé[5] ad prys,
Et veent en Engleterre entre ses amys,
E par lay[6] de terre de Westsexe ad conquys
Le regne, dont ses auncestre avaunt furent[7] saysis.
Quant Egbrith est saisy[8] de la seygnurye,
Ke ses v. auncestres avaynt en ballye,[9]
Del suth jekes al north[10] comaunde par hatye,
Egbert's war with Bernewolf. Si Brettun sait trové tenaunt manauntye,
Ke la terre voyde,[11] si salver volt sa vye.
Brettuns n'ount poer, la terre ount guerpye,
Al ray sunt alez[12] pur aver aye.
Bernulphe, ray de Merce, ataunt avayt[13] envye,
Par quay[14] al ray Egbryth sa fealté countredye.[15]
Battle of Ellendune. La guere entre les deus comence de folye,[16]
Bernulphe[17] i fu tuez, et tote sa partye.
Desuth Elendoune la guere fu finye.
En proverbe auncyen sovent le ay· oye,[18]

---

[1] *e noriz à Paris*, B. *et nory à Parrys*, D.

[2] This is an error. Egbert was the son of Ealhmund, king of Kent.

[3] *de Redinges*, B. C. *de Radynges*, D.

[4] *fu soer*, B. D.

[5] *ces congés*, B. *ses congez*, D.

[6] *E par la lei*, B.

[7] *furent avaunt*, C.

[8] *est rays*, C.

[9] This line is omitted in C.

[10] *De suth dekes à northe*, C.

[11] *se voide*, B.

[12] *En Merce sunt alez*, B.C. *Bretouns s'en vount en Merce pur aver aye*, D., for this and the preceding line.

[13] *Du rei Bernewolf, qe tant aveit*, B. C. D.

[14] *Pur quay*, C.

[15] *sa fiaunce contredie*, B.

[16] *entre eëls dous comence par folie*, B. *en folye*, C. D.

[17] *Bernewolf*, C. *Bernewolph*, D.

[18] *souvent en ay oie*, B. *souvent ad oye*, D. This proverb is taken from Henry of Huntingdon, where it is given in Latin, evidently as verse: "Ellendune rivus cruore "rubuit, ruina restitit, fœtore ta- "buit."

Was banished when young out of his country
By king Bertric, and educated in Paris,
With Charles, who was king and lord of St. Denis.
Egbert was the son of Ailric, who was gentle duke
Of Wycomb and Tame, and Reading on the Thames,
His mother, the sister of Sibert, formerly king of the Westerns.
Egbert has taken his leave of king Charles [Charlemaigne],
And comes into England among his friends,
And by law of the land has obtained of Wessex
The kingdom, of which his ancestors were possessed before.
When Egbert is in possession of the sovereignty,
Which his five ancestors had in charge,
He commands through anger that, from south to north,
If a Briton be found holding property,
He leave the land, if he wish to save his life.
Britons have no power, they have abandoned the land,
They have gone to the king of Mercia, to have aid
Of Bernewolf, king of Mercia, who had so great hatred,
For which he refused his fealty to king Egbert.
War begins between the two through folly,
Bernewolf was slain in it, and all his party.
Under Ellendune the war was finished.
I have often heard it in ancient proverb,

Elendoune, Elendoune, ta terre est rubye[1]
Du saunk le ray Bernulphe[2] à sa cravauntye.
Après la bataille Egbrith ad saysye
Estsex, et Suthsex, et Kent, et Surye,[3]
Et[4] tote la graunde terre de Dover à Grymesbye.
Wilake, le-fiz Bernulphe,[5] par sa surquiderye,
Après se purpense venger par [l']espeye[6]
La mort Bernulph sun pere, mès pus mercy li crye.[7]
Et li rays Egbrith, par sa curtaisye,
Sun herytage li graunte, Wilake[8] à ly se lye
A tenir par homage le regne de Lindesye.

Egbert's great power.

Egbrith tut Engleterre tynt en regalté,
De Dover jekes à Twed tut est de sun fé.
Wilake, ray de Merce, of li ad mené,
De Bangor en Gales prys unt la cyté.
Les Galays[9] i venent de bone volunté,
Et fount al ray Egbrith homage et fealté.
Egbrith après le yver, en entraunt le sée,[10]
Est al burge Conane[11] alez of sa meyné.

The Danes invade the north.

Le jour de Pentecouste, kant il ad mangé,
Messager ly vynt, et l'ad[12] salué
Par sir Frethebald,[13] rays del north clamé,
Et li dist, "Sir rays,[14] grant est ta pousté,
" Ton home, Frethebald, te prye aver pyté
" De ly et de sun regne, dount il est[15] enchacé

---

[1] *rubric*, B. C. D.
[2] *del rei Bernewolphe*, D.
[3] This line is omitted in D.
[4] *Et* omitted in D.
[5] *Wylaf, le fitz Bernewolf*, B. *Wylaphe*, C. D. The name is Withlaf in Henry of Huntingdon, who is perhaps Langtoft's authority, but the more correct form is Wiglaf.
[6] *par l'espeye*, C.
[7] *merci crie*, B. D.
[8] *Wilaf*, B. *Wylaphe*, C. D.
[9] *Les Waleis*, B.
[10] *en entrant l'esté*, B. D. *la iver en tut l'esté*, C.
[11] *Est à burg Conan*, B. D. *al burghe Conan*, C.
[12] *Messagers li venent e l'ount*, B. *ly veent*, D.
[13] *syre Fretbalde*, C. *Frechebald*, D. "Thorgh Frithbald, a lord of "the north ende," Robert of Brunne.
[14] *Li dit, Sir Egbriht, grant*, B. *Sire roys Egbricht*, C. *Ly dist, Sire reis Egbricte*, D.
[15] *dount est*, D.

O Ellendune, Ellendune, thy land is reddened
With the blood of king Bernewolf at his destruction.
After the battle Egbert has seized
Essex and Sussex, and Kent and Surrey,
And all the wide land from Dover to Grimsby.
Wiglaf, son of Bernewolf, through his presumption,
Proposes afterwards to avenge by the sword
The death of his father Bernewolf, but afterwards cries mercy.
And king Egbert, through his courtesy,
Grants him his inheritance, Wiglaf binds himself to him
To hold by homage the kingdom of Lindesey.

Egbert holds all England in royalty,
From Dover to Tweed all is of his fee.
Wiglaf, king of Mercia, he has led with him,
They have taken the city of Bangor in Wales.
The Welsh come there with ready will,
And do homage and fealty to king Egbert.
Egbert, after winter, at the beginning of summer,
Is gone to Conisborough with his household.
On the day of Pentecost, when he has eaten,
A messenger comes to him, and has saluted him
On the part of sir Frithebald, proclaimed king of the north,
And says to him, "Sir king, great is thy power,
" Thy man, Frithebald, prays thee to have pity
" On him and on his kingdom, from which he is
" expelled

" Par paens Danays,[1] ke sunt sa terre entré,
" Sun pople près de Twede ount mys à l'espé,
" Et si le ray Frethebald ayent outrayé;
" Le remanaunt du north tost averount suz pé.
" Sir," fet-il,[2] "pur le honur de la Trinité,
" Ne suffrez jà perir[3] ta grant digneté."
Li pussaunt rays Egbrith, saunz maunder barné,
Est hastivement vers le north alé.

Battle of Carham.

Egbrith veent suz[4] Twede, où il ad trové
Tanz de mescreaunz, dunt il fust affrayé,[5]
Al mesme de Karham[6] la batayle ount doné.
Li gentil ray Egbrith est dur demené.[7]
Deus dukes et ij. eveskes de li ount pris congé;
Morz sunt en l'estour, les almes sunt à Dé.[8]
Egbrith ne put suffrir endurer[9] la medlé,
De nout se met al fute,[10] quant quide estre passé,
A Danekastre[11] les altres li ount chacé.
Dardan fu chevetayn de cele compaynye,
Fu[12] fiz le ray Sadok de Danasserye,[13]
Trent et cynk graunt nefs sunt de sa navye
Aryvez en Hombre, de pople[14] replenye.
Dardan desuth Done ses pavyllouns desplye.[15]

Egbert retreats to Doncaster.

Egbrith vent[16] en chaump of sa chuvalerye,[17]
Et le duk Dardan mult baldement defye.

---

[1] *payens et Danays*, C.

[2] The words *fet-il* are omitted in B. C. D.

[3] *Ne suffrez point perir*, B. D.

[4] *vint south*, B. *vynt suz*, C. D.

[5] *Dount fut affraé*, B. D.

[6] *A meme de Karhame*, C. *A mesme de K.*, D.

[7] *durement demené*, C.

[8] *suz à Dé*, C.

[9] *ne durer*, B. *ne poet pur veir endurer*, C.

[10] *à fuit*, C.

[11] *Tut dreit à Doncastre*, B. D. *Tut à Danecastre*, C.

[12] *Fu* omitted in B. *Fiz fu*, D.

[13] *de la Danascherie*, B. *de Danes-chery*, C. Robert of Brunne seems to have had an indistinct notion of the meaning of this line; or at least he translates it very clumsily, " Sadok sonne of Danmark kyng " Danestry."

[14] *de paens*, D.

[15] *desouz Done à Athlyngflet se applye*, D.

[16] *vint*, C.

[17] *en chaump, et Dardan deffye*, D., which omits the next line.

" By the pagan Danes, who have entered his land,
" Have put to the sword his people near the Tweed,
" And also have vanquished king Frithebald;
" They will soon have subjugated the rest of the
" north.
" Sire," said he, " for the honour of the Trinity,
" Suffer not thy great dignity to perish."
The powerful king Egbert, without sending for his
barons,
Is gone in haste towards the north.
Egbert comes under Tweed, where he has found
So many unbelievers, that he was afraid of them,
At the place of Carham they have given battle.
The noble king Egbert is hard pressed.
Two dukes and two bishops have taken their leave
of him;
They are killed in the battle, their souls are with God.
Edgar can no longer sustain the struggle,
At night he takes to flight, when he believes he has
escaped,
The others have pursued him to Doncaster.

Dardan was the chieftain of that company,
He was son of king Sadok of the Danish land;
Thirty-five great ships of his navy are
Arrived in Humber, filled with people.
Dardan arranges his tents under Don,
Egbert comes into the field with his chivalry,
And very boldly defies duke Dardan.

Escotez ore coment Deu, par sa mercye,
La victore des paens à Cristiens otrie.

He receives reinforcements.

Olbrith,[1] duk de Brayles, fiz de la sorour
Li vayllaunt ray Egbrith, li vynt of succour.[2]
Egward,[3] li bon Westrays, Edalde le vavasour,
Wilaker,[4] ray de Merce, i vindrent par amour.
Harald de Donemor[5] i mena sun seygnur,
Haldan de Danekastre, vigrous en estour.
Heralde de la Marche fu eleu cel jour[6]
Sorvir le rays Egbryth al foer[7] de baneour.
Hacoun fiz Hernebald,[8] ly sage guerreour,
Fist houstre la[9] banere, et donayt al[10] portour
La croyce en sa mayn en noun le Salveour.[11]
Les paens, quant la virent, tuz avaynt hidour.

Egbert's great victory over the Danes at Doncaster.

Le iiij. jour de Septembre, kant faukés sunt les prez,
Desuz Danekastre sunt les melz vanez
De tote Engleterre al rays Egbryth donez,
A vivre et morir[12] pur lur herytez,
Se medlent des espeyes sur les renayez.[13]
Les payens les assayllent vigorousement assez,
Combatent tut le jour, ne cessent les vesprez.
Wylaker,[14] ray de Merce, la nout i fu tuez,

---

[1] *Sybricht*, C. *Sibricte*, D. *Sibriht*, in Robert of Brunne.

[2] *Egbricht, vint en socour*, C. *vecnt*, D.

[3] *Iward*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Syward the "gode Westreis."

[4] *Wilaf*, B. *Wilaphe*, C. Robert of Brunne reads it Wilaf.

[5] *de Dunnesmore*, B. *de Donnesmore*, C. D.

[6] B. C. D. read this and the preceding line thus:

Berald de la Marche, vigrous en estour,
Haldan de Donecastre fu eslu le jour.

cele jour, C. *le jour*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Berald of the "Marche, of strength non he dred."

[7] *à foer*, B. *al fer de baneor*, C.

[8] *Bacon fitz Hernebald*, B.

[9] *Fist ouhter la*, B. *Fist oster la*, C. D.

[10] *al* omitted in B.

[11] *en noun Dieu Salveour*, B.

[12] *A morir e à vivere*, B. D.

[13] *de l'espeie of lor renaicz*, C.

[14] *Wilaf*, B. *Wylaphe*, C. D.

Hear now how God, by his mercy,
Gives to the Christians the victory over the pagans.

Sibert, duke of Brayles, son of the sister
Of the valiant king Egbert, came to his succour.
Iward, the good Western, Edald the vavasor,
Wiglaf, king of Mercia, came there through love.
Harald of Donsmore brought there his lord,
Haldan of Doncaster, vigorous in battle.
Berald of the March was chosen that day
To serve king Egbert in place of a banner-bearer.
Hacon, son of Hernebald, the wise warrior,
Took the banner from him, and gave him to carry
The cross in his hand in the name of the Saviour.
The pagans, when they saw it, were all struck with terror.

On the fourth day of September, when the fields are reaped,
Below Doncaster are the most distinguished
Of all England devoted to king Egbert,
To live and die for their inheritances;
They fight with their swords against the infidels.
The pagans assail them vigorously enough,
Fight all day, and cease not in the evening.
Wiglaf, king of Mercia was slain there that night,

Et Beralde de la Marche,[1] et le duk Uttrez.[2]
Le[3] sire de Cirnecestre fust tuez cele fez.
Al matin, kant le rays fust taunt malmenez,
Survindrent ses deus fiz, chuvalers assemez,
Hors de Germenye de lur parentez,
Edelwolphe et Edelstan[4] sunt les deus nomez.
Unkes jour de vye ne[5] fust Egbryth si lez.
Edeluuolphe ad sun pere à la journé saluez,
Et Edelstan en chaump[6] sun poer[7] ad moustrez.
Dardan de sa launce à terre l'ad[8] cravauntez,
Et al ray sun pere la teste presentez.
Haralde de Donnemor[9] sur Done est encountrez
A Wybrand, frere le duk, si l'ad demaglez,[10]
Et xxxvj.[11] payens ke furent enbuchez.
Haldan de Danekastre la croyce ad lessez
Devaunt le rays Egbryth, et sun fiz aynez[12]
Se medlent des espeyes[13] entre les barnez.
Entre terce et noune[14] fust le chaump voydez
De trestuz les paens ke furent aryvez.[15]
Le rays of la victore[16] est la vile[17] entrez,
En loyaunt Deu là sus de ses graunt bountez.[18]
Quant ly rays Egbryth ad fet ses voluntez,
S'en va vers Wyncestre, demort jekes à l'estez.

---

[1] *de la Marchez*, B.

[2] *Ouctrez*, D.

[3] *Le* omitted in B. C. D.

[4] *Adelwolf, Ethelbert*, B. *Adelberd et Adelwolf*, C. *Adelwolf et Edelberte*, D. *Adelwolf and Ethelbert*, in Robert of Brunne.

[5] *ne* omitted in B. D.

[6] *Ethelbert el champ*, B. *Edelberd*, C. *Edelberde el chaump*, D.

[7] *son pere*, D. Robert of Brunne has translated from this reading, "And Ethelbert in the felde his "fader lete he se."

[8] *à terre ad*, B. C. D.

[9] *de Donnesmore*, C. D.

[10] Robert of Brunne translates these two lines:

"Vibrand, Dardanes brother, with "suerd so him grette,
"That thorghout his armes Wi- "brand alle tohewe."

[11] *Et xxx. et vi.*, C.

[12] *oue paens se ad medlez*, D., which omits the next line.

[13] *d'espeie*, B. *de l'espeie ou les b.*, C.

[14] Robert of Brunne translates this by, "Bituex underon and noen."

[15] *armez*, B.

[16] *Et le reys victour est*, D.

[17] *la vile est*, C.

[18] This line is omitted in D.

And Berald of the March, and duke Uctred.
The lord of Cirencester was slain that time.
In the morning, when the king was so hard bestead,
Arrived his two sons, accomplished knights,
Out of Germany from their kindred.
The two are named Ethelwolf and Ethelstan.
Never day of his life was Egbert so glad.
Ethelwolf has saved his father in the battle,
And Ethelstan has displayed his power in the field.
He has struck Dardan to the ground with his spear,
And presented his head to the king his father.
Harald of Donnesmore on Don has encountered
Wibrand, the duke's brother, and slaughtered him,
And thirty-six pagans who were in ambush.
Haldan of Doncaster has left the cross
Before king Egbert and his eldest son.
They fight with their swords amongst the barons.
Between tierce and none was the field cleared
Of all the pagans who had arrived.
The king with victory has entered the town,
Praising God above for his great bounties.
When king Egbert has done his will,
He proceeds to Winchester, remains there till the summer.

Distributes his states to his sons.

Trent et cynk bataylles cel houre ad outrayez ;[1]
Se sent pesaunt et velz, des playes[2] molt grevez,
Ses fiz volt avauncer en divers countrez.
Adeluuolphe Vestsexe tent[3] en ses poustez,
Of la seygnurye de tuz les regnez
Entre Twede et Dover, of tuz ses[4] countrez ;
Suthsex, Estsexe, et Kent, par homage et fealtez,
Teent Edelstan de Adeluulphe ;[5] si tost cum sunt[6] feffez,

Death of Egbert.

Lur pere, le rays Egbrith, à Deu est comaundez,
En l'an trentesime quinte[7] de ses regaltez.
Sun quer[8] à Wincestre estait enterrez.
Unkes fu le regne en nul tens si gardez
Cum en le tens Egbrith, de ky Deus ait pitez ![9]
V. fiz engendrait, chuvalers renomez,[10]
En diverse realme[11] chescun corounez,

[*De rege Adelwolfo.*]

Ethelwolf.

Le ainé fiz[12] Egbrith, après le finement[13]
Sun pere avaunt nomé, fet tenir parlement
A Cestre, sa cyté, molt solempnement.
Le[s] rays i venent tuz, de Berwyk à Kent,
Et fount les fealtez, par commun assent,
A sir Adeluuolphe saunz contrariement,
Et rays ly clayment de cel occident,
Et chef seygnur del north et de l'orient,[14]
En longe et en lée,[15] cum Engleterre se estent.[16]

First gift of tithes.

Cil fu le primer rays ke dona [de] sa rente[17]

---

[1] *outraez*, B. *utraez*, C. *utrahez*, D.
[2] *de plaies*, B.
[3] *Westsexe tynt*, C.
[4] *tuz les*, B. D. *contez*, C. D.
[5] *Tient Ethelbert de Adelwolf*, B. *Tynt Edelbert de Adelwolf*, C.
[6] *fu feffez*, C.
[7] *trentisme quinte*, B.
[8] *Son corps*, B. C. *cors*, D. Robert of Brunne translates, "and "ther his body is laid."
[9] This and the preceding line are omitted in D.
[10] *chivalers nomez*, B.
[11] *divers realmes*, C.
[12] *Les ainez fiz*, C.
[13] *l'enfinement*, D.
[14] *del nórth et orient*, C.
[15] *E en lung e leise*, B.
[16] This line is omitted in C. It and the two preceding lines are omitted in B.
[17] *de sa rente*, C. D.

At this time he has been victor in thirty-five battles;
He feels heavy and aged, much suffering from wounds.
He desires to advance his sons in different countries.
Ethelwolf holds Wessex in his power,
With the sovereignty over all the kingdoms
Between Tweed and Dover, with all the countries;
Sussex, Essex, and Kent, by homage and fealties,
Ethelstan holds of Ethelwolf; as soon as they are enfiefed,
Their father, king Egbert, is sent to God,
In the thirty-fifth year of his royalties.
His body was interred at Winchester.
Never at any time was the kingdom so guarded
As in the time of Egbert, on whom may God have compassion!
He begat five sons, renowned knights,
Each crowned in a different realm.

Of king Ethelwolf.

The eldest son of Egbert, after the end
Of his father above named, causes a parliament to be held
At Chester, his city, very ceremoniously.
The kings, from Berwick to Kent, all come there,
And perform their fealties, by common assent,
To sir Ethelwolf, without contradiction,
And proclaim him king of the west,
And chief lord of the north and the east,
In length and breadth, as England extends.
He was the first king who gave of his rent

De l'yssue de ses bestes, de terre et tenement,
Tute la disyme[1] part à Deu omnipotent.
[A la courte de Rome ala devoutement,][2]
Sun fiz of ly menayt, un an[3] enterement
[Iloqes demoreit, le pape genteument
Honurs li fist[4] assez, com au rei apent.][5]
Après cel an passé, sun chemyn reprent,
Kar le ray de Fraunce sun venir attent,
Juette,[6] sa bele feylle, à femme li present.
Li bons Adeluuolphe[7] la prent curtaisement,
Aryve en Engleterre, resceu [est] de sa gent,[8]
Et vesquit après deus aunz bonement.
Sun cors à Wincestre prist enterement.[9]
Iij. mil mars à Rome dona par testament,
A la lumer saint Pere et saint Pol ensement.

Ethelbald. Etheldbalde,[10] fiz Edeluuolfe, après sun per regnait,
Ij. aunz et demy la terre[11] governait.
Juette, sa marastre, al mouster[12] esposa it,
Pur quai[13] saint eglise of ly se medlayt.
Mort le prist[14] n'ad force, à Schyneburne[15] cochait.

Anno gratiæ D.CCC.LX.

Reign of Ethelbert. Ethelbert, frere Ethelbalde,[16] corouner se fist;
Suthsexe, et tote Kent, et Sutheryo[17] conquist.

---

[1] *la dyme part*, C. *la dysme à Dieu*, D.

[2] This line, omitted in A., is here supplied from B. C. D.

[3] *Ilokes demorayt un an*, D.

[4] *ly fayt*, C.

[5] These two lines are omitted in A., and supplied from B. C.

[6] *Juuette*, C.

[7] *Li bon reis Adelwolf*, B.

[8] *resceu est de la gent*, B. *est de sa gent*, C. D.

[9] Robert of Brunne adds, "beside "an autere."

[10] *Ethelbald*, B. *Tebald*, C. *Ethelbold*, D. *Edbalde*, Robert of Brunne.

[11] *sa tere*, D.

[12] *à muster*, B.

[13] *Par quei*, D.

[14] *le prent*, B. *li prent*, C.

[15] *à Schireburne*, B. *Chirburne*, D. *Schirburne*, in Robert of Brunne, who adds two lines to his original to give, perhaps after a different reckoning, a wrong date:

"The date of Criste to neven thus
"fele were gon
"Auht hundreth even and sexti
"and on."

[16] *frere Adelwolf*, B. D. In Robert of Brunne's translation he is called, "Ethelbert his eam," *i.e.* Ethelbald's uncle.

[17] *Surreie*, B. C. D.

Of the issue of his beasts, of land and tenement,
All the tenth part to almighty God.
He went devoutly to the court of Rome,
Took his son with him, a year entirely
He remained there, the pope nobly
Paid him honours enough, as belongs to a king.
After that year was past, he takes his way back,
For the king of France waits his coming,
Presents him for wife Judith, his fair daughter.
The good Ethelwolf takes her courteously,
Arrives in England, is received by his people,
And lived afterwards well two years.
His body received interment at Winchester.
He gave three thousand marks to Rome by his will,
To the light of St. Peter, and of St. Paul likewise.

Ethelbald, son of Ethelwolf, reigned after his father.
He governed the land two years and a half.
He espoused at the minster Judith, his step-mother,
For which holy church quarrelled with him.
Death took him inevitably, he was buried at Sherburne.

Year of grace 860.

Ethelbert, brother of Ethelbald, caused himself to be crowned;
He conquered Sussex, and all Kent, and Surrey.

L'an primer de sun regne, grant pople li[1] surquist
De la paenerye, et ses gens occyst.
Le rays Ethelbert à la bataylle se prist,
Les paens à Wyncestre tuz ad descomfit.
En guere et en bataylle rays[2] v. auns vesquist;
Sun cors près de sun pere à Schneburne là gist.[3]

Anno gratiæ D.CCC.LXV.

Ethelred made king.

Elfrede,[4] fre[re] Ethelbert, par successioun
Rays est[5] corouné de la regioun;
A sun frere Elfred[6] dona garisoun
La terre de Suthrye[7] en subjeccioun.

Invasion by the Danes.

V. rays et vii.[8] countes, of lur garnisoun,
Sunt de Danemark venuz en Alvertoun;
Northumberland ount pris et fet destruccioun,
Jekes en Everwik[9] ount tot en baundoun.
Assemblez sunt les freres, attyrent lur dragoun;[10]

Great victory gained by the king and his brother.

Et vount à la bataylle, et fount occisioun
Sur les rays Danays; les Danays[11] à raundoun
Assayllent egrement,[12] pur veir la passioun
Fu nef fez en cel an[13] à graunt confusioun.[14]
Le terce jour, pur veir, après le Assencioun[15]
[Furent les Daneis en perdicioun;][16]
Tuez sunt les rays, et counte et baroun.

---

[1] *li* omitted in C.

[2] *rays* omitted in C.

[3] *près de son cosin à Schirebourne gist*, B. *près de son frere à Schineburne gist*, C. *près de son frere à Chirburn gist*, D.

[4] *Athelfred*, C.

[5] *Est roys c.*, C. D.

[6] *Adelfrede*, D.

[7] *Surye*, D.

[8] *e cink countz*, B. D. Robert of Brunne translates this reading, "that fyve kynges and fyve erles "wer comen."

[9] *Jesq'à Evrewik*, B. *Jekes à Everwik*, C. D.

[10] *freres, et fount occisioun*, D., which omits the next line.

[11] *rays Danays egrement à*, D.

[12] *egrement* omitted in C.

[13] This line is omitted in D.

[14] *Fu neef cenz cel an*, B. *Fu nef foiz cele an*, C. Robert of Brunne has misunderstood this line.

[15] *pur veyr de la assencioun*, C.

[16] This line is omitted in A. It is here supplied from B. C. D.

In the first year of his reign, a great multitude came against him
Of the pagans, and slew his people.
King Ethelbert gave them battle,
He has discomfited all the pagans at Winchester.
He lived king five years in war and battle;
His body lies there at Sherburn near his father.

Year of grace 865.

Ethelred, brother of Ethelbert, by succession
Is crowned king of the region;
He gave as a provision to his brother Alfred
The land of Surrey in subjection.
Five kings and seven earls, with their forces,
Are come from Denmark into Alverton;
They have taken Northumberland, and made destruction in it,
They have all as far as York at their will.
The brothers are assembled, raise their dragon,
And go to the battle, and make slaughter
On the Danish kings; the Danes with fury
Assail them courageously, in truth the suffering
Was repeated nine times that year with great confusion.
The third day, in truth, after the Ascension
The Danes were in perdition;
The kings are slain, and earl and baron.

Elfred prent sun frere, of grant devocioun
Vers Everwik s'en vount en processioun.
Elfrede un cosyn en Norfolc avait,
Ço fu saint Edmoun ke suz li regnayt,
Estangle trestut à sun regne appendait.
Martyrdom of St. Edmund. Un duk de Danemarche, ke Ingar[1] se nomayt,
Sur le rays Edmound en Northfolk aryvayt,
Hubba, counte de Gynes,[2] sun compaynoun estait.
Saint Edmound l'oit dire, et[3] par lettres les maundait[4]
Pees et bon amour; Ingar ly revayt,[5]
Si la terre volt rendre, pees li graunterayt.[6]
Saint Edmound s'atire, à la bataylle s'en vait.
L'oste de Danemark si grant poer avait,
Ke saint Edmound fu pris, Ingar[7] ly copayt
La teste des espaules, et loynz del cors getayt.
La teste, pur veirs, après kant homme la querayt,
Après le cors trouvé, "Here! here! here!" parlait.[8]
Ore gist le corps en fertre à Saint Edmon tut drait.
De vij. aunz fu[9] rays, quant Ingar li tuayt.

[*De Osok rege Daniæ.*]

L'an après, en May, par grant surquiderye,
Osok,[10] ray de Danes,[11] vint of grant noblye;
A Berwik sur Twede lessa sa navye,
Aide privez avait par cels de Albanye,
Et vent vers le suth[12] par force et par mestrie.

---

[1] *Inghar*, C. D. *Inguare*, in Robert of Brunne.

[2] *de Huynes*, B. *de Huneys*, C. *Uba count de Huynes*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Ubbe an "erle of Huneis."

[3] *et* omitted in B. C. D.

[4] *le maundait*, C.

[5] *li renvoit*, B. *renuait*, D.

[6] *pus grantereit*, B.

[7] *Inhar*, C. *Inghar*, D.

[8] *her, her, her, parleit*, B. Robert of Brunne gives some additional particulars relating to the death of St. Edmund.

[9] *fut-il reis*, B. *vij. aunz vesquist rays*, C.

[10] *Oseth*, B. C. D. and Robert of Brunne. He is called Sidroc in Henry of Huntingdon, and Oseg by William of Malmesbury.

[11] *des Danes*, D.

[12] *Et venent vers le sue*, C. *le seu*, D.

Ethelred takes his brother, with great devotion
They go to York in procession.
Ethelred had a cousin in Norfolk,
It was saint Edmund, who reigned under him,
All East Anglia belonged to his kingdom.
A duke of Denmark, who was named Inguar,
Arrived in Norfolk to attack king Edmund,
Ubba, earl of the Huns, was his companion.
St. Edmund heard tell of it, and by letters offered them
Peace and good love; Inguar replied to him,
If he would surrender the land, he would grant him peace.
St. Edmund prepares, and goes to the battle.
The army of Denmark had such great power,
That St. Edmund was taken, Inguar cut his
Head from his shoulders, and threw it far from the body.
The head, in truth, afterwards when people sought for it,
After the body was found, called out "Here! here! "here!"
Now the body lies in a shrine straight at St. Edmunds.
He had been seven years king, when Inguar slew him.

Of Oseg king of Denmark.

The year after, in May, through great presumption,
Oseg, king of the Danes, came with great nobility;
He left his navy at Berwick on Tweed,
He had secret assistance from those of Albany,
And comes southward by force and mastery.

Battle of Eschendun.

Elfrede et sun frere unt Everwik guerpye,
Ke Deu salver les voylle, l'un et l'alter prie.
Al Pount de la Bataille Osoch [sa] baner[1] desplye;
Elfred à sa messe[2] gist, et sur Deu crye.
Alfrede à la bataylle[3] s'en va, ne dotez mye;
Descomfist fu de près,[4] kar trop fu hardye.
Elfrede ad la novele sa route ad tost unye,[5]
Se mette à la bataylle sa messe quant ad oye;[6]
Deus fist une miracle[7] pur sa compaynye,
Nes un des Danays eschapayt[8] of la vye.
Le ray d'Escoce est pris[9] vint par chuvalerye,[10]
Et corust sur Elfred par mout graunt hatye.

Death of Ethelred.

Elfred fu nafrez par un coup d'espeye;
Vj. aunz en guere regnayt, à Dryffeld est finye.[11]

His division of labour.

Elfred tut sun tens saintement vesquit,
Le xxiiij. houre de la nout[12] despendist,
Viij. en ses priers, et viij. taunt cum dormist,
Les altres viij. en penser, et de quer purvist
De garder sa terre, ke il ne la perdist.[13]
La maité de ses bens à povres[14] departist,
Sustint les abbeyes, povers clers norist,
Il levait les eglises,[15] sustenir les fist,
Tuz ke ly servirent[16] à garisoun les myst.

---

[1] *bataille sa banere*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates very incorrectly, "at the poynt of the "bataile."

[2] *à la messe*, B.

[3] *Pus à la bataylle*, D.

[4] *fu après*, B.

[5] *sa route est houie*, B. *sa route est unye*, C.

[6] *se messe par oie*, B. C. This account of the battle of Eschendun appears to be taken from William of Malmsbury.

[7] *i fist miracle*, B. C. *Mès Dieus i fist miracle*, D.

[8] *eschapa od*, B.

[9] *d'Escoce après*, B. C. D.

[10] *par trescherye*, C. *trecherye*, D.

[11] *est sevelie*, B. C. D.

[12] *de nuit*, B. *Les xxiiii. houres bien d.*, C. *Les xx.iiij. houres del jour*, D. The Saxons reckoned time by nights, and not by days; hence we still speak of a *sennight*, or a *fortnight*. It may be remarked that this story about the division of the day belongs to Alfred the Great, and not to the Alfred who was buried at Driffield. Langtoft has confounded Ethelred with the two Alfreds.

[13] *q'il ne la perdisist*, B.

[14] *as povers*, D.

[15] *Relevcit les glises*, B. *Relevait eglises*, C.

[16] *serveyent*, D.

Ethelred and his brother have abandoned York,
Both pray that God will save them.
At Battle-Bridge Oseg unfolds his banner;
Ethelred lies at his mass, and cries unto God.
Alfred goes to the battle, fear not;
He was quickly defeated, for he was too bold.
Ethelred has news of it, he unites his army,
Enters the battle when he has heard his mass;
God performed a miracle for his company,
Not one of the Danes escaped with his life.
The king of Scotland afterwards came with treachery,
And attacked Ethelred with very great hatred.
Ethelred was wounded with a blow of the sword;
He reigned six years in war, and ended at Driffield.

Elfred lived in holiness all his time,
He spent the twenty-four hours of the night,
Eight in his prayers, and eight while he slept,
The other eight in thinking, and heartily provided
For defending his land that he might not lose it.
Half of his goods he divided among the poor,
Sustained the abbeys, educated poor clerks,
He raised the churches, provided for their support,
He gave reward to all who served him.

Anno Domini D.CCC.LXXJ.

Accession of Alfred the Great.

Alfrede, frere Elfrede,[1] parfist[2] en clergye,
En tut Engleterre taunt vayllaunt ne fu mye,
Resceust la coroune et la seygnurye.
En sun primer an conquist la mestrie
De viij. bataylles en chaump sur la gent haye[3]

Arrival of Rollo.

De Danays[4] renayez; un duk, par graunt envye,[5]
Sur ly aryvait of taunt de compaynye,
Ke Elfred ben quidait aver perdu la vye.[6]
Rollo fu sun noun, molt fist de chuvalerye.[7]
A la guere s'en vount, Elfrede à ly se lye,[8]
Ilokes entre les deus fu mainte beal[9] coup d'espeye.
Deus par sa vertue à Rollo[10] taunt ottrye,
Ke pur l'amour Elfrede de batesme ly prie.
Rollo[11] est Cristien, et de amour se affye
Al bon rays Alfrede; or sunt ly deus amye.[12]
Rollo ad noun Robert quant est[13] baptizez;
Du bon rays Alfred pris ad ses congez,

Conquest of Normandy.

S'en va vers Normondye of bone gens[14] assez,
La terre prent à force,[15] et duk i est clamez.
Alfrede of ses Englays demort[16] en ses regnez.
Taunt cum vers le north Alfred est alez,

---

[1] *frere Elflede*, C.

[2] *parfit*, D.

[3] *De xxij. batailles sur la gent hatie*, B. *Des xxii. batailles en chaumpe pur*, C. *De xxij. bataylles sur la gent haye*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Tuo and "tuenty batailes he wanne the first "yere."

[4] *Des Danays*, C. D.

[5] *par envie*, B.

[6] *aver perdu baillie*, B. C. D.

[7] *molt fist chivalerye*, D.

[8] *à Rolle se lie*, B. *à Rollo se lye*, C. *Alfrede et Rollo se lye*, D. Pierre de Langtoft, by some very unaccountable mistake, evidently confounds Rollo and Guthrun.

[9] *beal* omitted in B.

[10] *Rolle*, B. *atant à Rollo ottrye*, C.

[11] *Rolle*, B.

[12] *les dous sunt à unie*, B. *ore sont ly ii. à unyez*, C.

[13] *quant il est*, B. C.

[14] *od bons gent*, B. *oue bonz gens*, C.

[15] *par force*, B. *il prent par force*, C. *par force le duk est*, D.

[16] *demurut*, B.

Year of our Lord 871.

Alfred, brother of Elfred, perfect in learning,
There was not so valiant a man in all England,
Received the crown and the sovereignty.
In his first year he gained the mastery
In eight battles in the field against the hated people
Of the infidel Danes; a duke, through great hatred,
Arrived against him with such great company,
That Alfred thought well that he had lost his kingdom.
Rollo was his name, he did great feats of arms.
They go to the war, Alfred clings to him,
There between the two was many a fine sword blow.
God through his virtue has shown so much grace to Rollo,
That for the love of Alfred he asks him for baptism.
Rollo is a Christian, and he sets his love
On good king Alfred; now are the two friends.

Rollo was named Robert when he was baptized;
Of good king Alfred he has taken his leave,
He goes to Normandy with good people enough,
Takes the land by force, and is proclaimed duke there.
Alfred with his English remains in his kingdoms.
While Alfred was on his way towards the north,

Invasion of Gunther, the father of Havelok.

Gountere, le pere Havelok, de Danays[1] ray clamez,
Of grant chuvalerye est Engleterre[2] entrez,
Destrut ad les viles et[3] arses les cytez.
Les Norays s'atyrent, le ray les ad maundez,
Of le ray Gountere en chaump sunt encountrez.[4]
Les clers saint Chuthbert sun cors unt levez
Hors del sepulture où fust entoumbez,
Vij. aunz parmy la terre le corsaint[5] fu portez,
Dunt le rays Alfrede fu sovent confortez.[6]
Kant Alfred et Gountere ensemble ount guerreez,

Conversion of Gunther.

Gountere par aide de Deu chaunge voluntez.
Le rays Alfred pur veirs de founte[7] li ad levez,
Xxx. des melx vayllaunz[8] of ly sunt baptizez,
Retournent Cristyens ke vindrent renaez.
Tost après un counte ke Alfedene fu nomez,
Of Hyngar,[9] ke saint Edmound avait avaunt[10] tuez,
Sur le ray Alfrede lur guere est[11] comencez;
Mès par les bons Norays ilokes sunt decolez.

Death of king Alfred.

Lvj.[12] bataylles out Alfrede outraez
Avaunt k'il fu del secle en terre[13] retornez:
Après xxix. aunz[14] et vj. mays passez,
Est Alfrede à Wyncestre al moynes entumbez.

---

[1] *Gounte, pere Haveloh, de Danes*, B. *Gounter piere Haveloh des Daneis*, C. *Gountere pere Havelok de Daneys*, D. Robert of Brunne calls him Gunter, and adds to Pierre de Langtoft's text some remarks about Havelok and his now well-known romance, intimating doubts as to the authenticity of his history. A side-note in the manuscript of Robert of Brunne's translation from which Hearne printed, says, "De "Guntero patre Havelok, *sicut dicit* "*Petrus*." Gunterus is, of course, the Guthrun of authentic history.

[2] *est en Engleterre*, C.

[3] *et* omitted in B. D.

[4] *Gounter sont ils encountrez*, C.

[5] *le corps seint*, B. D.

[6] *fust mult c.*, C.

[7] *founce*, D. It is not easy to explain the abruptness of the narrative of Pierre de Langtoft in this place: he has omitted to tell us how Gunter came to be baptized.

[8] *meuz vanez*, B.

[9] *Od Inguar*, B. *Ouf Inghar*, C. *Oue Inghar*, D.

[10] *avaunt avoit*, B. D.

[11] *unt*, B. *ount*, D.

[12] *Cinquante e vj.*, B. *L. et vi.*, C.

[13] *à terre*, B. D.

[14] *Après trent e nuef anz*, B. *xx. et ix.*, C.

Gunter, the father of Havelok, proclaimed king of the Danes,
Is entered into England with a great army of knights,
Has destroyed the towns and burnt the cities.
The northerns assemble, the king has called them,
They have encountered king Gunter in the field.
The clergy of St. Cuthbert have raised his body
Out of the sepulchre in which he was entombed,
Seven years the holy body was carried through the land,
By which king Alfred was often comforted.
When Alfred and Gunter have warred together,
Gunter by God's aid changes his will.
King Alfred in truth has raised him from the font,
Thirty of the most distinguished are baptized with him,
They return Christians who came infidels.
Immediately afterwards an earl who was named Alfdene,
With Inguar, who had before slain St. Edmund,
Have begun their war against king Alfred;
But they are there beheaded by the good northerners.
Alfred had been victorious in fifty-six battles,
Before he returned from the world into earth.
After twenty-nine years and six months passed,
Alfred is entombed in the monastery at Winchester.

Anno Domini D.CCCC.

Accession of Edward the Elder.

Edward fiz Alfrede, le Velz fu sun surnoun,
Après la mort sun pere rescayt la regioun;[2]
Molt fu fort et beals, et de graunt resoun;
A Loundres à Saint Pol resceust-il la[3] coroun.
Purvist sun parlement de counte et [de] baroun,[4]
Il mesme à sun pople[5] dist en sun sermoun,[6]
Ke rays en Engleterre ne suffrayt[7] si ly noun.
Les raytels[8] de la terre sunt là tuz[9] venuz,
De Escoce et de Gales, de[10] Coumberland trestuz
Englays et Danays, et de Norays[11] issuz,
Counte, duk, baroun,[12] et chuvalers conuz,
Dunt[13] Eduuard le Velz en ray et pere est eluz.
Eduuard est drait rays par la monarchye,
Quant la terre ad tote en sa seygnurye.

Children of Edward the Elder.

Xiij. enfauns[14] avait, de deus espouses, ws dye,
V. fiz et viij. fillyes,[15] les nouns ne sayent oblye,
Adelstan, Edelyn, Edmoun, Edrede, le quint Edwye.[16]
Hilde fu une des feylles, dit Hildene levedye;
Elflede[17] fust cel altre, ke par sun envadye[18]
Aidait sun frere le ray, pur[19] guyer sa ballye.
Saint Edburge fu la terce, ke vesquit sainte vye.

---

[1] *D.ccc.*, B.
[2] *sa region*, B.
[3] *resceust la*, B. C. D.
[4] *e de baron*, B. C. D.
[5] *à tut son pople*, B. C. D.
[6] *en sermoun*, D.
[7] *ne serreit*, B.
[8] *Les rattels*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this word by "the smale "kynges of the lond."
[9] *jà touz*, D.
[10] *e de C.*, B. *du C.*, C.
[11] *et Norays*, C. *et des Norreis*, D.
[12] *e baron*, D.
[13] *Unt . . e pere esluz*, B. C. D.
[14] *Quatorze enfanz*, B. "Four-"tene childre he gate opon tuo "wifes," Robert of Brunne.
[15] *Sis fitz et viij. fidles*, B. *v. fiz et vij. feilles*, C. Robert of Brunne translates the former of these two readings, "Sex sonnes and auht "douhtres."
[16] *Adestan, Edwin, Edgar, Edmund, Edred, Edwie*, B. *A., Edelyn, Edin, Edrede, Edwye*, C. *Edwyn, Edm°, Edrede, Edwye*, D. Robert of Brunne's list of Edward's children agrees with the reading of B.
[17] *Elfrede*, B. D.
[18] *qe par sen e veidie*, B. C. D.
[19] *pur* omitted in B. D.

Year of our Lord 900.

Edward son of Alfred, the Elder was his surname,
After the death of his father received the kingdom;
He was very strong and handsome, and of great intelligence;
At London at St. Paul's he received the crown.
He called his parliament of earls and barons;
He himself said to his people in his speech,
That he would suffer no king in England except himself.

The kinglets of the land are all come there,
Of Scotland and of Wales, of Cumberland, all,
Of English and Danish and northern descent,
Earls, dukes, barons, and knights of fame,
By whom Edward the Elder is elected king and father.

Edward is right king by royal descent,
When the land is all in his sovereignty.
He had thirteen children, by two wives, I tell you,
Five sons and eight daughters, let the names not be forgotten,
Athelstan, Edwin, Edmund, Edred, the fifth Edwy.
Hilda was one of the daughters, called Hildene lady;
Elfleda was the other, who by her talent
Aided her brother the king in the conduct of his government.
Saint Edburga was the third, who lived a holy life.

La quarte ad le emperour Octavyan marye.[1]
Passez sunt les autres hors de ceste vye.
L'an disme[2] de sun regne vint la chuvalerye
De Danemarche en Kent of molt graunt navye,
Iij. rays et vj. dukes; Eduuard en Lyndesye
Oist la novele, sun host requert et prie
Ke tost se hastent tuz, et il baner desplye.
A Treford[3] en Norfolk les Danays sunt unye;[4]
Les iij. rays sunt tuez, des altres graunt partye
Retournent à lur nefs; Eduuard, Deu mercye!
Unkes vint en bataille k'il n'avait[5] la mestrie.
Death of Edward the Elder. Xxiiij. aunz[6] endura sa noblye;[7]
Tut Engleterre avait, unkes par sa folye[8]
Perdist ren de terre,[9] ben guyait[10] Albanye,
Cu[m]berland et Gales et tute Cornubye,
Lindeseye et Kent, Dorset et Suthrye;[11]
Le cors gist à Wyncestre, Deu repos l'ottrie!

Anno Domini D. CCCC. XXIIIJ.

Athelstan succeeds to the throne. Après le ray Eduuard comença regner
Adelstan[12] sun fiz, molt[13] vailliaunt chuvaler.
Countes et barouns et[14] clers de bon quer
S'en vount à[15] Kingestoun ly rays corouner.
Les raytels de Gales ne sevent pes aver,

---

[1] Robert of Brunne seems to have been unable to understand this line, for, as printed by Hearne, he has translated it rather obscurely, "The "ferth Octovyan Mary that em- "peroures wife."

[2] *Le disme an de*, B. D.

[3] *A Scheford*, B. *A Teford*, D. Robert of Brunne has: "at Tete- "ford in Northfolk."

[4] *sunt honie*, B. D.

[5] *qe n'avoit*, B.

[6] *Vint e quatre anz*, B. *xx. et iiij. aunz*, D.

[7] *sa baillye*, C.

[8] *par folie*, B. D.

[9] *Perdi pé de tere*, B. *raye de tere*, D. Robert of Brunne translates from the first of these readings, "and, thorgh no folie, never in "his lyve a fote of lond he les."

[10] *gwiast*, D.

[11] *Surrie*, B. *Surye*, D.

[12] *Athelstan*, B.

[13] *mult* is omitted in B. C. D.

[14] *et* omitted in B.

[15] *Somound*, D.

The fourth the emperor Octavian has married.
The others are passed out of this life.
In the tenth year of his reign came the chivalry
Of Denmark into Kent with a very great navy,
Three kings and six dukes; Edward in Lindesey
Hears the news, calls and prays his army
That they will all hasten at once, and he displays his banner.
At Thetford in Norfolk the Danes have engaged him;
The three kings are slain, the others in great part
Return to their ships; Edward, God be thanked!
Never came into battle but he had the mastery.
Twenty-four years his nobleness lasted;
He had all England; never by his folly
Did he lose a foot of land, he ruled well Albany,
Cumberland, and Wales, and all Cornwall,
Lindesey and Kent, Dorset and Surrey;
His body lies at Winchester, God give him repose!

Year of our Lord 924.

After king Edward, began to reign
Athelstan his son, a very valiant knight.
Earls and barons and clergy with good will
Go to Kingston to crown the king.
The kinglets of Wales know not how to keep peace,

Conquest of Wales.

L'an secounde[1] de sun regne of ly volent medler;
Mès il les venquist; de pees en vount[2] parler.
Le rays Adelstan Northwales[3] fet charger
De xxiiij. livres[4] d'or par an, ccc. de argent cher,[5]
De x. mil[6] vaches par an à sun larder;
Pur trewe de Suthwales ne payent nul[7] dener,
For[s] mil et cc.[8] vaches, dount fu tributer.
Le iiij. an de sun regne, Owal,[9] un guerrayere,
Et Constantyn, d'Escoce rays et justiser,
Onvere rays de Venz,[10] s'en vount batailler
Of le ray Adelstan; molt[11] graunt fu lur poer.
Li rays, of l'aide Deu,[12] les va rechacer;
Si dure al darayn les mene k'il les fet jorer
Ke leals ly serraynt et par terre et par mer.[13]

Death of Edwin.

Le disme an après ke ly rays fu corounez,
Fust Edwyn, sun frere, devaunt sun barné
A Loundres en sa court attaynt de malveysté.
Adelstan le fist lyer et mayn et pé,[14]
Et jettre en Tamyse, où il fu tost nayé.[15]
Constantyn de Escoce, dount fu ray clamé,
Rompist tost la pes ke fust affermé;
Genz de Danemark lur poer l'ount doné,
Tuent les Englays, wastent terre et pré.

---

[1] *Le secunde an*, B. C. D.

[2] *de pes volent parler*, B. *tost de pees vount-il parler*, C. *venquist tost, de pees vount enparler*, D.

[3] *Northgales*, B.

[4] *De vint livres*, B. D. *de xx. li' de ore*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Tuenti pounde of gold "be ȝere, thre hundreth of silver "clere, and therto fyve hundreth "kie ilk ȝere to his lardere."

[5] *de argent cler*, D. "Thre hundreth of silver clere," Robert of Brunne.

[6] *De cink mil*, B. *De D. M'.*, C. *De v. mil*, D.

[7] *ne prist-il nul*, B. D. *ne prist un dener*, C.

[8] *M. et ccc.*, C. "a thousand kie," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *Ouwal*, B. *Owald*, C. and Robert of Brunne.

[10] *Onwer rei de Wente*, B. *Onner*, C. D. *Wenz*, D. Robert of Brunne calls him, "Ouwer kyng of Went-"land."

[11] *molt* omitted in B. C.

[12] *ayde de Deu*, C.

[13] *en terre e en mer*, B. C. *ly serrunt en tere et en mere*, D.

[14] *lier mayn e pée*, B D. *lyer ambdeus mayn et pé*, C.

[15] *où il fut naé*, B. C. D.

In the second year of his reign they seek to make
war upon him;
But he vanquishes them; they willingly parley for
peace.
King Athelstan causes North Wales to be charged
With twenty-four pounds of gold a year, and three
hundred of clear silver,
And ten thousand kine a year for his larder;
For the tribute of South Wale not a penny,
Except a thousand and two hundred kine, for which
it was tributary.
The fourth year of his reign, Owald, a warrior,
And Constantine, king and ruler of Scotland,
Onwer king of Gwent, go to fight
With king Athelstan; very great was their power.
The king, with God's help, goes and puts them to
flight;
He presses them so hard at last that he makes them
swear
That they would be loyal to him both by land and
sea.

The tenth year after the king was crowned,
Was Edwin, his brother, before his baronage
At London in his court convicted of wickedness.
Athelstan caused him to be bound hand and foot,
And thrown into the Thames, where he was soon
drowned.
Constantine of Scotland, of which he was proclaimed
king,
Soon broke the peace which had been confirmed;
People of Denmark have given their power to him,
They slay the English, lay waste land and meadow.

Athelstan's successes against the Scots and Danes.

Adelstan l'oit dire, s'en vayt à Beverlé,[1]
A saint Jon le eveske, où ore gist enfertré,
Ke aider ly voylle devers la Trinité
Devotement ly prie, si l'ad confermé
Terres et fraunchises le eglise [en] est feffé.[2]
Puys vayt à Dureme, Saint Chutbert ad dowé[3]
Des terres et de rentes, et graunt digneté ;[4]
Le eveske de sun doun tent regalté.[5]
Puys vayt à la bataylle de Deu ben conforté.
La guere de Escoce est prise, et Katenesse wasté.[6]
Constantyn est rayns, sun fiz est liveré,[7]
Est [en] hostage[8] al ray Adestan clamé,
Ke est of la victore[9] à Loundres retorné.

Embassy from Charles of France.

En le honur nostre Dame à l'Assumpcioun,
U messagers ly venent devers Abendoun,[10]
Se mist le ray de Loundres al riche ray Karloun ;
Le counte de Boloyne, Aldulphe fu sun noun,
Le duk de Burgoyne, Rayner fiz Edmoun,[11]

His presents to Athelstan.

Al rays Adelstan presentent ryche doun,
Par Charles ray de France ; il memes l'enveit gonphanoun[12]

---

[1] *dire, va à Beverlé*, B.

[2] *en est feffé*, B. C. D.

[3] *seint Cuthbert ad doné*, B. C. D.

[4] *De teres e de rentes de grant digneté*, B. *Des terres et des rentes de*, C. D.

[5] *tient le regalté*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne, who translates this by, "The bisshop of his gift holdes his "fe," seems to have understood it rather imperfectly: the bishopric of Durham was a principality.

[6] *La terre d'Escoce . . et Cathenesse est wasté*, B. *La terre*, C. D.

[7] *est reynt, et son fitz liveré*, B. *est reynt, et son fiz est lyveré*, D.

[8] *en ostage*, B. C. D.

[9] *ouf la victorye*, C.

[10] This line and the following stand thus in B. and D. (*Habendoun*, D.) :

"*Se mist le rei de Loundres devers*
"*Abingdon,*
"*Où message li venent du riche*
"*rei Charlon.*"

In C. the two lines are merely transposed. It may be remarked that Pierre de Langtoft appears to have taken the account of the marriage of the princess Hilda from William of Malmsbury.

[11] The eye of the scribe in C. has passed from *Boloyne* to *Rayner*, overlooking the intervening words.

[12] *Fraunce, mesme cel gounfaignon*, B. *France meme le goumphaignoun*, C. *mesme le gunfaynoun*, D.

Athelstan hears tell of it, proceeds to Beverley,
To St. John the archbishop, where he now lies enshrined,
That he will intercede for him with the Trinity
He prays him devoutly, and has confirmed to him
Lands and privileges of which the church is enfeoffed.
Next goes to Durham, has endowed St. Cuthbert
With lands and rents, and great dignity;
The bishop by his gift holds royalty.
Next he goes to the battle well encouraged by God.
The war of Scotland is decided, and Caithness is laid waste.
Constantine is vanquished, his son is delivered
As a hostage claimed to king Athelstan,
Who is returned with the victory to London.

At the feast of the Assumption of our Lady,
The king proceeds from London to Abingdon,
Where messengers come to him from the rich king Charles;
The earl of Bologne, Aldulph was his name,
The duke of Burgundy, Rainer the son of Edmund,
Present rich gifts to king Athelstan,
On the part of Charles king of France; he himself sends him the gonfanon

Ke saint Marie portait[1] devaunt la legioun;
La launce dount Jhesus kant sanz achesoun
Fu naffrez al quer en sa passioun;
Un espeye de fyn or, plus ryche del[2] regioun;
Deus clowes sunt dedenz dount ly Jeu[3] feloun
Tacha les pez Deu, kant pendist cum laroun;
Partye des espynes dount fu sa coroun;
Une pece de la croyce ke ly bon baroun
Constantyn conquist à l'occiscoun
Del graunt soudan Maudans[4] de Scaloun.
Le present est resceu of graunt devocioun.
Lors s'en vent le cosyn,[5] le rays, of sun menage,
Descendist en la sale of molt fere corage;
Rayner fiz Edmoun li dist[6] en sun langage,
Marriage of the princess Hilda. " Sir rays Adelstan, Karles, de halt parage,
" Ke ço present[7] te envayt, te maunde sun message,
" Ke lyer se volt à tay, en ton[8] lynage,
" De Hilde, ta bele sor, te prie le mariage."
Hilde est si venue,[9] tant bele de visage,
Tant cortayse en parole, tant gent en corsage,
Plus bele creature vist[10] unkes home en age.
La damoysele s'assent, le rays et sun barnage
Of molt grant richesce atyrent sun passage.
Hilde s'en va vers Fraunce, fet est le passage;[11]
Adelstan demort garder sun heritage.

---

[1] *Qe seint Morice porta*, B. *Ke saint Morice*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "That saynt "Morice in bataile [bar] befor the "legioun." Maurice was the chief of the celebrated Theban legion, which, refusing to act against the Christians, was decimated by order of Dioclesian.

[2] *de*, B. C. D.

[3] *li Jues*, B. *Jew*, D.

[4] *Madans*, B. C. D. In Robert of Brunne it is, "Of the soudan of "Askalone, his name was Madan."

[5] *Lors sounent les busines*, B. D. *Lors sonent les bosyns*, C. Robert of Brunne, who, here as elsewhere at times, somewhat amplifies his original, translates it, "Than blewe "the trumpes fulle loud and fulle "schille."

[6] *fiz Camon dist en*, C.

[7] *cest present*, B. C. D.

[8] *et ton*, B.

[9] *est jà venuz*, B. *jà venue*, C. D.

[10] *ne vist*, C.

[11] *fait est l'esposage*, B. D. *fait est le posage*, C.

Which St. Maurice carried before the legion;
The spear with which Jesus, without cause,
Was wounded to the heart in his passion;
A sword of fine gold, more valuable than a kingdom;
Two nails are within it, with which the wicked Jew
Attached God's feet, when he was hanged like a thief;
A portion of the thorns of which his crown was made;
A piece of the cross which the good baron
Constantine conquered at the slaughter
Of the great sultan Maudans of Askalon.
The present is received with great devotion.

Then sound the horns, the king, with his household,
Descended into the hall with very proud bearing;
Rainer, son of Edmund, says to him in his language,
" Sir king Athelstan, Charles, of high descent,
" Who sends thee this present, sends thee his message,
" That he wishes to ally himself with thee in thy con-
" sanguinity,
" He asks thee for marriage with Hilda thy fair sister."
Hilda is immediately introduced, so handsome of coun-
tenance,
So courteous in language, so elegant in shape,
No man ever saw so handsome a creature.
The damsel agrees, the king and his baronage
With very great riches provide her passage.
Hilda proceeds to France, the marriage is made;
Athelstan remains to protect his inheritance.

Battle of Brunanburgh.

L'an primer ke[1] Hilde esposez estait,
Constantyn de Escoce en Humbre aryvayt,
Un rays paen, Analphe,[2] of ly amenait;
D. cc. et xv. nefs[3] le ray Anlaphe avayt.
Ly bon ray Adelstan, ke drayture amayt,
Of Edmoun sun frere, dount ben s'affyait,
A Bruneburge[4] sur Humbre les feluns encountrait.
Del matyn jekes al vespre la bataylle durait.[5]
Le rays Adelstan les ij. rays enchascait;[6]
Chescun en sa terre enfuaunt[7] s'en vayt;
Pur veir lur remisaille[8] Adelstan tuait.

Anlaf returns with the giant Colebrand.

Kant le rays Anlaphe avait perdu sa gent,
Il mesmes à grant payne passa del thorment;[9]
Vers Danemarche s'en va al sigle et al vent.[10]
A la Paske après aryve en l'orient,[11]
Al porte de Sanwyce, of pople[12] à talent.
Colebrand[13] vint of ly, Anlaphe avaunt se tent
Tut drait à Wyncestre où Adelstan attent.
Anlaphe saunz demore ly maunde apertement,
Par ses messagers, ke la terre ly rend,
Ou encountre Colebrand par un home la defent.[14]
Ly rays Adelstan tynt sun parlement,
Ne trova chuvaler de tel hardyment,
Ke of ly combaterayt pur [tut] le tenement.[15]
Adelstan priait à Deu omnipotent,[16]
Ke aider ly vousist, et Deu benignement

---

[1] *L'an après qe*, B. C. D.

[2] *Anlaf*, B.

[3] *De cc. et xv. neefs*, C.

[4] *Brunesburgh*, B. *Bronneburgh*, C.

[5] *jesqe le vespre la bataille endurait*, C.

[6] *les dous reis chaceit*, B. *rechaçait*, C.

[7] *ensuant*, C. D. makes out of this line and the following, one, *Chescun en sa tere lour remysaille tuayt*.

[8] *la remisaile*, C. Robert of Brunne says, "the most partie."

[9] *de torment*, C.

[10] *al sigle oue le vent*, C.

[11] *arive ensement*, C.

[12] *de Sandwiche od pople*, B. *de Sandwiche ouf poeple*, C.

[13] *Celebrand*, C.

[14] *Encontre Colebrand par un home se defent*, B.

[15] *pur tut le tenement*, B. D. *combatait pur tut le tenement*, C.

[16] *devotement*, C.

The year after Hilda was espoused,
Constantine of Scotland arrived in the Humber,
A pagan king, Anlaf, he brought with him:
Anlaf had seven hundred and fifteen ships.
The good king Athelstan, who loved right,
With Edmund his brother, in whom he placed great trust,
Encountered the wretches at Brunanburgh on Humber.
The battle lasted from morning till evening.
King Athelstan put to flight the two kings;
Each in flight went away to his land;
In truth Athelstan slew those who remained.

When king Anlaf had lost his people,
He himself escaped with great difficulty from the turmoil;
He proceeds towards Denmark with sail and wind.
At the Easter following he arrives in the east,
At the port of Sandwich, with people in abundance.
Colbrand came with him, Anlaf advanced
Straight to Winchester where Athelstan awaits him.
Anlaf without delay openly summons him,
By his messengers, to give up the land to him,
Or defend it by a man against Colbrand.
King Athelstan held his parliament,
Found no knight of such boldness,
Who would fight with him for the whole domain.
Athelstan prayed to God Almighty,
That he would vouchsafe to help him, and God benignly

Colebrand slain by Guy of Warwick.

En sounge of ly parlait, et dist ke prestement
Ke al matyn[1] troverayt un velz palmer et lent,
A la porte del seu,[2] et cely seurement
Parfrait la bataille, pur Deu omnipotent,
Si pur Deu ly[3] priast; ço fu verrayment
Guy de Warwik, sun livre dist coment[4]
Il tuayt[5] Colebrand, par quai tut[6] quitement.
Anlaphe rethorna à cel fez[7] dolent.

Death of king Athelstan.

Le rays Adelstan, pur ky Deu molt fist,
Xvj. aunz et xvj. jours[8] ray regnaunt vesquit.
La maladye mortele à Gloucestre ly prist;
Mès hors de la cyté, pur veirs, s'en partist,
Si ne sait à Mauncestre, ne say quel par se prist.[9]

Anno Domini D.CCCC.XL.

Reign of Edmund.

Après Adelstan, sun frere Edmoun[10] regnayt,
A ky par les Norays fu fet molt[11] grant descayt.
Kant en Northumberland Anlaphe par els estait
Eluz et corounez rays, ke n'avayt drait.
Après [par] iij. eveskes[12] la pees se fesayt;
Edmound la terre del suth,[13] Anlaphe le north avait.

---

[1] *Au matin*, B. *A matyn*, C. *Al matyn*, D.

[2] *del south*, B. *del su*, C. *du seu*, D.

[3] *Si pur li priast*, B. Robert of Brunne adds that he was slain with a Danish axe: "Ther he slouh "Colibrant with hache Daneis."

[4] *son liver li dit coment*, B.

[5] *tua*, B. C.

[6] *tut* omitted in B. C. D. again abridges two lines into one: *Gwy de Warwik, il tua quytement.*

[7] *returna cel foiz*, B. C.

[8] *e xvij. jours*, B. *et vii. jours*, C. Robert of Brunne translates it, "and seventene daies."

[9] *Si ne seit à Seint Poel ne sai qel part il gist*, B. D. *Si ne vait à son pople ne soy quel part*, C. Robert of Brunne, in his translation, makes a remark on Pierre's uncertainty relating to the place of Athelstan's burial:

"Pers can not say where he lies,
"Bot, as I herd telle, I say myn
"avys;
"Men say he was fonden in the
"north cuntré
"At Hexham now late, I wene
"soth it be."

[10] *Eadmon*, B. *Eadmond*, C.

[11] *molt* omitted in B. C. D.

[12] *Après par dous evesqes*, B. D. *Après ii. evesqes*, C.

[13] *de la tere del sieu*, B. *del su*, C. *de seu*, D.

Talked to him in a dream, and told him that immediately
In the morning he would find a palmer old and slow,
At the south gate, and he assuredly
Would perform the battle, for God Almighty,
If he prayed him for God's sake; this was truly
Guy of Warwick, his book tells how
He slew Colebrand, whereby all quit.
Anlaf returned that time in sorrow.

King Athelstan, for whom God did much,
Lived king reigning sixteen years and sixteen days.
The mortal disease took him at Gloucester;
But out of the city, in truth, he departed,
If it were not at Manchester, I know not whither he went.

Year of our Lord 940.

After Athelstan, his brother Edmund reigned,
To whom very great deception was practised by the northerners,
When in Northumberland Anlaf was by them
Elected and crowned king, who had not right.
Afterwards peace was made through three bishops,
Edmund had the land of the south, Anlaf the north.

Edmoun v. cytez[1] sur les paens gaynayt,
Nichole, et Suthamtoun, et Derby dereynayt,[2]
Laycestre, et Oxenforde Edmond enclynayt.[3]
Le rays Anlaphe après à baptesme enchascayt ;[4]
Et ly [et] Raynald, ke Cuthfrede[5] engendrayt,
De Northumberland[6] de tut exilliayt,
Et ad ray[7] d'Escoce Malcolme la donayt,
Par terre et par mer ke leals ly serrayt.
Le v. an de sun regne à Kauntrebire[8] alayt,
La feste saint Austyn tenir volayt,[9]
Un baroun uthlage[10] le rays venir vayt,
Violent death of Edmund Ironside. Ke en la panetrie[11] jadis demorayt.
Le ray mesmes l'ad pris,[12] ilokes le estranglayt,
Mesme le paneter à mort le ray[13] naffrayt.
Vij. aunz et vij. mays[14] sa terre governayt ;
Sun cors à Glastenbyre[15] ly abbès entoumbayt.

Anno Domini D.CCCC.XLVIJ.

King Edred. Edrede,[16] frere Edmoun, rescayt la digneté,
Le jour de Paske à Loundres pur veirs fu corouné ;

---

[1] These were the well known "five burghs," but they are not correctly enumerated here. Neither Southampton nor Oxford were among them. According to Henry of Huntingdon, the five burghs were, Lincoln, Leicester, Stamford, Nottingham, and Derby.

[2] *desreneit*, B. *derinait*, C. *derenayt*, D.

[3] *e Staunforde, à Eadmon enclineit*, B. *et Staunford et Eamon*, C. *et Staunforde*, D. Robert of Brunne also has, "Leycestre and Stamford."

[4] *à bapteme chaceit*, B. C. D.

[5] *E li e Reinald qe Guthfred*, B. *E ly Rainald de Gutfred*, C. *Et ly et Reynalde ke Guthferde engendrait*, D. Henry of Huntingdon calls him Reginald son of Guthfrith, while he calls Anlaf, son of Sihtric.

[6] *E de N.*, B. *De N. tut*, C.

[7] *al rey*, D.

[8] *à Canterberi*, B. *à Kantirbirs*, C. It is right that we should remark here that it was not at Canterbury, as stated by Langtoft, but at Pucklechurch, in Gloucestershire, that Edmund was celebrating the feast of St. Augustine, when he was thus slain by the outlaw Leofa.

[9] *il voleit*, B. *là volait*, C. D.

[10] Robert of Brunne calls him, "a thefe of his courte."

[11] *Q'en la paenrie*, B.

[12] *le prist*, B. D. *li prist*, C.

[13] *Mesmes le paneter le rey à mort*, B. D. *le ray à mort*, C.

[14] *e sis mois*, B.

[15] *en Glastebiry*, C.

[16] *Egrode*, C.

Edmund gained five cities from the pagans,
He reduced Lincoln, and Southampton, and Derby,
Edmund submitted Leicester and Oxford.
Afterwards he drove king Anlaf to baptism;
And him and Reginald, whom Guthfrith begat,
Banished entirely from Northumberland,
And gave it to Malcolm king of Scotland,
On condition he should be loyal to him by land and water.
In the fifth year of his reign he went to Canterbury,
He intended to hold the festival of St. Augustine,
The king saw arrive an outlawed baron,
Who formerly had a place in the pantry.
The king himself has seized him, there he strangled him,
But the paneter himself wounded the king to death.
He governed his land seven years and seven months;
The abbot entombed his body at Glastonbury.

Year of our Lord 947.

Edred, the son of Edmund, received the dignity,
On Easter day at London in truth he was crowned;

Faithless conduct of the Northerners.

Pris ad les homages, fet ly est fealté.
Les malvays Norays ly fayllent de[1] lealté;
Ayryke de Danemark[2] sur ly ount levé
En rays et en seygnur[3] de la regalté.

Edred triumphant.

Edrede devers le north of poer est alé;
La vile de Rypoun est ars et wasté,
Et tote Northumberland est taunt enfraé,[4]
Ke le rays Ayryke est decorouné,
Et of sun menage à hounte[5] rethorné.
Les Norays ount de pees of le ray parlé,[6]
Loure teres totes sunt à sa volunté.
Edrede à saint Cuthbert ad partye doné;[7]
Le realme tut entere est à sa volunté;[8]
Countes et barouns taunt ben ad chastyé[9]
[Qe desore est la terre par pees affermé].[10]
X. aunz[11] vesquit, sun cors est parté,[12]
Et à Wyncestre gist, cum avayt devysé.

Anno Domini D.CCCC.LVIJ.

King Edwy.

Edwy,[14] frere Edrede, le regne après enprent,
Et rays est resceu del governement.
Plus fol home en vye[15] ne fust en le oryent;
Pur quai les halz[16] hommes, par commune assent,
Ount Edwyn deposez et houstez nettement,

---

[1] *de* omitted in B. C.

[2] *Eyrik de Denemarch*, B. *Eylrik de Danmark*, C. *Eybrike of Damark*, Robert of Brunne. *Eric*, in Henry of Huntingdon.

[3] *En rey e seigneur*, B. C. D.

[4] *affraé*, B. *est tut affraé*, C.

[5] *od hounte*, B. *à hunt*, C.

[6] This line in A. is transposed with the next line, but it is here replaced as in B. C. D.

[7] *partie ad doné*, B. C. D.

[8] *Le regne tut entier demort à sa poesté*, B. C. D. (except that C. reads *en sa* for *à sa*).

[9] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[10] This line is omitted in A.; it is here supplied from B. and C., the latter of which reads *sa terre*, instead of *la terre*.

[11] *Viij. aunz*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne also followed this reading: "auht ȝere was he kyng."

[12] *fu porté*, B. D. *vesquit rays, son corps est porté*, C.

[13] *et* omitted in B.

[14] *Eadwy*, B. *Edwin*, C.

[15] *de vie*, B. C.

[16] *alez*, C.

He has taken the homages, fealty is performed to him.
The bad Northerners fail him in loyalty;
They have raised against him Eric of Denmark
For king and lord of the royalty.
Edred is gone with power towards the north,
The town of Ripon is burnt and laid waste,
And all Northumberland is so terrified,
That king Eric is uncrowned,
And with his family sent back to disgrace;
The Northerns have negociated for peace with the king,
Their lands are all at his disposal.
Edred has given part to St. Cuthbert;
The whole realm is at his will;
Earls and barons he has so well chastised,
That henceforth the land is strengthened through peace.
He lived ten years, his body was carried,
And lies at Winchester, as he had devised.

Year of our Lord 957.

Edwy, brother of Edred, afterwards took the kingdom,
And is received king of the government.
A madder man in life there was none in the east;
Wherefore the grandees, by common assent,
Have deposed Edwy, and clean expelled him,

Accession of Edgar.

Et sun frere Edgar fu ray del tenement ;[1]
Saint Dunstan estait à la corounement.[2]
Edgar fu bons et sages, de grant entendement,
Rays plus draiturels, ke si lealment
La terre[3] governayt, ne si bonement[4]
Chastiayt[5] les fols, chescun ke mesprent
Soulom sun trespas suffry jugement.
Molt fist graunt honur à Deu omnipotent ;
L'abbeye de Romeneye devoua richement[6]
Des plusurs eglises, des terres ensement,[7]
Et de religiouns dames i myst cent.[8]

Edgar's marriages.

Edgar, pur escheure peché de licheryer,[9]
Par counsayl de sun regne se fet maryer
Of Elflede[10] la Blaunche, fyelle le duk Ordyner.[11]
Saint Eduuard l'engendrait de [cele] sa mulier.[12]
Tost morust Elflede, Edgar va daunayer[13]
Estrilde, fillye Erdegare,[14] esposayt al mouster.
Cele avait ij. fiz del ray Edgar,[15] sun ber ;
Edmoun fu l'aynez, ke gyst al Burge saint Per,
Le disme an de sun age mort le fet passer ;
Elgredus,[16] le pusnez, de Edelfrede est cher.[17]
Edgar ad le regne de Engleterre enter.

---

[1] *de tenement*, B. *fount roy del tenement*, C. D.

[2] *à l'encorounement*, D.

[3] *Sa terre*, B. C.

[4] Of this and the preceding line D. makes one: *Que dreytures guyait le realme bonement.*

[5] For this and the line following D. gives, *Et chastiayt les fols par lay et jugement.*

[6] *douwa richement*, B. D.

[7] *De plusiers eglises, tere e tenement*, B. *De plusurs eglises de tere de tenement*, D.

[8] *plus qe cent*, B. *E de religioun dames i mist cent*, C. D.

[9] *de leccher*, B. C. D.

[10] *Elslede*, D.

[11] *fidle le duk Ormer*, B. *le duk Ordinere*, D. *Ormere*, Robert of Brunne.

[12] *Seint Edward engendra de cele sa mulier*, B. *engendrait de cel sa mulier*, C. D.

[13] *va dauner*, B. C. D.

[14] *fidle Orgare*, B. *feille Edgare resposait*, C. *Ordgare*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "He tok "bittere Estrild, dukes douhter "Orgare."

[15] *du Edgar son*, B.

[16] *Elred*, B. *Eylred*, Robert of Brunne.

[17] *de Estrild est mult cher*, B.

And his brother Edgar was king of the domain;
St. Dunstan was at the coronation.
Edgar was good and wise, of great understanding,
A king more rightful, who so loyally
Governed the land, or with such goodness
Chastised the mad people, whoever did wrong
Suffered judgment according to his trespass.
He did great honour to God Almighty;
He endowed richly the abbey of Romney
With several churches, with lands also,
And placed in it a hundred lady nuns.

Edgar, to avoid the sin of lechery,
By counsel of his kingdom contracted marriage
With Elfleda the White, daughter of duke Ordmer.
He begat on this his wife saint Edward.
Elfleda died soon, Edgar falls in love with
Estrild, daughter of Orgar, and espoused her at the minster.
She had two sons by king Edgar her lord;
Edmund was the eldest, who lies at Peterborough,
In the tenth year of his age death dispatched him;
Ethelred, the youngest, is dear to Estrild.
Edgar has the entire kingdom of England.

His prosperous reign.

A Karlyoun la cyté ses[1] raytels fet maunder,
Kynathe,[2] ray de Escoce, ke vynt de molt bon quer,[3]
Malcolme de Cumberlande rays et justiser,
Hacoun ray des ydles, et Donevaldre fiz Ounere,[4]
Syfrethe, Huwal, Jacob, Juthel,[5] ke vount jorer
Ke fels et lels ly serrount cum fiz est al per.
De ilokes s'en vait[6] après, et fet redrescer
Abbayes et eglyses ke avaynt mester.
Xviij. aunz fu rays kant cessa sun regner;
Sun cors à Glastenbyre fist homme entoumber.

Miracle at his disinterment.

Del cors le rays Edgar à Glastenbyre est dit,
Ke ly abbés Eduuard sus lever[7] le fist,
Après iiij. aunz[8] ke home en terre le mist.
Toumbe novele et bele pur le cors purvyst,
Mès de totes parz molt fu trop petit,
Les jaumbes depescaynt,[9] le saunk pur veirs issist.
Ly abbés envoglayt, Eswald[10] le eveske l'oyst,
Revestuz ad la toumbe, le osment suprist,[11]
En fertre riche et noble devotement l'assist.

---

[1] *A Kerlion s'en va, ses reitels*, B. C. D.

[2] *Kymark*, B. *Kymak*, C. *Kymake*, D. *Kymak*, Robert of Brunne.

[3] *fin quoer*, B.

[4] *Mactum rei des Iles, e Dufnald frez Omer*, B. *Mactum ray des idles et Dovenald fiz Omer*, C. D.

[5] *Siferthe, Hwual, et Jacob, e Jutel*, C. *Inthil*, D. Robert of Brunne gives these names, "Mac-
"cum kyng of the Iles, Dufnald
"fitz Omere, Sifreth and Huwelle,
"Jacob and Juthille." Pierre de Langtoft appears to have taken the names from William of Malmsbury, where they stand as "Kinad king of
"the Scots, Malcolm of the Cumbri-
"ans, Maccus the prince of pirates,
"and all the Welsh kings, whose
"names were Dufnal, Giferth, Hu-
"val, Jacob, Judethil."

[6] *s'en vount*, B. *s'en va*, C.

[7] *sur lever*, B.

[8] *Après vint e quatre anz*, B. *Après iiii.xx. aunz*, C. *Après xx.iiij. taunz*, D.

[9] *Ses jaumbes despessaint*, C. *Ses jaumbes*, D.

[10] *Oswald*, B.C. D. and Robert of Brunne.

[11] *le ossement sus prist*, B. *l'ofement sosprist*, C. *le osement susprist*, D. This account of the opening of Edgar's tomb by abbot Ailward is taken from William of Malmsbury.

To Caerleon the city he summoned his kinglets,
Kenneth, king of Scotland, who came with very good will,
Malcolm king and ruler of Cumberland,
Maccus king of the Isles, and Dufnal son of Omer,
Siferth, Howell, Jacob, Judethil, who take the oath
That they will be faithful and loyal to him as a son is to his father.
Thence he departs afterwards, and causes to be restored
Abbeys and churches which had need.
He was eighteen years king when he ended his reign;
They caused his body to be entombed at Glastonbury.

Of the body of king Edgar at Glastonbury it is said,
That abbot Edward caused it to be raised up,
After they had placed it in the ground twenty-four years.
He provided a new and fair tomb for the body,
But it was in all parts much too small,
They broke the legs, in truth the blood issued out.
The abbot became blind, Oswald the bishop heard of it,
He has covered the tomb again, took up the skeleton,
And placed it devoutly in a rich and noble shrine.

Anno Domini D.CCCC.LXXV.

King Edward.

Après Edgar regnayt Eduuard,[1] sun fiz aynez;
Saint Dunstan le eveske, devaunt les[2] barnez,
Of molz des altres eveskes, en[3] ray l'ad corounez.
Prodome fust en Deu, chevale[re]use[4] assez;
Unkes en Engleterre fust ray taunt amez,
Ne taunt des estraunges par tut honurez.[5]
La lay [fist] ben garder[6] parmy ses regnez,
Et riches et povres guyant[7] tut par equytez.
Elfryde,[8] sa marastre, par grant[9] iniquitez,
Ad genz de male vye[10] ad privément parlez,

Edward murdered at Corfegate.

Le rays Eduuarde ount taunt espyez,[11]
Ke à Corvegate[12] à mort l'unt lyverez,
Pur fere Eylerede, sun frere, aver ses herytez;[13]
Ço fist sa marastre[14] ke est avaunt nomez.
Saint Eduuard governayt iij. aunz ses regnez;
Sun cors à Westmouster en fertre est posez.

Anno Domini D.CCCC.LXX.VIIJ.

King Ethelred.

A Kyngestoun s'en vayt par un dymayn[15] en Maye
Saint Dunstan le eveske, of molt grant noblye,
Le barnage i est de tote le[16] countreye,

---

[1] *Eadward*, B.

[2] *avaunt ses*, C.

[3] *en* omitted in B. C. D.

[4] *chivalrous*, B. D. *chevaler usez assez*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this word rather freely, "and "stalworth knyght als stele."

[5] This line is omitted in D.

[6] *fist bien garder*, B. C.

[7] *guya*, B. *gwyait par*, C. *gwya par equytez*, D.

[8] *Estrild*, B. C. D. and Robert of Brunne.

[9] *grauntz*, C.

[10] *de mal foi*, B. *de male fay*, C. *de male feye*, D.

[11] *Qe le rey Edward tant unt espiez*, B. C. D.

[12] *Corvesgate*, B.C.D. *At Corvesgate*, Robert of Brunne.

[13] This line is omitted in B.

[14] *la marastre*, C.

[15] *se vint par une semaigne*, B. *s'en vynt*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this:

"Unto Kyngeston the first wouke
"of May
"Com Saint Dunstan, opon a
"Sonenday."

[16] *de tutes les*, C. *i est pur corouner Eylrede en reye*, D.

The year of our Lord 975.

After Edgar reigned Edward, his eldest son;
St. Dunstan the bishop, in presence of the barons,
With many other bishops, has crowned him king.
He was a good man in God, chivalrous enough;
Never in England was a king so much beloved,
Nor so greatly by foreigners everywhere honoured.
He caused the law to be well observed through his kingdoms,
And ruled rich and poor altogether according to equity.
Estrild, his stepmother, by great wickedness,
Has privately conversed with people of bad life,
They have watched king Edward so long,
That at Corfegate they have put him to death,
To cause Ethelred, his brother, to have his inheritance;
That did his stepmother, who is before named.
Saint Edward governed his kingdom three years;
His body is placed in a shrine at Westminster.

The year of our Lord 978.

To Kingston there went on a Sunday in May
St. Dunstan the bishop, with great show of the nobles,
The baronage is there of the whole country,

Et al ray Eylrede[1] la coroune ottrye.
Saint Dunstan le eveske ly premist[2] dure vye,
Ke tuz jours de sa vye se medl[e]rayt de l'espeye.[3]
Escotez la parole, et jo la ws dye.[4]

Dunstan's foreboding.

" Eldrede," dist Dunstan, " tun frere fu tué,
" Estrilde ta mere le fist par grant iniquité;
" Tu es par homicide ray jà corouné;
" Coment dais-tu ben guyer digneté?[5]
" Tot says-tu fiz Edgar, ly bon [ray] renomé,[6]
" Et de sa femme espousé, Estrylde, engendré,[7]
" Tu n'as pas draiture[8] à la regalté;
" Kar tu ne es venuz[9] si noun par falseté.
" Pur ço averas-tu guere en tun heryté;[10]
" Après tes jours[11] serra en alyen poesté."
Kant le eveske Dunstan issint avayt parlé,
Et tuz les barouns avaynt pris congé,[12]
Et ly rays Eldrede à Loundres est alé,

The bloody cloud.

Une neule du cel[13] en l'ayr est moustré,
Vermaile, en long en layse taunt fu la largeté[14]
Ke tut Engleterre en fust envyrouné.
De sank ke lors plovait la terre fu taunt rubré,
Ke trestut le pople fu trop effraé.[15]

Invasion by the Danes.

Le secunde an Eylrede, sur ly aryvaynt
Danays ke par poer Suthamtoun wastaynt.
Karlyoun[16] cel an les Norwayes destruaynt,

---

[1] *Eilred*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *promist*, C. D.

[3] *se mellerait d'espye*, C. D. has repeated from the former line, *ly promist dure veye.*

[4] *sa parole et jeo la vous dirray*, C. D.

[5] This line is omitted in D.

[6] *le bon ray corouné*, B. *ly bons roys*, C. D.

[7] This line is omitted in D.

[8] *dreit*, D.

[9] *avenuz*, C. D.

[10] *guere, e tut toun herité*, B.

[11] *ces jours*, B.

[12] This line is omitted in D. Robert of Brunne has singularly mistranslated it, making Dunstan take leave of the barons, instead of the barons taking their leave of the court:

" And taken had his leve of
" barons lesse and more."

[13] *Un nuwe du ciel*, B. *Un newe*, C. *Une neue*, D.

[14] *e laise, tant fu la*, B. D. *et long et layse tant fu largeté*, C.

[15] *affraé*, D.

[16] *Kerleon*, B.

And gives the crown to king Ethelred.
St. Dunstan the bishop promised him a hard life,
That all the days of his life he should be engaged with the sword.
Listen to his words, and I will tell you them.

" Ethelred," said Dunstan, " thy brother was slain,
" Estrild thy mother did it through great iniquity;
" Thou art now crowned king through homicide;
" How canst thou expect to rule worthily the dignity?
" Although thou be the son of Edgar, the king of " good renown,
" And begotten on his espoused wife Estrild,
" Thou hast no right to the royalty;
" For thou hast only arrived at it by falseness.
" Therefore thou shalt have war in thine inheritance;
" After thy days it shall be in the power of " foreigners."
When bishop Dunstan had thus spoken,
And all the barons had taken their leave,
And king Ethelred is gone to London,
A cloud of heaven is shown in the air,
Red, in length and breadth so great was its extent
That all England was enclosed by it.
With blood which then rained the earth was so reddened,
That all the people were struck with terror.

In the second year of Ethelred, against him arrived
Danes who by their power laid waste Southampton.
That year the Norsemen destroyed Caerleon,

Ke genz[1] de Cornewaile des mesuns engettaynt.
La cyté de Loundres les Danays ardaynt.
Eylrede, et les barouns ke of ly estaynt,
Al counte de Herforde[2] tel contek avaynt,
Ke lure herytez defendre ne poaynt.
Dunk morust saint Dunstan, les angles lors chauntaynt.[3]
Justyn et Cuthmound,[4] ke dukes se nomaynt
De la Danescherye, à Gypwyche[5] alaynt,
Arderent la cyté, home et femme tuaynt;
Of le counte de Kent à Medeway encountraynt,[6]
Ly donerent[7] bataylle, la mestrye enportaynt.
Peace bought with money. Les clers et les lays, ke vers le suth menaynt,[8]
Pur pees aver saunz guere, par trowe se lyaynt[9]
X. livres d'or par an à les Danays doraynt.[10]
Justyn et Cuthmond[11] de ço se payaynt;
Lour nefs vers Danemark trop ben rechargaynt.[12]
Justyn et Chuthmound[13] s'en vount vers la mer,
Aryvent en Danemark, enportent[14] gran[t] aver.
Le rays Aylrede quide sa terre en pes guyer.
Divers Danays ly venent of si grant poer
Ke pris unt Northfolk, les viles fount arder,
Saisent Lyndesye, le pople vount rober,
Enportent les bens,[15] et vount guerreyer
Sur Northumberland, et comencent tuer[16]

---

[1] *Les gens*, B. C. D.

[2] *Al count de Hereforde*, D.

[3] *Dount morust s. D., les angels chaunteient*, B. *Dount morust*, C. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[4] *Guthmund*, B. *Gutmund*, C. *Godemound*, Robert of Brunne.

[5] *Gypeswik*, C. *Les ij. duks Daneys à Gipeswyke*, D.

[6] *à Medeweye cuntreient*, B.

[7] *Ly donerount*, C.

[8] *qe vers sieu maneient*, B. *manaint*, C. The line is omitted in D.

[9] *Les Soureys pur la pees par trewe se lyaynt*, D.

[10] *i durraynt*, D.

[11] *Guthmund*, B. D. *Gutmound*, C.

[12] *trop bien chargeient*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[13] *Guthmund*, B. *Goutmond*, C. *Cels ij. duks s'en vount*, D.

[14] *reportent*, C. D.

[15] *lour biens*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[16] *s'en vount gwerreyer*, D.

And they expelled the people of Cornwall from their houses.
The Danes burnt the city of London.
Ethelred, and the barons who were with him,
Had such strife with the earl of Hereford,
That they could not attend to the defence of their inheritance.
At that time died St. Dunstan, the angels sang on the occasion.
Justin and Guthmond, who were named dukes
Of the Danish people, went to Ipswich,
Burnt the city, slew man and woman;
They encountered the earl of Kent at the Medway,
Gave him battle, and gained the mastery.
The clergy and laity who dwelt towards the south,
In order to have peace and not war, bound themselves by treaty
That they would give the Danes ten pounds of gold by the year.
Justin and Guthmond were satisfied with that;
Right well they loaded their ships back to Denmark.

Justin and Guthmond depart towards the sea,
They arrive in Denmark, carry with them great wealth.
King Ethelred expects to rule his land in peace.
Divers Danes come against him with so great power
That they have taken Norfolk, they set fire to the towns,
Seize upon Lindsey, go plundering the people,
Carry off the goods, and proceed to make war
Upon Northumberland, and begin to slay

Northumberland ravaged.

Femmes et enfauns, des bens[1] vount charger
Lur nefs, et repayrent en Danmark arer.[2]

Anlaf and Swayn.

Le rays Eylrede en Wales s'en va[3] pitousement,
Assembler sun host, purver say de gent.
Anlaphe de Norweye, rays de l'orient,
Et Swayn[4] de Danemark, ray molt richement,
Sunt venuz à Loundres, assayllent egrement.
Les cytezains[5] sunt garniz, le pople se defent,[6]
Chacez sunt le rays, s'en fuyent[7] durement.
Suthamptoun assayllent,[8] destruent nettement
Homme et femme et beste, saunz esparnyement.
Eylrede n'ad poer de fere arestement;
De pees les ad pryé, en amur[9] les tent
Xv. mil livres,[10] cyl prenent cel argent,
Revount en lure terres par sigle et par vent.

Ravages in the West.

Partye des Danays trop covertement
Demorent en la terre, et tenent parlement
Coment il purrount[11] destrure la terre de l'occydent.
Wiltoun unt-il pris, Suthamptoun ensement,
Cornewaylle et Wales[12] à lur comaundement,
Le counté de Dorset, et terre et tenement
Unt pris e wasté de Sauverne jekes en Kent.
Le rays Eylrede ben vayt ke dure est cel torment,[13]
Vint et iiij. mil livres [adunk] les present,[14]

---

[1] *de biens*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *Lour nefs chargent des biens vers Danemark arere*, D. The ten lines ending with this appear to have been wanting in the manuscript from which Robert of Brunne translated, as his English version has nothing to represent them.

[3] *s'en va en Gales*, C.

[4] *Suane*, B.

[5] *citayns*, C. D.

[6] *garniz, les if. reis chacent ent*, D.. which omits the next line.

[7] *s'en fuirent*, B.

[8] *asegent*, B. C. D.

[9] *De pees les prie, e amour*, B.

[10] *Cink mil livres*, B. *E v. mille*, C. Robert of Brunne, who perhaps mistakes the meaning of the word *argent* here, translates it "fyve thousand pound of silver," instead of money.

[11] *porrent*, B.

[12] *Guales*, B.

[13] *cel turment*, C. D.

[14] *adunke les prcsent*, B.

Women and children, with their goods they proceed to load
Their ships, and repair back to Denmark.

King Ethelred goes mournfully into Wales,
To assemble his army, provide himself with people.
Anlaf of Norway, king of the east,
And Swayn of Denmark, a king of great estate,
Are come to London, and assail it fiercely.
The citizens are prepared, the people defend themselves,
The kings are driven away, they fly with difficulty,
They attack Southampton, destroy clean
Man, woman, and beast, without sparing.
Ethelred had not power to prevent them;
He asks them for peace, offers them in love
Fifteen thousand pounds, they accept that money,
Return to their country with sail and wind.
Part of the Danes very covertly
Remain in the land, and hold consultation
How they will be able to destroy the land of the west.
They have taken Wilton, Southampton also,
Cornwall and Wales at their command,
The county of Dorset, and land and tenement
Have taken and laid waste from Severn into Kent.
King Ethelred sees well that this visitation is grievous,
He then offers them twenty-four thousand pounds

Pur pees aver sa vye; les Danays s'assent;[1]
Largement est resceu,[2] et cyl s'en ayllent ent.
Ethelred's marriage. Vint et iiij. aunz endurayt[3] la dolur;
Unkes le rays Eylrede pes avayt un jour;
Saint Dunstan ly premist[4] vivre en langour.
Eylrede ad mester de ayde et de soccour.[5]
En Normendye va prendre femme par amour,
La feylle le duk[6] Richard, Emme Blancheflur;
Iij. fiz engendrayent,[7] le noun est du primour
Edmon Hirnesyde,[8] de ky grant valour
Orrez après coment est parlé graunt honur;
Eduuard et Alfrede sunt ly deus minour;[9]
Emma lure mere rayne, Eylred lure pere[10] seygnur.
Massacre of the Danes. Eylrede, par counsayl le duk de Normendye,
Va parmy sa terre, et privément espye
Trestuz les Danays, et les prent et lye,
Les testes fet voler, seygnur et rays se crie,
Issint est Engleterre tut en[11] sa ballye.
Le duk Richard est passé[12] hors de ceste vye;
Le rays Eylrede par taunt ad perdu grant aye.
Return of Swayn. Le ray de Danemark, Swayn, ad grant envye[13]
Pur venger les Danays ke mys sunt à l'espeye,[14]
Aryve en Engleterre of molt grant navye,[15]
Et par ses messagers le rays Eylrede defye.
Le rays Eylre[de], pur veir, ad perdu grant confort
Del duk[16] de Normendye, Richard, ke est mort;
Et ly rays Danays est taunt pussaunt et fort,

---

[1] *ly Danays assent*, C. D., which, of course, is the more correct reading.
[2] *L'argent est resceu*, B.
[3] *endurra*, B. *endurrait*, C.
[4] *promist*, B. C.
[5] *et socour*, C.
[6] *La fidle duk R.*, B. *La feylle duk*, C.
[7] *engendra*, B.
[8] *Edmond Irenside*, B. *Emond Hyrenside*, C,
[9] *meignour*, B.
[10] *pere* omitted in D.
[11] *trestut en sa*, D.
[12] *Richard passe*, B. C. D.
[13] *Le rey Swayn de Danemark vint oue grant navye*, D.
[14] *Daneys, le reys Eylrede deffye*, D.
[15] This and the following line are omitted in D.
[16] *De duk*, B. *Le duk*, C.

To have peace for his life; the Dane agrees;
The money is received, and they take their departure.

Twenty-four years the sorrow lasted;
Never had king Ethelred peace a single day;
Dunstan had foretold him that he would live in suffering.
Ethelred had need of aid and succour.
He goes into Normandy to take a wife through love,
The daughter of duke Richard, Emma the Blanchefleur;
They begat three sons, the name of the first is
Edmund Ironside, of whose great valour
You will hear afterwards how great honour is spoken;
Edward and Alfred are the two younger;
Emma, their mother, queen, Ethelred, their father, king.

Ethelred, by counsel of the duke of Normandy,
Goes through the land, and watches privately
All the Danes, and takes and binds them,
He cuts off their heads, lord and king proclaims himself,
Thus is England entirely in his possession.
Duke Richard has passed out of this life;
King Ethelred thereby has lost great help.
The king of Denmark, Swayn, has great desire
To avenge the Danes who are put to the sword;
He arrives in England with a very great navy,
And by his messengers defies king Ethelred.

King Ethelred in truth has lost great comfort
In the duke of Normandy, Richard, who is dead;
And the Danish king is so powerful and strong,

Supineness of king Ethelred.

Ke tute Engleterre destrut saunz resort.
V. aunz enterement la guere dure[1] à tort;
Le rays Eylrede se mene cum homme ke se dort,[2]
Ayde ne ly veent du suth ne du[3] north;
N'est pas mervaylle si molt se descomfort.
Xxx. mil livres Eylrede à Swayn aport;
Le rays Swayn les prent, à Danemark les port.

Treachery of earl Edric.

Repairez est ly rays Swayn en ses countrez.
Eylrede à sa court Edryke[4] ad maundez,
Traitur plus feluns ne fust en x. regnez;
Le counté de Nicole le rays ly ad donez,
Plus privé du counsail est Edryk demorez.
" Sire," fet-il al rays, "mes resouns[5] escotez;
" De iij. c. nefs et x. averas-tu assez[6]
" Pur salver ta terre de totes enemistez
" De Danays et Norays,[7] ke jà ne averount poestez,
" Entrer en tes terres[8] ne en tes heritez."
Le rays Eylrede comaunde ke tost sayent aprestez;
A Sandwyce sunt les nefs de bone gens guyez.
Kant Edrike[9] le seet, par graunt falsetez
Les fet venir à Loundres, ses lettres sunt passez
Al ray de Norwaye, Anlaphe renomez.
K'il veigne[10] en Engleterre; Anlaphe est entrez,
Et le duk Turkillus, of ses parentez,
La terre de Kent ount pris, et fount lur voluntez.
Les gens, pur pees aver, du lur[11] les ount donez
Iiij. mil livres,[12] et cyl sunt rethornez.

---

[1] *durra*, B.

[2] Instead of this and the two following lines, D. has, *Pur defalt de eyde Eylrede se desconfort.*

[3] *del sieu ne del*, B. *de suth ne de*, C.

[4] *Ederyk*, C.

[5] *ma reson*, B. C.

[6] The translation of Robert of Brunne has: "Do make thre hun-
" dreth schippes opon the sees
" koste."

[7] *e de Norreis*, B. C.

[8] *en ta tere*, B.

[9] *Ederik*, C.

[10] *K'yl venge*, C.

[11] *de lour*, B. D.

[12] Robert of Brunne has misread the sum of money, "to gyf tham
" four hundreth pounds."

That he destroys all England without resource.
Five years entirely the war lasts wrongfully;
King Ethelred behaves like a man who is sleeping,
Aid comes to him neither from south nor from north;
It is no wonder if he becomes very disconsolate.
Ethelred brings thirty thousand pounds to Sweyn;
King Sweyn takes them, and carries them to Denmark.

King Sweyn is returned to his countries.
Ethelred has sent for Edric to his court,
There was no more infamous traitor in ten kingdoms;
The king has given him the earldom of Lincoln.
Edric has remained the most confidential of the council.
" Sir," said he to the king, "listen to my reasons;
" With three hundred and ten ships you will have
" enough
" To protect the land from all hostilities,
" Of Danes or Norsemen, that henceforth they will
" not have power
" To enter into thy lands or into thy heritages."
King Ethelred commands that they be immediately made ready;
At Sandwich the ships are placed under the guidance of able people.
When Edric knew it, by great falseness
He causes them to come to London, his letters have passed
To the king of Norway, the renowned Anlaf,
That he come to England; Anlaf is entered,
And the duke Turkil, with his kinsmen,
They have taken the land of Kent, and do their will.
The people, to have peace, have given them of their goods
Four thousand pounds, and these have returned.

Mès l'an suaunt après sunt cil[1] aryvez
Amount de Grymesby, à Nicole sunt alez,
Wastent et destruent kant ke ert[2] trovez.
Treachery of earl Edric. Le false counte Edryke al ray ad taunt parlez,
Ke la pees est fete, et Eylrede engynez.
XI. et viij. mil livres, been countez,[3]
Par le fals Edryke ount-il enportez.
Kant le rays Eylrede peez aver quidait,
Le ray Suayn de Danes à Sandwyce aryvait;
Coe fist le counte Edryk par molt grant desçayt.
De Sandwyce dekes à[4] Humbre le pople enclynayt
A Swayn et à sun fiz ke Kanute[5] appellayt.
Uthrede,[6] counte du north, à Gaynesburge tut drayt
Invasion of Canute and Sweyn. Al ray de Danemarche fealté fesait;
Del north et du suth la seygnurye avait.
A sun fiz Kanute[7] grant hoste assignayt;
Kanute devers le north, Suayn al suth s'en vayt,
Se veent[8] vers Oxenforthe, où crye[r][9] fesayt
A tuz ke ly servirent, ke nul n'esparnyait,[10]
Homme ne femme, [ne] enfaunt,[11] ke à mort ne[12] liverayt.
Chastels abatyst, eglises ardayt;
Vyles et cytez destrut et wastayt.[13]
Kant avayt[14] à Wyncestre resceu k'yl volayt[15]
Des tuz les[16] cytayns, à Loundres s'en alayt;

---

[1] *sunt-il*, B.

[2] *quanq'est trovez*, B.

[3] *sunt-il enportez*, D., which omits the following line. Robert of Brunne says, "Fourti thousand "pounde he did tham take."

[4] *jesqe à*, B.

[5] *qe Knout*, B. This is the reading of the name which Robert of Brunne took in translating. The other form might be read in the MSS. either *Kanute* or *Kaunte*, for it is quite impossible in medieval MSS. to distinguish between *n* and *u*, but the rhythm in one or two instances seems to add to the more than probability that it should be read *Kanute*.

[6] *Uctred*, B. *Huctrede*, D.

[7] *Knout*, B. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[8] *Pus se veent*, D.

[9] *crier*, B. *creer*, C. *cryer*, D.

[10] *n'esparnireit*, B.

[11] *Home, femme, enfaunt*, D.

[12] *ne* omitted in C.

[13] This line is omitted in D.

[14] *Kaunt out à*, D.

[15] *qe volayt*, C. D.

[16] *De touz les*, B. D.

But the year next following these have arrived
Above Grimsby, they are gone to Lincoln,
And waste and destroy all that was found.
The false earl Edric has talked so much to the king,
That peace is made, and Ethelred beguiled.
Forty-eight thousand pounds, well counted,
They have carried away through the false Edric.

When king Ethelred expected to have peace,
King Sweyn of the Danes arrived at Sandwich;
That earl Edric contrived with very great deceit.
From Sandwich to Humber the people inclined
To Sweyn and to his son, who was called Canute.
Uctred, earl of the north, immediately at Gainsborough
Did fealty to the king of Denmark;
He had the lordship of the north and of the south.
He gave a great army to his son Canute;
Canute goes towards the north, Sweyn towards the south.
He goes towards Oxford, where he makes proclamation
To all who served him, that they should spare nobody,
Man, woman, or child, but put them to death.
He beat down castles, burnt churches;
Destroyed and laid waste towns and cities.
When he had at Winchester received what he would
From all the citizens, he proceeded to London;

The Danes attack London.

En Tamyse pur veir de sun hoste nayayt[1]
Vynt et iiij. mil ; kant ly Loundrays le vayt,
Tote la novele al rays Eylrede envayt.
Le rays en la cyté cel houre demorayt ;
Un counte ke fu Danays, Turkille, of ly estayt.
Le ray Suayn al murs ses assalz donayt ;
Eylrede les defent, Turkille ly aydayt.
Le ray Suayn s'en partist, et Loundres lessayt.
Swayn est rethornez par graunt felonye,[2]
Walingforde ad pris, et fet sa mestrye ;
Après s'en alt à Ba,[3] la vile ad saysye.
Athelmare[4] ly veent, counte de Devenrye,[5]
Al ray de Danemark par fealté se lye,
De Welles dekes en Loundres[6] n'ad nul ke countredye,
Hostage[7] ad de Loundres, desor chescun crye.[8]
Suayn vers Danemark retorne of sa navye,
Rays de Engleterre et de la seygnurye.[9]

King Ethelred retires into Normandy.

Eylrede est taunt raynt et taunt saunz aver,[10]
Sa femme et ses ij. fiz[11] envayt outre mer,
Eduuard et Alfrede, à lur uncle Rycher,
Duk de Normendy, pur là sojorner.

---

[1] *naiast*, C. Robert of Brunne's translation is here very paraphrastic and not very clear. For the sake of rhyme, Robert has made a ludicrous remark on the drowning of the Danes, to whose *bones* he gives rather a singular destination:

"Four and tuenti thousand in
" Temse alle at ones
" Wer dronkled of Danes, the
" develle haf ther bones."

[2] *qe par felonie*, B. *se returne par*, C.

[3] *s'en vait à Baa*, C. Robert of Brunne seems to have misread the rest of the line, or had a different reading, when he translates it, "an "sette the toun on fire."

[4] *Achelmare*, B. C. D., and Robert of Brunne.

[5] *de Devenerie*, B. D. *Devenye*, C. *Devenschire*, Robert of Brunne.

[6] *jesq'à Loundres*, B., which omits the concluding words of the line: *jekes à Loundres*, C. D.

[7] *Ostages*, B.

[8] *restourne oue sa navye*, D., which omits the next line.

[9] *Reis de Engleterre chescun ly crye*, D.

[10] *avoer*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this line, "Eilred is so "reymed of his tresorie."

[11] *e ses enfaunz*, B.

In the Thames in truth of his host were drowned
Twenty-four thousand; when the Londoner sees it,
He sends the whole news to king Ethelred.
The king was at that time dwelling in the city;
An earl who was Danish, named Turkil, was with him.
King Sweyn gave his assaults to the walls;
Ethelred defends them, and Turkil assisted him.
King Sweyn went away, and left London.

Sweyn is returned with great spite,
Has taken Wallingford and done his will with it;
Afterwards proceeds to Bath, has seized the town.
Athelmar, earl of Devonshire, comes to him,
Binds himself by fealty to the king of Denmark,
There is no man from Wells to London who resists him.
He has hostages from London, every one proclaims him king.
Sweyn returns towards Denmark with his navy,
King of England and of the lordship.

Ethelred is so bereaved and so without treasure,
He sends away his wife and his two sons beyond sea,
Edward and Alfred, to their uncle Richer,
Duke of Normandy, to sojourn there.

Lur duter fu Anlaphe, eveske Loundrer.[1]
Le rays Eylrede, après passé fust[2] le yver,
S'en vayt en Normendye à sa mulyer.
Kant le duk l'oyt dire Eylrede[3] dust passer,
Of trè[s] grant noblye ly vayt[4] encountrer;
Le duk ly rescayt[5] de molt gentil quer,
Sa duché ly comaunde, et tut sun poer.

Anno Domini M°.XIIIJ°.

Sweyn returns.

Le ray Swayn reveent,[6] à sa confusioun,[7]
E mette tel talliage sur la regioun,
Ke porter ne le put counte[8] ne baroun.
Trybute demaunde des terres[9] saint Emoun,
Le cors sainte [et] eglyse[10] manace par arsoun,
Si tost n'ayt kant ke il volt,[11] il fra destruccioun.
Vers Gaynesburge s'en va fere convocacioun;[12]
De saint Emoun ilokes dist en sun sermoun
Ke tayllage averayt de sa possessioun.
Al vespre[13] cum alait dedure enviroun,
His death. Saint Emoun venir vayt cruel cum lyoun,
Of bon launce en poyn portaunt l'escuchoun;
Nul ly vait[14] fors ly, ore cry ly feloun,
" Chuvalers, aydez, saint Emoun par noun
" Me veent cy[15] tuer," plus des moz[16] ne soun.

---

[1] *Lour dustre fust Alphame, evesqe e Loundrer*, B. *Lour dustre fust Alphame evesqe Londrer*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this,—

" The bisshop of Londone, he
" hight sir Alphanie,
" Led Edward and Alfride, and
" Emme that was ladie."

[2] *fist*, B. *après vint oue sa mulier*, D., which omits the next line.

[3] *le duk oy dire qe Eilred*, B. *le duk oyst*, C. *le duk oyt dire*, D.

[4] *ly vint*, D.

[5] *resceut*, B.

[6] *revint*, B.

[7] *à la confusioun*, C.

[8] *ne poet counte*, C.

[9] *de terres*, C.

[10] *Le corps e l'eglise*, B. *Le corps saynt et l'eglise*, C. D.

[11] *kaunqe voet*, D.

[12] *pur fer destruccioun*, C.

[13] Robert of Brunne's translation is curiously paraphrastic here.

[14] *Nul n'i veit*, B.

[15] *Me voet ci tuer*, B.

[16] *plus motz*, B. *plus de moz*, C.

Their guide was Anlaf, the London bishop.
King Ethelred, after the winter was passed,
Goes into Normandy to his wife.
When the duke heard say that Ethelred was to cross the sea,
He goes to meet him with very great nobility;
The duke receives him with very noble heart,
Offers his duchy to him, and all his power.

The year of our Lord 1014.

King Sweyn returns, to his confusion,
And puts such a tax on the kingdom,
That neither earl nor baron can support it.
He demands tribute of the lands of St. Edmund,
Threatens the holy body and the church with burning,
If he has not immediately what he demands, he will make destruction.
Towards Gainsborough he proceeds to make a convocation;
There he said in his discourse that of St. Edmund
He would have talliage of his possessions.
In the evening as he went about for recreation
He saw St. Edmund coming fierce like a lion,
With a good spear in fist carrying his shield;
Nobody sees him but himself, now the wretch cries,
" Knights, aid, he who is named St. Edmund
" Is coming to kill me here;" he uttered no more words.

De l'espeye ly ceynt fu feruz en sun,[1]
Ke mort cheet à terre, de ly n'ad garysoun,
Fors l'arder al diable en dampnacioun.

Death of Sweyn and accession of Canute.

Le rays Suayn est mort, cum avaunt est dit,
E Kanute[2] sun fiz des Danays[3] est elit
Ray sur Danemarche, de kanke Suayn[4] conquist,
Demaunde seygnurye, Engleterre reprist,
Et la tynt[5] en garde, et tailliage i myst.
Le pople de la terre messagers tramyst
A lur rays Eylrede, à prier[6] k'il venist
Sa terre governer, sicom[7] avaunt fist.
La seygnurye Kanute la terre[8] ad countredit.

Edmund Ironside.

Eylrede sun fiz Edward par lettre maundayt,[9]
Et de la volunté molt les mercyait,
Et dist ke volunters en Engleterre vendrayt,
Si affyer se put k'yl ne ust[10] descayt.
La commune tote par lettre se liayt,
Ke chascun de la terre fay ly[11] porterayt,
E ke jammès[12] Danays sur els regnerayt.
Ly rays Eylrede revent,[13] et la terre rescayt.
Le pople tut pur voyr à ly declinayt,[14]
For[s] cels de Lyndeseye, à quels kant il maundayt,
Et priaunt[15] de lur ayde, veez[16] ly estayt.
Et ly rays Eylrede sun venir espyayt,
Kanute de Danemarke par poer rechacayt,
Et Lyndeseye après trestut destruayt;
Lur fausine fu cassé,[17] le ray ne fist fors drayt.

---

[1] *le seint fu feru li bricon*, B. *le saynt*, C. *le seint fu feruz en soun*, D.
[2] *Knout*, B., and so always.
[3] *de Daneis*, B. C. D.
[4] *de quant qe Swayn c.*, C.
[5] *tient*, B.
[6] *Eylred prier*, C. *al prier*, D.
[7] *governer cum*, C.
[8] *La seygnory e la tere*, D.
[9] *remaundeit*, B. D.
[10] *Si affier se puist q'il n'eust d.*, B.
[11] *fei li*, B.
[12] *ke jamès*, C.
[13] *se vint*, B.
[14] *enclineit*, B.
[15] *En priant*, B.
[16] *de veez*, B.
[17] *fu la cause*, B.

With the saint's sword he was struck in the body,
That he falls to the ground, there is no cure for him,
Except to burn with the devil in damnation.

King Sweyn is dead, as is aforesaid,
And Canute his son is chosen by the Danes
King over Denmark and all that Sweyn conquered,
He demands lordship, retook England,
And held it in keeping, and levied tax on it.
The people of the land dispatched messengers
To their king Ethelred, to pray him that he would come
To govern his land, as he did before.
The land has resisted Canute's rule.

Ethelred sent his son Edward with a letter,
And thanked them much for their good will,
And said that he would willingly come into England,
If he could trust that there would be no deceit.
The whole commons by letter bound themselves,
That each one of the land would bear him faith,
And that never Dane should reign over them.
King Ethelred returns, and receives the land.
All the people in truth turned to him,
Except those of Lindsey, to whom when he sent,
To ask for their aid, it was refused him.
And king Ethelred watched his coming,
Drove away Canute of Denmark by force,
And afterwards destroyed all Lindsey;
Their falseness was the cause, the king only did what was right.

Edric's treachery.

Quant le rays Edryke[1] quidayt pes aver,
Fist le counte Edryke privément tuer
Deus molz gentilz hommes, Sygeferd et Morber,[2]
Pur covaytye de terre ke fust à lour pere;[3]
La feme Sygeferd, Aldgithe oy nomer,[4]
Prist à Mamecestre,[5] et la fist mener.[6]
Emoun Hirenside[7] oyst de ço parler,
[La dame va seiser, et va à[8] mouster,][9]
Si la prent à femme, saunz congé demaunder
Du rays Eylrede sun pere, et puys vayt[10] engetter
Le fals counte Edryke[11] de terre et de maner
K'il avayt de ij. freres[12] ke avaunt oy nomer.
Le ray Eylrede cheet en graunt maladye,
Et gist en Evesham[13] en sa demeyne abbye.

Nobleness of Edmund Ironside.

Emoun sun fiz aynez requert chuvalerye,
De Wales jekes à Dover le pople à ly se lye;
Et le counte Edrike tret à sa partye
Chuvalers et sergauns tuz de Lyndesye,
Pur tuer Emoun par sa tricherye.
Emoun Hyrenside del tresun[14] est garnye,
Et le counte Edryke par messager defye.
Edryke le ray Kanute par sa lettre prie,
Ke hors de Danemarke veent of sa navye;
Aryve en Engleterre à l'Epiphanye,[15]
La terre va wastaunt, les genz sunt honye,

---

[1] *le reis Eylrede*, D.

[2] *Dous veuz gentis homes, Sigefred et Morker*, B. *Morker*, C. D. Robert of Brunne's translation has:
" Tuo old gentille men Edrik did
" forfare,
" The ton hight Sigiferd, the
" tother sir Morgare."

[3] *poer*, B.

[4] *l'oi nomer*, B. *Aldife*, in the translation of Robert of Brunne.

[5] *Mauncestre*, D. *Malmcestre*, Robert of Brunne.

[6] *e là le fist mener*, B.

[7] *Edmon Irenside*, B.

[8] *et mene al*, C. *va saisire, et mene al*, D.

[9] This line, omitted in A., is supplied from B. C. D.

[10] *voet*, C.

[11] *Errik*, C.

[12] *des ij. freres*, D.

[13] *à Evesham*, B. C. D.

[14] *de treson*, C. D.

[15] In the translation of Robert of Brunne this line is rendered,
" Aryved that he ware of ȝole the
" twelft day."

When king Ethelred expected to have peace,
Earl Edric caused privately to be slain
Two very noble men, Sigfrid and Morcar,
For covetousness of the land which belonged to their father;
Sigfrid's wife, I heard her named Aldgith,
He took at Manchester, and caused her to be led away.
Edmund Ironside heard speak of that,
He goes and seizes the lady, goes to a minster,
And takes her to wife, without asking leave
Of king Ethelred his father, and then goes and expels
The false earl Edric from land and from manor
Which he had of the two brothers whom you heard named before.

King Ethelred falls into a great malady,
He lies at Evesham in his own abbey,
Edmund his eldest son calls together the knights,
From Wales to Dover the people bind themselves to him;
And the earl Edric draws to his party
All the knights and soldiers of Lindsey,
To kill Edmund by his treachery.
Edmund Ironside is warned of the treason,
And by a messenger defies earl Edric.
Edric by his letter prays king Canute,
That he come from Denmark with his navy;
He arrives in England at the Epiphany,
Goes ravaging the land, the people are put to shame,

Le counté de Warwyk mys est à l'espeye.[1]
Pur veir le rays Aylrede à Loundres fu garnye,[2]
Emoun Hyrenside là maunde par espye,
K'yl ly face aver de Loundres[3] en aye:
Les Loundrays sunt venuz en sa compaynye,
Wastent et destruent Laycestre par mestrye.
Mès le counte Edryke ad taunt fet par voydye,[4]
Ke Emoun à Kanute[5] aprocher ne ose mye.
Kanute et [le] counte[6] Edryke pris ount par tresoun
Bukyngam et Bedeforde, la vile[7] de Huntingdon,
Nicole, et[8] Nottingham, la thour de Northauntoun;
Pus vount de Danekastre jekes en Alvertoun.[9]
Northumberland est tut[10] en subjeccioun.
Le bon counte Uthrede[11] est alez of Emoun
Death of Ethelred. A Loundres al ray Eylrede, et Edryke le felun
Ad saysy ses terres, et manere[12] et mesun.
Le rays Aylrede à Loundres gist[13] saunz garisun,
Après ses graunt travals pur sa regioun.
Enterrez est à Loundres of grant devocioun;
Trent et viij. aunz regnayt en payne et passioun.

Anno Domini M°.XVJ°.

Canute elected king. Après la mort Eylrede, tost sunt assemblez
Tote la clergye, et totes[14] ly barnez,
En Suthamptoun[15] tut drayt ensemble sunt alez;
Kanute de Danemark en rays ount-il levez.[16]

---

[1] Robert of Brunne seems to have mistaken this in translating, "A gode erle of Warwik was done "to the suerd." It was the county, and not the earl, which was put to the sword.

[2] *garrye*, D.

[3] *des Loundreis*, B.

[4] *ad tant par voidie Fet qe Edmon Knout approcher n'ose mie*, B.

[5] *Ke Emounde Kanute*, D.

[6] *et le count*, D.

[7] *la vice*, B.

[8] *et* omitted in B.

[9] *tant qe à Alverton*, B. The line is omitted in C.

[10] *tote est*, B.

[11] *Li bon Uctred*, B. *Huctrede*, C. D.

[12] *e maners*, B. C. D.

[13] *gist à Loundre*, C.

[14] *e touz*, B. C. D.

[15] *A Suthamptoun*, C. D.

[16] *unt levez*, B. D.

The county of Warwick is put to the sword.
In truth king Ethelred was warned at London,
Edmund Ironside sends there by a spy,
That he should cause him to have assistance from London:
The Londoners are come in his company,
They lay waste and destroy Leicester by mastery.
But earl Edric has done so much by his craft,
That Edmund dare not approach Canute.

Canute and earl Edric have taken by treason
Buckingham and Bedford, the town of Huntingdon,
Lincoln, and Nottingham, the tower of Northampton
Then go from Doncaster as far as Alverton.
Northumberland is all in subjection.
The good earl Uctred is gone with Edmund
To London to king Ethelred; and Edric the wretch
Has seized his lands, and manor and house.
King Ethelred lies at London without cure,
After his great labours for his kingdom.
He is buried at London with great devotion;
Thirty-eight years he reigned in pain and suffering.

The year of our Lord 1016.

After the death of Ethelred, immediately are assembled
All the clergy, and all the barons,
They are gone all together straight to Southampton;
They have raised Canute of Denmark to be king.

Les bons citayns[1] de Loundres de ço sunt irez,
Emoun Hyrenside ount-il corounez.
Les barouns du north de ço sunt molt lez,
Et venent à ly, et ly fount fealtez.
Kant Kanute le seet, sun host est aprestez;
Chescun court sur altre cum genz defyez.
Dedenz ij. aunz après s'en sunt[2] entredonez
En vj. mortels bataylles,[3] et molz de genz tuez
Death of Edmund Ironside. D'amparz saunz doute, al darayn[4] sunt acordez
Pur partir en deus les terres et les fez.
Emoun de Hyrensyde[5] est rays de la maytez.[6]
Il ne regna fors ij. aunz[7] en ses regaltez,
Pur veir à Glastinburge est-il[8] entoumbez.

Anno Domini millesimo XVIIJ.

Kant Deus avait fet sun comaundement
De Emoun Hyrenside, Kanute verrayment
A la cyté de Loundres vynt molt rychement,
Of tut sun barnage[9] tynt sun parlement,
Et fist une demaunde molt covertement,
Si ly rays Emoun à lur acordement
Canute makes himself sole king. Salvayt à ses freres terre ou tenement.
Tuz ount respounduz[10] ke nul ne fu present,
Où ounkes parlés fust de cel dalyement;[11]
Pur quai la commune trestut se assent
Ke Kanute sayt rays, et governement
Sayt à ly de tut ke al rays appent.[12]
De la terre en quatre ad fet departement,
Et ad su hoes retent tut vers le occident.[13]

---

[1] *Les citesains*, B.
[2] *se sunt*, B. C.
[3] *En si batailles mortelz*, B.
[4] *De ambe partz sunt douté, à dreyn sunt*, D.
[5] *Edmon Irenside*, B. *Emound Hirenside*, C.
[6] *de maytez*, C. D.
[7] *mès dous anz*, B.
[8] *gist-il*, B.
[9] *son barné*, B.
[10] *respoundye*, D.
[11] *de tiel daillement*, B. *de tel daliement*, C. D.
[12] *qe al reaume apent*, B. D.
[13] *A son oes retient tut vers l'occident*, B. C. D.

The good citizens of London are irritated at this,
They have crowned Edmund Ironside.
The barons of the north are very glad of this,
And come to him, and perform their fealties to him.
When Canute knows it, his army is made ready;
Each runs upon the other like men defied.
Within two years after they have fought together
In six mortal battles, and many people slain
On both sides without doubt, at length they are accorded
To part in two the lands and the fees.
Edmund Ironside is king of one half.
He reigned but two years in his royalties,
In truth he is entombed at Glastonbury.

The year of our Lord 1018.

When God had done his will
On Edmund Ironside, Canute truly
Came with very rich array to the city of London,
Held his parliament with all his baronage,
And put a question very covertly,
Whether king Edmund at their accord
Reserved to his brothers land or domain.
All have replied that no one was present
Where there was ever speech of such an arrangement;
Wherefore all the commons agree
That Canute shall be king, and that the government
He shall have of all that appertains to the king.
He has made a division of the land into four,
And retains to his use all towards the west.

Al duke Edryke le fals Merce enterement;[1]
A Turkyl le counte Estaungle seurement;[2]
Et le counte Edryk[3] Northumberland enprent.
Pees est parmy le regne affermé seurement.[4]
Kanute[5] de rechef les homages prist;
Et le duk Edryke la falsine purvyst,
Ke le ray[6] Kanute le fiz Emoun occyst,
Et Emma lay rayne Kanute à femme prist,
Ke fu la femme Eylrede, le faus Edryk le fist.

Queen Emma accuses Edric.

Kanute un jour après près de sa femme sist,[7]
Ke du fals counte Edryke sun seygnur garnist;
Escotez ore coment la rayne ly dist.
" Sire, le counte Edryke ses deus seygnurs trayst,[8]
" Et si fra-il ws, kar il est taunt parfist[9]
" En fraude et tricherye,[10] ke unkes homme servist
" Ke hounte ne ly faist, u trop[11] grant despit."
Le ray Kanutus vers Loundres[12] al matyn issist,[13]
Ses Noelez i tynt, le counte Edryke susprist;[14]
Attaynt fu de tresun ke Kanute sur ly myst.

Death of Edric.

En cel[15] halte feste tut drayt le iiij. jour,
Fu le cors Edryke pendu sur la thour.
Lors dist la rayne, " Edryke, le gylour,
" Ne ad pas le jugement ke appent à traytour;
" Traynez serrayt de drayt." " Dame," dist sun seygnur,
" Sun cors i pendera en fraid et en chalur,
" A tut sun lynage en graunt[16] deshonur."

---

[1] Robert of Brunne appears to have translated from a text rather different from any of our MSS.:
" Fals Edrik gaf he Lyndeseie of
" Lyncolne the scheld."

[2] This line is omitted in C.

[3] *Eyrike*, D. *Uctred*, Robert of Brunne. Florence of Worcester calls him *Eric*.

[4] *affermé par serment*, B. D. *parmy la terre*, C.

[5] *Knout*, B.

[6] *Et le rey*, D.

[7] *Knout un jour après prodfame*, B.

[8] *trahist*, C. D.

[9] *parfit*, B.

[10] *En fraude de tricherie*, C.

[11] *e trop*, B.

[12] *Loundre*, C.

[13] *assist*, D.

[14] *suthprist*, B.

[15] *De cel*, C. D.

[16] *à graunt*, C. D.

To the false duke Edric the whole of Mercia;
East Anglia assuredly to the earl Thurkill;
And earl Edric received Northumberland.
Peace is surely established through the kingdom.

Canute again took the homages;
And duke Edric plotted the crime,
That king Canute slew the son of Edmund,
And Canute took queen Emma to wife,
Who was the wife of Ethelred, the false Edric did it.
One day afterwards Canute was sitting beside his wife,
Who was warning her husband against the false earl Edric;
Listen now how the queen said it to him.
" Sire, earl Edric betrayed his two lords,
" And so he will do you, for he is so perfected
" In fraud and treachery, that he never served any " one
" But he brought disgrace upon him, or very great " vexation."
King Canute went forth to London in the morning,
He held his Christmas there, and placed earl Edric under arrest;
He was attainted of treason with which Canute charged him.

Straight on the fourth day of that high festival,
The body of Edric was hanged on the tower.
Then said the queen, " Edric, the deceiver,
" Has not the judgment which belongs to a traitor,
" He ought by right to be drawn." " Lady," said her lord,
" His body shall hang there in cold and heat,
" To the great dishonour of all his lineage."

Canute's children.

Kanute de sun cors iij. fiz engendrayt;
De sa primere femme Suane aynez estayt;
De Emme, la secounde, Hardeknout avayt;
Haralde avayt de Baste,[1] ke durement amayt.
Olaphe, en Norwaye ke[2] cel houre regnayt,
Si estraungement vers Kanute se portayt,
Ke le ray Kanute del regne[3] ly chasçayt.
Des Norwayes et Danays,[4] des Englays tut drayt,
Et de cels iij. realmes, seygnur se clamayt.
Malcol[me][5] ray d'Escoce cel tens devyayt;
Makethad,[6] sun f[r]ere, après regner dayt,[7]
Kanute de tut Escoce sun homage rescayt.
Après le graunt travayl ke Kanute endurayt,
Ses fiz de ses terres avauncer volayt;
Sir Swane sur Norwaye [ray] regner[8] fesayt,
Hardeknoute[9] en Danemark, à Harald assignayt
Le regne de Engleterre, où après regnayt.

Death of Canute.

Xvij.[10] aunz sun regne Kanute governayt;
Sun cors à Wyncestre entoumbé gyst purtrayt.[11]

Anno Domini millesimo XXX[VJ].[12]

Accession of king Harold.

Harald fu graunt et fort et[13] curtays et vayllaunt,
De tut Engleterre se fet mayntenaunt
Et seygnurs et rays[14] coroune emportaunt.
Hardeknout, sun frere, se paye pas de taunt;[15]
Assemble les Danays,[16] cum cyl ke fu pussaunt,

---

[1] *Vaste*, C.
[2] *de*, A. *qe*, C. D.
[3] *de regne*, B. C. *du regne*, D.
[4] *De Norways à Danays*, C.
[5] *Malcolme*, B. C. D.
[6] *Mathecade*, B. *Macherad*, C. *Machecade*, D. *Mathithade*, Robert of Brunne.
[7] *regner devoyt*, B. *devait*, C. D.
[8] *rey regner*, B. C.
[9] *Hardknut, son frere, en*, C.
[10] *X. et vii. aunz*, C. *Dys et vij. aunz*, D.
[11] *git pur dreit*, B. *en tumbe*, C.
[12] *tricesimo vj°.*, B. *xxxvi°.*, C. *xxx°vj°.*, D.
[13] *et* omitted in B. C.
[14] *Seignur e rey*, B. *Et seygnour et reis*, D.
[15] *se paie pas tant*, B.
[16] *se Daneis*, B. *ses Danays*, C. D.

Canute begat three sons of his body;
By his first wife, Sweyn was the eldest;
By Emma, the second, he had Hardeknut;
He had Harold by Basta, whom he loved dearly.
Olaph, who at this time reigned in Norway,
Behaved himself so hostilely towards Canute,
That king Canute expelled him from his kingdom.
Of the Norwegians and the Danes, of the English directly,
And of these three kingdoms, he proclaimed himself lord.
Malcolm king of Scotland died at this time;
Macbeth, his brother, is to reign after him,
Canute receives his homage for all Scotland.
After the great labour which Canute endured,
He wished to promote his sons with his lands;
He caused sir Sweyn to reign over Norway,
Hardeknut in Denmark, to Harold he assigned
The kingdom of England, where he afterwards reigned.
Seventeen years Canute ruled his kingdom;
His body lies in a tomb under an effigy at Winchester.

The year of our Lord 1036.

Harold was big and strong and courteous and valiant,
Of all England he makes himself now
Both lord and king carrying crown.
Hardeknut, his brother, is not satisfied with all this;
He assembles his Danes. as one who was powerful,

Et vent en Engleterre of pople suffisaunt,
Et maunde al rays Harald ke la lay[1] ne chaunte
Ke bastard enporte[2] regioun saunz haunte,
Ou saunz coup d'espeye gaynez sur tyraunt.
Pur quai si la terre voylle par pees fesaunt
Rendre saunz bataylle, la pes serrayt seaunt;
[Qar kontek entre eaus serreit desavenaunt.][3]
Et parler[4] de l'amur Harald un jour ly graunt.

England divided between Harold and Hardeknut.

Desuz[5] Suthamptoun jà sunt assemblez,
Harald et Hardeknot de l'amur unt parlez;
Pur ço ke freres estayent sunt plus tost accordez.
La terre entre les deus est pronunciez;[6]
La mayté vers le north teent Harald pur regnez,
Hardeknoute duk [du sieu] a les regaltez.[7]
Le duk de Normendye, ke Robert fu nomez,[8]
Morust en cel contemple,[9] e sun fiz clamez,
William[10] le Bastard, resceust les herytez.
Le[s] fiz[11] le ray Eylrede, ke furent demorez,
Alfrede et Eduuard, en Normendye[12] graunt pez,
En Engleterre venent of lur parentez
Pur parler of lur mere, et ly ount[13] trovez
Tut drayt à Wyncestre, et là sunt herbegez.[14]
Alfrede al ray[15] Harald vers Lundres est alez;
Godwyn, counte de Kent, à ly est encountrez,
Par force est-il pris, et enprisounez;
Des parenz k'il avayt of ly amenez,
Avoglez sunt les uns, les autres decolez.

---

[1] *la ray*, C.

[2] *ne porte*, C.

[3] This line is omitted in A. and D., but is supplied from B.

[4] *A parler*, B.

[5] *Desur*, C. Robert of Brunne translates it, "under Southamptone."

[6] *entre eaus dous unt-il porcionez*, B. *porciunez*, C. *porcionez*, D. Robert of Brunne translates: "The "barons portiond the lond even "tham bituene."

[7] *Hardknoutus de sieu ad la regaltez*, B. *Hardknut de south*, C. *Hardeknoute du southe*, D.

[8] *est nomez*, B.

[9] *contemplez*, B.

[10] *Willam*, D.

[11] *Les fitz*, B. C. D., which is evidently the correct reading.

[12] *en Norweie*, B.

[13] *et la ount*, D.

[14] *fount herbergez*, C.

[15] *à ray*, C.

And came to England, with people enough,
And sends word to king Harold, that the law does not allow
That a bastard obtain a kingdom without a shaft,
Or without a stroke of the sword gained upon a tyrant.
Wherefore if he will by peace-making the land
Give up without battle, the peace should be durable;
For strife between them would be unseemly.
And Harold grants him a day to talk of love.

Now they have met below Southampton,
Harold and Hardeknut have talked of love;
They are the sooner agreed because they were brothers.
The land is shared between the two;
Harold holds the half towards the north for his kingdom,
Duke Hardeknut has the royalties of the south.
The duke of Normandy, who was called Robert,
Died at that time, and his son proclaimed,
William the Bastard, received the inheritance.
The sons of king Ethelred, who had dwelt,
Alfred and Edward, in Normandy a long while,
Come into England with their kinsmen,
To converse with their mother, and have found her
Straight at Winchester, and there they are lodged.
Alfred has gone on his way to London to king Harold;
Godwin, earl of Kent, has met him,
By force he is taken, and imprisoned;
Of the kinsmen whom he had brought with him,
Some are blinded, the others beheaded.

Vj. c. à Gildeforde ad Godwyn tuez.
Murder of prince Alfred. A l'abbey de Helyngin[1] est Alfrede lyez,
Devaunt le counte Godwyn les oez[2] ly sunt[3] crevez,
Ne vesquy fors iij. jours, à Deu est comaundez.
Eduuard, sun frere, l'oyt dire, sa mere l'ad consaylez,
Arere en Normendye la mer est-il passez,[4]
Ad William [le] Bastard[5] la novele ad countez;
Edward's promise to duke William. Fiz [fu] de sun[6] uncle, Eduuard l'ad priez
De ayde et de counsayl, si ly ad jorez,
Et par bon escryt of [sun] sel[7] confermez,
Ke si il pust[8] de Engleterre conquere les regaltez,
William serrayt [sun] hair des terres et des fez.[9]
Tost[10] se acord le duk, et fet ses voluntez.[11]
Le ray Hardeknout demort of sun menage
A Bryghe en Danemark à sun herytage;
Harald en Engleterre se lye à sun[12] barnage.
Emme, sa marastres, ad chacé par outrage,
Al counte Baldewyn, ke fu de sun lynage,
Cil de tote Flaundres avayt le seygnurage.
Hardeknout l'oyt dire, s'en ad[13] graunt hountage,
Coment le ray Harald ad botez hors de estage
Sa mere la rayne, attire sun passage,
En Flaundres est venuz en bon aryvage.
Harald est à Loundres malades, cochez en cage.
V. aunz le regne avayt, lvj. en age,
Death of Harold. A Westmoustre morust, ilokes prist reposage.[14]

---

[1] *Elinge*, B. *Elynge*, C. *Eylynge*, D. *Elyng*, Robert of Brunne. The place alluded to was the isle of Ely. See Florence of Worcester.

[2] *les oilz*, B. *olz*, D.

[3] *ly fount*, C.

[4] *est passez*, B. D.

[5] *A Wiliam le Bastard*, B. *A Willyam le Bastard*, C. *A Willam le Bastarde*, D.

[6] *Fitz fu de son*, B. C. D.

[7] *od son seal conf.*, B. *of seon seal*, C. *oue son seel*, D.

[8] *Qe s'il poet . . le regautez*, B.

[9] *son heir de terez e de feez*, B. C. D.

[10] *Tote*, D.

[11] *sa volentez*, B.

[12] *od son*, B.

[13] *si ad*, B. C.

[14] B. gives these two lines as follows:

A Westmouster morust, prist illoqes reposage.
Cink anz le regne aveit, cinqante e sis en age.

Godwin has slain six hundred at Guildford.
Alfred is put in bonds at the abbey of Ely,
His eyes are put out in presence of earl Godwin,
He only lived three days after, he is sent to God.
Edward, his brother, heard tell of it, his mother has advised him,
He has crossed the sea back to Normandy,
To William the Bastard has told the news;
He was son of his uncle, Edward has prayed him
For aid and counsel, and has sworn to him,
And confirmed by good writing with his seal,
That if he could obtain the royalties of England,
William should be his heir of lands and fees.
The duke agrees immediately, and does what he desires.

King Hardeknut remains with his household
At Bryghe in Denmark in his inheritance;
Harold in England leagues with his barons.
He has driven away his stepmother Emma by violence,
To count Baldwin, who was of her lineage,
He had the lordship of all Flanders.
Hardeknut heard news of it, and feels it as a great disgrace,
How king Harold has driven from her position
His mother the queen, prepares for his passage,
Is come to Flanders with a prosperous voyage.
Harold is at London ill, confined to his bed.
He had five years of reign, fifty-six of age,
He died at Westminster, there he took repose.

Anno Domini MºXLº.

Hardeknut sole king.

Kaunt Harald fu mort, vount ly messager[1]
A Hardeknout en Flaundres, devotement prier
K'il veygne en Engleterre le pople justizer,
Kar autre [ray] for[s] ly ne volt nul[2] aver.
Hardeknout i vynt, et comença regner,
Et purvist coment sa mere poayt venger.[3]
Le cors le ray Harald de terre fist lever,
Et trayner en la merde,[4] et pus le fist getter
Parfound en Tamyse, où peschours de mer[5]
L'ount pris en lour rayce,[6] et le fount porter
Où fust enterrez en un cymiter.

His heavy tax.

Hardeknout après fet[7] la terre charger
De si graunt tribute ke nul ne put durer.[8]
Countes et barouns ly ount countre quer,[9]
Ke est ore[10] enemy ke amy ly fu cher.
Vers le counte Godewyn se comença coroucer,[11]
Pur sun frere Alfrede, ke Godwyn fist tuer;
[E vers l'eveske Alfrik, qe fu son[12] conseiler.
Le counte Godwin se doute, q'il le voet desheriter;][13]

Earl Godwin's reconcilement.

Par counsail des amys al ray vayt acorder.[14]

---

[1] *mensanyer*, C.

[2] *Qar autre rei qe li ne volent nul*, B. *Kar altre ray fors ly ne voet nul*, C. D.

[3] *puit venger*, B. *poyast venger*, C.

[4] Robert of Brunne translates this somewhat delicately, "And thorgh "the podels it drouh that foule "were and deppest." Florence of Worcester, who is Langtoft's authority, says, "et ipsius Haraldi corpus "effodere, et in gronnam projicere "jussit; quod cum projectum fuis-"cet, id extrahere, et in flumen "Thamense mandavit projicere."

[5] *peschurs du mere*, C. *pecchours*, D.

[6] *en lour ray*, B. *rayc*, D.

[7] *fet après*, C.

[8] *ne puit doner*, B. *le peut doner*, C. *le poet doner*, D.

[9] *li unt encuntre quoer*, B. *en contre quer*, C. *encountre quoer*, D.

[10] *Cil est ore*, B. C. D.

[11] *Godwin comence à coroucer*, B.

[12] *Alfrek qe son*, C.

[13] These two lines are omitted in A., but they are here supplied from B. C. D.

[14] *des amis à rey veut acorder*, B. *des amys al rays vayt acorder*, C.

Year of our Lord 1040.

When Harold was dead, the messengers go
To Hardeknut in Flanders, to pray devoutly
That he come into England to rule the people,
For nobody will have any other king but him.
Hardeknut came there, and began to reign,
And provided how he could avenge his mother.
He caused the corpse of king Harold to be raised from the earth,
And dragged in dung, and then caused it to be thrown
Deep into the Thames, where fishers of the sea
Have taken it in their net, and cause it to be carried
To where it was buried in a churchyard.
Hardeknut afterwards levied upon the land
Such a great tax that nobody could bear it.
Earls and barons were vexed at him,
That he is now his enemy who was his dear friend.
He began to harbour anger against earl Godwin,
On account of his brother Alfred, whom Godwin caused to be slain;
And against bishop Alfric, who was his adviser.
Earl Godwin fears that he intends to disherit him;
By advice of his friends he seeks to conciliate the king.

Une ryche galeye ly fist charpenter;
Chuvalers[1] iiij. xx. dedeyns fist armer
De tutes les riches armes ke homme put[2] trover.
Chascun port al braz ataunt[3] de or cler
Cum dait par acounte xvj. unces valer.
Et sur ço Godewyn sey centisme chuvaler[4]
Devaunt les barnez al livre va jorer
Ke unkes frere le ray fu par sun voler
Avoglez ne tuez, [ne] par sun counsailler,[5]
Si noun par Harald et par sun tormenter.
Le ray prent la quitaunce, sa pes ly fet graunter.

Tumult at Worcester.

Quant Godewyn of le ray accordés estayt,
Le ray parmy la terre ses messangers envayt,
Le trewe[6] outrageuse lever comaundayt.
La pople de Wyncestre[7] encountre parlayt,
Pader et Turstayn,[8] ke le ray maundayt
Pur lever cel aver, par medlé ke surdayt,
L'un et l'autre perdist la teste k'yl [là] portait.[9]
Le ray sir[10] Hardeknout molt se corouscait;
Ses countes, ses barouns, sun poer assemblayt,
Tute Wyncestre schire[11] destrure desirayt,
Tel comaundement chescun du ray avayt.[12]

---

[1] *E chivalers*, D.

[2] *qe l'em puit*, B. *poet*, D.

[3] *au brace autant*, B. *taunt*, C. *al brace ataunt*, D. Florence of Worcester says six ounces, and gives a more particular description of the armour of the eighty knights. William of Malmsbury has sixteen ounces.

[4] Robert of Brunne appears to have misunderstood this passage. Godwin himself made up the hundred, so that there were ninety-nine knights with him. He translates it, "Withouten alle this, a hundreth "knyghtes he toke." It was not Godwin alone, but the whole hundred, who swore to his innocence. It was the Anglo-Saxon way of clearing oneself of an accusation.

[5] *tuez, ne par consailler*, B. C. D.

[6] *La trewe*, B. *Le troue*, C.

[7] *de Wirecestre*, B. *de Vincestre*, C. *Wircestre*, Robert of Brunne. This is of course the correct reading. It is rather singular that nearly all the MSS. of Pierre de Langtoft fall into the error of confounding Worcester with Winchester.

[8] *Thurstan*, B. *Turstan*, C. D. Florence of Worcester calls them Feader and Thurstan.

[9] *la teste qe là portait*, B. C. D.

[10] *sir* omitted in B.

[11] *Tote Wirecestreschire*, B.

[12] *du reis là avait*, D.

He caused to be built a rich galley;
He caused eighty knights in it to be armed
With all the richest arms that man could obtain.
Each carries on his arm as much pure gold
As ought by reckoning to amount to sixteen ounces.
And thereupon Godwin, himself the hundredth knight,
Goes before the barons to swear upon the book
That never brother of the king was by his will
Blinded or slain, nor by his counselling,
Except by Harold and by his executioner.
The king takes the payment, and causes his peace to be granted to him.

When Godwin was reconciled with the king,
The king sends his messengers through the land,
Commanded them to raise the overbearing tax.
The people of Worcester protested against it,
Feader and Thurstan, whom the king sent
To levy this money, through a riot which arose,
Both lost their heads which they carried there.
The king sir Hardeknut was greatly angered;
He assembled his earls, his barons, his power,
Desired to destroy all Worcestershire,
Such was the order which each received from the king.

The king's vengeance.

Countes et barouns ke Hardeknout amaynt
En Wyncestre schire[1] of graunt poer alaynt,
Mistrent à l'espeye kant k'yl trovaynt.
Le pople et la terre[2] si nettement wastaynt,
Le cyté capitale si profound ardaynt,
Ke reen est[3] demoré à cels[4] ke là manaynt,
Ne ad lur lynage, fors à cels ke[5] alaynt
En l'yle de Sauverne et là demoraynt.
Si bone gens[6] estaynt, ke là se governaynt
Jekes le ray se teust,[7] et cyl retornaynt
A lur herytez, lur mesuns relevaynt,
Et cytez et burgs de bon murs afforcaynt.

The young prince Edward returns to England.

Le rays Hardeknout leest sa felounye;
Eduuard fiz Aylrede[8] ly vent de Normendye,[9]
Sun frere fu de par sa mere[10] de graunt gentilrye,
Et drait hair de la terre par auncesserye.
Du ray est-il resceu cum frere et amye,
Et vôlt[11] le ray k'il ayt par tut la mestrye.[12]
Escotez ore coment le ray finist sa vye.
Al duk Guytan[13] Danays sa fyllye fu marye;
Les noces sunt tenuz al maner de Lambye.[14]

Death of Hardeknut.

Le rays en sa sale[15] après la mangerye,
Juaunt ous chuvalers en sa beverye,
Cheet freid mort à terre; le cors of grant noblye
E[s]t porté[16] à Wyncestre, et là gist, jo ws dye.
Cil regnayt en le tote fors deus[17] aunz et demye.

---

[1] *En Wircestreschire*, B. *En Wyrcestre schire*, C. D.
[2] *Le pople de la terre*, C.
[3] *n'est*, B.
[4] *à ses*, B.
[5] *fors qe à ceaus*, B.
[6] *si bone gent*, C.
[7] *se tust*, B. *se teuste*, C.
[8] *Eadward le fitz Eilred*, B.
[9] *ly veent en Normendye*, C.
[10] *fu par mere*, B. C. D.
[11] *E voet*, B. D. *E veot*, C.
[12] *sa mestrie*, B. C. D.
[13] *Guythan*, B. *Gwytan*, C. *Guydan*, D. Florence of Worcester calls the Danish noble Tovi Prudan, and he gives the lady the name of Githa.
[14] Robert of Brunne, who omits the name of the Danish duke, perhaps through not understanding his original, translates this, "The "bridale was holden at the maner "of Lambithe."
[15] *en la sale*, B. C. D.
[16] *Est portez*, B. C.
[17] *Cil ne regnoit en tut fors dous* B.

Earls and barons who loved Hardeknut
Went into Worcestershire with great force,
Put all they found to the sword.
They so cleanly wasted the people and the land,
So thoroughly burnt the capital city,
That nothing remained to those who lived there,
Nor to their lineage, except to those who went
To the island in the Severn and there dwelt.
They were such brave people, that they held themselves there
Until the king was silenced, and these returned
To their inheritances, rebuilt their houses,
And strengthened cities and boroughs with good walls.

King Hardeknut ceases his ill feeling;
Edward son of Ethelred came to him from Normandy,
He was his brother by his mother of great nobility,
And the direct heir to the land by descent.
He is received by the king as brother and friend,
And the king wills that he shall have everywhere the command.
Now listen how the king finished his life.
His daughter was married to the Danish duke Guytan;
The wedding ceremonies were held in the manor of Lambeth.
The king in the hall after the dinner,
Joking with the knights in their drinking,
Falls cold dead to the ground, the body with great honour
Is carried to Winchester, and there lies, I tell you.
He reigned on the whole only two years and a half.

Anno Domini MºXLIJº.

Accession of Edward the Confessor.

Le jour de Pasche après, kaunt comence[1] l'esté,
Venuz à Wyncestre est tut ly barné,
Eduuard fiz Eylrede en rays ount-il levez,[2]
Cum cyl ke drayt avayt à les regaltez.[3]
Kaunt [cink] aunz[4] en la terre en pes avayt regné,
Le ray de Danemark, ke Suane fu nomé,
Al ray sir Eduuard en amour ad prié
Ke de sa navye ly face en amisté
Soccours, si ly plest ; le rays Eduuard de gré
L. bons nefs al ray Suayn ad maundez
Encountre Magnum, le ray de Norwaye clamé.
Bataille entre les deus en mer est comencé,
Le ray de Danemark est arer rosé,[5]
Sun regne ad jà perdue,[6] et Magnus l'ad gayné.
Mès hors de ceste vye est Magnus jà passé,[7]
Et Suayn de sun realme recover la pousté,
Et en Engleterre al rays ad maundé,
Ke entre [els] deus rays[8] sait pees affermé.

Danegeld abolished.

Et le rays Eduuard par covenaunt l'ad graunté,[9]
Ke la Danegelde pur tuz jours pardoné
Sayt, et[10] jà nul jour par Danays chalangé.

En tens le rays Eduuard un riches homme estayt,
Ke counte fu de Kent, et Godewyn se nomait ;
Hair de ses tenemenz un fiz Harald avait,
Ke sa femme espousé Engle enchascait,
Et l'abbesse Eggyve[11] de sa mesun robbayt,

---

[1] *comença*, C.

[2] *en rey unt levé*, B. *en rays unt levé*, C. *en reis ount levé*, D.

[3] *à la regauté*, B. C. D.

[4] *Quant cink anz*, B.

[5] *arere est aresté*, B.

[6] *ad perdu*, B.

[7] *tost passé*, C. D.

[8] *Q'entre caus dous reis*, B. *Ke entre els ij. rays*, C. D.

[9] *par covenant ad g.*, B.

[10] *et* omitted in B. *Et sayt*, C. *et à nul jour*, D.

[11] *Edgyve*, B. D. *Edigne*, C. This was Edgiva, abbess of Leominster, but it was not Harold, but his brother Sweyn, who had carried her off. Pierre de Langtoft has misrepresented the history, and has apparently taken a version intended for the express purpose of discrediting Harold.

The year of our Lord 1042.

On Easter day following, when summer begins,
All the baronage has come to Winchester,
They have raised Edward, son of Ethelred, to be king,
As he who had a right to the regalities.
When he had reigned in the land five years in peace,
The king of Denmark, who was named Sweyn,
Has prayed king Edward in love
To give him in friendship of his navy
Help, if he please; king Edward willingly
Has sent fifty good ships to king Sweyn
Against Magnus, proclaimed king of Norway.
A battle at sea is begun between the two,
The king of Denmark is defeated,
He has now lost his kingdom, and Magnus has won it.
But Magnus has already passed out of this life,
And Sweyn recovers the authority over his kingdom,
And has sent to the king in England,
That between them two kings peace should be established,
And king Edward has granted it by covenant,
That the Danegeld for ever abolished
Should be, and never afterwards claimed by the Danes.

In the time of king Edward there was a rich man,
Who was earl of Kent, and was named Godwin;
He had a son Harold, heir of his possessions,
Who had put away his married wife Engle,
And stole away from her monastery the abbess Elgiva,

Ear Godwin's war.

La tynt cum sa femme, sa volunté[1] fesayt.
Sun pere Godewyn le counte grant poer menayt,
A conquere sur le ray[2] ses amys maundayt,
Chuvalerye assez Godwyn assemblayt,
S'en vait vers Gloucestre; Eduuard se apparçayt,
Assembler [fait] ses gens,[3] et molt se dotayt
Ke si sodaynement la guere comencait.
Le counte en sa demaunde pur veir avayt [nul] drait,[4]
Par quai[5] le counte de Ba[6] entre els alayt,
Entre le rays Eduuard et Godwa[7] parlait,
Ke Godewyn à Loundres al baunk le ray vendrayt,
Et solum[8] la lay seurayt[9] sun drayt.
Le rays Eduuard à Loundres est jà revenuz,
De countes et [de] barouns assez ad retenuz.[10]
Le counte Godwyn i vent, si est apparceuz
De[l] graunt[11] poer le ray, et se tent[12] desceuz.
De Loundres est alez, en court est ben conuz
Ke Godwyn fet defaute, la justiz 'ad renduz
De exiller le counte et ses fiz trestuz.
En Flaundres sunt alez, où il sunt conuz
Al counte Baldewyn, ke les ad resceuz;
Il sunt de sun lynage et de sun saunk[13] issuz.
Ses deus fiz aynez vers Irelaunde sunt muz,
Harald et Lofwyn, [et] passent[14] à Bristouz,[15]
Demorent en Irelaunde, et menent lur deduz.

Godwin banished.

---

[1] *ses volentez*, B. Robert of Brunne expresses this more strongly, and says more than Langtoft, "Maugré hire wille in hordom his "life with hir lad."

[2] *sur les rays*, C.

[3] *assembler fait ses gens*, B. *fet ses genz*, C. D.

[4] *avoit nul droit*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "The erle in his askyng had no "maner right."

[5] *Pur quai*, C.

[6] *de Baa*, B.

[7] *Godwin*, B. C. D.

[8] *solunk*, D.

[9] *suereit*, B. *son drayt suerait*, C.

[10] *e des barons assez est retenuz*, B. D. *et de barouns assez ad resceuz*, C.

[11] *Del grant poer*, C. D.

[12] *se tint*, B.

[13] *et du saunk*, C.

[14] *e passent*, B. C. D.

[15] *Bristuz*, D.

And kept her as his wife, did his will with her.
His father Godwin the earl led great power,
Sent for his friends to make war on the king,.
Godwin assembled knights in plenty,
Goes towards Gloucester; Edward is aware of it,
Causes his people to assemble, and is in great fear
At war beginning so suddenly.
The earl had in truth no right in his demand,
Wherefore the earl of Bath went between them,
He interceded between king Edward and Godwin,
That Godwin should come to London to the king's bench,
And pursue his claim according to law.

King Edward is now returned to London,
He has in his retinue a multitude of earls and barons.
Earl Godwin came there, and has perceived
The great force of the king, and thinks he has been entrapped.
He has left London, it is well known in court
That Godwin makes default, it has rendered judgment
That the earl be banished and all his sons.
They are gone to Flanders, where they are known
To the count Baldwin, who has received them;
They are of his lineage and sprung from his blood.
His two eldest sons have moved towards Ireland,
Harold and Leofwin, and they cross at Bristol,
Dwell in Ireland, and take their pleasure.

Visit of William of Normandy.

Kaunt Godewyn et ses fiz exillez estayent,
William le Conquerour et gens ke ly suayent
En pes et bon [1] amour à Dover aryvaynt.
Le rays et ses barouns grant [2] joye en avaynt,
De molz riche douns tuz les honuraynt.
Le duk et ses barouns la terre visitaynt,
Et puys en Normendye [3] of joye returnaynt.

Invasions of the sons of Godwin.

Harald et Lofwyn, ke en Irlande alaynt,
Molt grant chuvalrye à Cestre remenaynt,
Dorsete et Somersete pleynement robaynt,
Chuvalers et sergauns xxxij. tuaynt,[4]
Or et argent tut pristrent ke ilokes trovaynt,[5]
S'en alaynt à lur nefs, et parmy [6] siglaynt
Jekes taunt ke lure pere venaunt encountraynt.
Al porte de Sandwyce al terre [7] se donaynt,
Al parenz [8] et amys lure lettres enveaynt,
De counsail et [de] ayde [9] pytousement priaynt.
Chuvalers plusurs aide les grauntaynt.

Earl Godwin returns.

Li bon rays Eduuarde la novele ad oye,
Ad tuz ses leals et feals [10] par bref maunde, et prie,
Ke as chyvals as armes [11] ly venent en aye.
Pur ço ke cele gent [12] targent en partye,
Godwyn vers Tamyse se met of sa navye,[13]
Et saunz seu le rays en Sotheraye [14] applye.
Le ray saunz demore, ouf sa chuvalerye,
Le counte Godewyn et ses fiz defye,
En chaump de ambepars graunt est la compaynye.

---

[1] *en pes en bon*, B. *en pees et en bon*, C.

[2] *mult grant*, B. C. *joye aveynt*, D.

[3] *E pus vers Normendie*, B. C. D.

[4] *trent e dous tueient*, B. *trent et ii. tuaint*, C. D.

[5] *pristrent tut q'il troveient*, B. *tote pristrent qe trovaynt*, D.

[6] *par mer*, B. *par mere*, C. D.

[7] *de Sandwiche à tere*, B. *A porte de Sandwyche à tere*, C.

[8] *A parens*, B. C.

[9] *e de aide*, B. C.

[10] *ses feals e leaus*, B. *ses feals et leals*, C. D.

[11] *à chivaus et armes*, B. D. *à chevales et armes*, C.

[12] *qe ses genz*, B.

[13] *vers Tamès se met en navye*, C.

[14] *en Surroie*, B. *en Soraye*, C. D.

When Godwin and his sons were exiled,
William the Conqueror and his suite
Arrived at Dover in peace and good love.
The king and his barons had great joy of it,
They honoured them all with very rich gifts.
The duke and his barons visited the land,
And afterwards returned with joy to Normandy.
Harold and Leofwin, who had gone to Ireland,
Brought back a great body of knights to Chester,
They completely plundered Dorset and Somerset,
Killed thirty-two knights and sergeants,
Took all the gold and silver they found there,
Went away to their ships, and sailed on the sea
Till they met their father coming back.
They put to land at the port of Sandwich,
Sent their letters to their kinsmen and friends,
Prayed them imploringly for counsel and help.
Many knights granted them aid.

The good king Edward has heard the news,
He sends by letter to all his loyal and faithful subjects, and prays,
That they come to his aid with horse and arms.
Because this people are in part slow in assembling,
Godwin proceeds with his fleet to the Thames,
And unknown to the king arrives in Surrey.
The king without delay, with his knighthood,
Defies earl Godwin and his sons,
Great is the company of both sides in the field.

Ly [eveske] Edol de Ba[1] veent of sa clergye,
Et dist al rays Eduuarde, "Sire, [ne] combatez mye;[2]
" Si le counte Godewyn ad par sa folye
" Trespas fet à tay, sire, en ta mercye
" Se mettra ben le counte, ses fiz en ta manye."[3]
Le barnage veent[4] al rays, chescun de ço ly prye;
Et le counte mesmes vent, et mercy crye.[5]

The king reconciled to Godwin.

Le rays le regarde, graunt fu sa[6] curtaysye,
Sa pees ly ad graunté, et donné[7] membre et vye,
Ses terres et ses rentes, of sa manauntye.
Chascun de ses fiz al ray par pees se lye,
Fors Suayn ke morust de frayd[8] en Lumbardye,
Si cum il alayt[9] en penaunce, ws dye,
Devers la terre saynte pur la felonye
K'il fist à sun cosyn k'il tuayt d'espeye.[10]

Queen Edith restored.

Godewyn veen[t][11] al rays, ly prie, pur le fiz Marye,[12]
Ke reprendre voylle sa espouse amye,
Egithe fillye Godewyn,[13] ke fust à Romenye,
En sojourn[14] of l'abbesse, et le rays l'octrie.
Godewyn of le rays après si ben se guye,
Ke sun fiz Harald[15] et ly ount la mestrie
De la court le rays, n'ad nul ke countredye.
Le jour de Pentecouste al Burge en Lyndesye
Est maundez al ray en sa[16] mangerye
Ke le duk Syward avayt en bayllye
Mathethe[17] ray de Escoce, ke volt aver traye[18]

---

[1] *L'evesqe Edolf de Baa*, B. C. *Li evesqe Edol*, D. *Eldolf, bisshop of Bath*, Robert of Brunne.

[2] *ne combatez mie*, B.

[3] *en ta manaye*, B.

[4] *vint au rei*, B. *vint al rays*, C.

[5] *vint, et merci li crie*, B.

[6] *grant vit sa*, B. *grant vist sa*, C. D.

[7] *doné*, C. *donée*, D.

[8] *de freit*, B. D.

[9] *il ala*, B.

[10] *tua de l'espeie*, B. C. D.

[11] *vint*, C.

[12] *pur fiz*, C. D.

[13] *Edith fidle Godwin*, B. *Egithe feylle Godwin*, C.

[14] *E sojorn*, B.

[15] *Edward*, B.

[16] *à sa*, B.

[17] *Machoy*, apparently changed to *Madoy*, B. *Mathoge*, D. *Machoy*, Robert of Brunne. Of course, this was the king commonly called Macbeth.

[18] *qe voet aver trahye*, C. *trahye*, D.

Bishop Eldolf of Bath comes with his clergy,
And says to king Edward, " Sire, do not fight;
" If earl Godwin has by his folly
" Trespassed against thee, sire, at thy mercy
" The earl will fully put himself, his sons in thy hands."
The barons come to the king, each prays him of this,
And the earl himself comes, and asks for pardon.
The king looks at him, sees his great courtesy,
Has granted him his peace, and given him limb and life,
His lands and his rents, with his lordship,
Each of his sons binds himself to the king by peace,
Except Sweyn who died of cold in Lombardy,
As he was going in penance, I tell you,
To the Holy Land for the crime
He had committed on his cousin whom he slew with the sword.
Godwin comes to the king, prays him, for the son of Mary,
That he will take back his dear wife,
Edith, Godwin's daughter, who was at Romney,
Sojourning with the abbess, and the king grants it.
Godwin afterwards conducts himself so well with the king,
That his son Harold and he have the mastery
In the king's court, there is no one who contradicts them.
On the day of Pentecost, at Burgh in Lindsey,
Is announced to the king at his dinner
That duke Siward has in his custody
Macbeth king of Scotland, who sought to betray

Le ray de Engleterre de sa seygnurye.
Macbeth dethroned. De vye et de regne est Mathethe[1] defublye,
[Malcolm de Comberland est rey de Albanie][2]
Du doun le rays Eduuard, et vestuz et saysye,[3]
Et fet sun homage, par fealté se relye:
Gryffyn, ray de Wales,[4] attaynt de tricherye
Fust en meme cel an, sa vye i est finie,[5]
Par comaundement le rays la veylle la Piphanye;[6]
Sa teste fu porté, cum cele ke fu banye,[7]
A Gloucestre al rays, molt fu le cors maldye.
Edward Atheling. Li bon rays Eduuard pensayt de ses fez,
De ses larges terres, ses ryches herytez,
De Eduuard fiz Emoun, sun nefuz clamez,
Ke fust en Hungrie en prisoun demorez.
Al ray de la terre ses lettres ad maundez;
Par ayde de l'emperour Eduuard est congez
Aler en Engleterre à ses parentez.
Al ray kaunt est venuz, molt est honurez.
Le covenaunt ke fu fete par fiaunce asseurez
Al duk de Normendie est tost ublyez.[8]
Ore ad le rays Eduuard[9] chaungé voluntez,
Sun regne après ses jours [à] Eduuard ad donez,
Sun hair fu pur veyr de ses regaltez,
Mès mort ly prist si tost, de ly n'est plus parlez.
Incursions by the Welsh. Algare, counte de Kent, cel houre fust exillez
A tort hors de la terre, en Wales[10] est alez,
A Gryffyn fiz Gryffyn ke fu decolez.

---

[1] *Machog*, B. *Mathoye*, C. D. *Machog*, Robert of Brunne.

[2] This line is omitted in A., but is here supplied from B. C.

[3] *Du doun rey Edward est vestu e seisie*, B.

[4] *de Gales*, C.

[5] *vie est finie*, B. C. D.

[6] *le Piphanye*, C. Robert of Brunne has, "Opon the tuelft even "Griffyn his hede les."

[7] For this and the following line D. has only one, *A Gloucestre porté fu sa teste maldye.*

[8] *est tut ubliez*, B. C. *tolé oblyez*, D.

[9] *à Edward*, B. *Edward ad fet son heyre après ses jurnez*, D., which abridges the text by omitting the two following lines.

[10] *en Guales*, B. *en Gales*, C.

The king of England of his lordship.
Macbeth is deprived of life and kingdom;
Malcolm of Cumberland is king of Scotland
By gift of king Edward, and invested and seised,
And does his homage, binds himself by fealty.
Griffyth, king of Wales, convicted of treachery
Was this same year, his life is ended in it,
By order of the king, on the eve of the Epiphany;
His head was carried, as one who was banished,
To Gloucester to the king, much was the body cursed.

The good king Edward thought of his fees,
Of his broad lands, of his rich inheritances,
Of Edward son of Edmund, his nephew declared,
Who was remaining in Hungary in prison.
He has sent his letters to the king of the land;
With the aid of the emperor, Edward has leave
To go into England to his kindred.
When he is come to the king, he is much honoured.
The agreement which was made with plighted faith
With the duke of Normandy is immediately forgotten.
Now has king Edward changed his will,
He has given the kingdom after his days to Edward,
He was in truth his heir to his regalities,
But death took him so soon, there is no more to say of him.
Algar, earl of Kent, at that time was banished
Wrongfully out of the land, he is gone to Wales,
To Griffyth son of Griffyth who was beheaded.

Cels deus[1] en Engleterre ount guere[2] comencez.
Le ray Harald[3] le seet, sun host est aprestez,
Harald fiz Godewyn est duster assignez.
A Hereforde en Wales[4] sunt-il encountrez.
Algar reconciled to the king. Harald et molz des autres Englays[5] renomez
Du gentil counte Algare en ount graunt pytez,
Se aproche ad la pees, de l'amur[6] ount tretez,
Et le rays Eduuard ount si counsayllez
Ke le counte Algare est reconcilez,[7]
Et par l'ayde Harald al rays est accordez.
Kant le rays Eduuarde quide melz regner,
Et viver[8] en quyete, de guere oyst parler.[9]
Gryffyn, ray de Wales,[10] ad levé baner;
Le eveske de Hereforde, Leogar l'oy[11] nomer,
Of trestuz ses clers fet Gryffyn tuer,[12]
Arder et destrure et vile et mouster.[13]
Invasion of Northumberland by the Scots. Malcolm, ray de Escoce, comence à guerrayer
En Northumberland, et si va waster
La terre saint Cuthbert, ne volt esparnier
Corsaynt[14] ne eglyse; le eveske fet[15] maunder
Al rays Eduuarde, et prie ke ly voylle[16] ayder.
Kaunt Malcolm l'oyt dire, comença cesser.[17]
Le ray Eduuard s'en va sun hoste ordyner;
Harald fiz Godewyn fist-il appeler,[18]

---

[1] *Ses dous*, B.

[2] *gwer ount*, C.

[3] *Edward*, B. *Ly rays Edward seet*, C. *Le reis Edward*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Whan "Edward hard say, he samned "alle his oste."

[4] *A Herford en Gales*, C. *A Herdforth*, D.

[5] *des Englais*, C. In D. this and the three following lines are represented by one, *Mès à pees se aprochent, et le rey taunt consaillez.*

[6] *d'amour*, B.

[7] *Et le ray Edward ount si counseillez*, C.

[8] *A vyver*, C.

[9] This line is omitted in D.

[10] *rey Gales*, B. *ray de Gales*, C.

[11] *Leodgar l'oit*, B. *Leogare*, C. *Ligere*, Robert of Brunne.

[12] *Griffyn fet tuer*, D.

[13] *destrure mèson e mouster*, B.

[14] *Corpsaint*, C. Instead of this and the two following lines, D. has, *Mès quant le reys aproche comença cesser.*

[15] *fist*, B.

[16] *q'il le voille*, B. *ke là voille*, C.

[17] *sesser*, B.

[18] *fist-il ordeiner*, B. Instead of this and the preceding line, D. has, *Le reis Edward fist Harald appeller.*

These two have begun war in England.
King Edward knows it, his army is ready,
Harold son of Godwin is appointed leader.
They have met at Hereford in Wales.
Harold and many other of the English of name
Have great compassion of the noble earl Algar,
He makes proposals for peace, they have treated of love,
And king Edward they have so advised
That earl Algar is reconciled,
And made friends with the king by Harold's assistance.

When king Edward thinks to reign best,
And live in quiet, he heard talk of war.
Griffyth, king of Wales, has raised his banner;
The bishop of Hereford, Leogare I have heard him called,
With all his clergy Griffyth caused to be slain,
To burn and destroy both town and minster.
Malcolm, king of Scotland, begins to make war
In Northumberland, and so goes to lay waste
The land of St. Cuthbert, he will not spare
Holy body or church; the bishop sends a message
To king Edward, and prays that he will aid him.
When Malcolm heard this news, he began to cease.
King Edward proceeds to marshal his army;
He sends for Harold the son of Godwin,

Et ly comaunda sun hoste à guyer,
Et le fals Griffyn prendre à poer,
Et mettre à l'espeye, saunz jugement doner.
Harold invades Wales. Harald s'en va vers Wales de molt gentil quer.
Kaunt Harald i vynt, est Gryffyn passé la mer [1]
Tut drayt en Irlande, ne osayt demorer.
Harald parmy Wales à tuz fet ço maunder,[2]
Les terres Gryffyn destrure, ses chastels [3] craventer;
Des Waleys fet venir,[4] et les fet jurer
Ke leals serrount al rays Eduuard ly beer.
A Rotherlaund [5] s'en và, et fet exyller
Gryffyn pur tuz jours et desheryter.
Kant Gryffyn en Wales quyde repairer,[6]
Les gens de la terre s'en vount counsayller,[7]
Ke le rays Eduuard ne osent coroucer;
Slaughter of Griffyth king of Wales. Gryffyn est uthlages, la teste ly fount voler,
Et al rays Eduuard la vount presenter,
Tut drayt à Glastenbyre, kaunt fust à manger.
Gryffyn ad deus freres, le ray les volt amer,
Bleoth et Ruthwalan,[8] issi les oy nomer,
La partye le rays solaynt envauncer [9]
En tutes [10] les medlez ke Gryffyn fist lever;
Pur quai [11] de ses terres le ray les fist [12] feffer,
Et prent [lour] homages [13] de Suthwales enter.
Le gentil duk [14] Harald enprent sun aler,

---

[1] *i veent, est Gryffyn passé mere,* C. D.

[2] *feit comander,* B. *comaunder,* C. In D. this and the following line are made into one, *Harald va les teres Griffin destruyer.*

[3] *ses mesons,* B.

[4] *Les Waleis fist venir,* B. *Et fet les Waleys venir et jorer,* C.

[5] *A Rothelan,* B. C. D. *Rotland,* Robert of Brunne.

[6] *Pus reveent Griffyn et quide pees aver,* D.

[7] *Les yentz de la tere la teste ly fount voler,* D., which omits the two following lines.

[8] Their names were Blethyn and Rhywallon.

[9] *avauncer,* C.

[10] *et totes,* D.

[11] *Par quei,* B.

[12] *les fet,* C. D.

[13] *lour homages,* B. C. *lour homages desouz Wales enteer,* D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "For South Wales holy thei mad "the kyng feautez."

[14] *duk,* omitted in B.

And gave the command of his army to him,
And to take the false Griffyth by force,
And put him to the sword, without giving judgment.
Harold went towards Wales with very noble heart.
When Harold came there, Griffyth has passed the sea
Straight to Ireland, he dared not remain.
Harold caused it to be announced to all people through Wales,
To destroy the lands of Griffyth, to demolish his castles;
He made Welshmen come to him, and made them swear
That they would be loyal to king Edward the noble.
He goes to Rhuddlan, and causes to be banished
Griffyth for ever and disinherited.
When Griffyth took it into his head to return to Wales,
The people of the land held counsel together,
That they dared not anger king Edward;
Griffyth is an outlaw, they cut off his head,
And go and present it to king Edward,
Straight at Glastonbury, when he was at dinner.
Griffyth has two brothers, the king wishes to conciliate them,
Blethyn and Rhywallon, so I heard them named,
They were accustomed to support the king's part
In all the wars which Griffyth raised;
Therefore the king caused them to be enfeoffed in his lands,
And took their homages of them for the whole of South Wales.
The noble duke Harold goes his way,

Outrages committed by the Welsh.

Ad Portascythe[1] en Wales fet-il carpenter
Bele sales et chaumbres pur le ray eser,[2]
En la Walescherye quant irra veneer.
Cradok fiz Griffyn[3] defist cel herberge[r],[4]
Ilokes i va de nout[5] les overours decoler,[6]
Enporte tuz les bens, il lesse nul dener.
Harald en cel contemple estoyt say mover[7]
Devers Northauntoun, pur sun per salver
De Dunkan fiz Ageleth,[8] ke le volt[9] grever
Pur Cospatrike[10] ke fu tué saunz coupe aver.
Eggyve[11] la rayne la blame dayt porter;
Kar tuer le fist, et si n'avayt mester.
Tostus, counte de Cumberland, est chef[12] justiser,
Volt ben pur sa seute[13] cel mort venger,
Et al counte Godewyn la mort aretter.
Harald, fiz le counte, les volt[14] acorder,
Et Tostus of le counte ne volt amourer,[15]

Banishment of Tosti.

Pur quay hors de terre Harald les fist chacer.[16]
Tostus of sa femme s'en vayt à Saynt Omer,
Of Baldewyn le counte demorent cel iver;[17]
Ses [terres] sunt donez à Morkare fiz Rycher.[18]

---

[1] *A Portastiche*, C. D., and Robert of Brunne. Florence of Worcester calls the place Portascith; it is Porthskewydd, on the coast of Monmouthshire, where there are still large entrenchments.

[2] *eiser*, B. *beser*, C.

[3] *Caraduk fitz Griffin*, B., and Robert of Brunne.

[4] *herberger*, C. D.

[5] *Illoqes va de notte*, C.

[6] This line is omitted in D.

[7] *si mover*, B.

[8] *De Dunstan fitz Agelet*, B. C. *Dunstan fiz Angelec*, D. *Dunstan, Agilet sonne*, Robert of Brunne. Florence of Worcester calls him Dunstan son of Athelneth.

[9] *le veot*, C.

[10] *Gospatryk*, C. *Gospatrike*, D.

[11] *Edyyve*, B. C. D. This last MS. reads, *Edgyve la reyne saunz deserte le fist tuer*, and omits the following line.

[12] *et chef*, C. In place of this and the following line, D. has, *Tostus count de Cumbreland cele morte voet venger.*

[13] *par sa sute*, B. *par sa seute*, C.

[14] *veut*, C. *voet*, D.

[15] *ne veot amorer*, C.

[16] *le feit chacer*, B. *ly fet*, C. *se fet chacer*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "of loud he did him "chace."

[17] This and the preceding line are omitted in D.

[18] *fitz Riker*, B. *à Markare fiz Riker*, C. *Riker*, D.

He causes to be built at Porthskewydd in Wales
Fair halls and chambers for the king's ease,
When he shall go to hunt in the Welshland.
Cradoc, Griffyth's son, destroyed that lodging;
There he goes by night and cuts off the heads of the workmen,
Carries away the goods, leaves not a penny.
Harold at this time was proceeding
Towards Northampton, to protect his father
From Dunstan son of Athelneth, who sought to trouble him
On account of Gospatric who was slain without any fault.
Edith the queen ought to bear the blame;
For she caused him to be slain, and yet had no reason for it.
Tosti, earl of Cumberland, and chief to do justice,
Seeks to avenge this murder by his suit,
And to fix the death upon earl Godwin.
Harold, the earl's son, seeks to reconcile them,
And Tosti will not be friends with the earl,
Wherefore Harold causes him to be driven out of the land.
Tosti with his wife goes to St. Omer,
They remain that winter with earl Baldwin;
His lands are given to Morcar son of Rikere.

Death of king Edward.

Le bon rays Eduuard à Loundres approchayt,
La feste de Noel[1] ilokes tenir volayt.
Le eglyse de Saint Pere, k'yl mesme fundait,
Le jour de saint Estefen dedire[2] fesayt.
Le ray de jour en autre plus pesaunt estayt,
La maladye mortel pur veyr ly grevayt;
Countes et barouns, devaunt ly appelayt,
A Harald fiz Godewyn sun regne devisayt,
Le duk de Normendye ublyez avayt,
Du covenaunt k'il ly fist[3] nul ly mentyvayt.[4]
Vynt iij. aunz vj. mays xxvij. jours regnayt,[5]
Mort est, et gist à Loundres à Westmouster tut drayt.[6]

Anno Domini M° LX° *sexto.*

Accession of Harold.

Après la mort Eduuarde, Harald est elu
Ray par la commune, la coroune ad resceu;
En drayture et ley leaus est[-il] tenu.[7]
Tostus hors de Flandres of poer est venu,
De Sandwyce à Nicole wastaunt coru,[8]
Avoyr et aumayle[9] le pꝑple ad perdu.
Del novele rays[10] Harald est durement esmu,
S'en va vers le north of ses gens del seu.[11]
Tostus, kaun[t] l'oyt dire, ad mester fere sun pru,[12]
Ad Malcolme, ray de Escoce, sun chemyn ad tendu,[13]
Et le rays Harald en taunt est desceuz.

---

[1] *du Noel*, C.

[2] *Le jour seint Estevene dedier fesoit*, B. *dedier*, C. D.

[3] *q'il fist*, B.

[4] *nul ne mentivait*, C. *nul n'i mentivayt*, D.

[5] Robert of Brunne followed a manuscript which differed in the number of years, "Thre and tuenti "ȝere, sex monethes, and *seventen* "dayes." Pierre de Langtoft follows Florence of Worcester.

[6] This line is omitted in B.

[7] *est-il tenu*, B. *et leals est-il tenu*, C. *leals'est-il'tenu*, D.

[8] *à Nicole ad Tostus coru*, B. C. D.

[9] *Et avoyr et aumaylle*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "tresore alle and bestes."

[10] *Le novel rey*, B.

[11] *de seu*, C.

[12] *dire, son chemyn ad tendu*, D.

[13] *d'Escoz, en taunt est Harald desceu*, D, which omits the following line.

The good king Edward came to London,
He desired to hold there the feast of Christmas.
The church of St. Peter, which he founded himself,
He caused to be dedicated on St. Stephen's day.
The king was getting more feeble from day to day,
In fact the deadly sickness was grieving him.
He called earls and barons before him,
Left his kingdom to Harold son of Godwin,
He had forgotten the duke of Normandy,
Nobody reminded him of the covenant he made to him.
He reigned twenty-three years, six months, and twenty-seven days,
He is dead, and lies right at London at Westminster.

The year of our Lord 1066.

After the death of Edward, Harold is chosen
King by the generality, he has received the crown;
He is held loyal by right and law.
Tosti is come out of Flanders with an army,
Has run from Sandwich to Lincoln ravaging,
The people have lost goods and cattle.
King Harold is violently agitated at the news,
He goes towards the north with his people of the south.
Tosti, when he heard of it, had need of his discretion,
He has directed his way to Malcolm king of Scotland,
And king Harold is so far disappointed.

Invasion of Harold Harfaager and Tosti.

Escotez ore coment la bosoyne ala.
Rays fu de Norwaye, et tel se voua,
Le frere saint Olaf, Harald Harvegra;[1]
Of le counte Toste en Tyne aryva.
Arer se mist en nef et en Humbre entra,[2]
En le braz Use, suth Rychale[3] aryva,
La veille seynt Matheu feria quarta.
Edwyn et Morkare, countes renomez,
Seygnurs de Cumberland, de viles[4] et cytez,
Ad Harald Harvegra, ad Toste avaunt nomez,
Ad mesme de Rikhale[5] bataylle ount donez.
Harald de Norwaye avait poer assez,
Et le counte Toste de ses parentez,
La victore à Rikhale[6] ount-il enportez.
Cent et l. hostages ount en lur postez
De Everwyk, mè[s] nul ount[7] de ilokes menez.
Novele [pur veir] lur veent[8] dount sunt affraez,

Harold's victory at Stanford Bridge.

Ke Harald fiz Godewyn, ke rays[9] est corounez,
Lur veent, pur destrure et mettre suz pez.[10]
Ke fount les Norwayes for[s] passent par prez,[11]
A Staunfordbrige[12] sunt tuz alogez.
Le rays Harald les veent,[13] sa baner desplyez,[14]
Se doune à la bataylle, les gens ad nafrez,
Del matyn jekes al vespre[15] ensemble sunt medlez,

---

[1] More correctly written *Harold Harfaager.*

[2] *se mist en mer, en Humber il entra*, B. *en mere, et en Humber*, D.

[3] *le braz de Ouse south Rikale*, B. D. Robert of Brunne translates this,—

" In an arme of Ouse under
" Ricalle lay,
" On Saynt Mathew even, on a
" Wednesday."

[4] *des viles*, B.

[5] *de Rycalle*, C. *de Rikale*, D. *Richale* in Florence.

[6] *Rycalle*, C. *Rikale*, D.

[7] *mès nul n'ount*, B.

[8] *Novele pur veir lour vint*, B. C.

[9] *qe rey est*, D.

[10] *south pees*, B. *suz peez*, C.

[11] *par les pres*, C. D.

[12] *Staynfordbrigge*, B. *Stanfordbrig*, C. *Stanfordbrigge*, D.

[13] *ly veent*, C.

[14] *oue els se est medlez*, D., which omits the two following lines.

[15] *à vespre*, C.

Listen now how the affair ended.
King was of Norway, and as such declared himself,
The brother of St. Olaf, Harold Harfaager;
He arrived in the Tyne with earl Tosti.
He put back in his ship, and entered the Humber,
He arrived in its tributary Ouse below Riccall,
On the eve of St. Matthew on a Wednesday.

Edwin and Morcar, renowned earls,
Lords of Cumberland, of towns and cities,
To Harold Harfaager and to Tosti before named,
At the same place of Riccall, have given battle.
Harold of Norway had a great army,
And earl Tosti of his kinsmen,
They have carried off the victory at Riccall.
They have in their power a hundred and fifty hostages
From York, but they have carried away nobody there
News comes to them in truth at which they are frightened,
That Harold son of Godwin, who is crowned king,
Is coming to destroy them and put them under feet.
What do the Norwegians but pass through the meadows,
They have all taken their lodging at Stanford Bridge.
King Harold comes upon them, his banner displayed.
He gives battle, has wounded the people,
From morning to evening they have fought together,

Harald Harvegra et Tostus sunt tuez.
Ly ray Harald est mestre, de ky escotez.
Le duk de Normendye, William [1] fu sun noun,
Ad Kame [2] sa cyté avayt en prisoun
Wolnothe,[3] frere Harald, et sun nefuz Hakoun.
Harald, kant fu joven, alayt [4] en tapişoun
Vers Fraunce pur dedure en la regyoun,
Descendist [5] en Pountyf, à sa confusioun.
Le seygnour de la terre, Rycher fiz Youn,[6]
En prisoun le tynt, mès ly gentil baroun,
Duk de Normendye, voylle Richer [7] ou noun,
Deliverer ly fist et tynt en sa mesoun.

Harold's engagement to William of Normandy.

Harald ad ses eses, en ataunt [8] cum le ray
Le duk l'ad comaundé, et le volt en bone fay.
Un jour privément mounte un palefray,[9]
A sun park ly mene, et desuth un lay[10]
Descend, et [se] repose, et dist,[11] " Harald, à may
" Entendez par amours, et been te moustray
" Quel drayt en Engleterre à la coroune averay
" Après la mort Eduuard ; kant [12] joven estay,
" Il fu of moun pere, exillyez, ço cray,
" Dount [13] me dist sovent ke sun hair serray
" Du regne, si il pust quere,[14] et ayder le volay.
" Seureté me fist, [et] me dona [15] sa fay,
" Le afferma par escrit, dount sun seal en ay.
" Kaunt tu verras tens, aydez, et jo fray
" Delivrer tun frere et tun nefu à tay ;[16]

---

[1] *Willam*, D.
[2] *A Came*, C.
[3] *Wolnot*, B. *Wlnothe*, C. D.
[4] *ala*, B.
[5] *Descendi*, B.
[6] *Riker fitz Ioun*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne calls him " Richer " le fitz Izoun." It is, properly speaking, the accusative, or inflected form, of the name Ivo or Eudo, in their French nominatives Ives or Eudes.
[7] *Rykere*, C. *Riker*, D.
[8] *eses à tant*, B. *entaunt*, C. D.
[9] *son palfray*, B. *mounte palefray*, C. *mountee palefray*, D.
[10] Robert of Brunne translates this, " biside a water stank."
[11] *Descent e se repose, e dit*, B. C. D.
[12] *qe quant*, B.
[13] *Dunge*, B. *Dunke*, C. D.
[14] *si le pusse quere*, B. *si le peust quere*, D.
[15] *e me dona*, B. D.
[16] *et tay*, D.

Harold Harfaager and Tosti are slain.
King Harold is master, concerning whom now listen.

The duke of Normandy, William was his name,
Had in prison at Caen his city
Wulfnoth, Harold's brother, and his nephew Hacon.
Harold, when he was young, went incognito
To France to amuse himself in that kingdom.
He landed in Ponthieu, to his confusion.
The lord of that land, Richer son of Ivo,
Held him in prison, but the noble baron,
The duke of Normandy, whether Richer would or not,
Caused him to be set at liberty, and retained him in his house.

Harold had his pleasures, inasmuch as the king
Has recommended it to the duke, and desires it in good faith.
One day in private he mounts a palfrey,
Takes him to his park, and under a wood
Dismounts, and rests, and says, "Harold, to me
" Listen for love's sake, and I will show thee clearly
" What right I shall have to the crown in England
" After Edward's death; when I was young,
" He was with my father, in exile, I believe,
" Then he told me often that I should be his heir
" Of the kingdom if he could gain it, and I would " aid him.
" He made me surety of it, and gave me his pledge,
" Confirmed it by writing, to which I have his seal.
" When thou shalt see the time, aid, and I will cause
" Thy brother and thy nephew to be delivered to thee;

" Ma chere fyllye Marye à femme te dorray;
" A molt[1] ryche prince ta sor marieray,
" De terre et tenement[2] molt ben te fefferay;
" Tu serras chef justise pur fere draiture et lay."[3]
" Sire," dist Harald, " aider been te day;[4]
" Deliverez may moun frere, moun nefuz, saunz
" delay,
" Et tenez may covenaunt, et je le ws tenderay.[5]
" Après[6] la mort Eduuard la terre ws rendray."
Les prisouns sunt delivers, Harald se mette en vay;
La chose, kaunt tens vent, est mys en oblay.

William receives news of Edward's death.

Kaunt le rays Eduuard ad fet sun finement,
Hors de Engleterre est maundé privément
Al duk de Normendye de sun enterement,
Et ke le duk Harald, fiz le duk[7] de Kent,
Fu ray corouné par commune assent.

Writes to demand the crown.

Le duk escryt al ray, et prie curtaysement[8]
Ke en amour ly voylle tenir sun serement,[9]
Rendre à ly la terre ouf le corounement,[10]
Ou esposer sa feylle saunz autre dowement,
Et joysse la terre of kaunt ke à ço appent.[11]
Et si ço ne voille, sache-il surement
Ke sur ly guerra[12] à la playn estent.

Harold's refusal.

Le ray Harald rescrit, et dit k'yl n'ad[13] talent
Sa fyllye esposer, ne reen ly[14] soveent
Ke unkes ly promist terre ne tenement;
Si entrer voylle[15] sa terre, Harald serra present.

---

[1] *Et mult riche*, C.
[2] *et de tenement*, C.
[3] This line is omitted in D.
[4] *dit dunke Harald, aider bien vus doy*, B. C. *dist dunke Harald, eyder been voudray*, D.
[5] *et je vous tendray*, C.
[6] *Et après*, D.
[7] *le counte*, B. C.
[8] *au rei mult curteisement*, B.
[9] *tenir serment*, B.
[10] *'od l'encourounement*, B. *Rendre ly la terre ouf l'encorounement*, C. D.
[11] *E lesse la tere od quanqe i apent*, B. *oue qaunke à ceo apent*, D.
[12] *sur li là guerra*, B. C. D.
[13] *qe n'ad*, B.
[14] *rien ne li*, B.
[15] *voet*, B. *veut*, C. *volt*, D.

" I will give thee to wife my dear daughter Mary;
" I will marry thy sister to a very powerful prince,
" And will infeoff thee very well with lands and
" lordship;
" Thou shalt be chief justice to administer right and
" law."
" Sire," said Harold, "I ought well to aid thee;
" Deliver me my brother and my nephew without
" delay,
" And hold me covenant and I will hold it to you.
" After Edward's death, I will deliver the land to you."
The prisoners are delivered, Harold starts on his way;
The thing, when time comes, is put in oblivion.

When king Edward had made his end,
News is sent secretly out of England
To the duke of Normandy of his interment,
And that duke Harold, son of the duke of Kent,
Was crowned king by common assent.
The duke writes to the king, and prays him courteously
That in love he will keep his oath to him,
Deliver to him the land with the crown,
Or marry his daughter without other dower,
And enjoy the land with whatever belongs to it.
And if he will not do that, let him know surely
That he will make war on him to the full extent.
King Harold writes back, and says that he has no desire
To marry his daughter, that he has no remembrance
That he ever promised him land or lordship;
If he will enter his land, Harold will be there to meet him.

Sir Harald est rays, cum est avaunt[1] counté,
Le ray de Norwaye en bataylle [ad] tué,[2]
Le duk de Normendye ad tut ublyé.
William's invasion. Le duk [est] en la mer, sigle[3] ad levé,
Se veent en Engleterre of sa parenté,
De Flaundres et de Fraunce des Normaunz ad mené,[4]
Des Pykars et Burgoynouns,[5] à molt grant plenté.
A terre saunz encountre est-il aryvé.[6]
Kaunt Harald le seet, ne dort pas[7] sun pé,
Ne pas loynz de la mer ad le duk[8] trové;
Harald, cum hardiz, bataille l'ad[9] doné.
Molt fu graunt damage de sa desloyalté,[10]
Kaunt faillist del covenaunt[11] k'il avayt asseuré.
Battle of Hastings. Ore est la bataille en chaump comencé;
Le ray Harald par force[12] ad la route percé,
Normaunz et Flemaunz à terre ad cravaunté;
Si travaillez avaunt en bataylle n'eust esté,
Ne perduz ses genz, ne fet falseté,[13]
Ne sun serement enfraint pur la regalté,
Le duk William uncore n'eust gayné playn pé
De terre sur Englays, ne nul de sa mesné.
Dure est la bataille, maynt bel coup doné,[14]
Maynt beal fiz de mere prist là sun congé.
Harald en la pres fu taunt avaunt alé,
Des tauns des aliens de totes parz chargé,[15]
Des launces et des espeyes[16] taunt parfound naffré,

---

[1] *avant est*, B.
[2] *ad tué*, B. C. D. *est tué*, A.
[3] *est en la mer et sigle*, B. *est en la mere, le sigle*, D.
[4] *de Normendye ad mené*, C.
[5] *Burgoillons*, B. *De Pykarz et de Burgoyhuns ad mult*, C. *et Burgoyhouns*, D.
[6] *ad-il arivé*, B.
[7] *ne doit pas*, B.
[8] *le duc l'ad*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[9] *bataile ad*, B. *batayllely ad*, D.
[10] This and the two following lines are omitted in D.
[11] *de covenaunt*, C.
[12] *Et par force et vigour ad*, D.
[13] This line is omitted in D.
[14] *meynt bel coup d'espé*, B. C.
[15] *De tanz des aliens de totes chargé*, B. *De taunz des aliens de tote partez*, C. *de tote part*, D.
[16] *De lances e d'espeies*, B, *De launces et espeys*, C. D.

Sir Harold is king, as is afore related,
The king of Norway he has slain in battle,
He has all forgotten the duke of Normandy.
The duke is on the sea, he has raised his sail,
He comes into England with his kinsmen,
Has brought Normans from Flanders and France,
Picards and Burgundians, in great plenty.
He has landed without opposition.
When Harold is informed of it, his foot sleeps not,
He has found the duke not far from the sea;
Harold, like a man of courage, has given him battle.
Great was the damage by his disloyalty,
When he failed of the covenant of which he had given assurance.
Now is the battle begun in the field;
King Harold by strength has pierced through the army,
He has cast Normans and Flemings to the ground;
If he had not been previously laboured with battle,
Nor lost his men, nor done falsehood,
Nor broken his oath for the royalty,
Duke William would not yet have gained a foot
Of ground on the English, nor none of his family.
Hard is the battle, many a fine blow given,
Many a fair mother's son takes there his leave.
Harold had pushed so far forward in the crowd,
Was on all sides attacked by so many of the foreigners
So deeply wounded with spears and swords,

Ke mort cheet à la terre,[1] il fu le melz vané[2]
De tuz ke là morurent; al mort[3] kant fu livré,
Ix. mays et ix. jours avait-il regné.
Edwin and Morcar in London. Edwyn et Ma[r]kare,[4] de la parenté
Harald fiz Godwyn, en Loundres la cyté[5]
Prys ount la rayne, Egithe fu[6] nomé,
Femme al ray Eduuard, si l'ount envayé
A Karleoun en Wales, où ele est sauvé.
Edwyn et Markare of Loundrays sunt parlé,
Et dyent ben k'il ount un drayt hair trové,
A ky tu[t] Engleterre apent, si verité[7]
Puysse l'en tenir, Edgar[8] est clamé,
Edgar proposed for king. Neveuz le ray Emoun, et sunt accordé
Ke en la vile de Loundres sait rays resuscité.[9]
Mès le duk William avait si graunt pousté,
Kant Harald fu mort, k'il ad desheryté
Chascun ke [ne] volt venir ad sa fealté.[10]
Morkare cum faukoun al duk est reclamé;
Edwyn par pees fesaunt teent sun heryté.
La cyté de Loundres[11] n'est pas counsayllé
Corouner Edgar, dount molt est iré.
Le duk William après à Loundres est alé;[12]
Al leu de batayllle[13] un abbaye ad foundé.

---

[1] *à tere*, D.

[2] *il fu vanée*, B.

[3] *à mort*, B. C. *moryrent, à mort*, D.

[4] *Morkare*, B.

[5] *Godwyn la rayne ount envayé*, D., which omits the two following lines.

[6] *fu Egith*, B.

[7] For this and the following line D. has only one, *A qi Engletere apent, Edgare est clamé.*

[8] *Egar*, B.

[9] *soit rei suscité*, B. *sayt rays scuscité*, C. D.

[10] *qe ne veut venir à sa feauté*, B. C. *qe ne volt venir à sa fealté*, D.

[11] *Ly citayn de Loundre*, C. *Ly citayn de Loundres*, D.

[12] *vers Londre est passé*, C. D.

[13] *Au lieu de la bataile*, B. D. *A leu de la b.*, C. "Ther the bataile "was stoure," Robert of Brunne.

That he fell dead to the ground, he was the best famed
Of all who died there; when he was delivered to death,
He had reigned nine months and nine days.
Edwin and Morcar, of the kindred
Of Harold son of Godwin, in the city of London
Have taken the queen, Edith was her name,
Wife to king Edward, and have sent her
To Caerleon in Wales, where she is saved.
Edwin and Morcar have talked with the Londoners,
And state that they have found a right heir,
To whom all England belongs, if truth
Can be placed in it, Edgar he is named,
Nephew of king Edmund, and they are agreed
That in the town of London he be raised up king.
But duke William had so great power,
When Harold was dead, that he has deprived of heritage
Every one who will not come to his fealty.
Morcar like a falcon is reclaimed to the duke;
Edwin through peace-making holds his heritage.
The city of London is not persuaded
To crown Edgar, at which he is much enraged.
Duke William afterwards is gone to London;
On the place of battle he has founded an abbey,

Cy vent William le Conquerour à Loundres.[1]

Coronation of king William.

A Loundres, ad Noel,[2] veent of graunt baudour
Le duk de Normendye, William le Conquerour;
Counte, duk, baroun, chuvaler, vavasour,
Cytayn et burgays, sergaunt, gardayn de thour,
A ly sunt venuz cum à lur seygnur.
Cels[3] ke poynt ne venent perdent saunz rethour[4]
Terre et tenement, desherytez tuz jour.
A Flemans et Normaunz,[5] pur lur graunt labour,
Ad Frauncays et Pykars ke furent en l'estour,[6].
Ad doné large terres, dount ly successour
Est uncore saysy; molt est graunt honur[7]
Avenuz al duk, la coroune en amour
Ad le duk resceu del regne de graunt valour.
Le erceveske Stigande, de Engleterre primour,[8]
Fu par le apostoyle suspenduz cel hour;
De Everwyk Aldrede,[9] eveske et[10] confessour,
Ly dona la coroune, ke fust[11] à l'ancessour
Ly bon rays Arthur, de ly ne fu melliour.

William returns to Normandy.

Kaunt ly rays William, duk de Normendye,
Ad resceu ses homages, et sa pes establye,[12]
Rethorne en sun pays of sa chuvalerye.
Sa femme of ly remene en sa seygnurye,
De dames et pucels of ryche compaynye.[13]

---

[1] *Ci vient le Conquerour à Loundres l'an de l'incarnacion mil lxviij.* B. *Cy vent le Conquerour à Loundre anno Domini m°. lx°. sexto,* C.

[2] *al Noel,* C. D.

[3] *Ses,* B.

[4] For this and the following line, D. has, *Cels qe poynt ne venent desheritez touz jour.*

[5] *A Fleming e Normant,* B. *A Flemynges et à Normanz,* C.

[6] Robert of Brunne translates this rather literally, "that wer with "him in stoure."

[7] This line is translated, not quite correctly, by Robert of Brunne, "Hold yit the seysyne, with fulle "grete honoure."

[8] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[9] *Alred,* B.

[10] *et,* omitted in C. D.

[11] *he fust,* omitted in B. Instead of this line, D. has, *Kar Stigand de Canterbire suspendu fu à l'hour.*

[12] *homages, la terre establie,* B.

[13] This line is omitted in D.

Here William the Conqueror came to London.

To London, at Christmas, comes with great exultation
The duke of Normandy, William the Conqueror:
Earl, duke, baron, knight, vavasor,
Citizen and burgess, sergeant, warden of tower.
Are come to him as to their lord.
Those who come not lose without recovery
Land and lordship, disinherited for ever.
To Flemings and Normans, for their great labour,
To French and Picards who were in the battle,
He has given large lands, of which the successor
Is still seised; very great honour is
Accrued to the duke, in love the crown
Of the kingdom, of great worth, has the duke received.
Bishop Stigand, primate of England,
Was at that time suspended by the pope;
Aldred of York, bishop and confessor,
Gave him the crown, which belonged to the ancestor
The good king Arthur, there was no better than he.

When king William, duke of Normandy,
Has received his homages, and established his peace,
He returns into his country with his chivalry.
He brings back his wife with him into his lordship,
With rich company of ladies and maidens.

Tost après la Paske le rays à Dover applye,
Et Malde la rayne,[1] sa femme et lele amye ;[2]
De ilokes s'en vount[3] à Loundres of cele grant noblye.[4]
Le eveske Aldrede, de Deu fu-il benye ![5]
Vynt à cele feste, of molt de sa[6] clergye ;
Coronation of queen Matilda. Ke Malde sayt[7] corouné le rays sovent ly prie ;
Le eveske Aldrede[8] devotement l'ottrie.
[Mult fu la feste riche quant ele fu finie.][9]
Kant la solempneté fu fet devotement
Al ray et [à] la rayne[10] de l'encorounement,
Et le rays ad fet sun ordeynement,
Invasion of Edmund and Godwin. Dount governer sa terre en pes saunz[11] tourment,
Edmoun et Godewyn,[12] fiz Harald de Kent,
Sunt en Somersete venuz sodaynement,
Le pays wastez ount[13] et robbez lur argent,
Et Adnothe[14] ount tuez, of molz de bone gent.
Establez le rays estayt de Dover jekes à Trent.[15]
Kaunt[16] ount le pays robbé nettement,
En Irlaund arer passent of le vent.
Le counte Robert Comyn, en cel occydent,[17]
Resistance of the people of the north. Ad Burge[18] en Cumberland ad tenu parlement,
Le barné du north[19] ad lyé par serement,

---

[1] *Elianore la reine*, B. *Et Malade la reyne*, D. "And dam "Helianore," Robert of Brunne.

[2] *et beel amye*, C. D.

[3] *se vint*, B.

[4] *oue grant noblye*, D.

[5] *Alrede, de Dieu fu beneie*, B. *L'ercevesqe Aldrede de Dieu fu beneye*, C. D.

[6] *od sa*, B.

[7] *Qe Elianore sait*, B. *Qe Malade sait*, D. *Helianore*, Robert of Brunne.

[8] *L'ercevesqe Alred*, B. C. D.

[9] This line is omitted in A. and C., but supplied from B.

[10] *Au rey e au reaume*, B. *Al rey et à la rayne*, D.

[11] *et saunz*, C.

[12] "Edmunde and Edwyn," Robert of Brunne.

[13] *unt wastez*, B. C. D.

[14] *Adinoth*, B.

[15] *jekes à Kent*, D.

[16] *E quant*, B.

[17] Robert of Brunne translates this line, not strictly correct, "The "erle Robert Comyn, the west had "to welde."

[18] *Burgh*, B.

[19] *de northe*, C.

Soon after Easter the king puts in at Dover,
And Maude the queen, his wife and loyal friend;
Thence they proceed to London with that grand company of nobles.
Bishop Aldred, blessed was he by God!
Came to that festival, with much of his clergy;
The king often prays him that Maude should be crowned;
Bishop Aldred grants it devoutly.
Very rich was the festival when it was finished.

When the ceremony was devoutly performed
Of the coronation to the king and to the queen,
And the king had made his ordinance,
Wherewith to govern his land in peace without turbulence,
Edmund and Godwin, sons of Harold of Kent,
Are come suddenly into Somerset,
Have ravaged the country and plundered their money,
And have slain Adnoth, with many good people.
The king was established from Dover to Trent.
When they have clean robbed the country,
They crossed back with the wind to Ireland.
Earl Robert Comyn in the west
Has held a conference at Burgh in Cumberland,
Has bound the barons of the north by oath,

Ke al ray William nul de là se rend.
Kaunt le rays l'oit dire, sun chemyn enprent,
Al fertre saint Cuthbert veent [1] benignement.
Le eveske de Dureme [2] ad garny privément
Le ray William, et dist ke graunt [3] despisement
Serrait fet al ray par commune assënt
De tuz le Norays ;[4] escotez ore coment
Le Comyn [5] fu desceu, et trahy malement.
Li ray William, si tost sun host apparayllait,
La terre saint Cuthbert parmy la nout serchait,[6]
Et mist à l'espeye kant ke il trovait,
Avaunt ço ke le [7] Comyn rens de ço savayt.

Death of Robert Comyn.

La mesun le evesk al matyn ardayt,
Où sire Robert Comyn herbergez estait.
Ore est Robert mort, sun hair est de drayt
Desherité des terres [8] ke sun pere avayt.
Harald, fiz le rays de de Danemark, menayt
Knoute, sun frere, of ly, et en Humbre [9] aryvait,
Et le counte Turkille, ke cele gent guyait.
Le ray par la [10] novele sun hoste rethurnait ;
Jà [tost] orrez [11] coment la bosoyne alait.

Arrival of the Danes.

Le counte Edgare cel houre, ouf ses parentez,
Et Ulnothe [12] sun cosyn, of bone [13] gent assez,
Merlesweyn fiz Turkylle, et Swayn [14] ly senez,
Et Cospatrik de Escoce, il sunt [15] aryvez,
Et as gens Danays [16] se sunt assocyez.
Les Normaunz vers le seu sunt taunt affraez,[17]
Des chastels et viles hors sunt els alez,[18]

---

[1] *vint*, B.
[2] *Durham*, B. *Duram*, C.
[3] *kaunt*, C.
[4] *les Norreis*, B.
[5] *Le counte*, B.
[6] *cercieit*, B. *par un nuyt serchait*, C. *la nocte*, D.
[7] *Avant qe le Comin*, B. C.
[8] *de teres*, D.
[9] *ouf ly en Houmbre*, C.
[10] *pur la*, B.
[11] *Jà tost orrez*, C. D.
[12] *Wenoth*, B. C. D.
[13] *et bone*, D.
[14] *Saane*, B.
[15] *i sount*, B. C. D.
[16] *à gent Danays*, C. D.
[17] *se sunt affraez*, D.
[18] *Des chasteus et de viles hors sount alez*, B. *De chaustels et des viles*, C. *et de vile*, D.

That none of that country should submit to king
William.
When the king was informed of it, he takes his way,
Comes benignly to the shrine of St. Cuthbert.
The bishop of Durham has secretly warned
King William, and told him that great despite
Would be done to the king by common assent
Of all the Northmen; listen now how
The Comyn was deceived, and miserably betrayed.

King William, as soon as he had prepared his army
Swept over the land of St. Cuthbert by night,
And put to the sword all he found there,
Before the Comyn knew anything of it.
The bishop's house was burning in the morning,
In which sir Robert Comyn was lodged.
Now is Robert dead, his heir is rightly
Disinherited of the land which his father had.
Harold, son of the king of Denmark, brought
Cnut, his brother, with him, and arrived in the
Humber,
And earl Turkil, who was the leader of that people.
The king on the news led his army back;
You will now hear quickly how the business went.

Earl Edgar at that time, with his kinsmen,
And Wulnoth his cousin, with good men enough,
Marlesweyn son of Turkil, and Sweyn the prudent,
And Cospatric of Scotland, they have arrived
And have united with the Danish people.
The Normans towards the south are so frightened,
They have abandoned castles and towns,

Mès Everwyk ount ars, les murs cravauntez,
Issi [1] ke les Danays ne feusent recettez.
Sir William Malet, wardayn des countez,[2]
Et Gilbert [3] le Gaunt, al ray sunt passez,[4]
Et [5] la survenue de genz tost [6] ly ount countez.
Le ray William en ire sun serement ad jorez,
Ke jammès des Norays n'àvera pytez.[7]
Destruction of the North country.
S'en va vers le north, prez wastez et blez,[8]
Tue pere et fiz, les femmes sunt livrez [9]
Ad vilaine mort,[10] n'est nul eschapez.
Les Danays, kaunt venent, sunt arer rosez
Mès quayntement al ray ount-il envayez,[11]
Et taunt par messagers de pes of ly parlez,
Et taunt de lur avoyr ount-il à ly [12] donez,
Ke en Danemark sunt-il repayrez.
Le ray demort el north,[13] et fet ses voluntez.
Mort sunt les prodeshommes, est nul [14] demorez,[15]
For[s] clers de saint eglise, ke à payne sunt salvez;
Chuvals, chens, et chaz [16] par poverte ount mangez.
Molt fist le Conquerour cel houre graunt pechez,
Kaunt il prist vengaunce sur les ordinez,

---

[1] *Issint*, B.

[2] *du countez*, B. D. *de countez*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Sir William Malet was war-"deyn of the cuntres."

[3] *Gisbrith*, B. *Gysbricht de Gaunt*, C. "Sibrigh the Gaunt," Robert of Brunne.

[4] This line is omitted in D.

[5] *Et* omitted in B. and D.

[6] *tut*, B. *des gentz tost*, D.

[7] *de Norays avera pitez*, C.

[8] *devers le north, waste preez et blez*, B. C. D.

[9] *et fiz, n'est nul eschapez*, D., omitting the next line.

[10] *De vileinie mort*, B. Robert of Brunne has singularly misunderstood this passage, but perhaps he used a MS. in which the second line was missing. He translates it, "An slouh bothe fader and sonne, "women lete thei gon." The meaning of the original is clear, that the women were subjected to every kind of shameful outrage before they were killed.

[11] *al rey de pees ount parlez*, D., which omits the next line.

[12] *unt à li*, B. C. D.

[13] *en north*, B. C. D.

[14] *nul n'est*, B. *et nul demorés*, C.

[15] This and the five following lines are omitted in D.

[16] *chens, chates*, C.

But they have burnt York, and thrown down the walls,
So that the Danes might not be harboured in it.
Sir William Malet, warden of the counties,
And Gillert de Gaunt, have gone over to the king,
And have immediately informed him of the arrival of these people.
King William in anger has sworn his oath,
That he will never have pity of the Northmen.
He proceeds towards the north, wastes meadows and corn,
Slays father and son, the women are delivered
To disgraceful death, not one has escaped.
The Danes, when thay come, are driven back ;
But craftily they have sent to the king,
And have by their messengers talked so much of peace with him,
And have given him so much of their wealth,
That they are returned to Denmark.
The king remains in the north, and does his will.
Dead are the freemen, not one is left,
Except clerks of holy church, who are saved with difficulty ;
Through want, they have eaten horses, dogs, and cats.
Much did the Conqueror at this time great sin,
When he took vengeance on the ecclesiastics,

Ke ren avaynt mesfet [de]denz ses[1] regnez.
De Everwik à Dureme n'est nul leu[2] habitez,[3]
Ne[4] nule terre overte, ne greyn de blé semez.
Ix. [aunz,] dist[5] les escriz, ad cel mal durez.[6]
Removal of the body of St. Cuthbert. Le eveske de Dureme[7] ad ses clers maundez,
Le cors seynt Cuthbert de fertre ount levez,
Se mettent à la fute, cum fussent[8] exillez.
Les clers saint Cuthbert vount en tapisoun ;
Ad Gervals[9] comencent purver mansioun,
Et[10] pus vount vers le north jekes à Bethlemtoun ;[11]
Le terce leu fu Tughale,[12] où avaint mansioun.
La quarte en le Eylande,[13] où la mer enviroun
Se retret kaunt vindrent[14] of graunt devocioun,
En l'ylle sunt entrez saunz turbacioun.
La mer si tost reflote, et terre et mansioun[15]
De mer est enclose, cel habitacioun.
N'ad doute de sourvenue, ne creynte de féloun.[16]
Churches burnt and robbed by the Normans. Le eglise de Gervaus cel houre par arsoun,
Le eglise de Dureme,[17] saunz altre achesoun,[18]
Sunt mys de tutes pars à confusioun.
Le ymage en la croyz, cum suffry passioun,
Est ars et vole en poudre al vent cum fet sabloun.[19]

---

[1] *Qe rien n'aveient mesfet dedeinz les reguez*, B. *dedenz ses*, C.

[2] *nul lieu est*, B. *est nul lu*, C.

[3] *est tote degastez*, D.

[4] *Ne* omitted in B. and D.

[5] *Neef aunz, dist*, C. *Noef auntz*, D.

[6] *endurrez*, B.

[7] *Durhem*, B.

[8] *furent*, B.

[9] *Gervaus*, B. C.

[10] *Et* omitted in D.

[11] *Bethleemton*, B. *Bethelem toun*, C. *Bethlemptoun*, D. *Bethlyngton*, Robert of Brunne.

[12] *Teghale*, B. *Tugale*, C. *Tughalle*, Robert of Brunne.

[13] *en Eland*, B. *en Elaunde*, C. *en Elande*, D. "The ferth was "Holy Eland," Robert of Brunne. Holy Island is well known.

[14] *qaunt veent*, D.

[15] *e meson*, B. C. D.

[16] Robert of Brunne adds, rather spitefully, "That were with the "kyng, Norman no Burgoloun."

[17] *de Durhem*, B. *Durem*, C.

[18] *encheson*, B.

[19] *cum fet à vent sablon*, B. *cum fet al sabloun*, C. This and the preceding line are omitted in D.

Who had done no wrong in his kingdoms.
From York to Durham is no place inhabited,
Nor no land laboured, nor seed of wheat sown.
Nine years, says the writing, has this evil lasted.
The bishop of Durham has sent for his clergy,
They have raised the body of St. Cuthbert from the shrine,
And take to flight as if they were exiles.

The clergy of St. Cuthbert go in concealment;
They begin at Gervaux to provide a resting-place,
And then go towards the north as far as Bedlington;
The third place was Tughale, where they had a resting-place.
The fourth in the Iland, where the sea round it
Draws back with great devotion when they came,
They have entered the island without any impediment.
The sea immediately flows back, and, land and dwelling,
That habitation is inclosed by the sea.
There is no fear of attack, or dread of felon.
The church of Gervaux at that time by fire,
The church of Durham, without other cause,
Are reduced in all parts to destruction.
The image on the cross, as he suffered passion,
Is burnt and flies in powder before the wind like sand.

Normaunz tut fesaint, en guyse de larour ;
Les bens ke sunt trovez[1] enportent suz geroun.

King William's repentance.

Kaunt le ray William seet la verité,
Coment saint eglyse est si mal mené,
Ad tuz ses ministres tost ad comaundé
Ke chascun trespas sait ore amendé,[2]
Et ke saint eglyse sait playnement feffé
Denz les fraunchises[3] dount ele fu dowé,
Et ke la reverye là sait restore.[4]
Mès nes un des robbours de plus ne fu chargé,
Ne portayt penaunce de [l']iniquité.[5]
Le evèske de Dureme[6] revent à sun sé,
Of le cors saint Cuthbert al fertre[7] remené.
William le Conquerour ad tempré sun corage,[8]
Et ben se repent k'il ad fet outrage,
De ses crueltez en tutes pars se swage,[9]
Pardoune ses forfez, delivre les hostage.[10]
Le counte Cospatrik[11] fu gentil et sage,
Se affaite al ray[12] William, demort en sun menage ;[13]

Cumberland given to earl Cospatrick.

Le ray tost largement ly doune en heritage[14]
Combreland à tenir de ly par homage.[15]
Cospatrik[16] s'en vait de propre coustage
Al chastel de Baumborge, al route[17] molt salvage ;
Enhancer fet la thour,[18] adrescer le murage.

---

[1] *Le bien qe trove*, B. *Le been qe fust trové enportaint suz*, C. D.

[2] *seit tost amendée*, D.

[3] *De totes les franchises*, B. *De tuz les*, C. D.

[4] *la reverie seit redrescé*, B. *ly sayt restoré*, C.

[5] *Ne portaunt penaunce de l'iniquité*, B. *de l'iniquité*, C. This and the preceding line are omitted in D.

[6] *Durhem*, B.

[7] *ad fertre*, B. *à fertre*, C.

[8] *atempre son*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it: "changis his "wikked wille." Robert abridges his original in what follows.

[9] *se assuage*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[10] *les forfetz . . . li hostage*, B. C. D.

[11] *Gospatrik*, B. C. D.

[12] *à rey*, B.

[13] *demoert de son menage*, D.

[14] *ly doun heritage*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[15] *Combrelaunde ly doune à tenir en heritage*, D.

[16] *Gospatrik*, B. C. D.

[17] *au Baumburgh, od route*, B. *of rute*, C. *oue route*, D.

[18] *Et hauncer fet la toure*, C. *E hancer fet la tour*, D.

Normans did it all, in guise of robbers;
The goods which are found they carry in their laps.

When king William knows the truth,
How holy church is so ill treated,
He has immediately given command to all his officers,
That amends be at once made for every trespass,
And that holy church be fully infeoffed
In the franchises with which it was endowed,
And that the plunder be there restored.
But not one of the plunderers was further punished,
Nor underwent penaunce for his wickedness.
The bishop of Durham returned to his see,
With the body of St. Cuthbert brought back to the shrine.

William the Conqueror has moderated his anger,
And repents entirely that he has done violence,
In all parts ceases his cruelties,
Pardons the offences against him, sets free his hostages.
The earl Cospatric was noble and wise,
Conciliates king William, remains in his household;
The king soon gives him freely in heritage
Cumberland, to hold of him by homage.
Cospatrick proceeds at his own cost
To the castle of Bamborough, with a very fierce army;
He causes the tower to be made higher, the walls to be raised.

Malcolme, ray d'Escoce, s'en leve en la rage,[1]
Ke Cospatrik[2] enprent si graunt vasselage,
S'en va vers Comberland of tut sun barnage,
La terre pur destrure, le pople[3] fere hountage;
A mort sunt tuz livrez, ou menez[4] en servage;[5]
Cel houre fust Escoce plain de cel lynage.

Malcolm's invasion, and Cospatrick's treachery.

Le counte Cospatrik[6] le ray William se affye,
Of molt de sun barnage s'en alt[7] en Normendye.
Le ray Malcolme de Escoce ad Comberland honye;
Cospatrik le soefre par là fere [sa] mestrie,[8]
Poy set le ray William de sa tricherye.
Trais mil livres prist du ray de Albanye,
Ke poynt [ne] se movayt,[9] ne sa chuvalerye.
Le fiz Robert Malet, Elys[10] de Lyndesye,
Est la mer passé, cum il fust espye,
Al rays ad tost counté[11] de la robberye
Ke Malcolm ad fet en sa seygnurye,
Et coment Cospatrik se tent en tapye.
Le ray se mette en mer, et Engleterre applye.[12]

King William returns.

Le rays à Norhaunton sun host assemblayt,
E tost vers Comberland[13] of grant esplait alayt.
Ilokes kant il vint, la terre destruayt,[14]
Mesun ne manauntye esteaunt ne trovait.[15]

---

[1] *se leve à la rage*, B. *se leve en la rage*, C. D.

[2] *qe Gospatrik*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this line: "That Gospatrik of suilk thing "bare his state so hie."

[3] *au pople*, B. *al pople*, D.

[4] *e mené*, B.

[5] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[6] *Cel counte Gospatrik*, B. *Eu* (apparently for *Au*) *count Gospatric* C. *Au count Gospatrik*, D.

[7] *son barné, en alt*, B. *de son barné s'en alait*, C. *de son barné* D.

[8] *Gospatrik ly sofre . . . fere sa mestrye*, C. *sa mestrye*, D.

[9] *ne se movast*, B. C. *ne se movayt*, D.

[10] *Eliz*, B. *Helys*, C. D.

[11] *Au rey ad counté*, B. *Al rays had tout c.*, C. D.

[12] *s'aplie*, B.

[13] *Si tost à Comberland*, B. *Si tost vers C.*, C. D.

[14] *la terre destrut esteit*, B. C. *la tere wastée trovayt*, D. The latter is the reading followed by Robert of Brunne, and is in all probability the correct one.

[15] This line is omitted in D.

Malcolm, king of Scotland, rises into a rage,
That Cospatrick assumes so great boldness,
Proceeds to Cumberland with all his barons,
To destroy the land, and put the people to shame;
They are all delivered to death, or led into slavery;
At that time Scotland was full of that race.

In earl Cospatrick king William trusts,
He proceeds with a great part of his barons into Normandy.
King Malcolm of Scotland has put Cumberland to shame;
Cospatrick suffers him to do his will there,
Little knows king William of his treachery.
Three thousand pounds he took of the king of Albany,
That he should not stir, or his knights.
Helys of Lindsey, the son of Robert Malet,
Has crossed the sea, as though he were a spy,
Has immediately told the king of the plundering
Which Malcolm had done in his lordship,
And how Cospatrick held himself in concealment.
The king puts to sea, and lands in England.

The king assembled his army at Northampton,
And immediately went with great dispatch to Cumberland.
When he came there, he found the land laid waste,
He found neither house nor mansion standing.

Malcolme, ray de Escoce, enfuaunt se huchait;[1]
Kânt le ray William drayn le mer passayt,
Malcolme sun repair jammès ne quidayt,
Noun quidayt Cospatrik, ke fist la descait.
Ore est William venuz, et queraunt[2] les..vayt;
En Abyrnythyn,[3] le ray William rescayt
Malcolm cum[4] prisoun; mercy ly criayt,
Pur argent saunz noumbre dist ke se rendrayt.[5]
Le ray William enprist ço ke il volait,[6]
Et sun mal talent à Malcolm pardonait.
Malcolm par escrit homage ly fesayt[7]
Pur le regne de Escoce, ke il de ly tenayt,[8]
A ly et ses[9] hairs, cum William ly grauntayt.[10]
Kant la pes fu fet, le rays rethornayt,[11]
Cospatrick punished. Le counte Cospatrik del counté[12] pryvayt,
Et de ses altres terres ly desheritayt,
Et puys à Dureme[13] s'en ala tut drayt.
King William at Durham. Le eveske devaunt ly,[14] si cum il priaist,
Fist overir le fertre, et le saint cors levayt.[15]
Le ray cel saintuarye en lermaunt regardayt,
Et argent saunz noumbre sun l'auter cochayt.
Tutes les fraunchises ke saint Cuthbert avait[16]
William le Conquerour cel houre confermayt.
Le chastel de Dureme de sun avoyr feffayt;[17]
Le eglise saint[18] Cuthbert de mur environayt;

---

[1] *en fuant s'en buscheit*, B.

[2] *en querant*, B.

[3] *En Abrenityn*, B. *Abbernithyn*, C. *Abrenethyn*, Robert of Brunne.

[4] *qui cum*, B. *ke com*, C. D.

[5] *qe rendreit*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[6] *Le rey Willam enprist d'argent taunt qe volait*, D.

[7] *à li fescit*, B.

[8] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[9] *e à ses*, B. C.

[10] *la grantait*, C.

[11] *fet, William retournait*, C.

[12] *de cŏanté*, C. *du countée*, D.

[13] *Pus à Durhem*, B.

[14] *devaunt le rey*, B. C. D.

[15] This line is omitted in D.

[16] D. makes one of this and the following line: *Touz les fraunchises seint Cuthbert confermayt.*

[17] *de son avoyr fesait*, C. This and the preceding line are omitted in D.

[18] *de saynt*, C. *Et l'eglise*, D.

Malcolm, king of Scotland, escaped by flight;
When king William last crossed the sea,
Malcolm never expected his return,
Nor did Cospatrick expect it, who did the deceit.
Now is William come, and goes in search of them;
At Abernethy king William receives
Malcolm as a prisoner; he cries him mercy,
Says that he will ransom himself for money without count.
King William took what he would,
And forgave Malcolm his ill will.
Malcolm by writing did homage to him
For the kingdom of Scotland, which he held of him,
To himself and his heirs, as William granted it him.
When peace was made, the king returned,
He deprived earl Cospatrick of the earldom,
And disinherited him of his other lands,
And afterwards proceeded straight to Durham.
The bishop in his presence, as he prayed him to do,
Caused the shrine to be opened, and raised the holy body.
The king contemplated these reliques in tears,
And placed on the altar countless money.
All the franchises which St. Cuthbert had
William the Conqueror confirmed at that time.
The castle of Durham he enfeoffed with his property;
He surrounded the church of St. Cuthbert with a wall;

Et[1] puys à Everwik sun host comaundayt.
Aler de bon ayr, il mesme suerayt,
La feste [de] Pentecouste[2] ilokes demorayt.

The king returns to London, and appoints justices.

Le rays à Everwyk fet[3] sa pes cryer
De Berwik[4] à Dover, par terre et par mer;
Et puys s'en va vers Loundres,[5] la cyté justizer.
Desore volt ke la terre, taunt cum dut regner,[6]
Sait guyé par lay, et, pur le drait tryer,[7]
Et pur le drait[8] sustenir, et tort amender,
Ad fet parmy la terre[9] justises assigner.

The three monks of Lindsey, and their monastic foundations.

Cel houre de Lindesey iij. moynes oy nomer,
Le secund ad à noun[10] Elwyn, et Alwyn[11] le primer,
Raynfrede fu le terz, ke vount[12] quere habiter.
Huge le fiz Bardryk[13] les fet herberger,
Vescounte de Everwyk le ray le fet[14] clamer,
Les moynes ly prient les voylle convayer[15]
Hors de say bayllye,[16] le vescounte de bon quer
Jekes à Chastel Nove[17] condut les fet aver;

Gervaux.

De ilokes à Gervaus tost se fount mover,
Et venent à Dureme[18] à l'eveske Walter,
Et suz ly comencent[19] ilokes à mesouner.
Encloyst[re][20] large i fount,[21] le eveske fet paer
Lower[22] as overours, et fet ordiner

---

1 *Et* omitted in D.
2 *de Pentecoste*, B. C. D.
3 *fist*, C. D.
4 *De Everwik*, B.
5 *à Loundres*, B.
6 *cum deit regner*, B. *com dayt*, C. This and the following line are omitted in D.
7 *e par dreit trier*, B.
8 *E pur dreit*, B. C. D.
9 *sa terre*, B.
10 *ad noun*, C. D.
11 *Aldwin*, B. C. D.
12 *Reynfrid fu le tierce, qe vount*, B. *ke vint*, C.
13 *Hugo le fitz Galdrik*, B. *Hugo le fiz Baldrik*, C. D. Robert of Brunne calls him "Hughe le fitz "Galdre."
14 *li fist*, B. C. *ly fit*, D.
15 *li prient q'il voile enveier*, B. *ly pryent les voel conveer*, C.
16 *Hors de la tere*, D.
17 *Jesqe au Chastel Nove*, B. *Jekes al*, C.
18 *à Durheme*, B.
19 *E suth li comencerent*, B.
20 *Encloistre*, B. C. D.
21 *il fount*, C.
22 *Le over*, C. *Le overe*, D.

And then commanded his army to York
To go in good condition, he himself would follow,
He dwelt there the feast of Whitsuntide.

The king at York caused his peace to be proclaimed
From Berwick to Dover, by land and by sea;
And afterwards proceeds to London, to dispense justice in the city.
Henceforth he wills that the land, as long as he shall reign,
Shall be ruled by law, and, to try the right,
And to support the right and amend wrong,
He has caused justices to be appointed through the land.
At this time I have heard three monks of Lindsey named,
The second was named Ailwin, and the first Aldwin,
Rainfred was the third, they go to seek a place to inhabit.
Hugh fitz Baldric gave them lodging,
The king caused him to be proclaimed sheriff of York,
The monks beg him that he will escort them
Out of his jurisdiction, the sheriff with generous heart
Causes them to have an escort as far as Newcastle;
Thence they soon remove themselves to Gervaux,
And come to Durham to bishop Walter,
And under him begin there to build a house.
A large cloister they make, the bishop pays
Wages to the workmen, and causes to be ordained

Ke covent i ad eglyse pur ministrer.[1]
Desor est monial ke eynz fu provender;
En le honur[2] nostre dame la chose fount chaunger.
York. Puys vount les iij. moynes à Everwyk arer,
L'abbeye Nostre Dame là fount comencer;[3]
Chapele i fount[4] lever, encloystre carpenter.
De ilokes s'en vount ayllours, quant covent est plener.
Whitby. Tost sunt à Wyteby,[5] ke haut esta sur mer,
Et comencent abbye, et moynes establer;[6]
En le honur seint Hylde fet est le mouster.
Cels sunt les iij. moynes ke fount repairer
La vye de sainte gens, ke[7] paen fist waster.
William's conquests in Normandy. Le ray William à Loundres ses congez ad pris,
Et vayt al parlement[8] par maundement Lowys.[9]
Les xij. pers de Fraunce sunt tuz[10] à Parys.
Le ray William i vent, ilokes ad conquis
La vile de Terewenne, le chastel de Malbys,
Les quels ces auncestres avaint perdu jadis.[11]
Kant pris est la saysyne, revent en sun pays,
Visite Northumberlande,[12] confort ses amys.
Le counte de Sureye[13] par Hacoun fiz[14] Henrys
Maunde al rey William, ben ly est avys
Ke Engleterre perdra par ses enemys,
Si cels ne chastye ke vers ly ount mespris.
Le ray William regnaunt, kant la novele oyst,
Le viij. an après ke Engleterre conquyst,

---

[1] *i ert, l'eglise ministrer,* B. *le eglise,* C. *Ke covent i sait l'eglyse,* D.

[2] *En honour,* D.

[3] *nostre dame illoqes comencer,* B. *illoqes pur comencer,* C. D.

[4] *chapele fount,* B. C. D.

[5] *à Whitebi,* B. *Wytby,* C. *Whtby,* D.

[6] *estaller,* B. D.

[7] *de sainz he,* C. *des seinte gentz,* D.

[8] *à parlement,* B. C.

[9] *comaundement Lawys,* C. D.

[10] *Les duzze peres du France touz sount,* B.

[11] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[12] *Normendie,* B. C. *Pus visite Normendye,* D.

[13] *de Sorays,* C.

[14] *le fitz,* C.

That there be a convent there to do service in the church.
Henceforth are monks what before were prebendaries;
They cause the thing to be changed in honour of Our Lady.
Afterwards the three monks go back to York,
They cause the abbey of Our Lady to be begun;
They cause a chapel to be raised there, a cloister built.
Thence they proceed elsewhere, when the convent is full.
Soon they are at Whitby, which stood high above the sea,
And begin an abbey, and to establish monks;
The minster is made in honour of St. Hilda.
These are the three monks who cause to be reformed
The life of holy people, which the pagans destroyed.

King William at London has taken his leave,
And goes to the conference at the invitation of Louis.
The twelve peers of France are all in Paris.
King William came thither, there he has conquered
The town of Therouenne, and the castle of Malbys,
Which his ancestors had formerly lost.
When possession is taken, he returns to his country,
Visits Northumberland, encourages his friends.
The earl of Surrey by Hacon fitz Hervey
Sends word to king William, that he is quite of opinion
That he will lose England through his enemies,
Unless he chastise those who have misbehaved towards him.

King William reigning, when he received this information,
The eighth year after he conquered England,

The conspiracy of Roger, earl of Hereford.

Tut drait à Wyncestre sun parlement purvyst,
Et de ses enemys privément enquyst.
Le counte de Norfolk de mal[1] est surdist,
Ceo fu le quens Roger, en prisoun là remyst.

Death of Waltheof.

Le counte de la Marche, Wlnothe,[2] le chef perdist,
Le ray William à tort decoler ly fist
Al mount de Wyncestre, ço parust saunz respyt.[3]
Sun cors est portez al mouster[4] où il gist;
Deus i fist miracle en terre kaunt homme ly myst;[5]
William de Malmesbyre[6] le parle[7] en sun escryt.

Murder of the bishop of Durham.

Le terce an après cele dure vengaunce,
En Northumberland avyint un meschaunce.
Le eveske de Dureme, Alchere,[8] de une launce
Fu feru parmy en Gatesheved saunz manaunce.[9]
Sa mort fu purveu de gent[10] de mescreaunce,
Ke furent de lynage Lyolf counte[11] de Caunce,[12]
Ke avaunt fu tuez, il fist la destaunce;
Le evesk [n']avayt coup,[13] par saint Dynys de Fraunce![14]
Le ray fet exillier femmes et enfaunce
Du lynage Lyolf pur sa[15] descayvaunce,
Ses hayrs desherytez[16] de terre et de tenaunce.[17]
Le quarte an après, vynt vers Alvertoun,
Of ly fu parlé de un privé tresoun,

[1] *de Northfolk del male est*, C. *Northfolk*, D.

[2] *Ulnothe*, D. The person alluded to was, of course, Waltheof.

[3] For this and the following line, D. has, *A Wyncestre aparust, où son cors gist.*

[4] *à mouster*, C.

[5] *le mist*, D.

[6] *Malbesbyry*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[7] *la parle*, B.

[8] *L'esvesqe de Durhem, Wauter*, B. Robert of Brunne also reads "Waltere."

[9] *par chaunce*, B.

[10] *par gens*, B. C. *par gentz mescreaunce*, D.

[11] *viscounte*, B. *vescount*, C. D.

[12] Robert of Brunne translates it, "Sir Liolfes kynde of Kent."

[13] *L'esvesque n'avoit coupe*, B. *L'evesque n'avayt coupe, par Dinys*, C.

[14] This line is omitted in D.

[15] *de Liof, pur la d.*, C.

[16] *desheriter*, B.

[17] This line is omitted in D.

Straight at Winchester provided his parliament,
And made privately inquiry concerning his enemies.
The earl of Norfolk is suspected of evil,
That was earl Roger, he remained there in prison.
The earl of the March, Wulnoth (Waltheof), lost his head,
King William caused him to be beheaded wrongfully
Above Winchester, that appeared without respite.
His body was carried to the minster where he lies;
God performed a miracle when they put him in the earth;
William of Malmsbury says so in his writing.

The third year after this severe vengeance,
A misfortune happened in Northumberland.
The bishop of Durham, Walcher, with a spear
Was struck through at Gateshead without help.
His death was effected by people of misbelief,
Who were of the lineage of Liulf earl of Caunce,
Who was previously slain, he caused the feud;
The bishop was not to blame, by St. Denys of France!
The king drove into exile women and children
Of the kindred of Liulf for this act of treachery,
His heirs disinherited of land and fief.

The fourth year after he came to Alverton (North-allerton),
Information was given him of a secret treason,

Suspicions against king Malcolm.

Ke le ray Malcolm volayt en puysoun[1]
Engyner[2] le rays par mayn de feloun.
Le ray sun fiz i maunde pour saver la resoun,
Robert al Courthose,[3] ly vayllaunt baroun.
Robert, kaunt il vint, trova tut mençoun,
Rethorna vers sun pere, reposayt à Northoun,[4]
Le Chastel Nove sur Tyne fist lever[5] en sun noun.

The Domesday survey.

En l'an xviij. le ray[6] William regnait,
Parmy tut[7] Engleterre estendures envayt,
Countez et barounyes[8] estendre fesayt,
Et cumben de terre chuvaler tenir dayt,[9]
Et cumben à sergauntye[10] de terre appendayt,
De[11] cumben saynt eglyse dowé dounc estayt.
Et[12] quant de la value[13] soume verray savayt,

William divides his dominions among his sons.

Soun fiz aynez, Robert, appeller comaundayt,
Et tote Normendye lors à ly grauntayt;
Et passa la mer[14] après, et par escrit feoffayt
De totes altres terres ke en nule part[15] avayt,
Et du ray de Fraunce par homage tenayt.[16]
Ad sun fiz William par chartre assignayt
Le realme de Engleterre, of trestut le drayt;
Et[17] ad sun fiz Henry Suthwales devisayt,
Et Langcastre schire, jekes à Bromeswayt.[18]
Ade, ke fu sa fyllye, et le ray[19] taunt amayt,
Le counte de Blesence,[20] Esteven, l'esposayt,

---

[1] *en prysoun*, C. *en pusoun*, D.
[2] *enjeiner*, C.
[3] *Robert à Curthoze*, B.
[4] This line is omitted in B., and appears not to have been contained in the copy used by Robert of Brunne. *à Northton*, C. *à Norhamptoun*, D.
[5] *lever* omitted in B.
[6] *ke reis W.*, D.
[7] *tut* omitted in B.
[8] *Countes et barouns*, C. *Countées et baronnés*, D.
[9] This line and the one following are omitted in D.
[10] *Combien à sergaunt*, B. C.
[11] *De* omitted in B.
[12] *Et* omitted in B.
[13] *de value*, C.
[14] *passa mer*, B. C.
[15] *qe nul part*, B. C. *totes les altres teres que nule part*, D.
[16] This line is omitted in D.
[17] *Et* omitted in C. D.
[18] *à Bromestheveit*, B.
[19] *sa fidle, qe le rey*, B.
[20] *de Plesence*, B., and Robert of Brunne. Blois was the old Roman *pagus Blesensis*.

That king Malcolm intended with poison
To beguile the king by the hand of a felon.
The king sends his son there to ascertain the truth,
Robert Courthose, the valiant baron.
Robert, when he arrived, found it all falsehood,
Returned to his father, rested at Norton,
Caused the New Castle on Tyne to be raised in his name.

In the eighteenth year that king William reigned,
He sent valuers throughout England,
Caused counties and baronies to be valued,
And how much land a knight ought to hold,
And how much land pertained to a serjeantry,
With how much holy church was then endowed;
And when he knew the exact sum of the valuation,
He sent for his eldest son Robert,
And then granted him all Normandy;
And crossed the sea afterwards, and by writing enfeoffed him
With all the other lands which he had anywhere,
And held by homage of the king of France.
To his son William by charter he assigned
The kingdom of England, with all the right;
And to his son Henry he left South Wales,
And Lancaster shire as far as Bromeswait.
Ada, who was his daughter, and whom the king loved so much,
The count of Blois, Stephen, married,

Et le ray Esteven sur ly engendrayt,
Ke à graunt tort après en Engleterre regnayt.
Custaunce [fu] sa feylle,[1] le ray le mariayt[2]
Al counte de[3] Brettayne, ke Alane se nomayt.
Death of William the Conqueror. Deus aunz et demy le rays demorayt
Cel houre en Normendye du secle quant partayt.[4]
Vynt aunz et ix. mays[5] sun regne governayt.
Ad Kame[6] en Normendye le eveske le[7] entoumbayt,
En le eglyse saynt Esteven, il mesmes la foundayt.

Anno Domini M° LXXX. *octavo.*

Accession of William Rufus. William le Conquerour est mort et sevelye,
Et Robert à Courthose est duk de Normendye,
Et William le Rous à Loundres en le abbye
Ad Westmoustre rescayt coroune et mestrye.
Kant de la regalté est plainement saysye,
Se leve parmy le terre graunt controversye.
Counte, duk, baroun, et molt de la clergye,
En cytez et vyles,[8] chascun sur altre[9] crye,
Ke Robert à Courthose[10] est hair de seygnurye,
Et[11] coroune dait porter, et sun frere mye.[12]
The rebellion against him. Ke fount les graunz seygnurs? chascun de sa partye
Sayse les chastels, et terre et manauntye.
Le rays en est dolens, s'en va queraunt aye;
Trays aunz en tel dolour demena sa vye.
Par counsayl des amys, passa par navye
Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce, et durement ly prie
Ke counsail ly doune; le ray Phelippe l'ottrye.
Phelippe ses messagers envayt pàr graunt vaidye

---

[1] *Custaunsce fu sa fidle*, B. *Custaunce fu sa feylle*, C. *fu sa fylle*, D.
[2] *ly rays la maryait*, C.
[3] *A counte de*, C.
[4] *quant passeit*, B. *passait*, C. D.
[5] *et xi. mays*, C. *et un mays*, D.
[6] *à Chame*, B.
[7] *le* omitted in C.
[8] *e en viles*, B.
[9] *sur altres*, C.
[10] *de Curthose*, B. *al Curthose*, D.
[11] *Et* omitted in B.
[12] *son frere ne mie*, B.

And begat on her king Stephen,
Who afterwards reigned very wrongfully in England
Constance was his daughter, the king married her
To the count of Britany, who was named Alan.
Two years and a half the king remained
This time in Normandy, when he departed from the world.
Twenty years and nine months he governed his kingdom.
The bishop entombed him at Caen in Normandy,
In the church of St. Stephen, he founded it himself.

Year of our Lord 1088.

William the Conqueror is dead and buried,
And Robert Courthose is duke of Normandy,
And William Rufus at London in the abbey
At Westminster receives the crown and sovereignty.
When he is fully in possession of the royalty,
There arises through the land great controversy.
Earl, duke, baron, and many of the clergy,
In cities and towns, each exclaims to the other,
That Robert Courthose is heir to the sovereignty,
And ought to carry the crown, and not his brother.
What do the great lords? each on his side
Seizes the castles, and land and lordship.
The king is in grief at it, goes away seeking aid;
Three years he leads his life in this sorrow.
By the advice of his friends, he passed by ship
To king Philip of France, and prays him earnestly
That he will give him counsel; king Philip grants it.
Philip sends his messengers in great haste

A clers[1] de Engleterre, et ad la barounye,
Et prie ke els se mettent de tut l'estaumpye
En agarde de prince, ke en nule part[2] se lye.
Le pople de Engleterre du ray Phelippe s'affye,
Le duk Robert ausynt, le Rous ad ço se plye.
Le ray Phelippe dait faire cel arbitrye.
Jà sunt les deus freres venuz à Parys
Devaunt le ray Phelippe, fiz le ray Lowys;
En le agarde Phelippe par chartre se sunt mys.[3]
King Philip's award. Le ray lure dist, "Baysez, et seez ws amys.[4]
" Des terres vostre pere averez bon devys."
En baysaunt se acordent, ke furent enemys;
Pur jugement rescayver al baunk sunt assys
Entre les xii. peres, ke là sunt requys.
Ore escotez coment[5] Phelippe dist sun avys.
Le ray Phelippe dist devaunt sun barnage,
" William le Conquerour fu prodhome et sage,
" Normendye de moy tynt par sun homage,[6]
" Si fesaynt ses auncestres, quite[7] de servage.
" Engleterre conquist par graunt vasselage
" Sur le ray Harald, ke nul drayt par parage
" Avayt al realme, ne nul de sun lynage.
" Herytez demort al fiz primer en age;
" Et home doune[8] à femme purchace en mariage,
" Et ad homme estraunge ke sert pur louwage.
" Et ws pur ço, Robert,[9] tenez cel heritage,
" Et William le purchace reteygne en[10] seynurage.
" Tun pere ly[11] devysa, issint cum waynage
" Et ses heritez, cum dist temoynage."

---

[1] *As clers*, D.
[2] *qe nul part*, B. C. *ke nule partye*, D.
[3] *se sont par chartre mis*, B.
[4] *e soiez amis*, B. *et seez amys*, C. D.
[5] *Escotez ore coment*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[6] *tient par homage*, C.
[7] *quites*, C.
[8] *dount*, D.
[9] *E pur ceo vus, Robert*, B. D. *Et pur vous, Robert*, C.
[10] *William le purchaça, resceive en*, B. C. *Et* omitted in D. *resceyve en*, D.
[11] *ly* omitted in C. D.

To the clergy of England, and to the barons,
And prays them that they will submit entirely the case
To the decision of a prince, who is bound to neither party.
The people of England put trust in king Philip,
Duke Robert likewise, Rufus submits to this.
King Philip is to do this arbitration.

Now are the two brothers come to Paris
Before king Philip, son of king Lewis;
They have submitted themselves by a deed to the judgment of Philip.
The king said to them, "Kiss, and be friends;
" Of the property of your father you shall have a good
" arrangement."
They, who were enemies, kissed and were reconciled;
To receive judgment, they are seated on the bench
Between the twelve peers, who are convoked there.
Now listen how Philip delivered his opinion.

King Philip said before his barons,
" William the Conqueror was a man of experience
" and wisdom,
" He held of me Normandy by his homage,
" So did his ancestors, quit of service.
" He conquered England by great valour
" Against king Harald, who no right by relationship
" Had to the realm, nor none of his family.
" The inheritance of it remains to his first son in
" age;
" And man gives what he has gained to wife in
" marriage,
" And to a strange man who serves for his hire.
" And you, therefore, Robert, hold this inheritance,
" And let William retain in his lordship what was
" gained.
" Thy father left it to him, thus as gain
" And his heritance, as testimony says."

Robert's pilgrimage prevented.

Robert al Courthose[1] de parfit corage
Devers la Terre Sainte se mette en pilrymage.[2]
Ad Marsil[3] kaunt vent,[4] of sun graunt menage,
Par le ray de Fraunce defenduz est passage;
Le duk Robert rethorne, molt fu grant damage.

King William's parliament.

Le ray William le Rous vint par bele chaunce
A saint Pol de Loundres, saunz perde et grevaunce,[5]
Ad countes et barouns, [à] chascun[6] de pussaunce,
Par lettre ad maundé venir[7] à sa parlaunce;
Par escryt les moustre[8] coment le ray[9] de Fraunce
Entre ly et sun frere ad sopye la destaunce,
Par resun et lay, saunz coup de espeye et launce;[10]
En Deu les promette, par lettre et fyaunce,
A sustenir drayture saunz nule nusaunce.
Countes et barouns de cel ount esperaunce,
Ly rendent les chastels of les apurtenaunce.[11]

Expedition to Scotland.

L'an suant après, à la my esté,
Est le duk Robert à Dover aryvé;
Le ray William sun frere, of molt graunt amysté,[12]
Of molt graunt nobleye, à Loundres l'ad mené.
Deynz viij. jours après al rays est nouncyé
Ke Malcolme, ray de Escoce, guere ad comencé,
Et la terre le rays vilement robbé.
Le rays del duk sun frere s'en est counsaylé,
Se mettent[13] vers Escoce; mès Malcolme est alé
Loynz en Louthyan, où cyl ly[14] ount trové.

Malcolm's submission.

Par poer de[s] deus freres[15] Malcolm ad doné

---

[1] *à Curthose*, C. D.
[2] *pelrymage*, D.
[3] *A Marsylie*, C. *A Marsylle*, D.
[4] *vient*, B. *vynt*, C.
[5] *Loundres, et fet sa parlaunce*, D.
[6] *à chescun*, B. C. *A countes et barouns moustre coment le rey de Fraunce*, D., in place of the three lines.
[7] *aprie venir*, C.
[8] *le moustre*, C.
[9] *cum le rey*, B.
[10] *ou launce*, B.
[11] *od la portenance*, B. *ouf l'apurtenaunce*, C. D.
[12] *Le rey Wiliam, od grant amisté*, B. *out grant amité*, C. D.
[13] *Si mettent*, B.
[14] *od ceaus li*, B. *où cels ly*, D.
[15] *des ij. freres*, D.

Robert Courthose, with perfect nobleness,
Proceeds on pilgrimage to the Holy Land.
When he came to Marseilles, with his great attendance,
The passage is forbidden him by the king of France;
Duke Robert returns, it was very great damage.

King William the Red came by good chance
To St. Paul's at London, without loss and injury,
To the earls and barons, to every man of power,
He has sent by letter to come to his parliament;
He shows them by writing how the king of France
Has appeased the difference between him and his brother,
By reason and law, without blow of sword and spear;
He promises them in God, by letter and engagement,
To support right without any injury.
Earls and barons put trust in this,
Restore him the castles with the appurtenance.

The year following, at midsummer,
Duke Robert is arrived at Dover;
King William his brother, with very great friendship,
And a very large train of nobles, has conducted him to London.
Within eight days after it is announced to the king
That Malcolm, king of Scotland, has commenced war,
And vilely robbed the king's land.
The king has taken counsel with the duke his brother,
They proceed to Scotland; but Malcolm has gone
Far into Lothian, where these have found him.
Through the power of the two brothers, Malcolm has given

Quaraunte mil lyvres al rays en sa mané,[1]
Et sur ço l'ad fet[2] homage et fealté,
Et par sun serement à cel est obligé.[3]
Ore est le ray William à Loundres rethorné;
Westminster Hall. Une sale ad Westmouster trop bel i ad. levé,[4]
Et si ne fu fors à chaumbre de prince ordiné.[5]
Ore est le duk Robert en Normendye alez;
Ore est le rays William[6] en Gales demorez.
Le houre de sun regne[7] ix. aunz sunt passez,
Le jour de saint Hyrce,[8] fu dolur assez
Parmy Northumberland, en burge[9] et en cytez.
Death of Malcolm of Scotland. Malcolm, ray de Escoce, Eduuard, sun fiz aynez,
Par le counte Robert, et par ses alyez,[10]
Cum feluns le rays, en chaump sunt tuez,
Ly et le ray Malcolm;[11] ke là sunt saulvez,
Sunt fuyz en Escoce, si ount[12] assemblez
Le pople de la terre, et rays ount cryez
Dovenalde,[13] frere Malcolm, en les regaltez.
Duncan,[14] fiz Malcolm, devent molt mespaez,
Revolutions in Scotland. Kant il vayt[15] sun uncle aver ses heritez.[16]
S'en alt al ray[17] William, en Gales l'ad trovez,
Le fet cum est alez tut ly ad countez;
Et cum sun seygnur lige sur ço ly ad priez[18]

---

[1] *al roys et sa mené*, C.

[2] *ly fet homage*, C. *là fete homage*, D.

[3] This line is omitted in D.

[4] *trop beel ad levé*, C.

[5] *à chambre primes ordeiné*, B. *de primes ordiné*, C. D. This line is translated as follows by Robert of Brunne: "First thouht and founden "for chambre was it right."

[6] *E le Wiliam*, B. *Et le roy William*, C. D.

[7] *Le jour qe de son reyne*, C.

[8] *de seint Brice*, B. C. D.

[9] *en burges*, C. *en burys et citez*, D.

[10] *e ses aliez*, B. C. D.

[11] *Les gens le rey Malcolme*, B. C. D.

[12] *i unt assemblez*, C. *et ount*, D.

[13] *Dufnald*, B. *Duffenald*, C.

[14] *Dõñecan*, D.

[15] *vit*, B.

[16] *les herités*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[17] *S'en aile à roy*, C. D. has, for this and the next line, the single line, *S'en alt al rey Willam, tote ly ad countez.*

[18] For this and the next line D. has, *Et qe de ly son home voille aver pitez.*

Forty thousand pounds to the king in his hands,
And thereupon has done him homage and fealty,
And has bound himself to this by his oath.
Now is king William returned to London;
Has raised there a very fair hall at Westminster.
And yet it was only ordained for a prince's chamber.

Now duke Robert is gone into Normandy;
Now king William remains in Wales.
At this time nine years of his reign are passed,
On St. Brice's day, there was grief enough
Through Northumberland, in burgh and in city.
Malcolm, king of Scotland, and his eldest son Edward,
Through earl Robert and his allies,
As traitors to the king, are slain in the field,
He and king Malcolm; those who have escaped there,
Are fled into Scotland, and have assembled
The people of the land, and have proclaimed king
Donald, Malcolm's brother, in the regalities.
Duncan, Malcolm's son, becomes much dissatisfied
When he sees his uncle in possession of his inheritance.
He goes to king William, has found him in Wales,
Relates to him all the fact as it had happened;
And has thereupon prayed him, as his liege lord,

Ke de ly sun home voyl aver pytez.
Et par sun escrit[1] al rays est obligez,
Ke leals ly serra et ad[2] ses voluntez.
As Englays et Normaunz le rays ad comaundez,
Ke sir Dovenald par force en ount[3] deposez,
Et ad sir Doncan[4] le regne ount donez,
Et le fount saisir en les dignetez,[5]
Du ray de Engleterre[6] à tenir en fez.
Englays et Normaunz al ray sunt repairez.
[La secunde an[7] après, Dufnald ad mandez][8]
Ses amys de Escoce, ke ount of ly parlez,[9]
Et par commune assent sunt cels accordez,[10]
Ke lur ray Duncan[11] ount à mort liverez,
Et sir Dovenald en ray relevez.

Rebellion of Robert de Mowbray.

Le ray William cel houre[12] trop avait à fere,
Kant Robert de Moubray le volait deffere,
Et corouner sun cosyn de tut Engleterre.
Le ray William le Rous à force ly va quere;
Robert est tost pris, sun chastel mys à terre.
Robert en prisoun[13] ne seet quele part trere;
Moult melz ly vausist aver vesquy saunz guere.
Ore gist à Wyndesover,[14] ke molt ly dayt desplere.

Severe punishment of the Welsh.

Le secounde an après, le rays estut mover,
Tut drait en quarreme kant fu passé la mer,[15]
En Gales est alez les Walays justizer,[16]

---

[1] *E par bon escrit*, B. C. D.
[2] *ad* omitted in C.
[3] *Qe sire Dufnald par force unt*, B. C. D.
[4] *Donekan*, C. *Et sire Donecan*, D.
[5] This line is omitted in D.
[6] *Ou roys en Engleterre*, C.
[7] *Et le second an*, C.
[8] This line, omitted in A., is here supplied from B. C. D.
[9] *et sunt touz acordez*, D.
[10] This line is omitted in D.
[11] *Qe sur le rey Dunkan*, B. *Donekan*, D.
[12] *à cel hour*, C.
[13] *enprisoné*, B. For this and the two following lines, D. has:
Robert moert en prisone, après cel afere,
A Wyndesover où gist, he mult ly deit desplere.
[14] *à Windesore*, C.
[15] *quant fu passé le iver*, B. *quant fu passé mere*, C.
[16] *les Gualeis chastier*, B. *chastier*, C. D.

That he will have pity on him, his man.
And he has bound himself to the king by his writing
That he will be loyal to him and at his will.
The king has commanded the English and Normans,
That they have deposed by force sir Donald,
And have given the kingdom to sir Duncan,
And put him in seizure of the dignities,
To hold in fee of the king of England.
English and Normans are returned to the king.
The second year afterwards, Donald has sent for
His friends of Scotland, who have conferred with him,
And by common assent those are agreed,
That they have put their king Duncan to death,
And have raised Donald again to be king,

At this time king William had too much on his hands,
When Robert de Mowbray sought to depose him,
And crown his cousin king of all England.
King William the Red went to seek him by force;
Robert is soon taken, his castle levelled with the ground.
Robert in prison knows not to what side to turn;
It would have been much better for him to have lived without war.
Now he lies at Windsor, which ought to displease him much.

The second year after, the king was obliged to march,
Straight in Lent when he had crossed the sea,
He is gone to Wales to chastise the Welsh,

Ke sa terre alaynt destrure et waster.[1]
Le rays William les prent, et les fet tuer,
Ad joven ne ad velz ne volt esparnyer;[2]
Unkes fu[3] vengaunce en Gales fet si fer.
Après la graunde vengaunce ke en Gales fet estayt,
A Everwyk el north[4] le ray Wylliam alayt.
Edgare, fiz Malcolme, i vynt[5] et moustrayt
A sun seygnur le ray sun claym et sun drayt
Al realme[6] de Escoce, coment il chalangayt,
Ke resoun ly frayt[7] curtaysement pryait.[8]
Ly rays en ad pyté, sun pople assemblayt,
[Eustace de Fereres[9] le pople lors guieit][10]

Edgar raised to the throne of Scotland.

Of Edgare en Escoce, sicum ly devisayt,[11]
Loynz en Laudyan Dovenald trovayt,[12]
Et de leu en altre taunt dure ly chascayt,[13]
Ke hors du regne de Escoce pur tuz jours passait.[14]
Et ly bons Edgare la regyoun resçayt,
Et fet al ray William ço ke fere dayt.[15]
Frere fu la bone Malde, dount maynt hom parlayt,
Ke le rays Henry après esposayt.[16]

King William's unjust rule.

Kant le rays William ad fet sun talent
En Gales et en Escoce, ne fet[17] force de gent,
As ryches et as povers[18] se porte estraungement.
Clers et saynt eglyse charge trop sovent,
Xvij. mousters abbate nettement,
Et joint à la foreste[19] terre et tenement,

[1] *waster et destruer*, C.
[2] *Les veulz et les jovens le reis fet tuer*, D.
[3] *unqes ne fu*, B.
[4] *en north*, C. D.
[5] *i* omitted in C.
[6] *A realme*, C.
[7] *li fist*, B.
[8] This line is omitted in D.
[9] *de Ferers*, C. D.
[10] This line is omitted in A., but supplied from B. C. D.
[11] *si cum le rei diseit*, B. C. D.
[12] This line is omitted in B.
[13] This line is omitted in D.
[14] *d'Escoz Eustace ly chaccit*, D.
[15] *quanqe faire dait*, C. This line is omitted in D.
[16] *reposait*, C.
[17] *ne fist*, C.
[18] *à riches et à poveres*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne has translated this line, "To riche men was he "grille, of pover held no tales."
[19] *à sa forest*, C. D. "Tille his "foreste," Robert of Brunne.

Who went destroying and laying waste the land.
King William takes them, and causes them to be slain,
He will spare neither young nor old;
Never was vengeance executed in Wales so dreadful.

After the great vengeance which was done in Wales,
King William went to York in the north.
Edgar, son of Malcolm, came there and explained
To his lord the king his claim and his right
To the kingdom of Scotland, how he claimed it;
Prayed him courteously that he would do him right.
The king has compassion on him, assembled his people,
Eustace de Ferreres then led the people
With Edgar in Scotland, as he directed him,
Far in Lothian he found Donald;
And so close pursued him from place to place,
That he passed out of the kingdom of Scotland for ever.
And the good Edgar receives the kingdom,
And performs to king William that which he ought to do.
He was brother of the good Maude, of whom many spoke,
Whom king Henry afterwards espoused.

When king William has done his will
In Wales and Scotland, he makes no account of people,
Behaves himself strangely to the rich and to the poor.
Too often he taxes clergy and holy church,
Destroys entirely seventeen minsters,
And joins to the forest land and lordship,

Ke unkes eynz ne fust en tens de nul parent.
Cele vye pur veirs dura[1] longement,
Xiiij. aunz molt près[2] avayt governement
De tut Engleterre le jours ke mort ly prent.
Du secle est passez, escotez ore coment.[3]

The king's dream.

Par un Jovedy à vespre le ray ala cocher[4]
En la Nove Forest,[5] où devayt veneyer.
Si tost fu endormy, comença sounger[6]
K'il fust en sa chapele, soul saunz esquyer,
Les us[7] furent fermés k'yl ne pout passer;
Si graunt faym avayt, ke l'estout manger,
Ou mourir de faym, ou tost arager.
Il n'ad payn ne char, ne pessoun de mer;
Il prent et devoure le ymage sur le auter,
La Marye et le fiz, saunz rens là lesser.[8]
Al matyn, kaunt il leve,[9] le eveske fet maunder,
Ode de Wyncestre, et ly va[10] counter
Tut cum ly avynt[11] en sun somoyller.
Le eveske ly dist, "Sir rays, Deus est rays saunz per;[12]
" Tu l'as coroucez, te covent amender,[13]
" Par penaunce, et[14] desore plus sovent amer.
" Par Vendredy en boys ne devez mes chacer,
" Ne à la ryvere of faucoun chuvaucher;
" Tel est ta penaunce, et tu le days garder."
Le eveske ad pris congé, et vait à sun maner;[15]

---

[1] *Tiel vie pur veir en durra*, B. C.

[2] Robert of Brunne says, "Wele "tuelve yere."

[3] *Du siecle est passez merveillousement,*
Jeo le vus dirray, escotez ore coment, B.
This is the reading followed by Robert of Brunne.

[4] *Par Judi à vespre le rey va cocher*, B. *Par Jovedy al vespre*, C. *Par Jovedy . . . . al cocher*, D.

[5] *la Novele Foreste*, B.

[6] This line is omitted in C.

[7] *Les hues*, C. *Les hous*, D. "The "dures were so sperd," Brunne.

[8] Robert of Brunne translates this, "The Mariole ther scho sat, "of hir no thing he left."

[9] *quant leve*, B.

[10] *et le va*, D.

[11] *com ly avaint*, C.

[12] *Dieu est sanz pere*, B.

[13] *l'amender*, D.

[14] *et* omitted in B.

[15] *en son maner*, C.

As never was before in the time of any of his kindred.
This life, in truth, lasted long,
Very nearly fourteen years he had the government
Of all England on the day when death took him.
He is departed from the world, now listen how.

One Thursday evening the king went to bed
In the New Forest, where he was going to hunt.
As soon as he was asleep he began to dream
That he was in his chapel, alone without esquire,
The doors were shut that he could not go out;
He had so great hunger, that he must eat,
Or die of hunger, or soon go mad.
There is neither bread nor flesh, nor fish of the sea;
He takes and devours the image on the altar,
Mary and her son, without leaving anything there.
In the morning, when he rises, he causes the bishop
to be sent for,
Odo of Winchester, and proceeds to relate to him
All as it had happened in his sleep.
The bishop said to him, "Sir king, God is king with-
" out equal,
" Thou hast angered him, and thou must make amends
" By penance, and henceforth more often love him
" You must no more hunt in wood on a Friday,
" Nor ride to the river with falcon;
" Such is thy penance, and thou must keep it."
The bishop has taken leave, and goes to his manor;

Death of William Rufus.

Après la messe oye, ala le rays[1] juer,
Sa penaunce oblye, fet maunder ly archer.
Walter Tirel i fust, ke set del mister,
Ad sun tristre vayt, la beste va wayter.[2]
Un cerf hors de l'herd[3] comença launcer,
Et ly Frauncays Tyrel se pressayt[4] à seter,
Quide ferir la beste, et fert[5] le rays al quer.
Kaunt le eveske l'oyt dire, fist trop mourne cher.
Le cors à Wyncestre[6] fist[7] le eveske porter,
Et mettre en toumbe[8] al mouster saynt Per.
[Prioms qe sire Dieu pardoun li voile doner.][9]

Anno Domini M° *centesimo.*

Henry I. crowned.

Le frere[10] William le Rous, Henry pusné par noun,
Mauriz, eveske de Loundres, dona la coroun;
Robert à Courthose, par counsayl de un Brettoun,[11]
Est de la Terre Sainte[12] revenuz saunz resoun,
En Engleterre aryve saunz collusioun,
Pur parler of sun frere en sa regioun.
La femme le duk Robert fu en proteccioun
Le counte de Cornewaylle, fillye [fu] Charloun[13]
Seygnur de Cecylle, Egyth[14] la dame ad noun.
[Robert la prent e mene à sa possessioun.][15]

---

[1] *rays* omitted in B.

[2] *la beste à wayter*, C. D.

[3] *de herde*, C. D.

[4] *E li Franceis Tirel se prestait à*, B. *Et ly Fraunceis Terel s'aprestait*, C. D.

[5] *la beste, ferist*, B. C. D.

[6] Robert of Brunne read it, "at Westminstre."

[7] *fet*, C. D.

[8] *Et mettre le en tumbe*, C. D.

[9] A. and C. omit this line, and it is here supplied from B

[10] *Au frere*, B. (apparently), *A frere*, C. D.

[11] *de un bricoun*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this,

"Robert the Courthose to the
"Holy Lond was went,
"A Breton, dayet his nose! for
"Robert thider sent."

[12] *de la Seinte Terre*, B.

[13] *fidle fu Charloun*, B. *fille fu Karlioun*, C. *fille fu Karloun*, D.

[14] *Cisile, Egdith*, B. *de Cizile, Edgiht*, C. *Edgith*, D. Robert of Brunne calls her "Dame Edith, "bright as glas."

[15] This line is omitted in A., but supplied from B. C. D.

After mass was heard, the king goes to take recreation,
Forgets his penance, orders the archers to be sent for.
Walter Tyrel was one of them, who is skilled in the craft,
He goes to his hunting station, lies in watch for the beast.
A stag begins to start out of the herd,
And the Frenchman Tyrel hastens to shoot,
Believes that he is going to strike the beast, and strikes the king to the heart.
When the bishop heard tell of it, he made very sorrowful cheer.
The bishop caused the body to be carried to Winchester,
And placed in a tomb in the minster of St. Peter.
Let us pray that the Lord God will give him pardon.

Year of our Lord 1100.

To the brother of William the Red, Henry the Elder by name,
Maurice, bishop of London, gave the crown.
Robert Courthouse, by counsel of a Breton,
Is returned without reason from the Holy Land;
He arrives in England without hindrance,
To talk with his brother in his kingdom.
Duke Robert's wife was in protection
Of the earl of Cornwall, daughter of Charles
Lord of Cecily, Edith was the lady's name.
Robert takes her and conducts her to his possessions.

Marriage of Henry with Maude of Scotland.

Cel houre en Escoce un damoysele[1] estait,
Fillye al ray Malcolme, de ky maynt hom p[ar]layt.[2]
Taunt fu bone et bele, ke Henry le[3] esposayt,
Ray de Engleterre, Malde home l'appelayt.
Le erceveske Anselynus[4] la dame corounayt,
Le jour saint Martyn à Loundres; Randolf, par grant desçayt,
Eveske de Dureme,[5] en Normendye envayt,
Par counsayl de plusurs, à Courthose, [et] priayt[6]
Ke en Engleterre venist of poer k'il avayt,
Et tote la commune la terre ly rendrayt.

Invasion by duke Robert Courthose.

Le duk Robert si tost sun poer[7] assemblayt.
Le rays en fust garny, les Cynk Pors maundait,
Et taunt les promyst ke du son les[8] dorrayt,
Pur garder la mer, ke Normaund[9] n'y entrayt,
Al comencement afferme ke la chose si sayt.[10]
Le rays avayt graunt haste, à Hastinges[11] s'en vayt,
Et de pere et chauz un chastel i levayt.
Le ray of tute sun hoste ilokes demorayt
[Pur le duk Robert, qe venir quideit;][12]
Mès le evesk Randolf autrement fesayt.

Bishop Randolph's treason.

Le evesk à Suthamtoun vent[13] of sa clergye,
Et plusurs de V. Porz par douns à ly se lye,
Ke ount le ray Henry pur Robert guerpye.
Cent et xv. nefs[14] s'en vount en Normendye.
Le duk Robert les sayse, et of sa compaynye
Jour de goul[15] de Aust à Portesmue applye,

---

[1] *une damysele*, D.
[2] *parleit*, B. C. D.
[3] *la*, D.
[4] *L'evesqe Anselm*, B. *Anselmus*, C.
[5] *de Durhem*, B.
[6] *e prieit*, B. C. D.
[7] *power*, C.
[8] *les* omitted in B. C. D.
[9] *qi Normaund*, B.
[10] *A comencement qe la chose est fet*, B. *A comencement afferme qe la chose est fait*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Ther sikernes was fast of the five portes."
[11] *en Hasting*, C.
[12] This line, omitted in A., is supplied from B. C. D.
[13] *vint*, B. C.
[14] *Cent et v. neefs*, C.
[15] *de la goule*, B. D. *de la gule* C. "The first day of harveste," Robert of Brunne. The "gule of "August" was Lammas day, Aug. 1.

At that time there was a damsel in Scotland,
Daughter of king Malcolm, of whom many a one spoke.
She was so good and fair that Henry married her,
King of England, Maude they called her.
Archbishop Anselm crowned the lady
On St. Martin's day in London; Randolph, by great deceit,
Bishop of Durham, sends into Normandy,
By counsel of several, to Courthose, and solicited him
To come into England with the power he had,
And he would bring to him all the commune of the land.
Duke Robert immediately assembled his power.
The king was warned of it, he sent to the Cinq-Ports,
Promised them he would give them so much of his money,
To keep guard on the sea that no Normans entered there,
That at first he is assured that the thing will be so.
The king had great haste, he goes to Hastings,
And raised there a castle of stone and lime.
The king with all his army remained there
For duke Robert, who he expected would come;
But bishop Randolf managed it otherwise.

The bishop came with his clergy to Southampton,
And binds to himself by his gifts several of the Cinq-Ports,
Who have deserted king Henry for Robert.
A hundred and fifteen ships proceed to Normandy.
Duke Robert seizes them, and with his company
Arrives at Portsmouth on the first day of August,

Se mette vers Wyncestre, et banèr desplye.
Chastel fet lever en noun de seygnurye.
[A countes e barons par lettre mande, e prie][1]
Pur suffisaunt werdoun venir à sa partye ;[2]
Assez i sunt venuz de la chuvalerye.
Le duk par sa lettre dunke sun frere[3] Henry defye.

Peace restored through Anselm.

Mès ad cele fez, par counsayl et aye
De Anselyne[4] le erceveske, la guere est jà sopye,[5]
Issi ke le rays pur sa[6] seygnurye
Dorra à [duk] Robert,[7] taunt cum est en vye,
Iij. mil mars par an de sa tresorye.
Escryt du covenaunt[8] fu fet, ne dotez mye.

Rebellion of Robert de Belesme.

Kánt ceste guere par pes issint fu finye,
Robert de Belesey, par sa surquiderye,[9]
Passa la mer, et vayt en la[10] Walesserye ;[11]
Des Walays et Frauncays[12] sa route fu plenye.
Le chastel de Arundel et de Tyghil[13] ad garnyé.
Bonz cytez et viles[14] ad pris et saysye ;
Encountre le ray Henry à Burge la guere[15] crye
En Salopschire, ke fu en sa ballye.
Le [ray] Henry[16] si tost s'en va, ne targe mye ;

---

[1] This line is omitted in A., but supplied from B. C. D.

[2] *en sa partye*, C. D.

[3] *par sa lettre son frere*, B.

[4] *De Anselme*, D.

[5] *la guere est e la sopie*, B. *est là sopye*, C. *est sopye*, D.

[6] *Issint qe li rey pur la s.*, B. *pa seignurye*, C. D.

[7] *Durra à duk Robert*, B. C. *Dura al duk Robert*, D.

[8] *de covenant*, C.

[9] *Robert de Beleise, par surquiderie*, B. *Beleyse*, C. D.

[10] *Passe mer et veet à la*, B. *Passe meere et vait*, C. D.

[11] "and into Wales went," Robert of Brunne.

[12] *De Galeis et de Franceis*, B. *De Walays en Fraunceys*, C. *saute fu plenye*, D. Robert of Brunne has given rather an explanatory paraphrase than a translation of this,—

"He gadred grete mayné of alle
"that he mot hent;
"The Frankis tille him felle, and
"alle the Walsch fulle fikelle."

[13] *de Haroundel et Tigil*, B. *de Arunde et Tighille*, C. *de Aroundel, de Tyghille*, D. *Tikelle*, Robert of Brunne.

[14] *Cités, burgs, et viles*, B.

[15] *sa guere*, B. C. D.

[16] *Ly rays Henry*, C. *Le reis Henry*, D.

Marches towards Winchester, displays his banner.
He causes a castle to be raised as a sign of sovereignty,
He sends by letter to earls and barons, and prays them
That for sufficient pay they come to his party.
Many of the knights are come there.
The duke by his letter then defies his brother Henry.
But this time, by counsel and aid
Of archbishop Anselm, the war is appeased,
So that the king for his lordship
Will give to Robert, as long as he is alive,
Three thousand marks by year from his treasury.
Writing was made of the agreement, fear not.
When this war was thus closed by peace,
Robert de Belesme, through his overweening,
Crossed the sea, and goes into the Welsh land;
His army is full of Welshmen and Frenchmen.
He has garrisoned the castles of Arundel and Tickhill;
Has taken and seized good cities and towns;
Proclaims war against king Henry at Bridgenorth
In Shropshire, which was in his charge.
King Henry proceeds against him, delays not;

Ses chastels abbate, et Robert [eń] est fuye ;[1]
Denz les xxx. jours après pris est[2] par espye,
Et menez al rays pur sa felounye,
Arnald, sun frere, of ly, ne pount[3] aver mercye,
Forjugez sunt du regne[4] pur lur trycherye.

Good influence of queen Maude.

Ore est le rays Henry[5] de ses enemys vengez,
De tresor et de moble ryches hom assez.
La bone rayne Malde taunt l'ad counsaylez,
Ke countes et barouns, et genz de cytez,
Sunt amys[6] al rays, et ad ses voluntez.
Avys est al rays, ke trop est chargez
De iij. mil mars,[7] dount il[8] est obligez
Al duk Robert, sun frere ; ses amys ad maundez,

King Henry invades Normandy.

A countes et barouns, issint se ad counsaylez,
Ke kant ke sunt gentis en Normendye trovez
Ad fet de ses douns par messagers privez.
Et[9] of graunt noblye il mesmes est mer passez,
Aryve en Normendye, cum avayt ordinez ;
Et le duk Robert de Kame est engettez,[10]
Bayouse[11] ad perduz, et rentes[12] et fez ;
Le plus de Normendye est al ray jorez.
Robert à Courthose eust perdu à cele feez[13]
Terres et tenures de ses herytez,
Ne fust le counte William de Mortayn appelez,
Et Robert de Beleyse, ke furent exyllez
Hors de Engleterre, et ly ount aydez.
Ad Lawys, le fiz Phelippe,[14] sunt les deus alez
Par[15] le duk Robert, soccours les ad grauntez,

---

[1] *en est fuie*, B. C. D.
[2] *Dedeinz le trentisme jour pris est*, B. *après* is omitted in C. D. *Dedeinz*, D.
[3] *ne peut*, C.
[4] *sunt le regne*, B.
[5] *Henry* omitted in D.
[6] *amys* omitted in C.
[7] *De les treis mil marz*, B.
[8] *il* omitted in C.
[9] *Et* omitted in D.
[10] *de Kame estre gettez*, C.
[11] *Bayon*, B., which is the reading followed by Robert of Brunne, who calls the town Bayone.
[12] *reittes*, C.
[13] *ad perdu cele foiz*, B, C. *eust perdu cel fez*, D.
[14] *A Lowis fitz Philip*, B. D.
[15] *Pur*, B.

Throws down his castles, and Robert is fled;
Within thirty days after he is captured through a spy,
And taken to the king for his treason,
Arnald, his brother, with him, they cannot have pardon,
They are banished from the kingdom for their treason.

Now is king Henry avenged of his enemies,
He is a very rich man in treasure and goods.
The good queen Maude has been so much his adviser,
That earls and barons, and people of cities,
Are friends to the king and at his will.
The king is of opinion that he is too much taxed
With the three thousand marks, for which he is bound
To duke Robert, his brother; he convokes his friends
Earls and barons, thus he has taken advice,
That whatever there is of noble people in Normandy
He has gained through his gifts by privy messengers,
And he has himself passed the sea with a great train of nobles,
Arrives in Normandy, as he had ordained;
And duke Robert is expelled from Caen,
Bayeux he has lost, and rents and fees;
The greater part of Normandy has taken the oath to the king.
Robert Courthose would have lost this time
The lands and tenures of his heritage,
If the earl William de Mortagne had not been called in,
And Robert de Belesme, who were banished
Out of England, and have aided him.
The two are gone to Louis, the son of Philip,
On the part of duke Robert, he has granted them succour,

Et al ray Henry par lettre ad priez,
Ke ly et sun frere sayent acordez.
Le eveske de Parys la pes ad formez,
[Et par ses parchementz et resouns ordinez,][1]
Duke Robert remits the annual payment.
Ke le duk Robert du tut[2] ad pardonez
Al ray Henry, sun frere, et quitement clamez,[3]
Les iij. mil mars par an dount fust obligez.
Le evesk de Parys ad pris ses congez,
Et le ray Henry par mer est repairez,
Saunz rendre les terres ke là avayt gaynez,
[Et touz altres feez en quels fu feffez.][4]
Le ray Lawys de Fraunce Robert va counsailer,
Et passe[5] en Engleterre al ray[6] Henry parler.
Curtaysement ly prie ses terres restorer.
Et le ray respount nay, saunz nul ren graunter.[7]
Le duke se corouce, sun chymyn prent arer;
Le ray Henry après, saunz plus demorer,
[Tut dreit en Normendie,[8] sojorn cel an enteer.
Si feit le duk Robert, sanz contek mover,][9]
[Ou saunz alcune maner entre els de parler.][10]
Le erceveske Anselyne[11] i vynt passaunt la mer,
Et al ray Henry se fet accorder
Du contek ke fust à clers à Westmouster.[12]
Le rays les volayt en sa court justizer;[13]
Anselyne[14] encountre ço ad Rome fist appeler.
Battle of Tinchebray.
Après tost en l'esté, le rays fet[15] assembler
Englays et Normaunz, et vait[16] asseger

[1] This line is found only in D.
[2] *de tut*, B. *de tote*, C.
[3] *e quite e clamez*, B. *et quite claymez*, C. D.
[4] This line is found only in D.
[5] *E pense*, B. C. D.
[6] *ouf roy H.*, C.
[7] *Sanz rien de ces granter*, B. *sanz rene granter*, C.
[8] *Ly rays en Normandy*, C. D.
[9] These two lines are omitted in A., but are here supplied from B. C. D. They were in the MS. used by Robert of Brunne.
[10] This line is found only in D.
[11] *Anselm*, B. *Anseline*, C.
[12] *des clers à Weymouster*, B. D. *de clers de W.*, C.
[13] *juger*, C.
[14] *Anselm*, B. *Anselme*, C. D.
[15] *fist*, B.
[16] *u veet asseger*, B.

And has prayed king Henry by letter,
That he and his brother should be reconciled.
The bishop of Paris has drawn up the peace,
And ordained by his parchments and reasons,
That duke Richard has remitted entirely
To king Henry his brother, and proclaimed him quit,
Of the three thousand marks by year in which he was bound.
The bishop of Paris has taken his leave,
And king Henry is returned by sea,
Without giving up the lands which he had gained there,
And all other fees in which he was enfeoffed.

King Louis of France goes to advise Robert,
And the latter crosses into England, to talk to king Henry.
He asks him courteously to restore his lands.
And the king replies, "Nay," without yielding anything.
The duke becomes angry, takes his way back;
King Henry after him, without further delay,
Straight into Normandy, dwells there all this year.
And so does the duke Robert, without moving strife,
And without any manner of talk between them.
Archbishop Anselm came passing the sea,
And obtains a reconciliation with king Henry,
For the quarrel which arose among the clergy at Westminster.
The king sought to bring them for judgment in his court;
Anselm, on the contrary, has caused appeal to be made to Rome.
Afterwards, early in summer, the king causes to be assembled
The English in Normandy, and prepares to lay siege to

Le chastel de Tenker,[1] of mol[t] graunt poer.
William de Mortayn i[2] solayt seygnurer.
Capture of duke Robert. Robert à Courthose[3] *se fet apprester;*
Et Robert de Beleseye,[4] *après ly primer,*
William de Mortayn, et sun nefu Rayner,
S'en vount et quident ben le sege remuer.
Le rays les vait venir,[5] les trompes fet soner,
Et vount à la batayllle; le duk Robert le fer
Est tray par ses gens, kaunt veent[6] al myster.
Prys est le duk Robert, le ray le fet maunder
A Corve sun chastel, ilokes va sojourner.
William de Mortayn ne put eschaper;
Death of duke Robert. Robert de Notevile le rays fet ferger,[7]
Et William Cryspyn of le duk mener.
Aunz et jours ilokes le rays les fet garder,[8]
A vestir les trove,[9] à beyver et manger,[10]
Jekes [taunt] ke mort les vent chalanger.[11]
His great bravery, and Godfrey of Bouillon's opinion of him. Robert est mort à Corve, mès de sun finement
Recorder la maner mon lyvre me defent.
Molt fust chuvalerouse, molt fist de[12] hardement
En la Terre Sainte sur la paene gent.
Godefray de Boloyne de Robert dist sovent,
" Jo m'affy du duk encountre autre cent;
" Bayllyez ly l'espeye du governement
" De Jerusalem;"[13] le terz jour de l'Advent
Enmaladist le rays, dount mort après[14] le prent.
Godefray de Boloyne of Robert present,[15]

---

[1] *Theuker*, C.
[2] *il solayt*, D.
[3] *de Curthose*, B. *al Curthose*, C.
[4] *de Beleise*, B. C. D.
[5] *les vit venir*, B.
[6] *vint al mester*, C.
[7] *Robert de Stotevile feit le rei ferger*, B. C. D., and Robert of Brunne.
[8] *le fet le rei garder*, B. D. *les fet*, C.
[9] *le trove*, B.
[10] *à manger et bayver*, C. *et à manger*, D.
[11] *Jesqe tant qe à mort les vint chalanger*, B. *Deqes*, C. *Jekes taunt qe*, D. "That never thei were o "twynne untille ded tham slouh." Robert of Brunne.
[12] *molt fu de*, B.
[13] *à Jerusalem*, C.
[14] *après* omitted in B.
[15] *fu present*, B. C.

The castle of Tinchebray, with very great force.
William de Mortagne used to be lord there.
Robert Courthose prepared himself;
And Robert de Belesme, first after him,
William de Mortagne, and his nephew Reiner,
Marched and thought easily to raise the siege.
The king sees them coming, causes his trumpets to be sounded,
And they go to the battle; duke Robert the bold
Is betrayed by his people, when it comes to the struggle.
Duke Robert is captured, the king orders him to be sent
To his castle at Corfe, there he goes to sojourn.
William de Mortagne could not escape;
Robert de Estoteville the king causes to be thrown into fetters,
And William Crispin to be led with the duke.
Years and days there the king caused them to be confined,
He finds them clothes, drink, and provisions,
Until at length death comes to claim them.

Robert is dead at Corfe, but of his end
My book forbids me to record the manner.
He was very knightly, he did great acts of valour
In the Holy Land against the pagan people.
Godfrey of Bouillon said often of Robert,
" I trust in the duke against a hundred others;
" Give him the sword of the government
" Of Jerusalem;" on the third day of Advent
The king fell into the illness by which death took him afterwards.
Godfrey of Bouillon with Robert being present,

Les clers et les lays vount devotement
A l'eleccioun, et prient durement,
Et Deu les oyst ben[1] par signe apertement.
La lumer du cel sur Robert descent
Trais fez coup à coup assez verrayment,
Trais fez ly fust offert l'encorounement,
Trays fez le refusa par counsail de gent
Ke melz volaynt ayllours aver avauncement.
Godefray de Boloyne dist, de quer dolent,
Ke Deu prendrayt vengaunce de sun refusement.
Del duk Robert n'ad plus dount fere parlement,
Al rays Henry, sun frere, demort le tenement
De tote Normendye saunz recoupement.

Henry succeeds to Normandy.

Kaunt le duk Robert est mort[2] en prisoun,
Et le ray Henry par successioun
Avayt Normendye en subjeccioun,
Le rays Lawys comença, à tort et saunz resun,
Sur le ray Henry mover contencioun.

King Louis invades England, and is driven away.

En Engleterre se vent par[3] suggecioun
De plusurs Englays, ke la regioun
A ly avaynt grauntez, et fet al ray tresun.
Thebald,[4] nefu le rays, et Randolf Gobyoun,[5]
Ount colly le Waldays desuth Chillingtoun,[6]
Et rechacez Lawys[7] à sa confusioun.
Lawys est mer[8] passez arer en tapisoun.
Si il fust demoré, enportez eust guerdoun[9]
Par Thebaud, frere Esteven, ke pus porta caroun.

Kaunt le ray Henry pur veir avait conu[10]
Coment par une gent[11] taunt près fu desceu,

---

[1] *ben* omitted in C. D.
[2] *fu mort*, B. C. D.
[3] *s'en veent et suggestioun*, C.
[4] *Tebaud*, B. *Teobald*, C. *Thebaud*, D. Robert of Brunne here calls him "the kynges kosyn;" but he uses the word nephew below.
[5] *Gubion*, B. *Gubioun*, C. D.
[6] *coillez le Waleis desouth Chilington*, B. *les Waldais*, C.
[7] *E rechacent Lowis*, *B.*
[8] *est la mer*, B.
[9] *enportez vint gwerdoun*, C.
[10] *aveit parceu*, B.
[11] *une grant*, B. *une gent près fu*, C.

The clergy and laity proceed devoutly
To the election, and pray earnestly,
And God hears them well by a public token.
The light of heaven descends on Robert
Three times successively distinctly enough.
Three times the coronation was offered him,
Three times he refused it by advice of people
Who sought to get better advancement elsewhere.
Godfrey of Bouillon said with grieving heart
That God would take vengeance for his refusal.
Of duke Robert there is no more to be said;
To king Henry, his brother, his lordship remains
Of all Normandy, without dismemberment.

When duke Robert is dead in prison,
And king Henry by succession
Had Normandy in subjection,
King Louis began, wrongfully and without reason,
To move strife against king Henry.
He came to England by suggestion
Of many English, who the kingdom
Had made over to him, and done treason to the king.
Theobald, the king's nephew, and Randolph Gobion
Have collected the Welsh below Chillington,
And driven back Louis to his confusion.
Louis has crossed the sea back secretly.
Had he remained, he would have carried away his reward.
Through Theobald, brother of Stephen, who afterwards bore the crown.

When king Henry in truth learnt
How he was so nearly betrayed by some people,

Coment Gabioun et Thebald[1] sun nefeu
Avai[n]t chacez[2] Lawys cum chuval[3] recreu,
Of molt grant noblye s'en va[4] devers le seu,
Sa feille Malde of ly, plus bele fu unkes veu,[5]
Al ray de Alemayne à femme l'ad tendu,
Le emperour Henry, emperyce l'ad resceu;
Par taunt al ray Henry est grant poer acreu.
Le ray Henry après ad pris ses congez,
Et sun fiz William of ly ad menez
Tut drait en Normendye [si li ad donez
Tute Normendie][6] en servises[7] et fez.
Thebald de Blesences[8] of ly est demorez,
Et le ray Henry en Engleterre alez.[9]

Death of queen Maude.

Le xvij. an ke Henry ad regnez,
Et Malde la rayne à Deu est[10] comaundez,[11]
A Seint Pol en Loundres[12] le cors entoumbez
Ky ben volt entendre totes ses bountez,
Voyse à Westmouster,[13] *là sunt registrez.*
Ore est le ray Henry en *taunt angussez,*
Ke ad sun fiz William *la mer est-il passez,*[14]

Catastrophe of the Blanche Nef.

Demort en Normendye le yver *et l'estez.*[15]
Après en le terce an[16] le rays est repairez,
Et sun fiz William en mer est entrez,[17]
Deus countes of lur femmes, et Thebald son nefz,[18]

---

[1] *Gubion e Tebaud,* B. *Gobioun et Theobald,* D.

[2] *aveynt chacez,* D.

[3] *chevaler,* C.

[4] *se va,* B. *s'en va vers,* C.

[5] *ne fu veu,* B. C. *plus leal ne fu veu,* B.

[6] These words are added from B. C. D.

[7] *et servise et feez,* C. D.

[8] *Thebaud de Plesence,* B. and Robert of Brunne.

[9] *est alez,* B.

[10] *est* omitted in D.

[11] *Est Maud la reine à Dieu comandez,* B. C.

[12] *de Loundres,* B. C. D.

[13] *Węymouster,* B.

[14] *est passez,* B. C. D.

[15] *en iver e en estez,* B.

[16] *en l'an tierz,* B. C. D.

[17] *Wiliam e Richard, ses fitz, en mer entrez,* B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it: "An dronkled "bi the se side bothe William and "Richard."

[18] *e sunt-il 'naez,* B. *sont neez* C. D.

How Gobion and Theobald his nephew
Had driven away Louis like a recreant horse,
He goes with a great train of nobles towards the south,
His daughter Maude with him, the greatest beauty ever seen,
He has delivered her as wife to the king of Alemagne,
The emperor Henry has received her as empress;
By so much is great power accrued to Henry.

King Henry afterwards has taken his leave,
And has led his son William with him
Straight into Normandy, and has given him
All Normandy in services and fees.
Theobald of Blois is remained with him,
And king Henry gone into England.
The seventeenth year which king Henry had reigned
Maude the queen is sent to God,
And her body entombed at St. Paul's in London.
Whoever desires to know fully all her acts of goodness,
Let him go to Westminster, there they are registered.
Now is king Henry so much grieved,
That he has crossed the sea to his son William,
He remains in Normandy the winter and the summer.
Afterwards in the third year the king is returned,
And his son William is embarked on the sea,
Two earls, with their wives, and Theobald his nephew,

Sir William Bigote, Robert Maldute[1] nomez,
Et Geffray Lydel, et Otes le senez,[2]
Sunt of le fiz le rays tuz en la mer[3] naez,[4]
[Et lour nobles vies en l'ewe forveyez.][5]
Les cors of les bens[6] à terre sunt trovez;
Un soul maryner ilokes fu salvez.
Ore ad le ray perdu pur ses heritez
Sun fiz et sun hair, dount est dolent assez.[7]

Henry's second marriage.

A Loundres est ly rays, et molt de sun barnage,
Où venuz ly sunt deus chuvalers en message
Del duk de Lovayne, Godefra[y] le sage,
Ke Adelyve[8] sa feyllye ly tent en mariage.
Le ray Henry se assent, et fet est l'esposage;
Malde l'emperice est hair de l'heritage.

Second marriage of Maude the empress.

[De] l'emperour[9] Henry, taunt cum il regnayt,
Malde le emperyce nul enfaunt avayt.[10]
L'emperour est mort, le ray Henry s'en vayt,
Et sa feylle Malde remene of graunt esplait.
Le counte de Angeouu,[11] ke cele houre estait,
Molt richement en haste à Dovre aryvait,
Et of le ray Henry à Loundres taunt parlayt,
Ke sun fiz Henry l'emperyce esposait.
Le counte de Aungeou la dame amenayt
En sun pays demene, et ad sun fiz donayt
La seygnurye en terre,[12] il mesme s'en alayt
En la Terre Saynte, et là se devyayt.[13]

Her children.

Sun fiz of l'emperice seygnur demorayt,
Et un fiz Henry primes engendrait,

---

[1] *Wiliam Bigod, Robert Maudut*, B. *Maudute*, D.

[2] *E Geffrei Ridel e Othes*, B. *Geffray Ridel*, C. D. "Sir Geffrey "Ridelle, and Othes that was his "knyght."

[3] *en mer*, B. C.

[4] *plongez*, D.

[5] This line is found only in D.

[6] *et le biens*, B. C.

[7] *dolent est assez*, B. C.

[8] *Adeline*, B. *Adelin*, C. *Adelyne*, D. Robert of Brunne calls her, "his douhter Adelayn." Her name was Adelais.

[9] *De l'emperour*, B. C. D.

[10] *n'avait*, C.

[11] *Angeowe*, B.

[12] *La seignurye enteer*, C. D.

[13] *e là devieit*, B.

Sir William Bigod, he who was named Robert Mauduit,
And Geoffrey Ridel, and Otho the wise,
Are with the king's son all drowned in the sea,
And deprived of their noble lives in the water.
The bodies with the goods are found on the land;
A single mariner was there saved.
Now has the king lost for his inheritance
His son and his heir, for which he is in great grief.

At London is the king, and much of his baronage,
Where two knights are come to him as messengers
From the duke of Louvain, Godfrey the wise,
Who offers him in marriage Adelaide his daughter.
King Henry agrees, and the marriage is made;
Maude the empress is heir to the inheritance.

By the emperor Henry, so long as he reigned,
Maude the empress had no child.
The emperor is dead, and king Henry goes
And brings back his daughter Maude with great speed.
The count of Anjou, who was at that time,
Arrived in haste at Dover with a very splendid train
And talked so much with king Henry at London,
That his son Henry married the empress.
The earl of Anjou conducted the lady
Into his own country, and gave to his son
The sovereignty in the land, he went away himself
Into the Holy Land, and there died.
His son with the empress remained sovereign,
And first begat a son Henry,

Et un William pus,[1] ke taunt ben se portayt,
Ke le rays Henry les deus taunt amayt,
Ke lur deus presences deporter ne poayt.
Sa feylle et ses fiz of ly aler fesayt
Death of Henry I. Jekes en Normendye, et là se cochayt.
Xxxv. aunz et trays[2] mays portayt
Coroune en Engleterre, kant mort ly matait.
Le cors le ray Henry[3] par molt graunt descayt
Taun[t] en Normendye dissevelye[4] gisayt,
Stephen of Blois comes into England. Ke Esteven de Blesence[5] en Engleterre entrait;
Le cors vynt après, et home l'entoumbayt
A l'abbeye de Redinges, quele[6] il mesme foundait.
Le cors le ray Henry est ore en terre mise;[7]
Esteven de Blesence[8] en Engleterre remise,
Thebald, sun frere aynez, est counte en sun payse,
Ke de l'emperyce Esteven de ren s'est entermyse.[9]
Henry, counte de Angou, par counsail des amys,
Et Mald l'emperice, vount à Saint Dynis;
A lour fiz Henry, devaunt le ray Lawys,
Ount doné Normendye, terre de graunt pris.
La novele lendemeyn est venuz à Parys
Ke Gerard de Payters et ly quens Marchys
Ount la terre de Angeou de tote pars assis.
Le counte du rays Lawys ses congez ad pris;
L'emperyce demort al chastel sir Amys,
Ke duk [fu] du[10] Gaynes,[11] chuvaler gentils,
A sun cosyn le counte sun pere ad promys.[12]
S'en vount en noun de Deu sur lur enemys.

---

[1] *E pus un Wiliam*, B. C. D.

[2] *trays* omitted in C.

[3] *qe le roy Henry*, C.

[4] *desevely*, C. D.

[5] *Estevene de Plesence*, B.

[6] *le quel*, B. *quel il*, C.

[7] In these four lines the scribe has wrongly given the feminine rhyme, as may be seen by the succeeding lines. B. has *mis, remis, pais, entremis*. C. and D., *mys, remys, pays, entremys*.

[8] *Plesence*, B.

[9] Robert of Brunne translates this by "Of o side ne of other no "thing deles he."

[10] *Qi duk fu de*, B. C. *Le duk fu*, D.

[11] *de Gaignes*, C.

[12] *son poer ad promiz*, B. D. *son pouer*, C.

And a William after, who conducted himself so well,
That king Henry loved the two so much,
That he could not dispense with their two presences.
He made his daughter and her sons go with him
As far as Normandy, and there died.
Thirty-five years and three months he carried
A crown in England, when death conquered him.
The body of king Henry, through very great treachery
Lay so long unburied in Normandy,
That Stephen of Blois entered into England;
The body came afterwards, and they entombed it
In the abbey of Reading, which he himself founded.

The body of king Henry is now laid in the earth
Stephen of Blois established in England,
Theobald, his elder brother, is count in his country,
Who has not interfered between the empress and Stephen.
Henry, count of Anjou, by advice of his friends,
And Maude the empress, go to St. Denis;
To their son Henry, in presence of king Louis,
They have given Normandy, a land of great value.
News next day is come to Paris
That Gerard of Poitiers and the count Marchis
Have attacked the land of Anjou on all sides.
The earl has taken his leave of king Louis;
The empress remains at the castle of sir Amis,
Who was duke of Guisnes, a noble knight,
Who had promised his power to his cousin the count.
They went in God's name against their enemies.

Henry, fiz le counte, est pruz et hardis;
Mès William, sun frere, est là de mort suspr
Cele guere durayt ben v. aunz ou vj.
Esteven en Engleterre ad fet tut sun avys;
Par sen et curtaysye la coroune ad conquis.

Anno Domini M°. C. XXX. *sexto.*

Coronation of king Stephen.

Le jour saint Esteven, saunz conqueste d'espée,
Fu le rays Esteven à Loundres corouné;
Henry fiz l'emperyce [1] del pople ublyé.
Le cors le ray Henry cel houre fu porté
Et, cum avaunt est dite, à Redinges entoumbé.[2]

Stephen's oaths.

De Loundres à Oxenforde est le rays alé,
Devaunt la clergye sur le auter [3] ad joré
Ke, quel houre ke de eveske [4] vacaunt sait le sée,
Ren chalengera ke apent à cel evesché,
Ne altre homme par ly, ansi [5] li ayde Dé.
Esteven mesme cel houre fist le serement,[6]
Ke forestes et boys saunz enparkement[7]
Serrait à clers [8] et lays perpetuelement,
Et ke pur salvagyne [9] clerk ne altre gent
Prendrayt en sa court [10] agarde ne jugement.
Sun dit fust affermé par commune assent.
Le rays la terce fez sur l'auter jorayt,
Ke le Danegeld pur tuz jours pardorayt [11]
De chascun hyde deus solz ke donayt,[12]
Issy ke après jammès demaunderayt
Servise ne coustome de kant ke il pardonayt.

---

[1] *Henri fitz emperice*, B.
[2] *est tombé*, B.
[3] *à l'auter*, B. *à l'altre*, C. *à l'altere*, D.
[4] *qe evesqe*, B.
[5] *de par li, auxi*, B.
[6] *son serment*, C. D.
[7] *aparkement*, B.
[8] *al clers*, C. *as clers*, D.
[9] Robert of Brunne translates this, "for no wilde beste."
[10] *Prendrait à court*, C.
[11] *pardurreit*, B.
[12] *qe deveit*, B. D. *deus suz qe devait*, C. Robert of Brunne translates these words by, "And of ilk "a hide tuo schillynges that he "toke."

Henry, the count's son, is courageous and bold;
But William, his brother, is there overtaken by death.
This war lasted well five years or six.
Stephen in England has matured his plans;
By wisdom and courtesy he has obtained the crown.

Year of our Lord 1136.

On St. Stephen's day, without conquest by the sword,
King Stephen was crowned at London;
Henry, son of the empress, forgotten by the people.
The body of king Henry was at that time carried
And, as is before said, entombed at Reading.
From London the king has gone to Oxford,
He has sworn on the altar before the clergy
That, whenever a bishop's see should be vacant,
He will claim nothing that belongs to that bishopric,
Nor other man through him, so God be his aid.

Stephen at that same time took the oath
That forests and woods without emparkment
Should belong to clergy and laity for ever,
And that for wild beasts neither clergy nor other people
Should take award or judgment in his court.
His promise was affirmed by common assent.

The king the third time swore on the altar,
That he would abolish Dangeld for ever
Which gave two sols for each hyde,
So that afterwards he would never demand
Service or custom of what he abolished

Il fayllist en partye avaunt ke l'an passayt.
Kar tauntost après of ly se medlayt
Davyd, ray de Escoce, ke chever ne volayt.
Henry of Scotland made earl of Huntingdon.
Mès Henry, fiz David, ke sun hair estayt,
A ly rays Esteven [sun] homage[1] fesayt
Du realme d'Escoce, ke à ly descendrayt.
Le ray, pur sa lealté, à ly lors donayt
Le burge[2] de Huntyngdoun, of le honur et of le drayt.[3]
Stephen's rich feast.
Ly rays à la Paske à Loundres alayt,
Et tynt là ryche feste, chascun ke là estayt,
Counte, duk, et[4] baroun, [chescun à son endrait,
Chivaler et serjaunt,][5] jowel enportayt.[6]
Après la feste ferue,[7] le rays se movayt,
Et saisist les chastels ke avaunt ne avayt.
Baldewyn de Beduer[8] du regne exillyayt,
Ke encountre le rays un chastel guyayt.
Escotez cum le rays sun serement waynayt,[9]
[Qe plus tost par resoun mort suffrir deverayt;
Kar parole de bouche al rey verité parforner dait.][10]
The king breaks his coronation oath.
En Huntingdoun schire est le rays alé,
En la foreste bele un mays est demoré,[11]
Forester et verder fet venir de gré,
De vert et de venysoun[12] les gens sunt chalangé,
Et devaunt le rays est cyl amercyé
Pur chose ke il mesmes[13] avayt pardoné.
Issint roumpist le vow k'il promist à Dé.

[1] *son homage*, B. C. D.

[2] *le burge*, C.

[3] *e le dreit*, B. C. D.

[4] *et* omitted in B. C. D.

[5] These words are found only in D.

[6] Robert of Brunne gives the meaning, rather than the literal sense, of this:

"Was non that thider 3ode, that
"holden was of pris,
"That he ne had gyftes gode of
"Stevẽn that was wys."

[7] *servé*, C.

[8] *Baudewin de Bedwere*, C. D.

[9] *wantait*, C.

[10] These two lines are found only in D.

[11] *Et en la forest umays demoré*, C. *Et en la foreste un mays est demoré*, D.

[12] *De vert et venysoun*, D.

[13] *qe memes avait*, C.

He broke his oath in part before the year was passed.
For immediately afterwards made war upon him
David, king of Scotland, who would not allow his usurpation.
But Henry, David's son, who was his heir,
Performed his homage to king Stephen
For the realm of Scotland, which would descend to him.
The king, for his loyalty, gave to him then
The borough of Huntingdon, with the honour and the right.
The king at Easter went to London,
And held there rich feast, every one who was there,
Earl, duke, and baron, each according to his rank,
Knight and sergeant, carried away a jewel.
After the feast was concluded, the king put himself in movement,
And seized the castles which he had not before.
He banished from the kingdom Baldwin de Bedwer,
Who held a castle against the king.
Listen how the king broke his oath,
Than which he ought sooner by right to suffer death;
For a king's word of mouth ought to be equivalent to truth.

The king is gone into Huntingdonshire.
He has remained a month in the fair forest,
He causes forester and verderer to come by will,
People are accused of vert and venison,
And before the king a man is fined
For a thing which he (the king) himself had pardoned.
Thus he broke the vow which he pledged to God.

Goes to Normandy.

Sur ço vers Normendye est-il mer passé,
Et hors de la terre à force ad exillyé
Bayllifs et ministres ke là sunt trové
Par Malde l'emperyce, tut fust sun heryté.
Puys al ray de Fraunce est-il acordé,
Et ad sun fiz demeyne Esteven[1] ad doné
Tote Normendye à tenir en fée
De ly ray de Fraunce, par homage et fealté.
Le ray pur cel servise le doun ad confermé.

Siege of Bedford.

Le terz an après, veent[2] en Angleterre,
Assege Bedeforde, et la prent par guere.
Pus va vers Escoce, et comence mesfere;[3]
Tue les gens à rage, abbate les chastels[4] à terre,
Pur ço ke le homage de David ne pout[5] quere.
Molt fu David leals en tote cel affere;
De Malde l'emperyce ne se volayt trere,
Ele ad sun homage, il ne se put[6] retrere.
Le ray rethourne vers Wales, ilokes saunz plus fere,
[E pensoit sur eaus comencer la guere.][7]

Beginning of the civil war.

Ore va le rays Esteven sur ses enemys,
Ke encountre ly les chastels[8] ount pris.
A Herford en Wales le galbot[9] est assis.
Le fiz le rays Henry, Robert, ke fust hardys,
Ad rendu Brestow,[10] taunt fu tost suspris.
Et Slede, of le honur, et altres chastels sys,
Ad le rays Esteven par poer conquys,[11]

---

[1] *Eustace*, B. C. D. "And gaf "it Eustace his sonne alle Normun- "die in fe," Robert of Brunne. It can hardly be doubted that this is the correct reading, though that of A. makes good sense, "Stephen has "given to his own son."

[2] *Le tierz de son regne revient en*, B. *Le terce an de son regne reveent*, C. D.

[3] *meffere*, B. C.

[4] *abate chastels*, B. C. D.

[5] *ne pùt*, D.

[6] *il se ne peut*, C. *poet*, D.

[7] This line, omitted in A., is restored from B.

[8] *ses chastels*, D.

[9] *en Guales le gannoh*, B. *la gannoc*, C. *A Herdforde en Wales le gannok*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this: "In Herford fulle "stoutely his gannok has up set."

[10] *Bristowe*, B.

[11] This line is omitted in B.

After that he has crossed the sea to Normandy,
And by force has banished out of the land
Bailiffs and officers who are found there
By appointment of Maude the empress, all was her inheritance.
Then he has reconciled himself with the king of France,
And has given to his own son Eustace
All Normandy to hold in fee
Of the king of France, by homage and fealty.
The king for that service has confirmed the gift.

The third year after, he comes into England,
Besieges Bedford, and takes it by war.
Then goes towards Scotland, and begins to do evil;
Slays the people furiously, levels castles with the ground,
Because he cannot obtain David's homage.
David was very loyal in all that affair;
He would not desert Maude the empress,
She has his homage, he cannot withdraw.
The king returns towards Wales, then without more ado,
And meditated beginning war upom them.

Now king Stephen goes against his enemies,
Who have taken the castles against him.
At Hereford in Wales the banner is raised.
The son of king Henry, Robert, who was bold,
Has surrendered Bristol, he was so soon taken by surprise.
And Slede, with the honour, and six other castles,
King Stephen has conquered by force,

Castles taken.

Karry, Lodelawe, Salopesbyre, Warwys,[1]
Donforde, et Maltoun, le ray les ad repris,
Ke countre ly[2] les tyndrent en garde les ad mys.
A Wyncestre s'en va atrere ses amys;
Gens vers ly se movent en diverse pays.[3]

David invades England.

Davyd, ray d'Escoce, kaunt avayt entendu
Ke le rays Esteven demorayt en le seu,
Tost à Rokesburge ad parlement tenu,
[E touz de vint anz à soud ad retenu.][4]
Homme et femme et beste est si près venu,[5]
Ke le ray d'Escoce Alvertoun ad veu,
Et quidait[6] ben cel houre ke tut fust vencu.
Les Norays se defendent, dount ren est rendu[7]
[A David rei d'Escoce, qe molt ad despendu.][8]
Escotez ore coment David ad tut perdu.

L'ercevesk de Everwik, Turfyn,[9] de graunt age,
Oyt dire ke David vent of sun barnage,
Engleterre[10] destrure, al pople[11] fere damage.
Maunde par messagers à l'eveske salvage,
Radulf de Orkeney,[12] ke fust de graunt lynage,
Ke enprent pur le ercevesk aler à ses coustage.[13]

---

[1] *Carro, Lodlowe, Salopbire, Warwiks, Dunford*, B. *Salepesbirs, Warwis*, C. *Henry*, D. In Robert of Brunne the names are, "Carro, "Lodelow toun, Schrobesbiri, and "Warwik, Dunford, and Maltone."

[2] *Q'encuntre li*, B.

[3] These two lines are thus translated by Robert of Brunne:

"At Wynchestre he spires, his
"frendes drawes tille him,
"For folk of fele schires agen
"him turnes grim."

[4] This line is omitted in A., but is here supplied from B. C. D.

[5] Robert of Brunne paraphrases this a little:

"An gaf tham soude at wille in
"Inglond forto fare,
"Man and beste to spille, non ne
"suld thei spare.
"Southward the Scottis hasted,
"bifor tham bare alle doun,
"Alle the cuntré wasted unto
"Alvertoun."

[6] *Il quidait*, C. D.

[7] *dont rien n'en rendu*, C.

[8] This line, omitted in A., is supplied from B. C. D.

[9] *Thurston*, B. *Turstin*, D. "The archbisshop Thurstan," Robert of Brunne.

[10] *En Engleterre*, B.

[11] *à pople*, B.

[12] *Rauf de Orkenele*, B.

[13] *pur l'evesqe à les costages*, B. "Opon his kostage," Brunne.

Carro, Ludlow, Shrewsbury, Warwick,
Dunford, and Melton, the king has recovered them,
Those who held them against him he has put in prison.
He proceeds to Winchester to assemble his friends;
People move against him in different countries.

David, king of Scotland, when he had heard
That king Stephen remained in the south,
Has immediately held a parliament at Roxburgh,
And retained in pay all under twenty years of age.
Man and woman and beast he is come so near,
That the king of Scotland is in sight of Alverton (Northallerton),
And he quite imagined at that time that all was conquered.
The Northerners defend themselves, so that nothing is surrendered
To David king of Scotland, who has expended much.
Listen now how David has lost all.

The archbishop of York, Thurstan, a very aged man,
Heard say that David was coming with his barons,
To destroy England, and do injury to the people.
He sends by messengers to the wild bishop,
Ralph of Orkney, who was of great lineage,
Who undertook to go for the archbishop at his cost.

Leaders of the English.

Escotez ore quele gent i sount des Englays:
William quens de Albemarle, Walter de Guntays,[1]
Gilbert de la Say, Robert de Brus cortays,
Et sun fiz Adam, et Robert de Moulrays.[2]
Walter l'Espeke[3] i fust plus vaillaunt du palays,
Ses bountés à counter ne pot ly Frauncays,[4]
Des moynes et chanoynes foundait-il abbays;[5]
Trop fu chuvalrous, tressage en[6] les lays.

Battle of the Standard.

William Peverelle i fust of ses Westrays.
Des countes et barouns i sunt[7] les Norays.
L'estandard ount levé sur David le rays.

Address of the bishop of Orkney.

Ly eveske Rauf[8] comence parler molt[9] sotylment,
De Turfyn[10] erceveske avait maundement[11]
Assembler ses clers, et par parchement[12]
Enformer les lays à lour avauncement.[13]
" Et pur ço ws pri pur Deu ke ws penset coment[14]
" Englays et Normaunz desore sunt une gent,
" Coment vos auncestre conquistrent nettement[15]
" Le realme de Fraunce pur tote lur hardement,
" Poylle of [la] richesce, Acres[16] ensement,
" La terre renomé en tote le oryent;[17]
" La plentyve[18] Engleterre conquistrent noblement;
" Cy n'ad fors rascaylle ke venent[19] folement.

---

[1] *de Aumarle, Water de Gunteis*, B.

[2] *Roger de Moubrais*, B. C. D. " And Roger de Moubray," Robert of Brunne.

[3] *Water Spek*, B. " Walter " Spek," Robert of Brunne.

[4] *ne pount li Franceis*, B. *ne pout*, D.

[5] *De moignes . . . fundeit abbeies*, B. C. *foundayt abbays*, D.

[6] *Trop chivalrous, tressage fu en*, B. *très sages en*, C. D.

[7] *ces sunt*, B. *De countes et barouns ces sont*, C. *cels sunt*, D.

[8] *L'evesqe sire Rauf*, B.

[9] *molt*, omitted in B.

[10] *De Thurston*, B. *De Turstin*, C. *De Turstyn*, D.

[11] *avay m.*, D. This is the reading from which Robert of Brunne translates.

[12] *e par prechement*, B. D. "The " lewed also to preche," Robert of Brunne.

[13] *Confermer les lays à lour envauncement*, C. *envauncement*, D.

[14] *pur Dieu pensez coment*, B.C.D.

[15] " Conquered alle France " quitely," Robert of Brunne.

[16] *Poyle od la richesse, et Acres*, B. *Poylle ouf la richesse, Acre*, C. *ou la richesse*, D.

[17] *e tut vers l'orient*, B. C. D.

[18] *La pleintive*, B.

[19] *qe veent*, C. D.

Hear now what people are there of the English:
William earl of Albemarle, Walter de Gontais,
Gilbert de la Say, the courteous Robert de Brus,
And his son Adam, and Roger de Mowbray.
Walter l'Espec was there, the most valiant of the palace,
The Frenchman could not enumerate his acts of goodness,
He founded abbeys of monks and canons;
He was very chivalrous, and very wise in the laws.
William Peverell was there with his Westerners.
Of the earls and barons these are the Northerners.
They have raised the standard against David the king.

Bishop Ralf begins talking very much to the purpose,
He had the commission from archbishop Thurstan
To assemble his clergy, and by preaching
Confirm the laity to their encouragement.
" And therefore I pray you for God's sake that you consider how
" English and Normans henceforth are one people,
" How your forefathers conquered entirely
" The realm of France as the result of their courage,
" Apulia with its riches, Acres likewise,
" The land of renown in all the East;
" Nobly they conquered the plentiful England;
" Here are none but low fellows who come like madmen

" Ne forloynez pas de pere ne parent,
" Tost les alez prendre, et jo sollempnement
" Vous assolz trestuz de kaunt ke mortelment
" En pechaunt avez fet ou coment altrement,
" En noun de Pere et Fiz, de Deu[1] omnipotent."
David, ray d'Escoce, se haste à la batàylle.
Walter l'Espeke de ça la route forme et taylle,
Et comaunde ke nul soul avaunt s'e[n] aylle.[2]
William quens de Albemarle s'acorde à cel counsaylle.
Taunt cum des partyes[3] chascun à altre daylle,
Robert de Brus ex-postulates with David.
Ly velz Robert de Brus à Davyd se travaylle;[4]
Escotez coment[5] par parole l'assaylle.[6]
" Sire rays Davyd d'Escoce, tu es moun seygnur,
" Si est le rays Esteven en terryen honur,
" Jo lo pur sayn counsayl, lessez tun errour,
" Pensez de tes heyrs et de ton successur,
" Ke tu ne says perdaunt tes terres[7] huy ço jour,
" Et ke molt plus valt ta vye saunz retour.
" Englays et Normaunz sunt genz de graunt vigour,
" Ount eu la mestrie en chascun estour;[8]
" Unkes rays Englays ne trovas-tu gylour.
" A tay et tun lynage sovent ount fet soccour,
" Terres ount donez à tun auncessour.[9]
" Pardonez lur trespas de lur graunt folur,
" Lessez ta folye, pernez jour d'amour.
" Si averez plus [par] pes[10] ke par nul reddour.
" Jo lo ke si sayt saunz plus deshonur."
Ly rays ly regarde, la lerme ly[11] cheet de plur,
Il se eust lors accordez ne fust un tribolour,[12]
William sun neveuz, home de graunt valour,

[1] *du Pere et Fitz, Dieu o.*, B. *En noun Per et Fitz, Dieu o.*, C.
[2] *s'en aile*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, " He bad " that non alone breke out of the " rengaile.
[3] *de parties*, B.
[4] *sey travaylle*, D.
[5] *Escotez ore coment*, C.
[6] *par pople l'aissaille*, B.
[7] *ne soiez perdaunt de terres*, B. *des terres*, C.
[8] *E unt eu mestrie en chescun mortel estour*, B.
[9] *antecessour*, C. D.
[10] *par pes*, B. C. D.
[11] *ly* omitted in B.
[12] *un tribulour*, B. C. D.

" Do not degenerate from father or kindred,
" Go quickly and attack them, and I solemnly
" Absolve you all of whatever mortally
" You have done in sinning or in any other way,
" In the name of Father and Son, of God Almighty."

David, king of Scotland, hastens to the battle.
On this side Walter l'Espec forms and arranges the army,
And commands that no one should advance alone from the line.
William earl of Albemarle agrees with that advice.
While parties are skirmishing one with another,
The aged Robert de Brus labours with David;
Listen how he assails him with speech.

" Sir king David of Scotland, thou art my lord,
" So is king Stephen in territorial honour,
" I advise by sound counsel, leave thine error,
" Think of thy heirs and of thy successor,
" That thou mayst not be losing thy lands this present " day,
" And that thy life is much more worth without doubt.
" English and Normans are people of great vigour,
" They have had the mastery in every battle;
" Thou hast never found an English king a deceiver.
" To thee and thy lineage they have often given help,
" They have given lands to thy ancestor.
" Pardon their trespass in their great ardour,
" Leave thy folly, take a love-day.
" And you will get more by peace than by any " stubbornness.
" I advise that it be so without further dishonour."
The king looks at him, the tear of weeping falls from him,
They would have been reconciled then, but for a meddler,
William his nephew, a man of great valour,

Ke Robert de Brus appela proditour.
Robert sun homage à David en irour[1]
Rend sus, et retorne as Englays en clamour,
" Englays, sonez le[s] troumpes, devenez assayllour ! "
Li eveske de Orkenaye criayt[2] en Frauncays,
" Tuez les Escoz, defolez les Walays ! "
Ly Normaund se confort, et si fet ly Westrays.
William quens de Albemarle et ly barouns norays
Ount par fyn poer[3] rechacez le rays.

Trick of a valet.

Escotez ore coment un vallet par galays[4]
Sur une teste copé asset un orfrays,
La leve sur sa launce,[5] et crye as Englays,
" Co est le chef Davyd, de rays[6] le plus malvays ! "
Countes et barouns ke of Davyd estayent
La teste sur la launce de loynz regardayent,
Ke fust la teste Davyd trestuz ben quidayent,

Defeat of the Scots.

Se mystrent à la fuste ke fuyr poaynt ;
Wlgryne et Dovenald[7] pur tuz jours demoraynt.
Chuvalers et esquyers les testes là bessayent.[8]
Homme dist, tymmers[9] Englays suz terre avayent,

---

[1] *an errour*, B. *en irrour*, C.

[2] *criant*, B. *creait*, C.

[3] *par son poer*, B.

[4] *par gabbeis*, B. *un wallet par galays*, C. *par gabeys*, D.

[5] *sur lance*, D.

[6] *C'est le chief David, des reis*, B. *des reis*, D.

[7] *Dufnald*, B. *Wolgrym*, D.

[8] *feseient*, B. *lessaint*, C. D.

[9] *tunniers*, B. *tunners*, C. *timmers*, D. The whole of this part of the narrative is rather obscure, and the very paraphrastic translation of Robert of Brunne, with apparently some independent information, preserved to his time by tradition, only partially clears it up.

" The Scottis, whan thei cam,
" bestes over alle thei toke ;
" Hors and nete alle samen bifor
" ther oste thei schoke.
" Thei did it for a wile, thorgh
" and thorgh toun,
" To put bestes in perile, our
" folk to bere doun.
" Our men herd it say, thei were
" warned beforn,
" In ilk strete and way thei
" ordeynd an erthe-horn.
" Whan the com tham blewe,
" the bestes ageyn fled,
" The Scottis men down thewe,
" for rorying wer thei dred ;
" The bestis thorgh tham 3ede,
" and over ther rascaile ran,
" The Inglis after with dede and
" slouh tham ilk a man.
" This was at Kouton more that
" the erthe-hornes blewe,
" Ther the Scottis misfore, men
" telle the tale 3it newe."

Who called Robert de Brus a traitor.
Robert his homage to David in anger
Throws up, and returns to the English shouting,
" English, sound the trumpets, become the assailants."

The bishop of Orkney cried out in French,
" Slay the Scots, tread down the Welsh!"
The Norman takes courage, and so does the Western.
William earl of Albemarle and the northern barons
Have by pure strength driven back the king.
Listen now how a valet in mockery
Sets an embroidered cap on a head which had been cut off,
Raises it on his spear, and shouts in English,
" This is the head of David, the worst of kings!"

Earls and barons on David's side
Looked from a distance at the head on the spear,
All were fully persuaded that it was David's head,
Took to flight, whoever could fly;
Wolgrin and Donald remained there for ever.
Knights and esquires bowed their heads there.
It is said that the English had "tymmers" under ground,

Et à la batayllе si hydous soun gettayent,[1]
Ke trestut le aumaylle ke les Escoz menayent
De ço soun hydous si graunt affray avayent,
Ke trestuz à une frusse si fort[2] retornayent
Sur les gens à pé,[3] ke defolez estaynt.
Les Englays ke les suyrent[4] les chaytifs decolaynt.
De Henry fiz Davyd molt de gens[5] parlayent;
Plus fist à la jorné ke vj. ke melz[6] valaynt
De la partye sun pere; les barouns enportaynt
Cel houre la victore, à Deu la mercyaynt.

En le mays de August[7] fu David descomfit.
Après le Noel suyaunt le rays Esteven se myst
Tut drayt vers Escoce, si com il purvyst,
Et ad Davyd le rays maundayt[8] k'il venyst,
Henry sun fiz of ly, le ray amedeus les prist.
Jà sount en Engleterre, mercy Jhesu Krist!

Marriage of Stephen's son Eustace.

Nostre rays Esteven cel houre un fiz avayt,
Eustache out à noun, ke trop vayllaunt estayt;
Coustaunce, soer Lawys ke en Fraunce regnayt,[9]
Par counsayl sun père à Parys esposayt,[10]
Pur quai le rays Esteven plus halt se portayt.

The bishop of Lincoln deprived of his castles.

Le evesk Alysaundre de Nycole,[11] où manayt,
Ad rendu ses chastels,[12] le ray les ly robbayt,
De Laforde et Lenye;[13] ly eveske de pes parlait,
Al councyl de Wyncestre ses chastels recoverayt.

Arrival of Maude.

Malde l'emperyce cel houre aryvayt,
Le chastel de Arundel overt à ly trovayt.
Kaunt ly rays Esteven sun venir savayt,
Of tut sun poer le chastel assegayt.

---

[1] *feseient*, B. D.
[2] *si tost*, C.
[3] *al pée*, C.
[4] *qe suirent*, B. D. *qe fuirent*, C.
[5] *des gens*, B. *de gent*, C. D.
[6] *qe vi ne meltz*, C.
[7] *de Augst*, B. "In the month of harvest," Robert of Brunne.
[8] *E al rei David manda*, B. *Et al ray David maundast*, C. *Et al rey David maundait*, D.
[9] *en France qe reyneit*, B. C. D.
[10] *l'espuseit*, B.
[11] *en Nichole*, C.
[12] *ces chaustels*, C.
[13] *De Lafford et de Newerk*, B C. D. Robert of Brunne calls the two castles "Sleford and Neuwerk."

And that in the battle they threw out so frightful a sound,
That all the cattle which the Scots were carrying away
Had so great a terror from that hideous sound,
That all in one rush they returned so violently
On the people on foot, that these were trodden down.
The English who pursued them cut off the wretches' heads.
Of Henry son of David many people talked;
He did more in the battle than six of the most worthy
Of his father's party; the barons carried off
The victory that time, and thanked God for it.

In the month of August was David discomfited.
After the Christmas following, king Stephen proceeded
Direct to Scotland, as he had provided,
And sent to David the king that he should come,
His son Henry with him, the king took them both.
Now they are in England, thank Jesus Christ!

Our king Stephen at that time had a son,
His name was Eustace, who was very valiant;
Constance, sister of Louis who reigned in France,
By his father's advice he espoused at Paris,
Whereby king Stephen held himself the higher.
Bishop Alexander of Lincoln, where he dwelt,
Has delivered up his castles, the king extorted them from him,
Of Lafford and Newark; the bishop negotiated for peace,
At the council of Winchester he recovered his castles.
Maude the empress arrived at this time,
She found the castle of Arundel open to her.
When king Stephen was informed of her arrival,
He laid siege to the castle with all his power.

Malde l'emperice deshonour dotait,
S'en fuyst à Brestowe,[1] le chastel entrait,
Et un an et demy ilokes demorayt.

Death of the earl of Anjou.

Tel houre[2] ly quens de Angeu à Deu est comaundé,
Et sun fiz Henry est counte de l'heryté.
L'emperice, sa mere, en Brestowe[3] est entré,
Et[4] parmy Engleterre par lettre ad prié
Al parenz et amyz, à gardayns[5] de cyté,[6]
Ke aider ly volent, en drait et lealté,[7]
Conquere sun heritage, dount ele est hair clamé.
Desore se entremedlent ly rays et ly barné,
Chascun court sur altre, ke plus ad pousté.

Feud between the earl of Albemarle and Gilbert de Gaunt.

Ly quens William de Albemarle pur le vescounté[8]
De Nicole schire baner ad levé
Sur Gilbert de Gaunt,[9] counte enheryté;
Et Gilbert sur ly est taunt avaunt alé,
Ke ars est Helewelle,[10] le frere William tué,
Le chastel de Bytham à Gilbert est lyveré.
Ly quens William de Albemarle le north ad visité,
Le chastel de Hunemanby à terre ad cravaunté;
Eustache le fiz Jon i fust of sa mesné,
A ky la ruyne fu pus aretté.
Pur veir en cel contemple est chascun vengé,
Ke mal volt à altre, [n']est nul[11] esparnyé.

Capture of king Stephen.

Countes, duks, et barouns,[12] de la parenté
Malde l'emperyce, out[13] taunt travayllé,
Pris est le rays Esteven, et à Brestowe[14] mené;

---

[1] *à Brestuue*, D.
[2] *Cel houre*, B. C. D.
[3] *q'en Bristowe*, B. *en Brestoued*, D.
[4] *Et* omitted in B.
[5] *As parens . . . . à g.*, B. *A parentz et as amys*, D.
[6] *de citez*, C.
[7] *li voillent en dreit et leauté*, B. C. D.
[8] *pur la viscounté*, B.
[9] *Gilbert le Gaunt*, B.
[10] Robert of Brunne translates this:
" Of Gilbert first to telle, to
" William did he wouh,
" He did brenne Helwelle, and
" William brother slouh."
[11] *n'est nul*, B. C. D.
[12] *dukes, barouns*, C. D.
[13] *unt*, B.
[14] *à Brestoued*, D.

Maude the empress feared dishonour,
She fled thence to Bristol, entered the castle,
And remained there a year and a half.

At that time the earl of Anjou is dispatched to God,
And his son Henry is earl of the heritage.
The empress, his mother, has entered Bristol,
And throughout England by letter has prayed
Her kinsmen and friends, the wardens of cities,
That they will aid her, in right and loyalty,
To conquer her heritage, of which she is acknowledged heir.
Henceforth the king and the barons contend together,
Each attacks the other, who has most power.
Earl William of Albemarle for the shrievalty
Of Lincolnshire has raised the banner,
Against Gilbert de Gaunt, earl by inheritance;
And Gilbert has pressed so close upon him,
That Hellewell is burnt, William's brother slain,
And the castle of Bitham is surrendered to Gilbert.
Earl William of Albemarle has visited the north,
Has battered to the ground the castle of Hunmanby;
Eustace fitz John was there with his meiny,
To whom the destruction was afterwards charged.
In truth at that time every one took revenge,
Who bore ill will to another, no one was spared.
Earls, dukes, and barons, of the kindred
Of Maude the empress, have laboured so much,
That king Stephen is taken, and carried to Bristol;

Malde l'emperyce le teent enprisouné.
De riches et de povers, de la[1] communalté,
Est Malde l'emperyce dame resceu de gré,
Et teent tut Engleterre à ly abaundoné.[2]
Se leve en orguyl, ne fet[3] pas equité,
Issi ke denz[4] cel an issynt s'ad porté,[5]
Ke tuz cels de Loundres la dame ount enchacé.
His harsh treatment. Et cele par graunt ire en sa[6] crualté
Ad fet mettre en ceppes le ray corouné.[7]
Escotez ore coment ly rays est hors passé.
Malde l'emperyce est alé[8] à Wyncestre,
Robert sun frere of ly, le ray d'Escoce al dester,[9]
Assege le chastel; de Loundrès al senestre[10]
Sunt venuz et ount pris l'emperyce à pestre,[11]
Et Robert sun frere demort en lur chevestre;
Et le ray d'Escoce s'en fuys[t] près de Cestre
Jekes à Loudyan,[12] où il volayt estre.
The king delivered. Le rays est delyvré, sun host fet acrestre.
Malde s'en fuyst par counsayl de prestre,
Sir Robert Lovel, doué de Egcestre;[13]
Le chastel de Oxenforde ad saysi cum sequestre.
Ke fet le rays Esteven? s'en alt à Wyltoun,
Chastel i fet lever, i mette garnysoun.
De parte l'emperyce venent[14] ly baroun;
Le ray se mette al fute devers Northauntoun.

[1] *et de la*, B. *la* omitted in C. D.
[2] *à li baundoné*, B.
[3] *ne seet*, B.
[4] *qe dedeince*, D.
[5] *issint l'ad porté*, C.
[6] *de sa*, B.
[7] Robert of Brunne translates this:
" What for ire and tene, and
" alle in evelle wille,
" Scho stokked kyng Steven, and
" ther did scho ille."
There were stocks in the medieval dungeons, in which prisoners who were to be treated with rigour were placed permanently.
[8] *est passé*, B.
[9] *ad destre*, C. *à destre*, D.
[10] *Assegent le chastel, les Loundrès à senestre*, B. *le Loundreys à senestre*, C. *les Loundreys à senestre*, D.
[11] *à prestre*, B. " And tok hir " at the mete," Robert of Brunne.
[12] *Jekes en Loudian*, D.
[13] *dowé de Excestre*, B. *dowé*, C. *douué de Eghecestre*, D.
[14] *De par l'emperice vienent*, B.

Maude the empress holds him imprisoned.
By rich and poor, by the commonalty
Is Maude the empress willingly received as lady,
And holds England abandoned to her.
She increases in pride, does not act justly,
So that within that year she had so conducted herself,
That all the people of London have driven the lady away.
And she through great anger in her cruelty
Has caused the crowned king to be put in the stocks.
Now listen how the king has escaped.

Maude the empress is gone to Winchester,
Her brother Robert with her, the king of Scotland on the right,
She lays siege to the castle; the Londoners on the left
Are come and have surprised the empress at her meal,
And Robert her brother remains in their noose;
And the king of Scotland flies by way of Chester
Right into Lothian, where he wished to be.
The king is delivered, and causes his army to increase
Maude flies by the counsel of a priest,
Sir Robert Lovel, dean of Exeter,
And has seized the castle of Oxford as a pledge.

What does king Stephen? he proceeds to Wilton,
Causes a castle to be raised there, puts a garrison in it.
The barons of the empress's party come:
The king takes flight towards Northampton.

William Martel fu pris,[1] pur quai il fist le doun
Du chastel de Schireburne pur sa redempcioun.

Arrival of foreign mercenaries.

Venuz sun[t] al rays des terres[2] de outre mer
De chuvalrye gens de graunt[3] poer.
Le ray vers Oxenford aprest sun aler,
Et fet de tote parz le chastel asseger.
L'emperyce le teent, en la fraide yver.
La dame ad defaute de bayver et de manger,[4]
Se doute ke le rays le fra enfamyner,
Counsayl demaunde, n'ad nul ke seet loer
Fors le chastel rendre et mercy cryer.

Maude's escape from Oxford.

L'emperyce en taunt ne volt accorder;
Escotez ore coment la dame va passer.
L'emperyce s'atyre en perillouse guyse,
A la my nout s'en va soul en sa chemyse,
En la nayf blaunk passa parmy Tamyse,
Glace ne esparnyst, ne gele,[5] ne vent de byse;
S'en va à Walingforde, où ele est remyse;
Et par le ray Esteven Oxenforde est prise.

Depredations against the church.

Le utyme an le rays Esteven ke regnayt,
A clerk et à lays home parygal estayt,[6]
Chuvaler, esquyer,[7] ke poer avayt,
Prist de saint eglyse[8] ke prendre poayt.
La pape fet la playnte,[9] un legat envayt,
Le eveske de Wyncestre, ke councylle tenayt[10]
A Loundres[11] à Saynt Pol, sun decré fesayt,
Ky par mayn violente[12] clerk ordiné tochayt,
De nul for[s] de la pape assolz de ço[13] serrayt.

---

1. "William Marschalle o chance "was taken at that turne," Robert of Brunne.
2. *de terres*, C. D.
3. *od grant*. B. *ouf grant*, C.
4. *et manger*, C. D.
5. *ne giel*, B.
6. *Clerk e lay home paringal esteit*, B. *Clerk à lay homme p.*, C. D.
7. *e esquier*, B.
8. *à saint eglise*, C.
9. *Le pape oist la pleinte*, B. *La pape oyst la playnt*, C. D.
10. This line is omitted in B. *qe conseille t.*, C.
11. *En Loundres*, B. D. *En Londre*, C.
12. *Qe par main de violence*, B.
13. *de ceo assolz*, C.

William Martel was taken, wherefore he made the gift
Of the castle of Sherburn for his ransom.

There are come to the king from the lands beyond sea
People of war of great power.
The king prepares his advance to Oxford,
And causes the castle to be besieged on all sides.
The empress holds it, in the cold winter.
The lady runs short of drink and provisions,
Is afraid that the king will cause her to be starved,
Asks counsel, there is no one knows any
Except to surrender the castle and ask for mercy.
The empress will not agree to this;
Now listen how the lady makes her escape.

The empress dresses herself in marvellous guise,
At midnight she departs alone in her shift,
In the white snow she passed over the Thames,
Neither ice, nor frost, nor north-east wind did she flinch at;
She goes to Wallingford, where she is recovered;
And Oxford is taken by king Stephen.

In the eighth year that king Stephen reigned,
Clergy and layman were on an equality,
Knight or esquier, who had the power,
Took from holy church whatever he could take.
The pope heard the complaint, sent a legate,
The bishop of Winchester, who held a council
At London in St. Paul's, made his decree,
Whoever touched, with violent hands, a clerk ordained,
Should be absolved of that by nobody except by the pope.

Le rays et[1] ses mynystres par taunt chastiayt,
Ke chescun après plus bel se portayt.
Examples. Demy an à payne[2] pes pur clers regnayt.
Geffray de Maundevyle, ke le rays privayt
De sa baronye, pur taunt ke il[3] fist descayt,
L'abbey de Rammesaye nutauntre[4] robayt,
Tresor ke il fu[5] trové trestut emportayt,
Chalice ne fyole de argent i lessayt;[6]
Abbé, priour, moyne,[7] cum chens enchascayt,
En refute al laroun[8] le temple Deu tornayt.
Divine punishment of the plunderers. Robert Marmyoun en autel desplayt
L'eglyse de Coventré myst et besturnayt.
Escotez ore coment cel hounte Deu vengayt.
Robert Marmion. Robert Marmyoun mounte sun destrer,
Et veent à Coventré à l'hus del mouster,[9]
L'eglyse du covent comaunda voyder,
En retornaunt la resne fu ferus al quer,[10]
Ke mort cheet à terre tut saunz plus parler.
Geoffrey de Mandeville. Geffray de Maundevyle, cum il va robber,
Est naffrez de une sete dount il va cocher.
Le bon eveske de Cestre le fet escomenger,
Escomengez l'estut sa vye terminer.
Et sun fiz Ernulfe est menez cum ler
Devaunt le ray Esteven, ke fet[11] exyller.
Helis de St. Omer. Le mareskal[12] de cel host, Elys de Sayn[t] Omer,[13]
Chayst de sun chyval, et morust saunz parler.
Le mestre del petaylle, ke usa le mester[14]
Arder les eglyses, moynes despoyller,

---

[1] *et* omitted in B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "The "kyng it was herd, and chastised "his meyné."
[2] *Demi an après pees*, B.
[3] *pur ceo q'il*, B.
[4] *nuttaunt*, C.
[5] *qe fu trové*, B. C. D.
[6] *n'i lesseit*, B.
[7] *e moigne*, B. *et moygne*, C. D.
[8] *à laron*, B.
[9] *à l'us de mouster*, B. *à l'huys de muster*, C. *à l'hous du mouster*, D.
[10] *à quoer*, B.
[11] *qi l' feit*, B. *exillyer*, D.
[12] *Le marchal*, D.
[13] *Helys de Saint Oumer*, C.
[14] *de petaille qe usa cel mester*, C. *de petaylle*, D.

The king so far chastised his ministers,
That each behaved better afterwards.
Peace for the clergy hardly reigned half a year.
Geoffrey de Mandeville, whom the king deprived
Of his barony, because he had betrayed him,
Plundered the abbey of Ramsey by night,
Carried away all the treasure that was found there,
Left there neither chalice nor vial of silver;
He drove out abbot, prior, and monk like dogs,
Turned the temple of God into a den of thieves.
Robert Marmion to a similar condition
Reduced the church of Coventry and turned it to confusion.
Listen now how God avenged this scandal.

Robert Marmion mounts his steed,
And comes to Coventry to the door of the monastery,
Commands the church of the convent to be cleared,
In returning the rein he was struck to the heart,
That he falls dead to the earth without further speech.
Geoffrey de Maundeville, as he goes plundering,
Is wounded with an arrow through which he is dying.
The good bishop of Chester causes him to be excommunicated,
He is obliged to end his life excommunicated.
And his son Arnulph is carried like a thief
Before king Stephen, who causes him to be banished.
The marshal of this army, Helis de Saint Omer,
Fell from his horse, and died without speaking.
The master of the infantry, who used the practise
Of burning the churches, and stripping monks,

Rainer the Picard.

Nez fu de Pykardye, sun nun fu Rayner,
Ke par tels mestryes coylly molt de aver,[1]
Of femme et enfaunt et of maynt[2] bel dener
Arere vers Pykardye se mette en la mer;
Kaunt sigle est levé, la neef no put[3] mover,
En perylle est la nef, si Deu ne volt[4] ayder.
Le mestre governour le sort fet getter,
Sur Rayner descent et sur sa mulier,
Trays fez coup à coupe, par quai li governer
Les myst en la schaphe,[5] lur avoyr fet trusser,
Et liverer fet à els, et comence [à] sigler.[6]
Rayner et sa mesné[7] sunt saunz repairer
Confoundrés al diable,[8] tel fu sun lower.

Quarrel with Hugh Bigot.

En le disme an le ray, fu graunt contencioun
Entre Huge Bygot et ly, noun pas[9] saunz resoun;
Le ray pur veirs avait fet destruccioun
Parmy les terres Huge, mès la correccioun
Fu fet en partye, et en partye noun.

Earl Ralph of Chester.

En le xj. an le ray, al court[10] est venuz
Le counte Ralf de Cestre, ke est vaillaunz[11] et pruz;
Al rays est acordez de totes maners ennuys.
Escotez ore coment le counte fu desceuz.
Kaunt vynt à Norhauntoun, pris est et retenuz
Jekes à rays[12] Esteven ait playnement renduz
Le chastel de Nicole, of rentes et of fruz.
Le xij. an[13] le rays, à Nicole à Noel[14]
Tynt le rays Esteven la feste en sun chastel.[15]
Tost après la feste s'en va vers Arundel.

Ralph attacks Lincoln.

Le counte Ralf de Cestre cel houre ne fet hel[16]

---

[1] *coilli grant aver*, B. *coillist grant aver*, C. D.
[2] *Od feme e od enfanz e meint bel dener*, B. *Ouf femmes et enfauntz*, C. *Oue femme et enfauntz*, D.
[3] *ne poet*, D.
[4] *ne voylle*, D.
[5] *à la schaffe*, B. *en la chape*, C.
[6] *à sigler*, B. D.
[7] *Reyner e sa feme sunt*, B.
[8] *Enfoundrés à diables*, B. *Enfoundrés al diable*, C. *Enfoundrez al deables*, D.
[9] *ne pas sanz*, B. C. D.
[10] *à court*, B. C.
[11] *qe vaillant fu e pruz*, B. C. D.
[12] *al ray*, C. D.
[13] *Le duzzime an*, B. *duzyme*, D.
[14] *al Noel*, C. D.
[15] *à son chastel*, B.
[16] *ne fu el*, B. *ne fet held*, C. *hele*, D.

He was born in Picardy, his name was Rainer,
Who by such practises gathered much wealth,
With wife and child and with many a fair coin,
Puts to sea on his way back to Picardy;
When the sail is raised, the ship could not move,
The ship is in peril, unless God aid it.
The master governor causes lots to be cast,
They fall upon Rainer and upon his wife,
Three times in succession, whereupon the governor
Put them into the boat, causes their goods to be packed up,
And delivered to them, and begins to sail.
Rainer and his family are without help
Sunk to the devil, that was their reward.

In the king's tenth year, there was great contention
Between Hugh Bigot and him, not without reason;
The king in truth had made destruction
Among Hugh's lands, but the correction
Was made in part, and in part not.

In the king's eleventh year, is come to the court
Earl Ralph of Chester, who is valiant and wise.
He is reconciled to the king for all manner of offences.
Listen now how the earl was caught.
When he came to Northampton, he is arrested and detained
Until he has fully surrendered to king Stephen
The castle of Lincoln, with rents and fruits.

The twelfth year of the king, at Lincoln at Noel,
King Stephen held the festival in his castle.
Immediately after the festival he proceeds to Arundel.
Earl Ralf of Chester that time does no other

Mès vent à Nicole, et leve mangolel,[1]
Le chastel[2] assege, et get al turel.
Bons sunt les cytayns, de sete et de quarel
Al guyour de l'host ount doné coup mortel,
Rechacez ount le counte fuyaunt à l'hostel.

Crusade of the French and Germans.

En l'an suaunt après, à la lay de[3] Fraünce
En la terre saynte en graunt[4] apparaunce,
L'emperour i va[5] of ses Alemaunce.
Cels sunt les seygnurs ke founts la[6] grant manance
A prendre sur paen pur Deu la vengaunce.
Ly paens est si fort[7] de tele purvyaunce,
Le[s] rays sunt revenuz saunz ferir de launce.

Crusade of the poor men.

Escotez coment avynt une[8] mervaillouse chaunce
Des povers genz saunz noumbre, ke sunt par allyaunce
Entre els jorez, et ne ount retenaunce;
Pris ount en Espayne sur la mescreaunce[9]
Deus cytez molz ryches, of les apurtenaunce.[10]
Passent de terre en terre, ne trovent resteaunce,
Taunt cum plus combatent, taunt[11] sunt plus en pussaunce.
De Engleterre avaynt plusurs là parlaunce.

Death of the empress Maude.

En le xvj. an le ray avaunt nomé,
Fu Malde l'emperyce à Deu comaundé,
[Et ensevelye à Bengenethe oue grant richeté;][12]
Et sun fiz Henry à Loundres aryvé.
La clergye fu lors là [de tote la regalté,
Et la chevalerye,][13] et molt du barné;[14]
Ke of le rays[15] Esteven ount taunt parlementé,

---

[1] *mangonel*, B. C. D.
[2] *Le sèneschal*, B.
[3] *En l'an suant après, ala le rei de France*, B. D. *En l'an suaunt après a le ray*, C.
[4] *od grant*, B. *oue grant*, D.
[5] *s'en va*, B. C.
[6] *qi sunt la*, B. "mad the grete manace," Robert of Brunne.
[7] *Le paens sunt si fort*, D.
[8] *com avynt un*, C. Robert of Brunne has much misunderstood his text here.
[9] This line is omitted in C.
[10] *oue ses purtenaunce*, D.
[11] This second *taunt* is omitted in B. *tant plus sont*, C. D.
[12] This line is found only in D.
[13] The words enclosed in brackets are found only in D.
[14] *et multz du barné*, C.
[15] *E od rei*, B. *Qe le rey*, D.

But comes to Lincoln, and raises a mangonel,
Besieges the castle, and discharges at the tower.
The citizens are good, with arrow and quarrel
They have given the leader of the army a mortal stroke,
And have driven back the earl in flight to his hostel.

In the year following, went the king of France
To the Holy Land with great display.
The emperor went thither with his Germans,
These are the lords who make the great threat
Of taking on the pagans vengeance for God.
The pagan is so strong, so well provided,
The kings are returned without stroke of spear.
Listen how happened a wonderful accident
Of poor people without number, who are by alliance
Sworn among themselves, and are not retained;
They have taken in Spain from the infidels
Two very rich cities, with their appurtenances.
They pass from land to land, find no resistance,
The more they fight, the greater they are in power.
Many of those there had the speech of England.

In the sixteenth year of the king before named,
Maude the empress was despatched to God,
And buried at Bengenethe with great pomp;
And her son Henry arrived in London.
The clergy was then there of all the regality,
And the knighthood, and much of the baronage;
Who have so much conferred with king Stephen,

Stephen's agreement with Henry of Anjou.

Ke of le duk Henry est-il accordé;
La pes est par escryt à Loundres confermé,
Ké le rays Esteven demorayt en sun sée,
Et tendrait en sa vye cum rays le regalté,
Ses fez sunt establés, les lettres k'il ad doné;[1]
Et al duk Henry ad rendu de gré
Tote Normendye cum sun heryté,[2]
Issi ke[3] cyl Henry serrayt corouné
Après la mort Esteven, of[4] sun fiz ayné,[5]
Si Henry avaunt fust à Deu comaundé;
De Engleterre averayent[6] le servyse et le fée
De la seygnurye,[7] saunz reën recoupé,
Issi ke de la terre[8] jammès un playn pé
Par nul des hayrs Esteven[9] après sait chalangé.[10]
Ceste fynal concorde del pople est graunté,
Le escryt[11] à Saynt Pol en garde demoré;
Par seals des eveskes, de countes[12] renomé,
Et de grauns barouns, le fet est tesmoyné.
Ore est le duk Henry alez en Normendye,
Prendre les homages de sa chuvalerye,
Et le rays Esteven demort en sa ballye.

Death of king Stephen.

En le terce an après chet en maladye,
Et en graunt langour termyna sa vye.
Dis et ix. aunz regna par mestrie,
Sun cors à Foversham[13] entoumbez en l'abbye.
Les countes de la terre ne mettent en oblye,
Ad Henry ount maundez k'il ne targe mye,
Mès veygne en Engleterre à sa seygnurye.[14]

---

[1] *Ses fitz sunt establiz, les terres q'il ad doné*, B. *les terres*, C. D.
[2] *ouf son herité*, C.
[3] *Issint qe*, D.
[4] *ou*, B.
[5] *ou son fiz ayné*, C.
[6] *averoit*, B. *averayt*, D.
[7] *E la seignorie*, B. D.
[8] *Issint qe la terre*, B.
[9] *d'Estcven*, B.
[10] *Esteven serrait chalangé*, C.
[11] *Et escrit*, B. *L'escrit est à*, C. D.
[12] *des countes*, C.
[13] *Faversham*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne says: "At Feversham he "lis, at a heven in Kent."
[14] *et sa seygnorye*, D.

That he is come to an agreement with duke Henry;
The peace is confirmed by writing at London,
That king Stephen should remain on his throne,
And should during his life hold the royalty as king,
His acts are established, the lands he has given;
And he has voluntarily delivered to duke Henry
All Normandy as his inheritance,
So that this Henry should be crowned
After Stephen's death, or his eldest son,
If Henry passed to God first,
They should have of England the service and fee
Of the sovereignty, without any thing cut off,
So that of the land never a full foot
Should afterwards be claimed by any of Stephen's heirs.
This final concord was granted by the people,
The writing remained in keeping in St. Paul's;
By seals of bishops, of earls of renown,
And of great barons, the act is witnessed.

Now is duke Henry gone into Normandy,
To take the homages of his knights,
And king Stephen remains in his kingdom.
In the third year after he fell into disease,
And in great weakness ended his life.
Nineteen years he reigned through mastery;
His body is entombed at Faversham in the abbey.
The earls of the land are not forgetful,
They have sent to Henry that he delay not,
But come into England to his lordship.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[497.—750.—12/66.]

Digitized with financial assistance from

Government of Maharashtra

on 25 January, 2020